Japanese: A Comprehensive Grammar **is a complete reference guide to modern Japanese grammar. Accessible and systematic, it is suitable for students at all levels, whether independent learners or on taught courses.**

Presented in alphabetical order, the grammar points are clear and concise and put in context by a wealth of authentic examples. The book explores thoroughly the complexities of Japanese and fills many gaps left by previous textbooks. The emphasis throughout is on contemporary Japanese as spoken and written by native speakers.

Written by experts in their fields, this will provide a lasting and reliable source for all learners of Japanese.

Features include:

- many original examples, taken from a range of Japanese media
- comprehensive coverage of colloquial and standard Japanese
- clear alphabetical organization for easy reference
- extensive cross-referencing
- detailed index of Japanese and English terms

Stefan Kaiser is Professor at the Institute of Languages and Literatures, University of Tsukuba, Japan. **Yasuko Ichikawa** is Professor at the International Center, University of Tokyo. **Noriko Kobayashi** is Associate Professor and **Hilofumi Yamamoto** is Assistant Professor, both at the Institute of Languages and Literatures, University of Tsukuba.

LANGUAGE/LINGUISTICS/REFERENCE

11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE
29 West 35th Street, New York NY 10001
www.routledge.com
Printed in Great Britain

ISBN 0-415-09920-X
9 780415 099202

Stefan Kaiser, Yasuko Ichikawa, Noriko Kobayashi
Hilofumi Yamamoto

Japanese
A Comprehensive Grammar

COMPREHENSIVE GRAMMA

INTRODUCTION

In the indexes and alongside entry headwords a number of linguistic technical terms are used. However, apart from some very basic terms ('noun', 'verb', 'adjective', 'adverb', 'predicate', 'modifier') and the names of a few specific constructions used in most language textbooks ('passive', 'causative', 'potential', 'intransitive'), the reader should be able to use this book fully without learning a new set of technical terminology.

The use of numerous real Japanese example sentences (with translations) plus an index of English translation-equivalents should guide the user to the correct section(s).

This book is useful, therefore, to both the specialist and non-specialist.

HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

This book is arranged in alphabetically ordered entries (all of which appear in the List of Entries on p. v–xii). An entry can be a grammatical term (e.g. 'Adjectival expressions', 'Adverbs', 'Negative sentences', 'Nouns', 'Passive sentences', 'Particles', etc.) or a Japanese-language item ('**hazu** [sentence ending]', '**ni** [case particle]', '**-sa** [nominalizing suffix]', '**wa** [final particle]', etc.). Most entries have a number of cross-references to related entries and sub-entries.

Grammatical entries often cover a wide ground (e.g. under 'Adjectival expressions' you will find listed (and/or cross-referenced) many ways of forming expressions. All have in common the function/meaning that they can be used like Japanese adjectives (to modify a noun, or as predicates).

If you wish to consult a specific entry, you can search the entry directly (alphabetically) in the List of Entries or directly in the text, or you can first check the Grammar and Function Index (if there is no independent entry, information may be included in one or several entries). If you want to know how to use Japanese verbs, for instance, or how the language works, you can consult grammatical entries, i.e., 'sentence types', 'verbs', 'vocabulary', etc.

Language functions

Language functions (obligation, commands etc.) can be looked up in the same way, i.e., if you look up 'commands' in the Grammar and Function

Index you will find reference to 'commands', 'direct commands', 'indirect commands', 'negative commands', etc., as well as the individual entries applicable to them.

To save space, abbreviated terms such as V and cop. for verb and copula are widely used. Refer to p. xix–xx for a list of symbols and abbreviations used in the text.

English Translation Index

The English Translation Index is a list of what Japanese items typically mean in English (in the main text, these translation equivalents are given in single quotation marks). If you want to find out how to say 'only' in Japanese, you look up 'only' in this index, and then refer to the items that are listed.

Examples

This book attempts to give as many examples as possible, with a minimum of explanation. All examples (unless marked '%', which indicates a 'construed' or made-up example) are taken from original printed media sources such as daily newpapers. Where they have been shortened, this is indicated by ellipses, except for quotations that have been given without the preceding and/or following context.

Wherever possible, examples are arranged so that the shorter and/or easier examples come first, with the longer/more difficult ones following.

Examples are given in the original script version, followed by a romanized transliteration (with ad-hoc spacing/hyphens but without punctuation) and an English translation, which should enable you to work out most unknown words or *kanji* in the original script version. However, you may also find it useful to use this book in conjunction with a Japanese–English or English–Japanese dictionary, and a *kanji*–English or *kanji*–Japanese dictionary.

A NOTE ON ROMANIZATION

The romanization used here is similar to the Hepburn system used in most romanized dictionaries, but differs in some respects.

- A 'small tsu' at the end of a word etc. is transcribed as ', i.e. ねっ is rendered as ne'.
- Word boundaries and hyphens are used as appropriate to prevent words from becoming too long and unwieldy in transcription

CONSTRUCTION OF ENTRIES

Grammatical items are often used in a variety of forms (or constructions) and/or meanings. Entries are therefore often divided into a number of sub-entries. Sub-entries are listed with their numbers in a contents box near the beginning of the entry. This gives you an overview of the construction of the item and enables you to locate the sub-entry you require by its number.

All you need to do then is to find that number.

There is also a List of Tables for locating these according to page number.

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

%	(before example) made-up example
×	(before example) ungrammatical example
^	(before cop., P) without a form of copula, without any particle (see also ^cop., ^P below)
[]	(in example) addition to original text to assist understanding
[]	(in entry or subentry, etc.) occasionally used to mark the extent of a grammatical structure
[]	after entry: gives the grammatical class (sometimes meaning) of entry, e.g. **wa** [focus particle]. When referring to other entries, the [] part is attached only if it is needed to specify that entry, i.e. where there is more than one entry of the same form, i.e. **wa** [focus particle], **wa** [final particle], but **-ba**.
[]	marks the entry (and sometimes its translation) in example
'. . .'	marks translation of entry (in examples it also marks quoted speech)
". . ."	marks literal translation of entry (in examples it also marks direct speech)
*	used for footnotes in tables, etc.

adj.	Adjective
adv.	Adverb
AN	Adjectival noun
C	Counter
caus.	Causative
cop.	Copula
^cop.	without a form of the copula
dem.	Demonstrative
fin.	Finite forms
hon.	Honorific
imp.	Imperative
lit.	literally (literal translations are given in ". . .")
MJ	Mixed Japanese vocabulary
N	Noun
neg.	Negative
NJ	Native Japanese vocabulary
N-mod.	Noun-modifying forms (also: N-modifying)

NP	Noun phrase
num.	Number
P	Particle
^P	without particle
pass.	Passive
pln.	Plain form
pol.	Polite form
pos.	Positive
pot.	Potential
pred.	Predicate
pref.	Prefix
prep.	Preposition
pres.	Presumptive
pron.	Pronoun
Q	Question
S	Sentence (this can stand for a sentence, or a clause)
SJ	Sino-Japanese vocabulary (Japanese words of Chinese origin)
suf.	Suffix
V	Verb
V-intr.	Intransitive verb
VN	Verbal noun
V-tr.	Transitive verb
WJ	Western Japanese vocabulary (loanwords from Western languages)

1 ADJECTIVAL EXPRESSIONS: NOUN-MODIFYING

Adjectival expressions (like adj. proper, which are one type of adjectival expression), describe properties or qualities 'what sort/kind of'. Many adjectival expressions can be used in two ways (see 178, 2): 1) to modify a N and 2) as a pred.

1.1 Specialized noun-modifying words
1.1.1 Noun-modifying demonstrative words/pronouns and question words
1.1.2 Other specialized noun-modifying words (**arayuru**, **iwayuru**, **saru**, etc.)
1.2 Nouns (incl. number + counter/pronoun) **no** noun
1.2.1 Noun 1 **no** noun 2
1.2.2 Personal pronoun **no** noun
1.2.3 Number + counter **no** noun
1.3 Adverbs/adverbial clauses **no** noun
1.3.1 Adverb-**te no** noun
1.3.2 Noun + phrasal particle-**te no** noun
1.3.3 Clause-**te no** noun: adverbial clauses modifying nouns
1.3.4 Adjective-stem **no** noun: **ōku no, chikaku no**, etc.
1.4 Adjectives proper + noun
1.5 Adjectival nouns **na** noun
1.5.1 Unconverted adjectival noun **na** noun
1.5.2 Converted adjectival noun **na** noun
1.6 **no**-adjective + noun
1.7 Verb/verbal noun/adverb-**ta** noun
1.7.1 Verb-**ta**, or verbal noun **shita** noun
1.7.2 Adverb (**to**) **shita** noun
1.8 Noun **ga/no** adjective/verb + noun

1.1 SPECIALIZED NOUN-MODIFYING WORDS

1.1.1 Noun-modifying demonstrative words/pronouns and question words

Demonstrative words and pron. include words like **kono** 'this', **sonna** 'that kind of'). Q words include **dono** 'which?', **donna** 'what kind of?', etc. (for full details see 44, 167).

1.1.2 Other specialized noun-modifying words (**arayuru**, **iwayuru**, **saru**, etc.)

There is a small number of other specialized N-mod. words (**arayuru** 'every possible', **iwayuru** 'so-called', **saru** 'the past', **onaji** 'the same'; note especially the use of **onaji** where English would use 'alike' (example e).

a 私たちは【あらゆる】問題を話し合った。
watashi-tachi wa arayuru mondai o hanashiatta
We talked about 【all possible】 problems.

b 【同じ】年の夫とは三年前に知り合った。
onaji toshi no otto to wa sannen mae ni shiriatta
She met her husband, who is the 【same】 age, three years ago.

c どうやら【同じ】島国でも、英国人のような紅茶好き、というわけにはいかないようだ。
dōyara onaji shimaguni de mo eikokujin no yō na kōchazuki to iu wake ni wa ikanai yō da
It appears that even though [we're] an island nation 【alike】, we are not as fond of black tea as the English.

Note – **onaji** has other uses too, such as pred. + cop. (example d).

d 経済はだれがやっても【同じでしょ】。
keizai wa dare ga yatte mo onaji desho
The economy 【should be the same】, no matter who runs it [= the country].

1.2 NOUNS (INCL. NUMBER + COUNTER/PRONOUN) **no** NOUN

(See 133, 143.)

1.2.1 Noun 1 **no** noun 2

N1 includes N of time (see 144.1.4). The [N1 **no** N2] combinations (= NPs) often, but not always, translate into English as 'N2 of N1' (see 133).

a 【最近】の若者
saikin no wakamono
the young of recent times

b 【ここ】の家の主人
koko no ie no shujin
the master/husband of this house

c 【日本】の政治
nihon no seiji
Japanese politics
(*lit.* "Japan's politics")

d 【日本】のカメラ
nihon no kamera
a Japanese camera

1.2.2 Personal pronoun **no** noun

Depending on the pron., personal pron. **no** N translates into English as 'my/your/his/her/our/their N'. But see 158 for differences in use of personal pron. compared to English.

a 【私】の仕事
watashi no shigoto
my job

b 【あなた】の車
anata no kuruma
your car

1.2.3 Number + counter **no** noun

Num. + C **no** is used to modify N that require a specific C, whereas those that lack a specific C use the 'default' C **-tsu** (num. + **no**). Note that num. can also occur after the nouns they refer to, as in example b, where the structure is N + num. + C **no** N (see 147, 36, 154).

a 【一つ】の地域
hitotsu no chiiki
one area

b 【レンズ一枚】の価格
renzu ichimai no kakaku
The price of one lens

1.3 ADVERBS/ADVERBIAL CLAUSES **no** NOUN

1.3.1 Adverb-**te no** noun

These include a number of adv. ending in **-te**, such as **subete** 'all', **hajimete** 'for the first time', **katsute** 'formerly' (see 4).

a 【すべて】の規制
subete no kisei
all restrictions

b 【はじめて】の住居
hajimete no jūkyo
my first house

c 生まれて【はじめて】の体験だった。
umarete hajimete no taiken datta
It was [my] first experience ever (*lit.* "in my life").

1.3.2 Noun + phrasal particle-**te no** noun

Phrasal P are often equivalent to prep. in English.

Note most, but not all, phrasal P can take **no** (examples a and b) (see also 159).

a 【選手として】の経歴はすごい。
senshu to shite no keireki wa sugoi
His career 【as a player】 is formidable.

b 【このことについて】の大臣の考えは。
kono koto ni tsuite no daijin no kangae wa
What are your [= the minister's] thoughts 【on this matter】?

1.3.3 Clause-**te no** noun: adverbial clauses modifying nouns

Here, an adverbial clause ending in the conjunctive form **-te** (shown in 【】) modifies a following N (or NP) by means of **no**. The N/NP implies an action, and S-**te** indicates 'how' or 'in what state/condition', etc. the action takes place. Check the idiomatic translations (also given in 【】) below.

a 【お客さんあって】の商売。
okyaku-san atte no shōbai
Business [is something that] 【depends on the existence of customers】 (= no business without customers).

b 【ザックを背負って】のベトナムひとり旅。
zakku o seotte no betonamu hitori-tabi
A solitary trip through Vietnam, 【shouldering a rucksack】.

c それでも【豊かさを求めて】の逃走は続く。
sore demo yutakasa o motomete no tōsō wa tsuzuku
But nevertheless the flight 【in pursuit of affluence】 continues.

d 【三十歳を目前にして】の決意である。
sanjussai o mokuzen ni shite no ketsui de aru
It's a decision [made] 【with age 30 just around the corner】.

1.3.4 Adjective-stem **no** noun: **ōku no, chikaku no,** etc.

The stem form of adj., ending in -**ku**, can be used with a following **no** to modify a N. However, this is possible with only a very small number of adj., such as **ōi** 'many', **chikai** 'near', **tōi** 'far, **furui** 'old'. (see 34.1.3, 184.2.3).

a 過熱するカメラブームで、【多く】の機種が登場した。
kanetsu suru kamera būmu de ōku no kishu ga tōjō shita
In the overheating camera boom, many new models have appeared.

1.4 ADJECTIVES PROPER + NOUN

Adj. proper are named this way because in Japanese there are also adjectival N and **no**-adj. (see 1.5 and 1.6).

Adj. proper always end in **-i** in their pln. non-past form (which is also the form under which they are listed in dictionaries) (see 3).

a 【古】い家屋
furui kaoku
old houses/an old house

b 【新し】い体験
atarashii taiken
a new experience

1.5 ADJECTIVAL NOUNS **na** NOUN

1.5.1 Unconverted adjectival noun **na** noun

AN require the N-mod. form **na** of the cop. (see 35).

a **【静か】**な朝
shizuka na asa
a quiet morning

b **【柔軟】**な発想
jūnan na hassō
a flexible way of thinking

1.5.2 Converted adjectival noun **na** noun

The suf. **-teki** converts a N (often a two-*kanji* compound) into an AN, which then modifies a N in the same way as other AN, i.e. by attaching **na** (see 212, 34).

a **【精神的】**な強さ (cf., 精神 'mind')
seishin-teki na tsuyosa
mental strength

b **【理想的】**な男性 (cf., 理想 'an ideal')
risō-teki na dansei
an/the ideal male

Note N-**teki** can also modify N directly, without the cop. form **na**; the whole NP in this case is understood as a compound (examples c and d).

c **【政治的】**問題
seiji-teki mondai
political problems

d **【社会的】**責任
shakai-teki sekinin
social responsibility

1.6 **no**-ADJECTIVE + NOUN

no-adj. are words with adjectival meaning that grammatically behave like N, i.e. they modify other N by means of **no**.

The main groups of **no**-adj. are those NJ colour words that are not adj. proper (i.e. do not end in **-i**), and all WJ colour words, plus also a few other NJ words such as **nama** 'raw' and **hadaka** 'naked' (see 137), and a select number of onomatope (see 153).

a **【白】**のタキシード姿の新郎
shiro no takishīdo sugata no shinrō
the groom in a white tuxedo

b **【ピンク】**のフラミンゴ
pinku no furamingo
pink flamingoes

c **【オレンジかピンク】**のポロシャツ
orenji ka pinku no poroshatsu
[an orange or pink**]** polo shirt

d **【生】**のキノコ
nama no kinoko
raw mushrooms

1.7 VERB/VERBAL NOUN/ADVERB-**ta** NOUN

1.7.1 Verb-**ta**, or verbal noun **shita** noun

Here, a V/VN that indicates a state in its **-te iru** form (as indicated in **[]** in the examples below) modifies a N by means of the **-ta** form (V-**ta**).

Note - no meaning of completion or past is present in this case (see 187.3.1, 143).

a 【安定し】た生活 (cf., 生活が安定している 'life is secure')
antei shita seikatsu
a secure life

b 【発達し】た筋肉 (cf., 筋肉が発達している 'muscles are well-developed')
hattatsu shita kinniku
well-developed muscles

c 「家々、木々、山々」と【題し】た作品がある。(cf.,題している 'has the title of')
ieie, kigi, yamayama to daishita sakuhin ga aru
There is a work entitled 'Houses, Trees, Mountains'.

d 【自立し】た証券会社は育たない。(cf.,自立している 'is independent')
jiritsu shita shōkengaisha wa sodatanai
Independent securities firms don't thrive.

e 「子供を家庭・地域に帰そう」を【目指し】た学校五日制。(cf., 目指している'is aiming for')
kodomo o katei, chiiki ni kaesō o mezashita gakkō itsuka-sei
The five-day school system, which has the aim of 'returning the children to their homes and locality'.

1.7.2 Adverb (**to**) **shita** noun

Many onomatope adv. (see 153) modify N by means of **to shita**, or just **shita**. But note that there are also some onomatope which modify N by means of **no**.

Note despite the **-ta** form used, no meaning of completion or past is present with **(to) shita**.

a 【ふとし】たことから寺山修司を知った。(ふと 'suddenly', 'accidentally')
futo shita koto kara terayama shūji o shitta
By chance I got to know Terayama Shūji.

b 【しゃきっとし】た歯ごたえは暑い夏にも向く。(しゃきっ 'crisp')
shakit-to shita hagotae wa atsui natsu ni mo muku
The crisp texture is right for the hot summer, too.

c 【漠とし】た不安に襲われる。(漠 'vague')
baku to shita fuan ni osowareru
One gets attacked by a vague feeling of unease.

d 川床に座ると、【ひんやりし】た風が頬をなでていく。(ひんやり 'cool')
kawadoko ni suwaru to hinyari shita kaze ga hoho o nadete iku
When one sits down on the riverbed [platform], a cool wind caresses one's cheeks.

1.8 NOUN ga/no ADJECTIVE/VERB + NOUN

Some N **ga/no** adj./V combinations have adjectival meaning as lexical items. N **ga** adj. combinations include **se ga takai** 'tall', **atama ga ii** 'intelligent', etc., and N **ga** V combinations are **settokuryoku ga aru** 'convincing' and **ninki ga aru** 'popular'.

In N-mod. use, these can use either **ga** or **no**, although **no** is far more common.

a 【背が高い】女性が多くなっているのに対応したもの。
se ga takai josei ga ōku natte iru no ni taiō shita mono
This [introducing larger sizes] is to deal with the fact that there are more tall women.

b 【説得力のある】コーチになるだろう。
settokuryoku no aru kōchi ni naru darō
He should turn out to be a convincing coach.

2 ADJECTIVAL EXPRESSIONS: AS PREDICATES

Adjectival expressions can be used as pred. as follows: 1) adj. proper by themselves, and 2) AN and **no**-adj. with the addition of cop.

2.1 Adjectives proper and (-)**nai**, **-tai**, **hoshii**, etc.
2.1.1 Adjectives proper
2.1.2 The negative/negative ending **nai/-nai**, and other grammatical items that are formally adjectives
2.2 Adjectival nouns and **no**-adjectives
2.2.1 Adjectival nouns + copula
2.2.2 **no**-adjectives + copula

2.1 ADJECTIVES PROPER AND (-)**nai**, -**tai**, **hoshii**, ETC.

2.1.1 Adjectives proper

Adj. proper are called thus to distinguish them from adjectival nouns (AN) and **no**-adj. (see 3, 137).

Adj. proper are *formally* distinguishable because their pln. non-past form (also used for listing in dictionaries) ends in **-i**. There are, however, also a number of grammatical and lexical items that end in **-i**, i.e. are formally adj. (see 2.1.2).

Adj. proper can be distinguished from AN and **no**-adj. in *function* because they can form a pred. by their non-past and other fin. forms, whereas AN and **no**-adj., etc. require the addition of cop.

a 【恥ずかし】い。
hazukashii
[I feel] ashamed.

b この学校にはサラリーマンの子供が【多】い。
kono gakkō ni wa sararīman no kodomo ga ōi
There are many children of company workers in this school.

2.1.2 The negative/negative ending **nai**/-**nai**, and other grammatical items that are formally adjectives

These include items such as **-tai** (see 189), **mitai** (see 93), **hoshii** (see 68), **-ppoi** (see 162), **rashii** (see 169), **-te hoshii** (see 197) (see also 111).

a そんなことは【な】い。
sonna koto wa nai
That's not so.

b 私だって子供が【ほし】い。
watashi datte kodomo ga hoshii
I too want children.

c 迫力はあるけど、うそ【っぽ】い。
hakuryoku wa aru kedo usoppoi
It [= the depiction of hell] is powerful, but looks a bit fake.

2.2 ADJECTIVAL NOUNS AND **no**-ADJECTIVES

These require the addition of cop. (see 35).

2.2.1 Adjectival nouns + copula

AN (also known as **na** adj. because they modify N with the **na** form of cop.) tend to be either NJ (often ending in **-ka** or **-ta**), SJ (mostly consisting of two *kanji*, or equivalent) or WJ words (see 235).

AN require forms of the cop. to form pred. (about AN **ni naru**, see 186).

a 海はまだ【静か】だ。
umi wa mada shizuka da
The sea is still quiet.

b 準備は【快適】だ。
junbi wa kaiteki da
Preparations are going well.

c 材料も作り方も【シンプル】だ。
zairyō mo tsukurikata mo shinpuru da
Both ingredients and preparation are simple.

2.2.2 **no**-adjectives + copula

Like AN (and N), **no**-adj. require forms of cop. to form a pred. (see 137, 35).

a 王様は【裸】だ。
ōsama wa hadaka da
The king has no clothes on.

b 信号は【赤】だった。
shingō wa aka datta
The traffic lights were on red.

3 ADJECTIVE [PROPER] FORMS

The main adj. [proper] forms are as shown in Table 1. The finite (fin.) forms (1 5) can be used independently as pred., and the N-mod. forms (N-mod. [pln. only], 1 4) to modify N.

Polite pred. are formed by attaching **desu** (see 35) to the pln. fin. forms. Note that there are two pol. forms each for **yasukunai** and **yasukunakatta**.

Table 1 gives the main adj. forms for **yasui** 'cheap'.

Adj.-stem is used as a written-style conjunctive form, for using adj. as adv. (with some adj., also as N), and to attach **suru/naru**. (see 31.1.1, 4.1, 184.2, 186)

Adj.-root is used to attach the nominalizing suffixes **-sa** and **-mi** (see 175, 14), and also the sentence ending **-sō** (see 182).

Table 1 Basic adjective forms

yasui 'cheap'

					Plain	*Polite*
N-mod. (pln. only)	Fin.	1	Non-past:	(adj.-**i**)	**yasu-i**	**yasu-i desu**
		2	Past:	(adj.-**ta**)	**yasukat-ta**	**yasukat-ta desu**
		3	Neg.:	(adj.-**nai**)	**yasuku-nai**	**yasuku-nai desu/ yasuku arimasen**
		4	Neg. past:	(adj.-neg. past)	**yasuku-nakatta**	**yasuku-nakatta desu/ yasuku arimasen deshita**
		5	Presumptive:	(adj.-(y)ō)	**yasukarō/yasui darō**	**yasui deshō**
		6	Stem:	(adj.-stem)	**yasnku**	—
		7	Root:	(adj.-root)	**yasu**	—
		8	Conjunctive:	(adj.-**te**)	**yasuku-te**	—
		9	Conditional:	(adj.-**ba**)	**yasnkere-ba**	—

4 ADVERBS: BY DERIVATION

Adv. are a class of words that modify V and other pred., typically indicating when, how, where, by what means, to what degree, etc. the action or state of V takes place (see 5).

Note in Japanese, adv. always come before the pred. they modify.

Formally, adv. can be divided into six main types, depending on what word class they are, or from what word class they are derived: adj.-stem, AN-derived, **no**-adj.-derived onomatope, V-derived, and N used as adj.

4.1 Adjective-stem
4.2 Adjectival noun-derived adverb
4.3 Adverb derived from **no**-adjective
4.4 Onomatope as adverbs
4.4.1 Unchanged
4.4.2 Ending in **to**
4.4.3 With optional **to**
4.4.4 Before **suru/naru**
4.5 Verb-derived adverbs
4.5.1 Those using the verb-**te** form
4.5.2 Those formed by reduplicating a verb
4.6 Nouns as adverbs

4.1 ADJECTIVE-STEM

Here, the stem-form of adj. is used as adv. (see 3).

a 同じ部品を大量に購入すれば【安く】買える。
onaji buhin o tairyō ni kōnyū sureba yasuku kaeru
If you buy the same part in large numbers, you can buy it [cheaply].

4.2 ADJECTIVAL NOUN-DERIVED ADVERB

Adv. derived from AN attach the adverbial form of the cop., **ni** (see 35).

a 【きれいに】洗ってから二度漬けをする。
kirei ni aratte kara nido-zuke o suru
After you've washed it [carefully], you pickle it a second time.

4.3 ADVERB DERIVED FROM **no**-ADJECTIVE

no-adj. attach the conjunctive form of cop., **de**, to form adv. (see 137, 35).

a 猛暑のせいか【裸で】寝るのが癖になった。
mōsho no sei ka hadaka de neru no ga kuse ni natta
Possibly because of the heatwave, I've developed a habit of sleeping [naked].

4.4 ONOMATOPE AS ADVERBS

Many onomatope (= sound symbolism words) can be used as adv.

Note onomatope are also used in a variety of other ways, with forms of the cop. or **suru** as **pred.**, attaching **to shita**, etc. to modify N, etc. (see 1.7.2, 153).

Depending on the individual onomatope word, it can be used as adv. unchanged, attach the adverbial P. **to** optionally or have it 'built in', i.e. end in **to**. Before **suru/naru**, the adverbial form **ni** of the cop. is required (see 213, 186, 35).

Unchanged:	**sukkari** 'completely', **yoboyobo** 'tottering'
Ending in **to**:	**chanto** 'properly', **sotto** 'softly'
Optional **to**:	**yukkuri (to)** 'leisurely', **pikapika (to)** 'sparkling', 'flashing'

4.4.1 Unchanged

a 【すっかり】眠気が覚めてしまった。
sukkari nemuke ga samete shimatta
My sleepiness is [totally] gone.

4.4.2 Ending in **to**

a 日ごろ、【ちゃんと】悩みを聞いてやってるの?。
higoro chanto nayami o kiite yatteru no
Do you always [properly] listen to his problems?

4.4.3 With optional **to**

a 頭の中が【ぴかぴかと】光った。Could also be【ぴかぴか】光った
atama no naka ga pikapika to hikatta
There was a flash of light inside my head (*lit.* "The inside of my head flashed [like a a spark]").

4.4.4 Before **suru/naru**

Here, the adverbial form **ni** of the cop. is required (see 186, 35).

a ゴルフをしないと【よぼよぼに】なる。
gorufu o shinai to yoboyobo ni naru
If I don't play golf, I become [decrepit].

4.5 VERB-DERIVED ADVERBS

V-derived adv. can be divided into two types: those ending in **-te**, and reduplicated forms (i.e. formed by repeating the same V).

4.5.1 Those using the verb-**te** form

These include **hajimete** 'for the first time', **kiwamete** 'extremely', **sugurete** 'exceedingly', etc.

a 百人一首で【はじめて】遊んだのは。
hyakunin isshu de hajimete asonda no wa
When did you first play *hyakunin-isshu* [= card game matching parts of famous poems]?

b 石油会社の回答は【きわめて】明解だ。
sekiyu-gaisha no kaitō wa kiwamete meikai da
The reply from the oil company is extremely clear.

4.5.2 Those formed by reduplicating a verb

Below are some examples of the very limited number of such formations. Note that if the V begins with a consonant that can be voiced (k, s, t, etc.), voicing often occurs as part of the word-formation process (**kawaru-gawaru** is an example of this).

osoreru 'fear'	**osoru-osoru** 'timidly' (cf., **osoru-beki** 'frightening')
kawaru 'change'	**kawaru-gawaru** 'in turn'
miru 'see'	**miru-miru** 'as you look on', 'fast'

a 二人の顔から【みるみる】血の気が引くのが分かる。
futari no kao kara mirumiru chinoke ga hiku no ga wakaru
You can see the colour ebbing fast from both their faces.

b 三十年前、外貨不足時代に【おそるおそる】スタートした海外旅行自由化。
sanjūnen mae gaika fusoku jidai ni osoruosoru sutāto shita kaigai ryokō jiyūka
The liberalization of foreign travel, which started timidly in the age when we were short of foreign currency.

4.6 NOUNS AS ADVERBS

These are mainly N of time (as which they can attach case P), but as adv. of time they are used without case P, except for **ni** with certain items (see 5.3).

5 ADVERBS: BY MEANING

By meaning, adv. can be grouped as shown in the contents box below (reduplicated forms - such as **osoru-osoru** – are hyphenated). Note that some adv. can belong to more than one group.

5.1 Adverbs of manner
5.2 Adverbs of degree
5.3 Adverbs and nouns of time and frequency
5.3.1 Adverbs (nouns) of time and frequency
5.3.2 Time of day, days, months, years and use of **ni** [case particle]
5.3.3 Adverbs/nouns of time with native Japanese and/or Sino-Japanese forms
5.3.4 Other adverbs
5.4 Predicate-selecting adverbs
5.4.1 Presumptive predicates
5.4.2 Negative predicates
5.4.2.1 With negative form present
5.4.2.2 With ellipted negative form
5.4.3 Negative presumptive predicate
5.4.4 Desiderative predicate

5.4.5 Predicate of command
5.4.6 Conditional predicate
5.4.7 Predicate of appearance and simile
5.4.8 Non-past form predicates
5.4.8.1 Intentional
5.4.8.2 Other non-past predicates

5.1 ADVERBS OF MANNER

These indicate the way some action is performed. They include **kirei ni** 'neatly', 'carefully', **sukkari** 'completely', **yukkuri** 'in a leisurely way', **osoru-osoru** 'timidly', etc. Many of these are onomatope by origin (see 153, 4.5.2).

a 気になって【ゆっくり】眠れない。
ki ni natte yukkuri nemurenai
I worry, and can't sleep well (*lit*. "in a leisurely way").

b 一人の生徒が教卓のまわりを【きれいに】掃除していた。
hitori no seito ga kyōtaku no mawari o kirei ni sōji shite ita
A pupil was cleaning the area around the teacher's desk carefully.

5.2 ADVERBS OF DEGREE

As their name suggests, these indicate the degree to which the word they modify applies.

Note that some of these have other meanings and uses as well (e.g. **hotondo** can be used as a N 'the majority', and **taihen** 'great'/**kekkō** 'fine' as AN).

Japanese has no comparative or superlative forms like the English long【er】, long【est】; instead, adv. of degree like **motto** 'more' and **ichiban** 'most'/**mottomo** 'most' are used (see 25).

Common adv. of degree include the following: **daibu** 'plenty', 'pretty much', **hijō ni** 'very', **hotondo** 'almost', **ichiban** 'most', **issai** 'completely', **jitsu ni** 'very', **kanari/kekkō** 'quite', **kiwamete** 'extremely', **motto** 'more', **mottomo** 'most', **sukkari** 'totally', **taihen/totemo/sngoku** 'very', **takusan** 'a lot', **wazuka (ni)** 'by a whisker', **zuibun** 'quite', etc.

a 【とても】軟らかい。
totemo yawarakai
[It's] very soft.

b 欧州の空港に行くと、ジャンボは【ほとんど】いない。
ōshū no kūkō ni iku to, jambo wa hotondo inai
When you go to European airports, there are almost no jumbos.

5.3 ADVERBS AND NOUNS OF TIME AND FREQUENCY

5.3.1 Adverbs (nouns) of time and frequency

Some of these A can also be used as N, with case P attached (e.g. **asa** 'morning', **hiru** 'noon', **yoru** 'night', **haru** 'spring', **natsu** 'summer', **aki** 'autumn', **fuyu** 'winter', **ima** 'now', **mukashi** 'old times', and certain num. + C combinations such as **sanji(-goro)** '(about) 3 o'clock' (see 147, 36).

Here are the more common adv. and N of time and frequency: **arakajime** 'in advance', **hajime ni** 'first', **ima** 'now', 'currently', **ima ni mo** 'any time now', **kono aida** 'the other day', **kono hodo** 'recently', **kono tokoro** 'lately', **mada** 'not yet', **mamonaku** 'soon', **mare ni** 'rarely', **mata** 'again', **mō** 'already', **mukashi** 'in the past', **ōi ni** 'a lot', **saigo ni** 'last', **saikin** 'recently', **saisho (ni)** 'first of all', **saki(hodo)** 'earlier', **sakki** 'a little earlier', **sugu (ni)**, 'straight away', **shiba-shiba** 'frequently', **shotchū** 'all the time', **sude ni** 'already', **sukoshi** 'a little', **tabi-tabi** 'often', **tama ni** 'occasionally', **toki-doki** 'sometimes', **tsugi ni** 'next', **unto** 'lots', **yoku** 'often', **yagate** 'presently', **zutto** 'for a long time'.

a 彼は【今】、独学で中国語を勉強している。
kare wa ima, dokugaku de chūgokugo o benkyō shite iru
He is currently learning Chinese through self-study.

b 企業家には【もう】少し深い理解がほしい。
kigyōka ni wa mō sukoshi fukai rikai ga hoshii
One wants a little deep[er] understanding from an industrialist.

5.3.2 Time of day, days, months, years and use of **ni** [case particle]

Common adv./N include the following: **asa** 'in the morning', **hiru** 'during the day', 'at noon', **yūgata** 'in the evening', **yoru** 'at night', **gozen(chū)** 'a.m.', **gogo** 'p.m.', and num. + C combinations of time (**-ji** 'hour', **-fun** 'minute'. Also the days of the week: **nichiyōbi** 'Sunday', **getsuyōbi** 'Monday', **kayōbi** 'Tuesday', **suiyōbi** 'Wednesday', **mokuyōbi** 'Thursday', **kinyōbi** 'Friday', **doyōbi** 'Saturday', etc.) (see 5.3.3 for prefixes such as **mai-** 'every').

The P **ni** can optionally be attached to items that indicate a fixed time, but *not* to those that indicate a relative (movable) time, such as **kyō** 'today', **kinō** 'yesterday', **maiasa** 'every morning', etc. (see 116.13).

a 【毎朝】、早起きですね。
maiasa, hayaoki desu ne
Every morning, you get up early, don't you?

b 会は【毎週月曜日の朝に】開かれる
kai wa maishū getsuyōbi no asa ni hirakareru
The meeting is held [every week on Monday morning].

Table 2 Adverbs/nouns of time with native Japanese and/or Sino-Japanese forms

		−2	*−1*	*0*	*+1*	*+2*
Days	(NJ)	**ototoi**	**kinō**	**kyō**	**ashita**	**asatte**
	(SJ)	**is-saku-jitsu**	**saku-jitsu**	**hon-jitsu**	**myō-nichi**	**myō-go-nichi**
Months	(SJ)	**sen-sen-getsu**	**sen-getsu**	**kon-getsu**	**rai-getsu**	**sa-rai-getsu**
Years	(NJ)	**ototoshi**		**kotoshi**		
	(SJ)		**kyo-nen** **saku-nen**	**hon-nen**	**rai-nen**	**sa-rai-nen**

c 【朝】、なんとか出かけても、【夕方に】はぐったり。
asa nantoka dekakete mo yūgata ni wa guttari
Even though he somehow manages to leave home in the morning, by the evening he [is] exhausted.

5.3.3 Adverbs/nouns of time with native Japanese and/or Sino-Japanese forms

Some adv./N of time have either NJ or SJ forms, or both (in SJ words, boundaries between morphemes (= *kanji*) are indicated by hyphens). Where both NJ and SJ forms exist, the latter are typically used in the written or formal spoken style (e.g. speeches).

Table 2 gives common items, centred on 0 (= the present day, month, year).

Note also **sen-jitsu** 'the other day' (colloquially, **kono aida**) and **sen-nen** 'the other year'. The SJ roots **-jitsu/-nichi** 'day', **-getsu** 'month' and **-nen** 'year' also combine with the prefixes **mai-** 'every', **yoku-** 'the following', and **kaku-** 'every second', e.g. **mai-nichi** 'every day', **yoku-jitsu** 'the following day', **kaku-jitsu** 'every second day'.

5.3.4 Other adverbs

These include Q words (**itsu** 'when' etc.), combinations of Q words and the P **demo** or **mo** (see 167), numeral + counter/time combinations (see 147, 36), and adverbially used demonstrative words (see 44).

Example a shows an adverbially used demonstrative word.

a 【そんなに】焦らなくても、まだ若いのだから。
sonna ni aseranakute mo, mada wakai no da kara
You needn't fret [so] much, because you're still young.

5.4 PREDICATE-SELECTING ADVERBS

Pred.-selecting adv. are adv. that tend to select (appear together with) certain types of pred. or pred. extensions (i.e. neg. pred., pres. pred., etc.). Some do not always combine with such pred., but when they do, they reinforce or emphasize the meaning of pred.

Note – some of these adv. have more than one meaning, and are therefore found in more than one group.

Below are some of the more common pred.-selecting adv., grouped by the type of pred. they tend to select (i.e. combine with). In English translation, adv. and pred. are, wherever possible, translated twice, even at the risk of making the translations somewhat unnatural.

5.4.1 Presumptive predicates

This group of adv. includes the following: **dōse** ‘anyway’, **hyotto shite/shitara** ‘possibly’, **kitto** ‘doubtless’, **moshi ka shitara/shite/suruto** ‘perhaps’, **nan demo** ‘apparently’, **sazo** ‘certainly’, **osoraku** ‘probably’, **tabun** ‘in all likelihood’ (see 163, 62, 73, 118).

a 【きっと】好奇心の強い魚なの【だろう】。
kitto kōkishin no tsuyoi sakana na no darō
【Doubtless it is】a fish with a strong sense of curiosity.

b これから【きっと】素敵な個性を発揮し始める【でしょう】。
kore kara kitto suteki na kosei o hakki shi-hajimeru deshō
From now on, it [= the town] 【should】exhibit some attractive individuality.

c 【どうせ】短命政権【だろう】。
dōse tanmei seiken darō
It 【should be】 a short-lived government 【anyway】.

d 【どうも】国際社会でお人よしなのは、日本人くらいなの【かもしれない】。
dōmo kokusai shakai de o-hitoyoshi na no wa, nihonjin kurai na no ka mo shirenai
【It may well be】that the Japanese are about the only ones in the international society who are easy prey.

e 【きっと】母は喜んだ【はずです】。
kitto haha wa yorokonda hazu desu
【No doubt】mother 【must】 have felt happy.

f 【きっと】イメージの違う自分を発見する【に違いない】。
kitto imēji no chigau jibun o hakken suru ni chigai nai
【Doubtless】 you will discover a self with a different image.

5.4.2 Negative predicates

Adv. include the following (see 111): **amari** 'not much', **betsu ni** 'not particularly', **chittomo** 'not at all', **dōse** 'not anyway', **hotondo** 'almost no', **kanarazushimo** 'not necessarily', **kesshite** 'never', **masaka** 'never', **zenzen** 'not at all', **zettai ni** 'absolutely not'.

Note – **hotondo** can also be used as a N, with case P attached.

5.4.2.1 *With negative form present*

a 自由な時間は【あまり】【な】い。
jiyū na jikan wa amari nai
There 【isn't much】 free time.

b 【どうせ】分かってくれ【な】い。
dōse wakatte kurenai
They 【won't】 understand 【anyway】.

c 欧州の空港に行くと、ジャンボは【ほとんど】い【な】い。
ōshū no kūkō ni iku to janbo wa hotondo inai
When you go to European airports, there are 【almost no】 jumbos.

d 【まさか】近代都市の橋が落ちるとは思え【な】い。
masaka kindai toshi no hashi ga ochiru to wa omoenai
One 【can't possibly】 imagine that a bridge in a modern city would fall down.

5.4.2.2 *With ellipted negative form*

Here, the negative pred. is ellipted (omitted), because it is understood from the context (see 52.3).

a 【まさか】取締役になるとは。(思わなかった or similar is ellipted)
masaka torishimariyaku ni naru to wa
I 【never】 [thought] that I'd be executive president.

b 「ヨーロッパのブランドものはモノトーンで大人っぽく、私には【どうも】」と話す。(似合わない or similar is ellipted)
yōroppa no burando mono wa monotōn de otona-ppoku, watashi ni wa dōmo to hanasu
'European designer clothes are in plain colours and have a grown-up feel about them, and are not 【quite】 [right] for me', she says.

5.4.3 Negative presumptive predicate

Adv. include **dōse** 'anyway', **masaka** 'hardly' (see 163).

a 【どうせ】われわれは必要【ないのだろう】。
dōse wareware wa hitsuyō nai darō
We are not needed 【anyway, I guess】.

b 今年は【まさか】昨年のようなことは【ないでしょう】。
kotoshi wa masaka sakunen no yō na koto wa nai deshō
This year things 【couldn't possibly】 be like [= as bad as] last year.

5.4.4 Desiderative predicate

Adv. include **zehi/zehitomo** 'very much', 'by all means' (see 46).

a また【ぜひ】働きに行き【たい】。
mata zehi hataraki ni ikitai
I 【very much want】 to go to work again.

5.4.5 Predicate of command

Adv. include **dōzo/dōka** 'please', **zehi** 'by all means' (see 24, 65.1.1, 69.5).

a A君も【ぜひ】遊びに来【て下さい】。
A-kun mo zehi asobi ni kite kudasai
You [= A-kun] too, 【please do】 come and visit.

b 【どうぞ】、ご安心【下さい】。
dōzo go-anshin kudasai
【Please】 don't worry (*lit.* "feel at ease").

5.4.6 Conditional predicate

Conditional pred. are used in S1 in compound sentences, indicating a condition 'if' (see 27).

Adv. include the following: **dōse** 'anyway', **moshi** 'if', **man'ichi** 'by any chance', **tatoe** 'even if'.

a 【どうせ】買う【なら】新鮮でおいしい魚を選びたい。
dōse kau nara shinsen de oishii sakana o erabitai
【If】 I buy (fish) 【anyway】, I might as well choose fresh and good fish.

b 【もし】金利が上昇し【たら】どうなるか。
moshi kinri ga jōshō shitara dō naru ka
What will happen 【if】 the interest rate goes up?

c 私? 私は【どうせ】生まれ変わる【なら】クラゲがいいわ。
watashi? watashi wa dōse umare-kawaru nara kurage ga ii wa
Me? 【If】 I am to be reborn 【anyway】, I'd be a jellyfish.

d 【万一】、夫が死亡した【場合】、借金やその後の生活が心配です。
man'ichi otto ga shibō shita baai shakkin ya sono ato no seikatsu ga shinpai desu
【In the event that】 my husband 【should】 die, I'd be worried about debts and how to support myself afterwards.

5.4.7 Predicate of appearance and simile

These pred. use S endings that indicate appearance and simile (see 60, 93, 169, 182, 244).

Adv. include **atakamo** 'just like', **dōmo** 'rather', **maru-de** 'just as if'.

a 【あたかも】審査員に圧力を掛けるかの【よう】だ。
atakamo shinsain ni atsuryoku o kakeru ka no yō da
【It's almost as if】 they [= the audience] are putting pressure on the jury members.

b 【あたかも】一身にして二生を経るが【如】く。
atakamo isshin ni shite nishō o furu ga gotoku
【It was just like】 living two lives in one body.

c 【まるで】もう一人の自分がそこにいる【よう】だった。
maru-de mō hitori no jibun ga soko ni iru yō datta
【It was just as if】 another self were there.

d 日本では、【どうも】若い女性がお金持ちで旅行好き【らし】い。
nihon-de wa, dōmo wakai josei ga o-kanemochi de ryokō-zuki rashii
In Japan 【it rather appears that】 young women are well off and like travelling.

e 【どうも】上司と飲むのは苦手という人が多い【よう】だ。
dōmo jōshi to nomu no wa nigate to iu hito ga ōi yo da
【It would appear that】 there are many who find drinking with their superior trying.

5.4.8 Non-past form predicates

5.4.8.1 *Intentional*

V-**ru**/V-**masu** can, among others, express intention (see 142). Adv. include **kitto** 'definitely'.

a 私はいつか【きっと】向田邦子に【なります】。
watashi wa itsu ka kitto mukōda kuniko ni narimasu
One day, I 【'll definitely be】 [another] Mukōda Kuniko [= female novelist].

5.4.8.2 *Other non-past predicates*

Adv. like **kitto, dōmo, dōse** also occur with other non-past forms (and S endings, such as **n(o) da** in example d) (see 138, 232).

a 【きっと】やりがいが【ある】と思う。
kitto yarigai ga aru to omou
I think that 【without doubt】 it's worth doing.

b 【きっと】、官僚の抵抗が壁【になる】。
kitto kanryō no teikō ga kabe ni naru
【No doubt】 the bureaucrats' resistance will stand in the way.

c たそがれどきになると、左党は【どうも】【落ち着かない】。
tasogaredoki ni naru to satō wa dōmo ochitsukanai
When dusk comes, drinkers 【appear】 fidgety.

d 人生は、【どうせ】一幕のお芝居【なんだ】から。
jinsei wa dōse ichimaku no o-shibai nan da kara
Life is a one-act play anyway.

6 aida [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

Although used to form a conjunctive clause, **aida** is formally a N, and is therefore modified by forms that precede N. As a conjunctive P, **aida** is used for time only, in the sense of 'while', 'during', 'throughout', etc. (see 6, 8).

Even when the main clause is in the past, the conjunctive clause uses non-past forms, especially **-te iru aida** with V.

aida is often followed by the case P **ni** or the focus P **wa**, but can also be used without any P (example e). Note also the combination **aidajū** 'throughout' (example g).

6.1 Clause 1-positive **aida**
6.2 Clause 1-negative **aida**

6.1 CLAUSE 1-POSITIVE aida

a 働ける【間】は働きたい。
hatarakeru aida wa hatarakitai
I want to work 【while】 I am able to.

b 眠っている【間】に体に異変が起きていた。
nemutte iru aida ni karada ni ihen ga okite ita
【While】 he had been asleep, an unexpected change had taken place in his body

c こうした空気が強い【間】は、農地の集約化は難しい。
kōshita kūki ga tsuyoi aida wa nōchi no shūyaku-ka wa muzukashii
While this kind of atmosphere prevails, it is difficult to make more intensive use of the farmland.

d わずかな【間】に部門の第一人者になってしまった。
wazuka na aida ni bumon no daiichi-ninsha ni natte shimatta
In a very short 【time】 he had become the leading figure of his section.

e 冬の【あいだ】落ち込んでいた気分は春先から高揚しはじめる。
fuyu no aida ochikonde ita kibun wa harusaki kara kōyō shihajimeru
The feeling of depression [one has had] 【during】 the winter begins to lift in early spring.

f 月刊誌が１回出る【間】に番組は４回放送される。
gekkanshi ga ikkai deru aida ni bangumi wa yonkai hōsō sareru
【During the period】 [in which] the monthly magazine appears once, the programme is broadcast four times.

g 式の【あいだ中】, 来賓のあいさつもうわの空のようだった。
shiki no aida-jū raihin no aisatsu mo uwanosora no yō datta
【Throughout】 the ceremony, he paid little attention to the guests' speeches.

6.2 CLAUSE 1-NEGATIVE **aida**

After neg. S1, **aida** also means 'while', whereas **uchi ni** after neg. S1 means 'before' (see 229.1.2).

a わからない【間】にプルトニウムがどんどん作られてしまう。
wakaranai aida ni purutoniumu ga dondon tsukurarete shimau
While people are unaware, plutonium gets produced in large quantities.

b 心配なのは、政治が動かない【間】に官僚主導が強くなっているようにみえることだ。
shinpai na no wa seiji ga ugokanai aida ni kanryō shugi ga tsuyoku natte iru yō ni mieru koto da
What's worrying is that it appears that while politics is stagnant bureaucracy is getting stronger.

7 aida [RELATIONAL NOUN]

As a relational N, **aida** is attached to N by means of **no** [case P], in the meaning of 'between', 'among', 'through'. Like other relational N, **aida** itself attaches such case (and/or other) particles, etc. that are required by the valency of the V (see 231, 6, 171).

Note also the set phrases **kono aida** (この間) 'the other day', **kono kan** (この間) 'during this period/time' (example a; the reading of the *kanji* 間 can be determined by the context only, i.e. when the meaning is *not* 'the other day' it can be read **kan** or **aida**).

a ゴレ島は十六世紀前半から十九世紀半ばまで約三百年間、西アフリカ各地の奴隷を集め、送り出す基地として使われていた。【この間】、アフリカから連れ出された奴隷は数千万人といわれる。
gore-tō wa jūroku seiki zenhan kata jūkyū seiki nakaba made yaku sanbyaku-nenkan nishi afurika kakuchi no dorei o atsume okuridasu kichi to shite tsukawarete ita. [kono kan] afurika kara tsure-dasareta dorei wa sūsenman to iwareru
Gore Island was used for about 300 years from the first half of the 16th century to the middle of the 19th century as a station for gathering slaves from all over West Africa and sending them on. The number of slaves taken from Africa [during that time] is said to be 20 or 30 million.

b 夫人との【間】に一男三女がいる。
fujin to no aida ni ichinan sanjo ga iru
[With] his wife, he has one son and three daughters.

c 日本人の【あいだ】に気まずい空気が漂った。
nihonjin no aida ni kimazui kūki ga tadayotta
An awkward feeling [among] the Japanese hung in the air.

d 大気と海，陸地の【あいだ】を水がどのように循環するかを調べることが気候の解明につながる。
taiki to umi rikuchi no aida o mizu ga dono yō ni junkan suru ka o shiraberu koto ga kikō no kaimei ni tsunagaru
The investigation of how water circulates [between] the air and the sea and land will lead to a clearer understanding of the climate.

8 aida, mae, -nagara, -tsutsu, uchi: COMPARISON

All of the above can link two clauses in the sense of 'while' (excepting **mae**) and 'before' (excepting **aida**, **-nagara** and **-tsutsu**); **-nagara** and **-tsutsu** are additionally used in the sense of 'even though'. The following sections give a comparison.

8.1 'While'
8.2 'Before'
8.3 'Even though'

8.1 'WHILE'

aida and **uchi ni** can both be used in the sense of 'while'; with **uchi ni** (and occasionally also **aida**, as in example b) the implication is usually 'before a change for the worse occurs'.

a 眠っている【間】に体に異変が起きていた。
nemutte iru aida ni karada ni ihen ga okite ita
While he had been asleep, an unexpected change had taken place in his body.

b 働ける【間】は働きたい。
hatarakeru aida wa hatarakitai
I want to work while I am able to.

c もうけられる【うち】にもうけておこうという姿勢は慎んでほしい。
mōkerareru uchi ni mōkete okō to iu shisei wa tsutsushinde hoshii
I want them to restrain their attitude of 'Let's make money while we can'.

d 条件の良い【うち】に判を押した方がいい。
jōken no yoi uchi ni han o oshita hō ga ii
You should seal [the agreement] while the conditions are good.

Unlike **uchi**, **aida** can indicate a period of time 'while', objectively (example a above). With **uchi**, on the other hand, the implication is that S2 is a negative outcome or development.

e 議論している【うち】に時間ばかりがたっている。
giron shite iru uchi ni jikan bakari ga tatte iru
While we're arguing, time is slipping away rapidly.

After a negative form in S1, **aida** can also be used in the sense of 'while' (but **uchi** in the sense of 'before' is far more common (see next section (8.2)).

f ファンが知らない【間】にトレードされてしまったのだろうか。
fan ga shiranai aida ni torēdo sarete shimatta no darō ka
Has he been sold [to another team] while the fans were unaware, I wonder.

-nagara and **-tsutsu** are limited to use in S where the subject is the same for both clauses (= actions). The main action being that of S2, the implication is that it is carried out while performing (constantly or occasionally) a secondary action.

g 眠い目をこすり【ながら】、空港へ急ぐ。
nemui me o kosuri-nagara kūkō e isogu
I rush to the airport, rubbing my sleepy eyes.

h 冗談を交え【つつ】、沖縄音楽の近況を語った。
jōdan o majie-tsutsu okinawa ongaku no kinkyō o katatta
He talked about the current state of Okinawan music, mixing in jokes.

8.2 'BEFORE'

Unlike **aida** and **mae**, **uchi** can follow neg. forms in the sense of 'before' (something adverse happens).

a 電車がなくならない【うち】に帰ります。
densha ga naku naranai uchi ni kaerimasu
I'm going home before the trains stop running.

b 知らない【うち】に山林が開発されていた。
shiranai uchi ni sanrin ga kaihatsu sarete ita
Before we knew it, the mountain forest had been developed.

mae, on the other hand, is objectively concerned with the order of actions.

c なぜ死を選ぶ【前】に、救いを求めなかったのか。
naze shi o erabu mae ni sukui o motomenakatta no ka
Why didn't he seek help before choosing death?

8.3 'EVEN THOUGH'

Both **-nagara (mo)** and **-tsutsu (mo)** can be used in the sense of a contrast 'even though'. When **mo** is present, the meaning is always contrastive. Note that unlike **-nagara (mo)**, which can be attached to adj., AN and N, **-tsutsu (mo)** attaches only to forms of V (see 103.2).

a 彼等は悲しみや苦しみがあり【ながら】誇りをもって生きている。
karera wa kanashimi ya kurushimi ga ari-nagara hokori o motte ikite iru
Even though they have sorrows and pain, they live with pride.

b 最終的には自分で考えろと言い【つつも】、退職を促すようなアドバイスを繰り返した。
saishū-teki ni wa jibun de kangaero to ii-tsutsu mo taishoku o unagasu yō na adobaisu o kurikaeshita
While telling me to make the final decision myself, he repeatedly gave advice that urged me to resign.

9 ANIMATE AND INANIMATE EXISTENTIAL/LOCATIONAL VERBS

Generally, **iru** is used for animate subjects (i.e. humans and animals) and **aru** for inanimate ones (those that are not animate). However, **iru** can also be used for certain inanimate things such as vehicles (example d), and both **iru** and **aru** in the sense of 'having siblings/family' (examples e–g) (see 55.10).

a 外に女性が【いる】。
soto ni josei ga iru
There's a woman outside.

b 夫人との間に一男三女が【いる】。
fujin to no aida ni ichinan sanjo ga iru
With his wife, he has one son and three daughters.

c 欧州からアジアへ職を追ってくる人も【いる】。
ōshū kara ajia e shoku o otte kuru hito mo iru
There are people who chase jobs from Europe towards Asia.

d 欧州の空港に行くと、ジャンボはほとんど【い】ない。
ōshū no kūkō ni iku to jambo wa hotondo inai
When you go to European airports, there are almost no jumbos.

e 東北出身の奥さんとの間に四人の子供が【ある】。
tōhoku shusshin no okusan to no aida ni yonin no kodomo ga aru
With his wife, who is from northeast Japan, he has four children.

f 子、直系尊属または兄弟姉妹が数人【ある】ときは、各自の相続分は相等しいものとする。
ko chokkei sonzoku mata wa kyōdai shimai ga sūnin aru toki wa kakuji no sōzokubun wa aihitoshii mono to suru
Where there is more than one child or lineal ascendant, or brother and sister, each shall inherit equally.

g 妻子【ある】ロッセリーニは、女優イングリッド・バーグマンと恋に落ち、彼女をハリウッドの映画界から奪った。
saishi aru rosserīni wa joyū inguriddo bāguman to koi ni ochi kanojo o hariuddo no eigakai kara ubatta
Rossellini, who was married with children, fell in love with Ingrid Bergman, the actress, and took her away from Hollywood's world of film.

10 APPOSITION OF NOUNS

The relationship between items (usually two, but sometimes three or more) that are lined up referring to the same entity is called apposition. There are two ways of doing this with N, by means of **no**, and by zero (see 133.1.10, 28, 218.3).

Note in Japanese, the main N is always the second one, whereas in English the order is reversed.

10.1.1 Apposition by **no**
10.1.2 Apposition by zero

10.1.1 APPOSITION BY **no**

a 大学生【の】娘
daigakusei no musume
My daughter, a university student

b 母親【の】みさ子さん
hahaoya no misako-san
Misako-san, the mother

c 高校生【の】二男
kōkōsei no jinan
my second son, a high-school student

d 横綱【の】武蔵丸
yokozuna no musashimaru
Musashimaru, the grand champion

10.1.2 APPOSITION BY ZERO

a 妻子あるロッセリーニは、女優【】イングリッド・バーグマンと恋に落ち、彼女をハリウッドの映画界から奪った。
saishi aru rosserīni wa joyū inguriddo bāguman to koi ni ochi kanojo o hariuddo no eigakai kara ubatta
Rossellini, who was married with children, fell in love with Ingrid Bergman, the actress, and took her away from Hollywood's world of film.

11 **ato** [RELATIONAL NOUN]

ato (usually written 後) is a relational N meaning 'after'. It can be used by itself, usually with **wa**, in the sense of 'all that remains is . . .', combining with demonstrative pron. such as **sono** in the form **sono ato** 'after that', or attaching to N in the form N **no ato** 'after the N'.

Note the use before amounts, **ato** + num. (+ C), where **ato** is usually written in *hiragana*.

11.1 Noun/demonstrative **no ato**
11.1.1 Noun **no ato**
11.1.2 **sono ato**
11.2 Clause 1-**ta ato** clause 2
11.3 **ato** + number (+ counter)

11.1 NOUN/DEMONSTRATIVE **no ato**

11.1.1 Noun **no ato**

This translates as 'after a/the N'.

a【あらしの後】の静かな朝。
arashi no ato no shizuka na asa
A quiet morning after the storm.

b 【シャンプーの後】、ブラシをあて、耳を掃除してツメを切るのが一般的なコース。
shampū no ato burashi o ate mimi o sōji shite tsume o kiru no ga ippanteki na kōsu
[Dog beauty parlour:] After a shampoo, the normal course consists of brushing, cleaning the ears and cutting the claws.

11.1.2 sono ato

This expresses the idea of 'after that', 'thereafter'. Note that this can also be read **sono go**, in which case the meaning is 'since' or 'subsequently' (for an example of **sono go**, see 30.1 e).

a 万一、夫が死亡した場合、借金や【その後】の生活が心配です。
man'ichi otto ga shibō shita baai shakkin ya sono ato no seikatsu ga shinpai desu
In the event that my husband should die, I'd be worried about debts and how to support myself thereafter.

11.2 CLAUSE 1-**ta ato** CLAUSE 2

After a sentence or clause ending in V-**ta** (never **V-ru**), **ato** is used like a conjunctive P linking two clauses in the sense of 'after' (see also 201). However, grammatically it behaves like a structural N in that it can attach a variety of case and focus P.

For differences between S1-**ta ato** S2 and S1-**te kara** S2, see 12.

a 【会社で働いた後】、スイートホームで一家だんらん。
kaisha de hataraita ato suīto hōmu de ikka danran
After you've worked in the company, you relax with the family back (*lit.* "sweet") home.

b 【司法修習を終えた後】は、両親の待つ福井で弁護士を目指すという。
shihō shūshū o oeta ato wa ryōshin no matsu fukui de bengoshi o mezasu to iu
After finishing his legal training, he aims to work as an attorney in Fukui, where his parents await his return.

c 周辺には【火が消えた後】もゴムが焼けた刺激臭が漂った。
shūhen ni wa hi ga kieta ato mo gomu ga yaketa shigeki-shū ga tadayotta
Even after the fire had been put out, a strong smell of burnt rubber remained in the vicinity.

d 【パソコン研修をした後】で各店に配置する。
pasokon kenshū o shita ato de kaku-ten ni haichi suru
After training them [= new employees] in the use of personal computers, they assign them to the various branch offices.

e 【ひと通り、買い物した後】で、花を買い求める消費者がほとんどという。
hitotōri kaimono shita ato de hana o kai-motomeru shōhisha ga hotondo to iu
They say that almost all customers buy flowers after having done their basic shopping.

f 書棚が折り重なるように倒れ、本が散らばる様は、【まるで爆発事故か、砲撃を受けた後】のよう。
shodana ga orikasanaru yō ni taore hon ga chirabaru sama wa maru-de bakuhatsu jiko ka hōgeki o uketa ato no yō
[After earthquake:] The way the bookshelves had fallen on top of each other and books were scattered everywhere was just like the aftermath of an explosion or mortar attack.

11.3 ato + NUMBER (+ COUNTER)

Note that **ato ippo** in example b literally means "one more step".

a 投票日まで【あと一週間】。
tōhyōbi made ato isshūkan
It's one more week to election day.

b 征服まで【あと一歩】のところでリタイアした。
seifuku made ato ippo no tokoro de ritaia shita
He turned back with only a short distance (*lit.* "one more step") to go before conquering [the mountain].

12 ato AND -te kara: COMPARISON

S1-ta ato S2 and S1-**te kara** S2 both express the idea of 'after'. The main difference between the two is as follows.

S1-ta ato S2 is concerned with a simple order of a sequence of events (example a).

S1-te kara S2, on the other hand, emphasizes the order of a sequence, more like a temporal condition for S2. Thus, in example b the implication is that manufacturers should check out their goods *first* [to make sure there are no faults] before releasing them to the market.

S1-**te kara** S2, but *not* S1-**ta ato** S2, is used to indicate the idea of 'it was such-and-such a length of time after something happened' (example c). Similarly, S1-**te kara** S2 can also be used in cleft sentences (see 201.4).

a 女性は近くの銀行で現金を引き出し【た後】、息子の家まで歩いて行くところだったという。
josei wa chikaku no ginkō de genkin o hikidashita ato musuko no ie made aruite iku tokoro datta to iu
The woman says that she was about to walk to her son's house after having withdrawn some cash from a nearby bank.

b きちんと調べ【てから】にしてほしい。
kichinto shirabete kara ni shite hoshii
We want them to [put things on the market] after they've checked them out properly.

13 -ba [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

-**ba** is a conjunctive P, which in S1 basically indicates the condition which is necessary for S2 to become possible 'if . . . then'; typically, this can be 'turned around' and interpreted as 'if not, then not'. In -**ba** sentences, the action or state of S1 or S2, or both, is *not* controllable by the speaker (see 14).

For -**ba** forms of V, adj., AN and N + cop., see conditional forms listed under 232, 3, 35.

-**ba** tends to be used in the written (or formal spoken) language rather than in the spoken style, although there are colloquial contractions that are used in the spoken style, such as -**kerya** instead of -**kereba** (see also 50.2).

With N and AN, **nara** is often used instead of -**ba** (see 108).

13.1 Clause 1-**ba** clause 2 (clause 2 = non-past)
13.1.1 Necessary condition 'if'
13.1.2 General condition 'when'
13.2 Clause 1-**ba** clause 2 (clause 2 = past): hypothetical condition
13.3 Idiomatic uses
13.3.1 **-ba ii**
13.3.2 Negative-**ba** + negative
13.3.3 **to ieba**
13.3.4 **sō ieba**
13.3.5 Verb-**ru to sureba**
13.3.6 **iikaereba**, **kurabereba**, **nazoraereba**, etc.

13.1 CLAUSE 1-**ba** CLAUSE 2 (CLAUSE 2 = NON-PAST)

13.1.1 Necessary condition 'if'

-ba implies that if the condition of S1 is not fulfilled, S2 cannot take place. **tara** can also be used in these sentences, but **to** can only be used in examples a and b (but with a different implication, i.e. in the habitual sense of 'always').

a 成績がよけれ【ば】、合格書が出てくる。
seiseki ga yokereba gōkakusho ga dete kuru
If the results are good, a certificate is issued.

b だだをこねれ【ば】、無理が通る。
dada o konereba muri ga tōru
If they throw a tantrum, they get things their way.

c 安くなけれ【ば】おしゃれじゃない。
yasukunakereba oshare ja nai
If it's not cheap it's not fashionable.

d いい土地があれ【ば】すぐにも移る。
ii tochi ga areba sugu ni mo utsuru
If there's a good plot of land, we'll move right away.

e がんばれ【ば】、いつかはチャンスがある。
ganbareba itsu ka wa chansu ga aru
If you try your best, your chance will come some time.

13.1.2 General condition 'when'

Instead of **-ba**, both **-tara** and **to** [conjunctive P] can also be used in these sentences.

a 障害とは人が歳をとれ【ば】必ず持つようになるものだ。
shōgai to wa toshi o toreba kanarazu motsu yō ni naru mono da
A disability is something that everyone gets without fail when getting old.

b 会え【ば】話しがはずむ。
aeba hanashi ga hazumu
When they meet, their conversation is lively.

13.2 CLAUSE 1-**ba** CLAUSE 2 (CLAUSE 2 = PAST): HYPOTHETICAL CONDITION

Here, S2 uses the past/perfect ending **-ta** (often in the form **-te ita**), often with an expression of conjecture or guessing. The combination indicates a hypothetical (i.e. unrealized) condition 'if . . . would have'. **-tara** can also be used in the same sense.

a シートベルトをしていれ【ば】、助かった。
shīto beruto o shite ireba tasukatta
If he had been wearing a seatbelt, he would have lived.

b これからも、あのときああすれ【ば】よかったと後悔することはしたくない。
kore kara mo ano toki ā sureba yokatta to kōkai suru koto wa shitakunai
From now on, too, I don't want to regret things, thinking that I should have done things differently that time.

13.3 IDIOMATIC USES

13.3.1 -ba ii

-ba ii (*lit.* "is good if") indicates the idea of 'should', 'would be good if' or, in the past tense, 'would have been good if', 'was OK if'. **-ba ii** can colloquially be contracted to **-rya ii** (example d).

Note **ii** (+ cop.), etc. can be omitted (examples g–i), in which case the meaning can be a statement (= **-ba ii desu**), or with question intonation a recommendation 'how about' (see 31.2.1, 140.2.2, 191.4.1).

a では、どうすれ【ばいい】だろう。
dewa, dō sureba ii darō
What should we do then, I wonder.

b 年末で修理業者は休みだし、どうやって正月を迎えれ【ばいい】のかと嘆息した。
nenmatsu de shūri gyōsha wa yasumi da shi dō yatte shōgatsu o mukaereba ii no ka to tansoku shita
Repair shops being closed at the end of the year, I just wonder how we can make it to the New Year, he sighed.

c いっしょに過ごすボーイフレンドがいれ【ばいい】んですけど。
issho ni sugosu bōifurendo ga ireba ii n desu kedo
It's OK if one has a boyfriend to spend [Christmas] with.

d 休みだって長け【りゃいい】ってもんじゃないらしい。
yasumi datte nagakerya ii tte mon ja nai rashii
Holidays, it seems, are not necessarily the longer the better.

e 私に似れ【ばよかった】のだが、残念ながら子供たちのツメは切りにくい。
watashi ni nireba yokatta no da ga zannen-nagara kodomo-tachi no tsume wa kiri-nikui
It would have been OK if they'd taken after me, but unfortunately the children's nails are hard to cut.

f 四年生になると、大学は週一回授業に通え【ばよかった】。
yonensei ni naru to daigaku wa shū ikkai jugyō ni kayoeba yokatta
Once you got to the fourth year, you just needed to go to university once a week for classes.

g 微力ながら町のお手伝いができれ【ば】。
biryoku-nagara machi no o-tetsudai ga dekireba
It would be good (= I'd be happy) if I could use my limited abilities to help the town.

h 空港さえなけれ【ば】。
kūkō sae nakereba
If only there wasn't the airport [= Itami, after opening of Kansai].

i 献体をなされ【ば】? お葬式は不要。
kentai o nasareba? o-sōshiki wa fuyō
How about donating your body? No funeral needed.

13.3.2 Negative-**ba** + negative

The combination indicates the meaning of 'must', 'have to' (for more examples and variations of form, see 50.2).

a 言わ【なければならない】ことは申し上げた。
iwanakereba naranai koto wa mōshiageta
I've told him the things that needed saying.

13.3.3 to ieba

to ieba is used when one thinks of something or when two things are automatically associated with each other (see also 218).

a 缶のお茶【といえば】、ウーロン茶を思いつく人が多いだろう。
kan no o-cha to ieba ūron-cha o omoitsuku hito ga ōi darō
At the mention of tea in cans, many probably think of Oolong tea.

b 鳥【といえば】、近くにはスズメかハトくらいしかいない。
tori to ieba chikaku ni wa suzume ka hato kurai shika inai
Birds? Around here there are only sparrows and pigeons.

13.3.4 sō ieba

This is used when the speaker indicates that he or she has just recalled some fact (by association from the preceding context or otherwise) 'come to think of it'

a 送電の故障はこの10年で40%減少したという。【そういえば】、ちかごろは停電でろうそくの世話になることも少なくなった。
sōden no koshō wa kono jūnen de yonjup-pāsento genshō shita to iu. sō ieba chikagoro wa teiden de rōsoku no sewa ni naru koto mo sukunaku natta
Breakdowns in electricity transmission are said to have decreased by 40 per cent over the past 10 years. Come to think of it, having to rely on candles because of power failure doesn't happen much these days.

b 【そういえば】、Ｆさんは別性夫婦だったね。
sō ieba F-san wa bessei fūfū datta ne
Come to think of it, you [= Mr and Mrs F] are a couple using different surnames, right?

13.3.5 Verb-**ru to sureba**

This is a way of emphasizing the condition 'if (at all)'.

a 問題がある【とすれば】大学の工学部離れが進んでいることという関係者もいる。
mondai ga aru to sureba daigaku no kōgakubu-banare ga susunde iru koto to iu kankeisha mo iru
Some of those concerned say that if there is a problem, it's the trend away from engineering departments in the university.

13.3.6 **iikaereba**, **kurabereba**, **nazoraereba**, etc.

These expressions mean 'in other words' (**iikaereba**) and 'compared to' (**kurabereba** and **nazoraereba**). The difference between the last two is that whereas **kurabereba** is a straightforward comparison between *A* and *B*, **nazoraereba** involves 'likening' *B* to *A*, or using *A* to explain *B*.

a 言い換えれ【ば】、今の教育現場はいじめの温床づくりをしているのだ。
iikaereba ima no kyōiku genba wa ijime no onshōzukuri o shite iru no da
In other words, the classrooms are now hotbeds of bullying.

b 10月の地震に比べれ【ば】、軽くてよかった。
jūgatsu no jishin ni kurabereba karukute yokatta
It was a relief that it was light compared to the October earthquake.

c 柔道になぞらえれ【ば】、いじめにも”受け身”がある。
jūdō ni nazoraereba ijime ni mo ukemi ga aru
If you compare it to judo, there are safe ways of being thrown in bullying, too.

14 -ba, dattara, nara, -tara, to: COMPARISON

-ba, nara (dattara), to and **-tara** are all conjunctive P indicating a condition. The fact that comparison of their uses is a favourite research topic shows that their differences cannot be explained easily.

Things are complicated by both the fact that classical usage, which was different from modern spoken usage, affects formal written modern Japanese, and the fact that there is considerable overlap between the forms. Furthermore, there are combinations of these particles, such as **-tara-ba** and **(-ta) nara-ba**.

Below is a brief comparison of these particles, centring chiefly on their meanings. *All examples in this section are made-up examples* (the % sign is omitted).

14.1 Comparison of forms
14.2 Comparison of use
14.2.1 Used in the sense of 'if'
14.2.1.1 **-ba**
14.2.1.2 **nara/dattara**
14.2.1.3 **-tara**
14.2.1.4 **to**
14.2.2 Used in the sense of 'when'
14.2.2.1 **to**
14.2.2.2 **-tara**
14.2.2.3 **-ba**
14.2.2.4 **nara**

14.1 COMPARISON OF FORMS

Table 3 Forms used with conjunctional particles: comparison

to	***-tara***	***-ba***	***nara***	
[V-ru] to	[V-ta] **ra**	[V-conditional]	[V-**ru**] **uara**	[V-**ta**] **nara**
[adj.-i] to	[adj.-**katta**] **ra**	[adj.-conditional]	[adj.-**i**] **nara**	[adj.-**katta**] **nara**
[N/AN] da to	[N/AN] **dattara**	[cop.-conditional]	[N/AN] **nara**	[N/AN **datta**] **nara**

14.2 COMPARISON OF USE

In English translation, these P mostly translate as 'when' or 'if'. The equivalents without ( ) are typical meanings, but the ones in ( ) are also found.

to	when (if)
-tara	when (if)
-ba	if (when)
nara/-dattara	if

14.2.1 Used in the sense of 'if'

14.2.1.1 *-ba*

The speaker/writer makes a presumption in S1, and states the expected outcome in S2 (in this respect **-ba** differs from **nara**).

Basically, S1-**ba** S2 operates with the restriction that the actor (subject) cannot control the action of the V or state in either S1 and S2, or both. Below, the + sign expresses 'control', and the – sign, 'no control'.

× Indicates that this is not a possible sentence.

S1-**ba**	S2	
–	–	安けれ【ば】売れる。 **yasukereba ureru** If it's cheap, it'll sell.
+	–	話せ【ば】分かる。 **hanaseba wakaru** If I talk to him, he'll understand.
–	+	高けれ【ば】買わない。 **takakereba kawanai** If it's expensive, I won't buy it.
–	+	安けれ【ば】買う。 **yasukereba kau** If it's cheap, I'll buy it.
–	+	あなたが行け【ば】私も行く。 **anata ga ikeba watashi mo iku** If you go,* I'll go too.
+	+	×カメラを買え【ば】貸してあげる。 **kamera o kaeba kashite ageru** If I buy a camera I'll lend it to you.

Note * From the subject/actor's point of view, the action of the second person (you) cannot be controlled.

When S2 is in the past, the condition becomes hypothetical 'if . . . had'.

14.2.1.2 *nara/dattara*

With **nara/dattara**, the presumption of S1 does not state the speaker's judgement, as with **-ba**. Instead, it takes up something from the previous context or some other, already established, fact, and expresses the meaning of 'I don't really know, but if the assumption is correct/if what you're saying is right'. In other words, S1 is an assumption that is based on something/somebody other than the speaker, and S2 is the speaker's evaluation or judgement based on that assumption.

Normally, S1 concerns something outside the speaker, and even if it concerns the speaker, it sounds as if it concerned someone else.

a 不満がある【なら】、直接言え。
fuman ga aru nara chokusetsu ie
[To someone who seems to be muttering some complaint:] If you have something to complain about, tell me directly!

nara/dattara do not express a succession in time 'when' (except in the combination -**ta nara**, which is similar in meaning to -**tara**), and therefore there is no fixed time order of S1 and S2; often, S2 actually precedes S1:

b あした返してくれる【なら】、この本を貸してあげる。
ashita kaeshite kureru nara kono hon o kashite ageru
If you'll return it tomorrow, I'll lend you this book.

Noun + **nara** can indicate the topic of a S, and can be replaced by N **wa**. The difference can been explained as a topic raised by someone else (**nara**), and by the speaker himself (**wa**).

14.2.1.3 *-tara*

When -**tara** translates as 'when', it can basically be replaced by -**ba**. However, this is not always possible due to the restrictions on controllability of the verb in the case of -**ba** (see 14.2.1.1).

In -**tara** sentences, S2 can freely indicate the speaker's intention (requests, hortative, etc.). Also, When S2 is in the past, it can express a hypothetical condition.

-**tara** has a colloquial ring, and therefore in expository and academic prose, etc. -**ba** is used instead.

14.2.1.4 *to*

With **to**, the conditional meaning of 'if . . . then . . .', 'if not . . . then not . . .' is weak, being more like 'when' or 'whenever', with the result of S1 becoming apparent (in S2).

a そこを曲がる【と】、駅はすぐです。
soko o magaru to eki wa sugu desu
When you turn that corner, it's just a short distance to the station

With **to**, the speaker's intention (expressions of request, hortative, etc.) cannot be used.

b ×そこを曲がる【と】、駅に行ってください
soko o magaru to eki ni itte kudasai

14.2.2 Used in the sense of 'when'

14.2.2.1 *to*

Essentially, **to** means 'when', expressing habitual or natural (commonsense) occurrences in the present or past.

a 学校から帰る【と】毎日泳いだ。
gakkō kara kaeru to mainichi oyoida
When I got back from school, I used to swim every day.

to is typically used in the sense that S2 is noticed or discovered as a result of the realization of S1. In this use, the pred. of S2 cannot express intention, i.e. S2 has a different subject than that of S1, or expresses a state, usually in the past.

b 家に帰る【と】・帰っ【たら】手紙が来ていた。
ie ni kaeru to/kaettara, tegami ga kite ita
When I got back home, there was a letter.

The difference between **to** and **-tara** here is that **-tara** is colloquial, everyday language, whereas the effect of **to** is more dramatic, i.e. it is typically used to tell some gripping tale, or in written stories.

14.2.2.2 *-tara*

-tara can be used freely in the sense of both 'when' and 'if', with a colloquial ring. With **-tara**, S2 can express the speaker's intention (request, hortative, etc.), as in example a.

a 3時になっ【たら】、お茶にしましょう。
sanji ni nattara, o-cha ni shimashō
At 3 o'clock, let's have some tea.

-tara cannot be used for a time sequence in the past (example b), but it's OK in the present tense. Note that example d has a narrative (story) ring to it.

A simple sequence of actions, in the sense of 'and' rather than 'when' is expressed by **-te** (example e, see 31.1.3).

b ×彼は家に帰っ【たら】電話をかけた。
kare wa ie ni kaettara denwa o kaketa

c 朝起き【たら】新聞を取りにいく。
asa okitara shinbun o tori ni iku
When I get up in the morning, I'll go and fetch the paper.

d 彼は家に帰る【と】電話をかけた。
kare wa ie ni kaeru to denwa o kaketa
When he got back home, he made a phone call.

e 彼は家に帰っ【て】、電話をかけた。
kare wa ie ni kaette denwa o kaketa
He went home, and made a phone call.

14.2.2.3 *-ba*

In generalizing statements, **-ba** can be used in the sense of 'when', but only in the present, *not* the past.

a 歳をとれ【ば】、見えにくくなる。
toshi o toreba mienikuku naru
When/as one gets older, one's eyesight deteriorates.

14.2.2.4 *nara*

nara cannot be used in the sense of 'when'.

15 baai [STRUCTURAL NOUN]

Apart from its use as a structural N, **baai** can be used as a regular noun in the sense of 'case' or 'circumstances':

a しかし、総務庁は「【場合】によっては早期退職の勧奨もしなくては」という。
shikashi sōmu-chō de wa baai ni yotte wa sōki taishoku no kanshō mo shinakute wa to iu
However, the General Affairs Bureau says 'Depending on the circumstances, we also have to recommend early retirement'.

However, **baai** is mostly used as a structural N in the sense of 'in case of', 'when', or 'if'. As a structural N, **baai** is preceded by N-mod. forms of V, adj., AN and N, and attaches case and focus P, etc. like other N. **baai** has a written or formal ring to it and therefore tends to be used in legal and other written documents (examples d and f).

For differences to other items meaning 'when' or 'if' see 16.

Note that, as in the case of **toki**, a V preceding **baai** generally uses the **-ru** form when the action has not been completed, and **-ta** when it has. This also applies to a small number of **-i** adj., such as **ōi** 'numerous', **sukunai** 'few' and **nai** 'there isn't'. Compare examples b and c with e–g, and h against j.

However, the effect of **-ta** can also be to make the **baai** clause more hypothetical, as in example i.

b 休業日に使用する【場合】は手数料百三円がかかる。
kyūgyōbi ni shiyō suru baai wa tesūryō hyakusan-en ga kakaru
When you use it [= teller machine] on a bank holiday, a handling fee of 103 yen applies.

c 世界史を見る【場合】、近代化はすなわち西洋化とする考えが日本では長く続いた。
sekai-shi o miru baai kindai-ka sunawachi seiyō-ka to suru kangae ga nihon de wa nagaku tsuzuita
When looking at world history, the view that holds that modernization is Westernization has continued in Japan for a long time.

d 日本で生まれ、父母がともに知れない【場合】は日本国籍を認める。
nihon de umare fubo ga tomo ni shirenai baai wa nihon kokuseki o mitomeru
If [the child] is born in Japan, and both parents are unknown, it is granted Japanese citizenship.

e 一日二十四時間運転した【場合】、一カ月当たりの電気料金は最も小型のもので二百—三百円という。
ichinichi nijū yojikan unten shita baai ikkagetsu atari no denki ryōkin wa mottomo kogata no mono de nihyaku kara sanbyaku-en to iu
They say that when run for 24 hours a day, the electricity charge per month is 200–300 yen for the smallest type [of refuse converter].

f 父の医療費を私が支払った【場合】、医療費について私は医療費控除を受けることができますか。
chichi no iryōhi o watashi ga shiharatta baai iryōhi ni tsuite watashi wa iryōhi kōjo o ukeru koto ga dekimasu ka
If I have paid my father's medical fees, can I have tax deducted for medical expenses?

g 番号を間違えた【場合】の訂正なども音声応答システムに従ってできる。
bangō o machigaeta baai no teisei nado mo onsei ōtō shisutemu ni shitagatte dekiru
Making a correction when having dialled a wrong number can also be done via the voice-activated system.

h 「他店より価格が高い【場合】は店員にお申し付けください」
taten yori kakaku ga takai baai wa ten'in ni o-mōshitsuke kudasai
'If the price is higher than elsewhere, please inform our staff.'

i …男同士の会話で盛り上がっちゃう。…
でもさ、男の人数が多かった【場合】に一人の女のためにみんながサービスする必要があるのかどうか。
. . . otoko dōshi no kaiwa de moriagatchau . . . demo sa otoko no ninzū ga ōkatta baai ni hitori no onna no tame ni minna ga sābisu suru hitsuyō ga aru no ka dō ka
. . . the conversation [at after-hours business entertainment] gets animated between the men. . . . But, when there is a large number of men, do they all need to entertain one woman, I wonder.

j 不祥事が無かった【場合】と同じには進まないだろう。
fushōji ga nakatta baai to onaji ni wa susumanai darō
[cases where there has been dishonesty] cannot be dealt with in the same way as where there hasn't.

k 中国への直航便がない国内の地方空港の客はソウル経由の方が便利な【場合】もある。
chūgoku e no chokkōbin ga nai kokunai no chihō kūkō no kyaku wa sōru keiyu no hō ga benri na baai mo aru
For customers from local domestic airports, where there are no direct flights to China, there are instances where travelling via Seoul is more convenient.

l 当日が日曜・祝日の【場合】は翌日に順延する。
tōjitsu ga nichiyō shukujitsu no baai wa yokujitsu ni jun'en suru
When the day falls on a Sunday or holiday, the session is held on the following day.

16 baai, toki: COMPARISON

When **toki** is made into a topic in the form of **toki (wa)** or **toki (ni) wa**, **toki** indicates a general or habitual condition 'if' or 'always'. **baai** can be used in the same way, although **baai wa**, etc. has a much more formal ring than **toki wa**, as seen in examples a and b. For this reason, **baai** is often in legal and other forms of 'officialese' (cf., 15 b, d and g).

In example c, **toki ni** cannot be replaced by **baai ni**, as the content is too personal, lacking the officialese tone typical of **baai**.

a % 火事の【ときは】エレベーターを使用しないでください。
kaji no toki wa erebētā o shiyō shinai de kudasai
Please don't use the lift when there's a fire.

b % 火災の【場合】はエレベーターを使用しないこと。 [= written notice]
kasai no baai wa erebētā o shiyō shinai koto
Do not use lift in case of fire.

c % 火事の【ときに】私の大切なアルバムが焼けてしまった。
kaji no toki ni watashi no taisetsu na arubamu ga yakete shimatta
My treasured album was destroyed in the fire (*lit.* "at the time of the fire").

17 bakari [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

The adverbial P **bakari** is attached to V, adv., AN, N as well as S in quite a variety of forms. The basic meaning is 'only', 'ever more', but depending on the sub-entry the resulting range of meanings is quite varied, as explained in the next sections.

17.1 Verb-**ru bakari da**
17.1.1 Repeatable verbs
17.1.2 Intensifying verbs
17.2 Verb-**ta bakari**
17.2.1 Verb-**ta bakari** (+ copula, etc.)
17.2.2 Verb-**ta bakari no** noun
17.3 Verb-**te bakari (wa/mo) iru**
17.3.1 With non-potential predicates
17.3.2 With negative potential predicates
17.4 Noun (+ particle) **bakari**
17.4.1 Noun **bakari** + copula
17.4.2 Noun (+ particle) **bakari** (+ particle)
17.4.3 Time noun **bakari**
17.5 Noun phrase 1 (+ particle) **bakari de (wa) naku**, . . . noun phrase 2 **(ni shite) mo** . . .
17.6 Noun/clause **bakari ka**, . . . **(mo)**
17.6.1 Noun/clause-positive **bakari ka**, . . . **(mo)**
17.6.2 Noun/clause-negative **bakari ka**, . . . **(mo)**
17.7 Noun **bakari ka to iu to** . . . **sō de wa/mo nai** (or similar negative)
17.8 Adverb/clause **(to) bakari (ni)**
17.9 Adjective/adjectival noun **bakari no** noun
17.10 Adjective/adjectival noun **bakari de wa** . . . negative

17.1 VERB-ru bakari da

Usually followed by a form of cop., **bakari** indicates that the action of a V whose action is repeatable is taking place all the time, or with V whose action is (de-)intensifying (e.g. **takamaru** 'get higher', **fukamaru** 'get deeper', **tsuyomaru** 'get stronger', **yowamaru** 'get weaker'), that the action is (de-)intensifying 'ever more'.

17.1.1 Repeatable verbs

With V whose action can be repeated, **bakari** means 'just keep doing'.

a 「警察にも何も言ってない」と繰り返す【ばかり】。
keisatsu ni mo nani mo itte nai to kurikaesu bakari
He just keeps repeating, 'I didn't say anything to the police either'.

b 校長に直訴するが、「待ってくれ」という【ばかり】で三年たった。
kōchō ni jikiso suru ga matte kure to iu bakari de sannen tatta
He appealed directly to the principal, but he just kept on saying, 'Wait', and three years passed.

c すでに一部が日本に到着済みで、あとは二月初めからの販売を待つ【ばかり】だ。
sude ni ichibu ga nihon ni tōchaku-zumi de, ato wa nigatsu hajime kara no hanbai o matsu bakari da
A proportion has already arrived in Japan, and all that remains is to wait for the sales from early February.

17.1.2 Intensifying verbs

With (de-)intensifying V (usually formed by adj.-**ku naru/AN ni naru**, or adj.-stem-**maru**), **bakari** indicates that the (de-)intensifying action is 'ever more', 'increasingly' so.

a %なぞは【深まるばかり】だ。
nazo wa fukamaru bakari da
The mystery deepens ever more.

b 政治不信は【高まるばかり】だ。
seiji fushin wa takamaru bakari da
Distrust in politics is getting ever greater.

c 先行を許すと、あとは風が【弱まるばかり】。
senkō o yurusu to ato wa kaze ga yowamaru bakari
If you allow [the other yacht] to go ahead, the wind gets increasingly weaker.

d 近年、健康志向は【強まるばかり】だ。
kinnen kenkō shikō wa tsuyomaru bakari da
In recent years, health-oriented thinking is getting ever stronger.

e コンビニ同士の競争は【激しくなるばかり】。
konbini dōshi no kyōsō wa hageshiku naru bakari
The competition between convenience stores is getting tougher all the time.

17.2 VERB-**ta bakari**

After V-**ta**, **bakari** indicates that the action of V has 'only just' been completed. It can be used as pred., usually with the addition of cop., or to modify a N by means of **no** (see 187).

17.2.1 Verb-**ta bakari** (+ copula, etc.)

In newspaper style, cop. can be omitted (example c).

a アジア・ブームは始まった【ばかりだ】。
ajiabūmu wa hajimatta bakari da
The Asia boom has only just begun.

b 婚約した【ばかりだっ】た。
kon'yaku shita bakari datta
He had only just got engaged.

c 東京管理職ユニオンは昨年十二月二十日に結成された【ばかり】。
tōkyō kanrishoku yunion wa sakunen jūnigatsu hatsuka ni kessei sareta bakari
The Tokyo Managerial Union was only established on the 24 December last year.

17.2.2 Verb-**ta bakari no** noun

a 結婚した【ばかりの】若い二人の写真
kekkon shita bakari no wakai futari no shashin
A photo of the young couple having just got married

b 新しい家は完成した【ばかりの】社宅。
atarashii ie wa kansei shita bakari no shataku
Their new home is a newly built company house.

17.3 VERB-**te bakari (wa/mo) iru**

Sandwiched between V-**te** and a form of **iru**, **bakari** indicates that the action of V takes place all the time, at the expense of other things that could or should take place 'just . . . all the time', 'always' (see 31.5).

Where the neg. pot. form of **iru** (**irarenai**) is used (17.3.2), the meaning is 'can't just . . . all the time'.

17.3.1 With non-potential predicates

a % あの人は食べ【てばかりい】ます。
ano hito wa tabete bakari imasu
That person is eating all the time.

b お母さん、いつまでも泣い【てばかりい】ちゃだめだ。
(いちゃ = いては)
okāsan itsu made mo naite bakari icha dame da
Mum, you mustn't just keep crying forever.

c 夫は家で将棋や囲碁のテレビ番組を見【てばかりい】る。
otto wa ie de shōgi ya igo no terebi bangumi o mite bakari iru
At home, my husband just watches TV programmes of Shogi and Go all the time.

17.3.2 With negative potential predicates

In the pot. form, the meaning becomes 'can't just . . . all the time', 'can't afford to do nothing but'.

a しかし浮かれ【てばかりはいられ】ない。
shikashi ukarete bakari wa irarenai
However, one can't just be in the clouds all the time.

b 悲嘆に暮れ【てばかりはいられ】なかった。
hitan ni kurete bakari wa irarenakatta
She couldn't spend all her time grieving [over her husband's illness].

17.4 NOUN (+ PARTICLE) **bakari**

17.4.1 Noun **bakari** + copula

Followed by forms of cop. (in newspaper style, cop. is often omitted at the end of a sentence), **bakari** means 'is all', 'was all', 'only', etc. The implication with **bakari** is not 'only' in the exclusive sense (for that, **dake/shika** are used), but that out of a choice of two or more entities, one is much more represented that one would normally expect.

In examples a and b, for instance, there might well be the occasional female (example a) or male (example b); the point is that where one would normally expect a mixture of the two, one or the other group is predominant.

a 客も店員も男性【ばかり】だった。
kyaku mo ten'in mo dansei bakari datta
Both customers and sales personnel were all male.

b 百貨店の店頭でも元気なのは女性【ばかり】。
hyakkaten no tentō de mo genki na no wa josei bakari
At department store counters too, it's only the women who are energetic.

c 悲観論【ばかり】では生きていけない。
hikanron bakari de wa ikite ikenai
You can't live by pessimism alone.

d 地方の企業にとって不況は悪いこと【ばかり】ではない。
chihō no kigyō ni totte fukyō wa warui koto bakari de wa nai
For businesses in the regions, the recession is not all bad.

17.4.2 Noun (+ particle) **bakari** (+ particle)

Attached to N or [N + P] that are subjects or objects, **bakari** can replace **ga** and **o**, or alternatively attach them. **bakari** is added to all other case P, such as **ni**, **e**, **to**, etc. It indicates the idea of 'only' or 'all', in the sense that something is overwhelmingly so.

a 英語【ばかり】が外国語じゃない。
eigo bakari ga gaikokugo ja nai
English is not the only foreign language.

b 表面【ばかり】見ないで内面も見て欲しい。
hyōmen bakari minai de naimen mo mite hoshii
I want you to look not at the surface only, but also at the interior [what's inside].

c 小物や陶芸作品【ばかり】を並べた店が、今人気を集めている。
komono ya tōgei sakuhin bakari o narabeta mise ga ima ninki o atsumete iru
Shops that display nothing but trinkets and items of pottery are popular nowadays.

d 経営者が社員に【ばかり】負担を強いているのはおかしい、…
keieisha ga shain ni bakari futan o shiite iru no wa okashii
It's not right that managers are forcing contributions on employees only . . .

e 「交渉は永遠に続くかのようだ」というラーセンの言葉は、あながち誇張と【ばかり】は言えない。
kōshō wa eien ni tsuzuku ka no yō da to iu rāsen no kotoba wa, anagachi kochō to bakari wa ienai
The words of Larsen, 'Negotiations seem to continue forever', cannot necessarily be said to be all exaggeration.

17.4.3 Time noun **bakari**

With an amount of time, the meaning of **bakari** is 'about' (example a), whereas with any other time N it serves to emphasize it in the sense of 'only', 'at least', etc. (example b).

a わずか数カ月【ばかり】前のことが、何年も前のことのように思える。
wazuka sūkagetsu bakari mae no koto ga nannen mo mae no koto no yō ni omoeru
Something that took place just a few months ago seems like it happened years ago.

b 今度【ばかり】は降りない。
kondo bakari wa orinai
This time, at least, we're not going to quit.

17.5 NOUN PHRASE 1 (+ PARTICLE) **bakari de (wa) naku**, . . . NOUN PHRASE 2 **(ni shite) mo** . . .

Used between NP (and equivalent), this combination indicates the idea of 'not only, but also'. Note that a phrase ending in V-**te** can be used instead of NP2 (example c) (see 37.7).

a % 肉【ばかりではなく】、野菜【も】食べなさい。
niku bakari de wa naku yasai mo tabenasai
Don't eat just meat, have some vegetables as well!

b 夫婦一緒の時間【ばかりでなく】自分の時間【も】持ちたい。
fūfu issho no jikan bakari de naku jibun no jikan mo mochitai
I want to have not only time together as a couple, but also time for myself.

c 鮮魚【ばかりではなく】冷凍にして【も】輸入することにしている。
sengyo bakari de wa naku reitō ni shite mo yunyū suru koto ni shite iru
We've decided to import them (= the fish) not only fresh, but also frozen.

17.6 NOUN/CLAUSE **bakari ka**, . . . **(mo)**

In this use, **bakari ka** is attached to a N or a S (given below in []), and signals an addition. S can either end in a pos. or a neg. form (or an expression that has negative meaning).

Instead of **mo**, **made** 'even' can also be used (see 86).

17.6.1 Noun/clause-positive **bakari ka**, . . . **(mo)**

Here, **bakari ka** is attached to a pos. form, and thus signals a pos. addition 'not only . . . but also . . .'.

a ロシアは[戦車【ばかりか】]核技術【まで】売り出すのか
roshia wa sensha bakari ka kaku-gijutsu made uridasu no ka
Is Russia selling not only tanks but even nuclear know-how?

b [命が助かった【ばかりか】]、屋内で感じる恐怖を味わわずに済んだ。
inochi ga tasukatta bakari ka okunai de kanjiru kyōfu o ajiwawazu ni sunda
Not only was his life saved, he managed not to experience the fright one feels inside [during an earthquake].

17.6.2 Noun/clause-negative **bakari ka**, . . . **(mo)**

In this use, **bakari ka** is attached to a S ending in neg. form (or an expression that has neg. meaning).

bakari ka usually signals a neg. addition 'not only not, but also', but it can be attached to what amounts to a double neg., in which case the negs. cancel each other out, indicating a pos. addition (example b).

a 自分に合わないまくらを使えば[疲れがとれにくい]【ばかりか】、肩凝りの原因に【も】なる。
jibun ni awanai makura o tsukaeba tsukare ga torenikui bakari ka katakori no gen'in ni mo naru
If you use a pillow that doesn't suit you, not only does it make it difficult to recover from fatigue, it also becomes the cause of a stiff neck.

b 中国の強大さは[脅威にならない]【ばかりか】、世界各国の得になる。
chūgoku no kyōdaisa wa kyōi ni naranai bakari ka sekai kakkoku no toku ni naru
Not only is China's vastness not a menace, it will be an advantage for the countries of the world.

17.7 NOUN **bakari ka to iu to . . . sō de wa/mo nai** (OR SIMILAR NEGATIVE)

This means literally 'if you question if *X* is all *Y*, that is not so', and is used as a rhetorical device or way of putting things in a somewhat dramatic fashion 'you may think that . . . , but that's not so'.

If **sō de *mo* nai** (example b) is used rather than **sō de *wa* nai** (example a), the meaning becomes 'not *necessarily* so'.

a 青森の冬は雪【ばかりかというと】【そうではない】。
aomori no fuyu wa yuki bakari ka to iu to sō de wa nai
You may think that Aomori winters are nothing but snow, but that's not so.

b 現代の若者の食生活が欠点【ばかりかというと】、【そうでもない】。
gendai no wakamono no shokuseikatsu ga ketten bakari ka to iu to sō de mo nai
You may think that the eating habits of today's young are all bad, but that's not necessarily so.

17.8 ADVERB/CLAUSE (**to**) **bakari** (**ni**)

Attached to a S (indicated below in []), **bakari ni** makes that S into an adverbial phrase in the sense of ‘as if’, or ‘almost’, modifying a following V.

a さらに[これでもかと]【ばかりに】、バラードが続く。
sara ni kore demo ka to bakari ni barādo ga tsuzuku
And further, ballads continue with a vengeance (*lit.* “as if to say, can you take more?”).

b 初秋の日差しに[まばゆい]【ばかりに】輝いていた調印当日のホワイトハウス。
shoshū no hizashi ni mabayui bakari ni kagayaite ita chōin tōjitsu no howaito hausu
The White House, on the day of the signing [of the treaty], had been just dazzling as it glittered in the early autumn sunlight.

c それまではみな[残業、交代勤務、出張が“男の道”と]【ばかりに】働いてきた父親たちだった。
sore made wa mina zangyō kōtai kinmu shutchō ga otoko no michi to bakari ni hataraite kita chichioya-tachi datta
Until then, they were all fathers who had worked as if overtime, shift work and business trips were ‘the way of men’.

17.9 ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN **bakari no** NOUN

When adj./AN **bakari** modify a N, **bakari** emphasizes the degree to which the adj. applies, in the sense of ‘almost’.

a 澄んだ水の流れと、まばゆい【ばかりの】新緑が目に浮かぶ。
sunda mizu no nagare to mabayui bakari no shinryoku ga me ni ukabu
The clear stream of water and the almost blinding new leaves come to my mind.

b 経営に対するすさまじい【ばかりの】熱意に心打たれた。
keiei ni taisuru susamajii bakari no netsui ni kokoro utareta
I was impressed by his almost frightening passion for management.

17.10 ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN **bakari de wa** . . . NEGATIVE

Followed by a neg., adj./AN **bakari** indicates the idea of ‘not all’, ‘not . . . just’. Note that the forms **bakari** attaches to are A-**i** and AN **na**.

a 安い【ばかりでは】消費者も買わ【ない】。
yasui bakari de wa shōhisha mo kawanai
Consumers aren’t going to buy [things] just because they’re cheap.

b 決して地味な【ばかりでは】【なか】ったのだ。
kesshite jimi na bakari de wa nakatta noda
He [= famous historial figure] was definitely not just conservative (in his tastes).

18 bakari, dake, shika: COMPARISON

These P can all translate as 'only' in some of their uses. Formally, **shika** differs from **bakari** and **dake** in that it is used with neg. forms. **dake** and **shika** are the only ones that can be used together, in the form **dake shika**.

a リゾートクラブ会員権を保有していても、これまでは同一クラブの施設【だけしか】利用できなかった。
rizōto kurabu no kaiinken o hoyū shite ite mo kore made wa dōitsu kurabu no shisetsu dake shika riyō dekinakatta
Even if one holds membership of a resort club, so far one can only use the facilities of that same club.

b あなたって、いつも用事のある時【だけしか】電話してこないのね。
anata tte itsumo yōji no aru toki dake shika denwa shite konai no ne
You only ever ring when you want something, right?

In meaning, **shika** is the most 'exclusive', emphasizing the meaning of 'only' in the sense of 'nothing but'.

After amounts, **shika** + neg. (see 180.1.3) and V/VN (see 180.3), **shika** can be replaced by **dake** (**da**), but neg. needs to be changed to pos.

After N, **bakari** means 'only' or 'just' in the sense that something is 'overwhelmingly so' or 'all the time' (see 17.4.1 for examples), whereas **dake** and **shika** are used in the exclusive sense of 'only'.

bakari can be replaced by **dake** after repeatable V (17.1.1) and in the uses shown in 17.4.1, 17.4.2 and 17.4.3 (but *not* with amount of time (17.4.3 a), where the meaning of **bakari** is 'about'), 17.5 and 17.10.

After intensifying V (17.1.2), **dake** changes the meaning of the **bakari** S as shown below.

c 政治不信は【高まるばかり】だ。
seiji fushin wa takamaru bakari da
Distrust in politics is getting ever greater.

d % 政治不信は【高まるだけ】だ。
seiji fushin wa takamaru dake da
Distrust in politics will only get greater.

The context that needs to be assumed for the **dake** version would be something like "If you were to do this, then the result would only/predictably be that . . .".

When compared to **dake** (see 37), **dake** can be replaced by **bakari** in uses shown in 37.1.1.1, 37.6 and 37.7. In use 37.1.2, **dake** can be replaced by **bakari** in example b only, i.e. when used after VN, but NOT other N.

19 -**beki** [SENTENCE ENDING]

The S ending -**beki** attaches to V-**ru**. However, after **suru** or VN where **suru** gets voiced to VN-**zuru**, the classical forms **subeki**/VN-**zubeki** are still used (see examples 19.1 c, e and h).

-**beki** indicates obligation, 'must', 'ought to' (see 50.3, 62, 63.2, 89, 239.4).

-**beki** is usually followed by forms of the cop., but note the classical neg. -**bekarazu**, which is occasionally encountered (19.1 h) instead of -**beki de wa nai**. Also, the classical form -**beshi** is occasionally still found (see examples 19.1 c and d) instead of -**beki** + cop.

19.1 Clause-**beki** copula
19.2 Clause-**beki** noun

19.1 CLAUSE-**beki** COPULA

-**beki** is similar in meaning to -**ta hō ga ii** (-**nai hō ga ii** in the neg.), meaning 'should', 'ought to' (see 63.3).

a % その映画は一回見る【べきだ】よ。
sono eiga wa ikkai miru-beki da yo
That film you should see once.

b 選挙で選ぶ【べきだ】。
senkyo de erabu-beki da
[He [= party leader]] ought to be chosen by election.

c 未成年者の飲酒防止のため、酒の屋外自動販売機は撤廃す【べし】。
miseinensha no inshu bōshi no tame sake no okugai jidō hanbaiki wa teppai su-beshi
In order to prevent minors from drinking alcohol, outdoor vending machines for alcoholic drinks should be abolished.

d エイズに感染している時は相手にその事実を告げる【べし】。
eizu ni kansen shite iru toki wa aite ni sono jijitsu o tsugeru-beshi
If one's infected with AIDS, one should inform one's partner of that fact.

e 日本の外交をどのように改革す【べきだろう】か。
nihon no gaikō o dono yō ni kaikaku su-beki darō ka
In what way should Japan's diplomacy be reformed, I wonder.

f コメは日本人の主食であり、早計に輸入に踏み切る【べきではな】い。
kome wa nihonjin no shushoku de ari sōkei ni yu'nyū ni fumikiru-beki de wa nai
Rice is Japan's main staple food, and importing should therefore not be entered into lightly.

g 歴史的な公共建造物は公の利益のために使う【べきで】、金持ちが利用する高級ホテルにす【べきではな】い。
rekishi-teki na kōkyō kentō-butsu wa ōyake no rieki no tame ni tsukau-beki de kanemochi ga riyō suru kōkyū hoteru ni su-beki de wa nai
An historic public building should be used for the benefit of the public, and not be made into a hotel for use by the rich.

h 数字というものは、むしろ信ず【べからず】、ではないか。
sūji to iu mono wa mushiro shinzu-bekarazu dewa nai ka
Isn't it rather the case that numbers should not be trusted?

19.2 CLAUSE-**beki** NOUN

When modifying N, the meaning is 'need to', 'must', and can be replaced by a double neg. such as **-nakereba naranai**. Note that **-beki** here modifies N directly, without cop. (see 50.2).

a % ちょっと行く【べき】ところがある。
chotto iku-beki tokoro ga aru
There's a place I need to go to.

b まだ研究を深める【べき】課題が残っている。
mada kenkyū o fukameru-beki kadai ga nokotte iru
There are still problems on which we must do more research.

c 今後進む【べき】方向性ははっきりしてきた。
kongo susumu-beki hōkōsei wa hakkiri shite kita
The direction in which we need to go from now on has become clear.

20 CAUSATIVE SENTENCES

Causative sentences can be seen as a kind of sentence conversion, in that to a non-causative sentence, an extra NP (and the meaning of causation or permission) is added. Compare:

% **kodomo [ga] gakkō ni iku**. The child goes to school.

% **[oya ga] kodomo [o/ni] gakkō ni ika [se] ru**. The parents make/let the child go to school.

In the basic S, the V requires NP **ga** to indicate the person carrying out the action of V. By contrast, the caus. sentence involves an extra NP (the causer) who influences the actor (or causee) to carry out the action of V. Also, the valency is changed (the actor is now marked by **o** or **ni**). Of course, not all these NPs are usually present in a given sentence (those understood from the context are often omitted).

20.1 *X* (person) **ga/wa** *Y* (person) **o/ni*** (verb-intransitive-causative)
20.2 *X* (person) **ga/wa** *Y* (person) **ni** *Z* (thing) **o** (verb-transitive-causative)
20.3 *X* (person/thing) **ga/wa** *Y* (thing) **o/wa** (verb-intransitive-causative)
20.3.1 *X* = person
20.3.2 *X* = thing
20.4 Verb-intransitive/verb-transitive-causative-**te** + performative verb
20.4.1 (First-person) verb-causative-**te morau/itadaku**
20.4.2 (Second/third-person) verb-causative-**te kureru/kudasaru**
20.5 Idiomatic uses

Causative sentences can express three meanings or functions: 'make someone do something' (coercion), 'let someone do something' (permission) or substituting for a V-tr. by using a V-intr. in the causative form. This last function is shown below.

a 関係者を驚かせる
kankeisha o odorokaseru
amaze the persons concerned

instead of

b 関係者が驚いている
kankeisha ga odoroite iru
the persons concerned are amazed

The distinction between a and b is, however, not always clear-cut, even when the context is taken into consideration.

Causative V are formed from V-**ru** as in Table 4.

Table 4 Causative verb formation

Verb type	*Replacement pattern*		
Group I	***-u***	→	***-aseru***
	ik-u	→	**ik-aseru**
	nom-u	→	**nom-aseru**
	ka(w)-u	→	**kaw-aseru**
Group II	***-ru***	→	***-saseru***
	tabe-ru	→	**tabe-saseru**
	mi-ru	→	**mi-saseru**
Group III	**kuru**	→	**kosaseru**
	suru	→	**saseru**

20.1 *X* (PERSON) **ga/wa** *Y* (PERSON) **o/ni*** (VERB-INTRANSITIVE-CAUSATIVE)

Person *X* (usually ellipted, being understood from the context) exerts influence to allow or force person *Y* (also often ellipted) to do the action of the intransitive verb.

*Note** with V expressing emotion (**odoroku** ‘be surprised’, **warau** ‘laugh’, etc.), only **o** is used.

a % 先生【は】学生【を】帰ら【せ】た。
sensei wa gakusei o kaeraseta
The teacher sent the students home.

b 学生【を】一年間企業で働か【せ】る。
gakusei o ichinenkan kigyō de hatarakaseru
They place [= make work/allow to work] the students for one year in a firm.

c かわいい子【に】は旅さ【せ】ろ。
kawaii ko ni wa tabi sasero
Children one cares about one should send [= make go/allow to go] on errands (= spare the rod and spoil the child).

d 家族【を】食わ【せ】ないといけないし。
kazoku o kuwasenai to ikenai shi
I also need to feed (*lit.* “let eat”) my family.

e 小さいころから人【を】笑わ【せ】ることが好きだった。
chiisai koro kara hito o warawaseru koto ga suki datta
From the time he was small, he liked making people laugh.

f 予想以上の活躍に関係者【を】驚か【せ】ている。
yosō ijō no katsuyaku ni kankeisha o odorokasete iru
Their [= foreign jockeys’] unexpected success amazes the people concerned.

20.2 *X* (PERSON) **ga/wa** *Y* (PERSON) **ni** *Z* (THING) **o** (VERB-TRANSITIVE-CAUSATIVE)

Person *X* exerts influence to allow or force person *Y* to do the action of [transitive verb + object].

a % 先生【は】学生【に】作文【を】書か【せ】た。
sensei wa gakusei ni sakubun o kakaseta
The teacher made the students write a composition.

b この絵【は】神【を】感じさ【せる】。
kono e wa kami o kanjisaseru
This painting makes [you/one] feel God.

c 息子【に】資産【を】相続さ【せ】たい。
musuko ni shisan o sōzoku sasetai
I want my son to inherit my property.

20.3 *X* (PERSON/THING) **ga/wa** *Y* (THING) **o/wa** (VERB-INTRANSITIVE-CAUSATIVE)

Here, NP **o** + the caus. equivalent of NP **ga** + V-intr. is used to indicate what a person or thing/matter does. The NP **o** + V-intr. caus. often translates as a transitive V in English, or sometimes idiomatically.

20.3.1 *X* = person

a ちらっと本音【を】のぞか【せ】た。(cf.、本音【が】のぞく)
chiratto honne o nozokaseta
Momentarily, [he] showed (*lit.* "allowed to appear") his real concern.

b 想像力【を】働か【せ】て聴いてください。(cf.、想像力【が】働く)
sōzōryoku o hatarakasete kiite kudasai
Please listen using your imagination.

c 関係者【は】夢【を】膨らま【せ】ている。(cf.、夢【が】膨らむ)
kankeisha wa yume o fukuramasete iru
The people concerned are full of expectation (*lit.* "they make their dreams swell").

d キャンプに行ってくみ置いた生水【は】沸騰さ【せ】て使う方が安全だ。
(cf.、生水【が】沸騰する)
kyanpu ni itte kumioita namamizu wa futtō sasete tsukau hō ga anzen da
It is safer to use the water one has drawn at the camp after boiling it. (*lit.* "making it boil")

20.3.2 *X* = thing

a 過去のしがらみ【が】改革【を】遅ら【せ】ているという。
(cf., 改革【が】遅れる)
kako no shigarami ga kaikaku o okurasete iru to iu
They say that the fetters of the past delay reform.

b 戦後の日本経済【は】他の資本主義国のどこよりも自由と平等【を】調和【せ】て発展してきた。(cf., 自由と平等【が】調和する)
sengo no nihon keizai wa hoka no shihon shugi-koku no doko yori mo jiyū to byōdō o chōwa sasete hatten shite kita
The postwar Japanese economy has developed by blending freedom and equality more than any other capitalist country.

20.4 VERB-INTRANSITIVE/VERB-TRANSITIVE-CAUSATIVE-**te** + PERFORMATIVE VERB

When the speaker indicates that he has his action condoned by others (or wants it that way), the patterns [(1st Person) V-caus.-**te morau/itadaku**] or [(2nd/3rd Person) V-caus.-**te kureru/kudasaru**] are used.

These patterns can also be used in question form for requesting permission politely, in the form V-caus.-**te moraemasen ka/itadakemasen ka** 'may I?", 'am I allowed to?'/**kuremasen ka/kudasaimasen ka** 'would you?' (note that **morau** and **itadaku** are used only in the pot. form here). See 203.3.5.

20.4.1 (First-person) verb-causative-**te morau/itadaku**

The combination means 'may I', 'be allowed to'.

a 自己紹介さ【せていただき】ます…
jiko shōkai sasete itadakimasu
Please allow me to introduce myself . . .

b 今はのんびりさ【せてもらっ】ている。
ima wa nonbiri sasete moratte iru
At present I'm taking a breather [= after stepping down from a government post].

c はっきり言わ【せてもらえ】ば、誤解に基づく批判である。
hakkiri iwasete moraeba gokai ni motozuku hihan de aru
If I may say things straight, it's a criticism that is based on a misunderstanding.

20.4.2 (Second/third-person) verb-causative-**te kureru/kudasaru**

The combination means ‘let me’ ‘allow me to’.

a 一晩考え【させてくれ】。
hitoban kangaesasete kure
Let me sleep on it (*lit.* “think about it overnight”).

b 何でこんなことしか、やら【せてくれ】ないのよ。
nande konna koto shika yarasete kurenai no yo
Why do they allow me to do only such [boring] work?

20.5 IDIOMATIC USES

A number of V (or N-V combinations) use the caus. form idiomatically.

a 酒を飲んでは仕事の話に花を咲か【せ】たという。
sake o nonde wa shigoto no hanashi ni hana o sakaseta to iu
He says that each time they had a drink they had a lively conversation about work.
(**hanashi ni hana o sakasu** ‘have an animated conversation’, *lit.* “make blossoms bloom in talk”)

b 母親のみさ子さん（47）も「ありがとうございました」と言葉を詰まら【せ】た。
hahaoya no misako-san (47) mo arigatō gozaimashita to kotoba o tsumaraseta
Misako-san (47), the mother, too, could only say ‘thank you very much’. (**kotoba o tsumaraseru**, *lit.* “make one’s words choke”)

c 地図を見るには磁石が欠か【せ】ない。
chizu o miru ni wa jishaku ga kakasenai
For consulting a map, a compass is a must.
(**kakasenai** = neg. of the caus. of **kaku** ‘to be lacking’)

21 CAUSATIVE PASSIVE SENTENCES

Causative passives are caus. sentences (see 20) with added pass. (see 156). The pass. example a below can be converted further into b.

a % 先生が学生を立たせた。
sensei ga gakusei o tataseta
The teacher made the pupil stand up.

b % 学生が先生に立たせられた。
gakusei ga sensei ni tataserareta
The student was made to stand up by the teacher.

Table 5 Causative-passive verb formation

Verb type	*Verb*	*Causative*	*Causative-passive*
Group I	**ik-u**	**ik-ase-ru**	**ik-ase-rareru** **ik-as-areru**
	nom-u	**nom-ase-ru**	**nom-ase-rareru** **nom-as-areru**
Group II	**tabe-ru**	**tabe-saseru**	**tabe-sase-rareru**
	mi-ru	**mi-saseru**	**mi-sase-rareru**
Group III	**suru**	**sase-ru**	**sase-rareru**
	kuru	**kosase-ru**	**kosase-rareru**

The difference between the two is that the caus. sentence is concerned with what the teacher has done to the pupil (from the point of view of the teacher), whereas the caus.-pass. sentence is concerned with how the pupil was influenced by the teacher (from the point of view of the pupil).

The basic meaning of a caus.-pass. sentence is 'be made to do something (against one's will)', but there are also examples where the implication is a positive one 'be given the opportunity to feel/discover something'.

Caus.-pass. V forms are formed as given in Table 5 (see 20, 156).

c 交通渋滞のひどさには【閉口させられ】た。
kōtsū jūtai no hidosa ni wa heikō saserareta
I was dumbfounded by how bad the traffic jams were.

d まず著者が【驚かされた】のは大学の公開性だった。
mazu chosha ga odorokasareta no wa daigaku no kōkaisei datta
What surprised the author first of all was the openness of universities.

e 運用責任者の「暴走」のツケは、これから住民が【払わされる】ことになる。
un'yō sekininsha no bōsō no tsuke wa kore kara jūmin ga harawasareru koto ni naru
The citizens will now be made to pay the bill run up through the 'recklessness' of those responsible for running it [= local government].

f 同氏の証言次第では、大統領が窮地に【立たされる】こともありそうだ。
dōshi no shōgen shidai de wa daitōryō ga kyūchi ni tatasareru koto mo arisō da
Depending on his testimony, the president may be put into a critical position.

22 CLASSICISMS

A form of language based on classical Japanese (essentially the language of the Heian period, around the year 1000) called *bungo* (文語) was the standard written form of Japanese between the Meiji restoration (1868) and the end of the Second World War.

Around the turn of the century, the Tokyo vernacular, *kōgo* (口語) became dominant in some newspapers and popular fiction as a result of the so-called *genbun itchi* ('one form for spoken and written language') movement, but *bungo's* influence has continued (in much reduced form) to the present day. For instance, *haiku* (17-syllable poem) and *waka* (31-syllable poem) writing is still very popular, with weekend newspapers carrying competitive selections of recent creations every week; but forms of poetry use classical grammar.

22.1 Classical forms
22.2 Classical copula
22.3 Idiomatic uses of classical forms

22.1 CLASSICAL FORMS

In everyday Japanese texts (and to an extent, conversation, too), certain classicisms crop up occasionally, including the following (the classical language had separate forms for fin. and N-mod. uses, which have subsequently fallen together). See Table 6 for some common equivalents.

For examples, see 50, 80 (**-ki**), 111.1.1.2 (**nashi**), 111.1.2.1 (**-nu**), 111.1.2.3 (**-zu**, **ni arazu**), 111.2.4 (**zaru**).

Table 6 Common classical forms with colloquial equivalents

	Class. form	*Coll. equivalent*
N-modifying	adj.-base-**ki**	adj.-**i**
	-nu	**-nai**
	-zaru	**-nai**
Final	adj.-base-**shi**	adj.-**i**
	-zu	**-nai**
	ni arazu	**de wa nai**
Conjunctive	**-zu**	**-naide**

22.2 CLASSICAL COPULA

There also is a classical cop., **nari**, which is still occasionally found in the written style, and has a N-mod. pos. form **naru** N, and a N-mod. neg. form, **naranu** N.

a はるか【なり】、情報ハイウエー (headline)
haruka nari jōhō haiuē
The information superhighway – a long way off.

naru N is also found in a number of idiomatic expressions, which include **ōi naru** N 'big' and **ika naru** N **mo**, a more formal variant of **donna** N **demo**, 'no matter which N', 'no N whatsoever'.

b 日本の方が豊かと考えるのは【大いなる誤解】だね。
nihon no hō ga yutaka to kangaeru no wa ōi naru gokai da ne
It's a grave misunderstanding to think that Japan is more affluent [than China].

c ＮＡＴＯの拡張には【いかなる国も】拒否権を行使できない。
NATO no kakuchō ni wa ikanaru kuni mo kyohi-ken o kōshi dekinai
No country whatsover can exercise the right to veto an expansion of NATO.

22.3 IDIOMATIC USES OF CLASSICAL FORMS

Classical forms also survive in a number of idiomatic patterns, which include the following: **naranu** (see 111.2.2), **-nu uchi** (see 229.1.2 g), **-zaru o enai** (see 50.2.5), **-zu ni wa irarenai** (see 50.3), **-neba (naranai)** (see 50.2.2 a and h), **-bekarazu** (see 19).

23 CLEFT SENTENCES

A cleft S is the result of splitting a S into two parts and reversing the order for emphasis. In English, the NP moved to the front is emphasized: 'It is/was . . . who/that . . .'.

In Japanese, it is the second part (the part after **wa**) that is emphasized. This is in line with the de-focusing function of **wa** (see 236).

a【かわいそうなのは】選手だ。
kawaisō na no wa senshu da
It's the athletes who are to be pitied.
(cf., 選手が／はかわいそうだ。The athletes are to be pitied.)

b 【信用できるのは】自分だけ。
shinyō dekiru no wa jibun dake
It's only myself that I can trust.
(cf., 自分だけが／は信用できる。I can trust only myself.)

24 COMMANDS

Commands (which can be pos. or neg.) can use imperative forms as such (for examples, see 69), but commonly the imperative forms of the performative V **kureru** (**kure**) and its more formal equivalent **kudasaru** (**kudasai**) are used.

Commands with these performative V can be divided into those that ask others for something (N **o kure/kudasai**) and those that tell others to do (or not to do) something on their behalf, in which case V-**te kure/kudasai** is used.

24.1 Noun/noun verb **o kudasai/kure**
24.1.1 Noun **o kudasai/kure**
24.1.2 Verb-**te kudasai/kure**
24.2 Verb-**te** (**ne**)

24.1 NOUN/NOUN VERB o kudasai/kure

24.1.1 Noun o kudasai/kure

This can only be used with pos. commands, in the sense of 'give' (**kure**) and 'please give' (**kudasai**).

a 配当を【くれ】。
haitō o kure
Give us a dividend!

b 少し時間を【下さい】。
sukoshi jikan o kudasai
Please give me some time.

24.1.2 Verb-te kudasai/kure

Parallel to the difference between **-te kure** and **-te kudasai**, **kure** is more informal than **kudasai**, and is used between male friends or by senior men to their subordinates: 'please do'. The final P **ne** can be attached to commands for a softer ring.

This can also be used for neg. commands (examples c and d) (see 112.4.4, 203.3.3 & 3.4, 101).

a その時に二カ月分の家賃を払うから待っ【てくれ】。
sono toki ni nikagetsu-bun no yachin o harau kara matte kure
I'll pay two months' rent at that time [= when I get money], so wait.

b きのう買ったのを見せ【て下さい】。
kinō katta no o misete kudasai
Please show me the one you bought yesterday.

c 息は止め【ないで下さい】ねー。
iki wa tomenai de kudasai ne
Don't hold your breath, please.

d 余計なことをし【てくれるな】と、文句を言われた。
yokei na koto o shite kureru na to monku o iwareta
He complained that I shouldn't give him help he didn't ask for.

24.2 VERB-te (ne)

V-**te** (**ne**) can be regarded as an informal abbreviation of **-te kudasai** (**ne**), which is used by both men and women to friends, family, children and other intimate relations that are of equal or lower status or age (see 202).

For neg. commands, -**nai de** (**ne**) (examples c and d) is used (see 112.4.4).

a 友達連れてき【てね】。
tomodachi tsurete kite ne
Bring some friends, will you.

b 会社つぶさないように頑張っ【てね】。
kaisha tsubusanai yō ni ganbatte ne
Try your best so you won't make the company go bust.

c 先生には言わ【ないで】。
sensei ni wa iwanai de
Don't tell the teacher.

d お父さん、試合のチケットを忘れ【ないでね】。
otōsan shiai no chiketto o wasurenai de ne
Daddy, don't forget the tickets for the match.

25 COMPARISON

Comparison typically concerns itself with items that have some property or quality to a larger or lesser degree than one or several others. That property is usually expressed by adj. (in Japanese, AN as well).

Unlike such English formations as cheap → cheap**[**er**]**/cheap**[**est**]**, Japanese has no comparative and superlative forms of adj. (or AN). Comparison (including choice of alternatives) is therefore effected by different means, some of which are similar to the English regular formations **[**more**]** beautiful/**[**most**]** beautiful, i.e. adv. of degree such as **motto** 'more' and **ichiban/mottomo** 'most' are used (see 5.2).

The comparative P **yori** and the structural N **hō** also figure prominently in comparative S (see 252, 63, 64).

25.1 Comparison using **yori** and/or **hō ga**
25.1.1 *Y* **yori (mo)** *X* **no hō ga** adjective/adjectival noun:
X **(no hō) ga** *Y* **yori (mo)** adjective/adjectival noun
25.1.2 Time expression + particle **yori**
25.1.3 Clause **yori**
25.1.4 Clause **yori hoka** . . . negative
25.1.5 idiom: **nani yori (mo)**
25.2 Comparison with adverbs (**yori, motto, ichiban**) + adjective/adjectival noun
25.2.1 **yori**-adjective/adjectival noun
25.2.2 **motto**
25.2.3 **ichiban/mottomo**
25.2.4 **hodo**
25.2.5 *X* **no naka de (wa/mo)** + evaluatory predicate
25.2.6 (*A* **to** *B* **to** (+ particle)) **dochira**
25.2.7 **dore**
25.2.7.1 (*A* **to** *B* **to** *C* **to** . . . noun **to**) **dore**
25.2.7.2 *X* **no naka de** . . . **dore**

25.1 COMPARISON USING **yori** AND/OR **hō ga**

The most common way of making a comparison uses the comparative particle **yori** 'more than', 'rather than' and/or the structural N **hō** (usually marked by the case P **ga**). **hō** may be seen as a way of emphasizing the item it is modified by (example a literally translates as something like "Rather than pork, *beef* is cheap"). The combination indicates the alternative in a choice of two.

25.1.1 *Y* **yori (mo)** *X* **no hō ga** adjective/adjectival noun: *X* **(no hō) ga** *Y* **yori (mo)** adjective/adjectival noun

Both constructions mean '*X* is [adj./AN]-er than *Y*'. Note that instead of adj./AN, V (and V forms with a stative meaning) can also be used.

Comparing the two word orders, *Y* **yori (mo)** *X* **no ho ga** adj./AN is the more usual (unmarked) one, *X* **(no hō) ga** *Y* **yori (mo)** adj./AN having the effect of emphasizing the comparison (compare examples a and b).

a 豚肉【より】牛肉の【方】が安い。
butaniku yori gyūniku no hō ga yasui
Beef is cheaper than pork.

b 牛肉【が】豚肉【より】安い——。食肉市場ではこんな逆転現象が起きている。
gyūniku ga butaniku yori yasui shokuniku shijō de wa konna gyakuten genshō ga okite iru
Beef is cheaper than pork. This kind of reversal is happening on the meat market.

c 人のいのち【は】地球【より】重い、という。
hito no inochi wa chikyū yori omoi to iu
They say that a human life weighs heavier than the earth.

d 金子さんの観察では、男性【よりも】女性の【方】が冷静だ。
kaneko-san no kansatsu de wa dansei yori mo josei no hō ga reisei da
According to Kaneko-san's observation, women are more level-headed than men.

25.1.2 Time expression + particle **yori**

This combination means 'compared to'.

a 昨日【より】軟らかいよ。
kinō yori yawarakai yo
They [= pears] are softer than yesterday.

b これまで【より】五モデル増える。
kore made yori go-moderu fueru
Compared to before, there will be five new models.

25.1.3 Clause **yori**

Here, two options are considered, with the one marked by **yori** judged the less preferable 'rather than'.

a 今は森を見る【より】木を見る時だ。
ima wa mori o miru yori ki o miru toki da
This is the time to look at the trees rather than the wood.

b 会社に無理して勤める【より】，好きなことで生活したい。
kaisha ni muri shite tsutomeru yori suki na koto de seikatsu shitai
Rather than forcing myself to work at a company, I'd like to earn my living doing something I like.

25.1.4 Clause **yori hoka** . . . negative

Followed by a neg. form, this indicates that the option (the clause) to which **yori hoka** is attached is the only viable possibility 'there is no choice but'.

a 「株を持ち続ける【よりほか】に【手はない】」とあきらめ切った表情。
kabu o mochitsuzukeru yori hoka ni te wa nai to akiramekitta hyōjō
'There's no choice but to keep holding on to the shares', he said with an expression of total resignation.

b できたばかりの支店を軌道に乗せるためには、がむしゃらに働く【よりほか】【ない】。
dekita bakari no shiten o kidō ni noseru tame ni wa gamushara ni hataraku yori hoka nai
In order to get a newly established branch going, there's no other way than to work like mad.

25.1.5 Idiom: **nani yori (mo)**

Unlike other question words + **yori**, which express the idea of 'more . . . than', question word + **nani yori (mo)** is an idiomatic expression with the meaning of 'above all', 'more than anything else'.

a 【何より】印象的なのが、カメラの位置が低いことだ。
nani yori inshō-teki na no ga kamera no ichi ga hikui koto da
What's impressive above all is the low position of the camera.

25.2 COMPARISON WITH ADVERBS (**yori**, **motto**, **ichiban**) + ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN

25.2.1 **yori**-adjective/adjectival noun

In this use, **yori-** acts like a pref., used as an equivalent to the comparative form in languages like English.

The construction **yori**-adj./AN itself, and certain derived N + V/adj. expressions with adjectival meaning such as **antei shite iru** 'be secure', **settokuryoku ga aru** 'be convincing', **inpakuto ga ōkii** 'have a big impact', etc. are said to have arisen under influence from Western languages.

a ゲームは【よりリアル】になっている。
gēmu wa yori-riaru ni natte iru
Games have become more real[istic].

b 【より高い】背に【より小さな】足に。
yori takai se ni yori-chīsana ashi ni
[Women have developed] taller figures and smaller feet.

c 直接投資の方が【よりインパクトが大きい】。
chokusetsu tōshi no hō ga yori-inpakuto ga ōkii
Direct investment makes the greater impact.

d “より良いものを【より安く】”をモットーに飛躍を目指す。
yori yoi mono o yori-yasuku o mottō ni hiyaku o mezasu
They aim for dramatic improvement with the motto ‘Better things more cheaply’.

e 今後、着工へ向けて【より説得力のある】理由付けが求められそうだ。
kongo chakkō e mukete yori-settokuryoku no aru riyūzuke ga motomeraresō da
In future, it is likely that a more convincing reason will be required for new construction works.

25.2.2 motto

motto ‘more’ can be used to modify adj./AN, but also a V phrase such as **o-shigoto nasaru** ‘do work’ (hon.). Note also the intensified version **motto motto** (see 5.2).

a 体を動かすのが好き。人と話すのが【もっと好き】。
karada o ugokasu no ga suki. hito to hanasu no ga motto suki
I like moving my body. Talking with people I like [even] more.

b 【もっともっとお仕事をなさっ】てほしかったのに、本当に残念です。
motto motto o-shigoto o nasatte hoshikatta no ni hontō ni zannen desu
I wanted her [= late actress] to do lots more [good] work, but . . . it’s such a pity.

25.2.3 ichiban/mottomo

As can be seen from the examples, **ichiban** and **mottomo** (both meaning ‘most’) also modify adj. and V phrases besides adj./AN, in particular before N, i.e. in relative clauses (examples b and c).

a 雪解け前の雪崩が【一番怖い】。
yukidoke-mae no nadare ga ichiban kowai
Snowslides before the thaw are the most frightening.

b 今が【一番、仕事がおもしろい】時期だ。
ima ga ichiban shigoto ga omoshiroi jiki da
Now is the time when work is most interesting.

c 今年【もっとも記憶に残った】出来事はやはり猛暑だった。
kotoshi mottomo kioku ni nokotta dekigoto wa yahari mōsho datta
What has remained most in my memory this year was the extreme heat.

Note there is also a conjunction **mottomo** (example d), which indicates a qualification of what was said previously ‘mind you’, ‘however’. This is usually found at the beginning of a sentence, and is *not* followed by adj./AN or V (see 30.5)

d 私は今、日本の新聞六種類の他に、英字新聞を一つ、それからアメリカの週刊誌二つ、東南アジアの英語の週刊誌を読む。【もっとも】全部読む訳ではない。
watashi wa ima nihon no shinbun roku-shurui no hoka ni eiji shinbun o hitotsu, sorekara amerika no shūkanshi futatsu, tōnan ajia no eigo no shūkanshi o yomu. mottomo zenbu yomu wake de wa nai
Besides six Japanese newspapers, I'm currently reading one English newspaper, two US weekly magazines, and a Southeast Asian English weekly. 【Mind you】, it's not the case that I read them in their entirety.

25.2.4 hodo

hodo indicates the degree to which the following V/adj./AN (or cop.) applies 'as much as' (also **gurai/kurai**, see 61). It is used with neg. or pos. pred. (see 64).

a これ【ほど】うれしいことはありません。
kore hodo ureshii koto wa arimasen
Nothing could make me happier (*lit.* "There is no thing that is as happy [for me] as this").

b 苦しい時【ほど】愛する対象が欲しいんです。それが証拠に独り暮らしの老人がよく犬を飼っている。
kurushii toki hodo aisuru taishō ga hoshii n desu. sore ga shōko ni hitori-gurashi no rōjin ga yoku inu o katte iru
One never wants something to love so much as in difficult times. A good illustration of this is that old people living alone often keep dogs.

25.2.5 *X* no naka de (wa/mo) + evaluatory predicate

naka de indicates that of the entity to which **naka de** is attached, the part which follows (marked by the evaluatory pred.) is 'is relatively good/bad, etc. of/amongst/compared to *X*'.

a % 三人兄弟の【中で】太郎が【一番背が高い】。
sannin kyōdai no naka de tarō ga ichiban se ga takai
Of the three brothers, Tarō is the tallest.

b ポリエチレンはプラスチックの【中でも】【最も分解しにくい】ものの一つ。
poriechiren wa purasuchikku no naka de mo mottomo bunkai shinikui mono no hitotsu
Polyethylene is one of the most difficult of plastics to degrade.

c 不況、不況と言うが全国の【中では】九州はまだ【元気がいい】。
fukyō fukyō to iu ga zenkoku no naka de wa kyūshū wa mada genki ga ii
Everyone is saying there's a recession, but Kyushu is still in good shape compared to the rest of the country

25.2.6 (*A* to *B* to (+ particle)) dochira

Here, two items are lined up, joined by the conjoining P **to** (repeated also after *B*). The question word **dochira** gives a choice between these two alternatives, literally meaning "*A* and *B*, which is -er?" (see 167, 215).

a % 紅茶【と】コーヒー【と】【どちら】がいいですか。
kōcha to kōhī to dochira ga ii desu ka
Which would you prefer, tea or coffee?

b 人【と】サル【と】【どちら】が被害者なのだろう。
hito to saru to dochira ga higaisha na no darō
Who are the victims, one wonders, the people [of the village] or the [wild] monkeys.

c しょせん、権力抗争だとすると【どちら】が正しいとか正しくないとかいってみても始まらない。
shosen kenryoku kōsō da to suru to dochira ga tadashii toka tadashikunai toka itte mite mo hajimaranai
Ultimately, if it's a power struggle we're dealing with, there's no point in arguing who's right or wrong.

25.2.7 dore

25.2.7.1 (A *to* B *to* C *to . . . noun to) dore*

Here, three or more items are lined up, joined by the conjoining P **to** (repeated also after *C*). **dore** 'which of three (or more)' is used if the choice is of three or more items.

When followed by **mo** or **-te mo**, the implication is one of 'all' or 'whichever' (see 167).

Note the conjoining P **to** preceding **dore** can also be the adverbial P **to** (example c) or the conjunctive P **to** (example b), resulting of course in a different meaning. Generally, the written language (media etc.) often uses patterns that diverge somewhat from language textbooks (and from such made-up examples as example a)!

Note how in examples b and d the N are lined up in apposition, with commas in-between (see 10).

a % すし【と】てんぷら【と】すきやき【と】、【どれ】が一番好きですか。
sushi to tenpura to sukiyaki to dore ga ichiban suki desu ka
Which do you like best, sushi, tempura or sukiyaki?

b 水泳、釣り、食事の準備、散策……。雑誌のグラビアページを見ている【どれも】楽しそうで、そのままキャンプ場でまねしたくなる。
(**to** = conjunctive P)
suiei, tsuri, shokuji no junbi, sansaku . . . zasshi no gurabia pēji o mite iru to dore mo tanoshisō de sono mama kyanpujō de mane shitaku naru
Swimming, fishing, preparing meals, going for walks . . . If one looks at the photo pages of magazines they all look such fun, so one feels like doing the same at the camp.

c ＡＰＥＣ参加国・地域の人口は二十一億六千万人、GDP（国内総生産）は十三兆四千億ドル、貿易額は三兆四千億ドルと【どれも】世界の半分程度の規模だ。(**to** = adverbial P)
ēpekku sankakoku, chiiki no jinkō wa nijūichioku rokusen mannin jīdīpī kokunai sōseisan wa jūsanchō yonsen'okudoru bōekigaku wa sanchō yonsen'okudoru to dore mo sekai no hanbun teido no kibo da
The population of the APEC countries and areas is 2.16 billion, the GDP is 13.4 billion dollars, and the trade volume is 3.4 billion dollars; whichever you take, it's on a scale of about half of the world.

25.2.7.2 X *no naka de . . . dore*

As in 25.2.7.1, the choice is between three or more items 'which amongst *X*'.

a 写った天体の【中で】、【どれが銀河でどれが恒星か】も自動的に識別できる。
utsutta tentai no naka de dore ga ginga de dore ga kōsei ka mo jidō-teki ni shikibetsu dekiru
It can also automatically distinguish which among the heavenly bodies on screen are galactic and which are fixed stars.

26 COMPLEMENT CLAUSES

Where a simple S has just an NP consisting of N + P, a S containing a complement clause has instead a whole clause which has been converted (nominalized) into an NP by **no** or **koto** (see 135, 83), for example, with **suki** in example a. The valency of **suki** requires the case P **ga** to mark the object of one's liking. In the first S, that object (in []) is a N, but the two S following have one complement clause each (**karada o ugokasu no**), (**hito to hanasu no**), occupying the same slot as **sora**. Both are made into a N equivalent by **no**, as shown in the list beneath example a.

a [空]が好き。[体を動かす【の】]が好き。[人と話す【の】]がもっと好き。
sora ga suki. karada o ugokasu no ga suki. hito to hanasu no ga motto suki
I like the sky. I like moving [my] body. Talking with people I like [even] more.

% **sora**	'the sky'	**ga suki**.
% **karada o ugokasu no**	'moving the body'	**ga suki**.
% **hito to hanasu no**	'talking with people'	**ga** (**motto** 'more') suki.

Depending on the valency of V/adj./AN constituting pred., various other case (and/or focus) P are used. For differences between **koto** and **no** see 84.

b %[ビルがビールを飲む【の】]を見た。
biru ga bīru o nomu no o mita
I saw Bill drink beer.

c %[今日試験がある【こと】]を忘れていた。
kyō shiken ga aru koto o wasurete ita
I'd forgotten that there's an exam today.

d [平和が続く【こと】]を祈りたい。
Heiwa ga tsuzuku koto o inoritai
I [wish to] pray that the peace will last.

e 猛暑のせいか[裸で寝る【の】]が癖になった。
mōsho no sei ka hadaka de neru no ga kuse ni natta
Possibly because of the heatwave, sleeping naked has become a habit.

f 新鮮なのが一目【で】分かる。
shinsen na no ga hitome de wakaru
You can see it's fresh at a glance.

27 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Conditional S are compound S which are joined by a conjunctive P or equivalent that indicates a condition, in the form [S1 conjunctive P, S2]. As their name suggests, S1 indicates a condition 'if', 'when', etc. for S2.

Conjunctive P include the following: **-ba** (see 13), **nara** (see 108), **-tara** (see 191), **-te mo** (see 206), **to** (216) (see also 14).

28 CONJOINING

Depending on the size of the units conjoined, the following three types of conjoining can be distinguished (for details and examples, see also cross-referenced entries):

Conjoining of nouns see 215, 220, 241, 29.2, 94.4
Conjoining of clauses see 29.3, 31, 178.5
Conjoining of sentences see 31

29 CONJOINING BY COMMA

A comma can conjoin numbers, items or clauses in the sense of 'or' or 'and'.

29.1 Numbers
29.2 Items
29.3 Clauses

29.1 NUMBERS

With num., approximate numbers are formed by lining up two successive num., usually SJ, with a comma between them, in the sense of 'four or five', etc. Note that in combinations like 8, 9 the consonant of the second num. is doubled, i.e. **hak-ku**, and **shi** is used rather than **yon** (as in example a).

Depending on what's being counted, appropriate C are attached (see 36).

The two numbers form one unit, and no other conjoining particles can be used.

a 賢人会議のメンバーは四【、】五人でいいでしょう。
kenjin kaigi no menbā wa shigonin de ii deshō
As for the members of the wise men's committee, four or five should be sufficient.

29.2 ITEMS

With items lined up in sequence in the sense of 'and' or 'or'.

Note, however, that in example b, although the comma translates as 'or', the [*A* **to** *B* **to dochira**] construction means (see 25.2.6) that this is in fact also an instance of 'and'.

ka, **ya** and **toka** can also be used instead of a comma (for examples, see 71, 220, 241).

a ほかに必要なのは送料【、】箱代【、】氷代ぐらい。
hoka ni hitsuyō na no wa sōryō hakodai kōridai gurai
The only other things required are money for postage, the charge for the box and the charge for ice.

b 往復とも JR【、】航空機のどちらでも選択できる。
Ōfuku tomo JR kōkū-ki no dochira demo sentaku dekiru
For both the outward and inward journeys, you can select either Japan Rail or aeroplane.

29.3 CLAUSES

This is seen with pairs of opposites 'or'; **toka** could also be used instead of a comma (see 71, 220.1).

a 写真がうまい【 】へたは関係ない。
shashin ga umai heta wa kankei nai
Being good or bad at photography doesn't matter.

30 CONJUNCTIONS

These are normally used to conjoin S, i.e. they're found at the beginning of a S, but some are also found within S.

Conjunctions connect S in a variety of meanings. Some conjunctions of addition (see 30.1), conjunctions of choice (see 30.8), etc., can also be used between N or phrases.

30.1 Addition
30.2 Consequence
30.3 Immediate consequence
30.4 Contrast
30.5 Qualification
30.6 Reason
30.7 Sequence
30.8 Choice
30.9 Alternative
30.10 Paraphrasing
30.11 Change of topic/coming to the point

30.1 ADDITION

In the sense of 'and', 'besides', 'moreover', these include **soshite, mata, shikamo, sono ue, sore ni, sara ni, oyobi.**

a 料理は味つけが大事です。【そして】、旬のものを使い、素材の持ち味を生かしてこそ健康な料理が作れます。
ryōri wa ajitsuke ga daiji desu. soshite shun no mono o tsukai sozai no mochiaji o ikashite koso kenkō na ryōri ga tsukuremasu
In cooking, seasoning is important. And, if you use things that are in season and bring out the taste of the ingredients, then you can make healthy dishes.

b 蛤の殻は一つとして同じ模様のものがない。【また】、もとの片割れでなければ噛み合わせが合わない。
hamaguri no kara wa hitotsu to shite onaji moyō no mono ga nai. mata moto no kataware de nakereba kamiawase ga awanai
There is not one shell of the cherrystone clam that has the same pattern. Moreover, the shell fits only its original counterpart.

c パイユート族は遊牧民で、絶えず、【しかも】長距離を移動しましたから、常に身軽でした。
paiyūto-zoku wa yūbokumin de taezu shikamo chōkyori o idō shimashita kara tsune ni migaru deshita
The Paiutes were nomads, and because they constantly moved, and over large distances at that, they always travelled lightly.

d コンパクトボディなのに、大きなモニターだから、ベストアングルが探しやすい。【そのうえ】、長時間撮影もラク。
konpakuto bodi na no ni ōki na monitā da kara besuto anguru ga sagashiyasui. sono ue chōjikan satsuei mo raku
Although it has a compact body, because it has a large monitor the best angle is easy to find. Moreover, extended filming is easy too.

e その後妻が近所で捨てられていた小猫を拾ってきた。大部分まっ黒で【それに】少しの白を交えた雌猫であった。
sono go tsuma ga kinjo de suterarete ita koneko o hirotte kita. daibubun makkuro de sore ni sukoshi shiro o majieta mesuneko de atta
Subsequently, my wife picked up a kitten that had been abandoned nearby. It was a predominantly black female with a little white mixed in.

f なかには日の丸交通のように250メートル、百円に引き下げたいという積極派もいる。【さらに】年内にはタクシー業界のディスカウンター、エムケイ・タクシーが東京に進出する。
naka ni wa hinomaru kōtsū no yō ni nihyaku gojū mētoru hyaku-en ni hikisagetai to iu sekkyokuha mo iru. sara ni nennai ni wa takushī gyōkai no disukauntā emukei takushī ga tōkyō ni shinshutsu suru
There are also some aggressive companies such as Hinomaru Transport, who want to lower [the fare] to one hundred yen per 250 metres. Furthermore, before the end of the year the discounter of the taxi world, MK Taxi, is going to extend its operations to Tokyo.

30.2 CONSEQUENCE

Indicating the meaning of 'consequently', 'therefore', these include **da kara**, **sore de**, **soko de**, **shitagatte**, **sono tame**.

a 寒さに弱い熱帯産の植物だが、温室で育てれば真冬にも花が咲く。
【だから】、冬から春にかけては洋ランの季節で、園芸店にも華麗な色どりの花があふれている。
samusa ni yowai nettai-san no shokubutsu da ga onshitsu de sodatereba mafuyu ni mo hana ga saku. da kara fuyu kara haru ni kakete wa yōran no kisetsu de engeiten ni mo karei na irodori no hana ga afurete iru
It's a plant from the tropics which is easily affected by the cold, but if raised in a hothouse it flowers even in the middle of winter. Therefore, [the time] from winter to spring is the season for Western orchids, and gardening shops too are full of [their] gorgeous many-coloured flowers.

b 大学の公開講座は回数が少ない上に、担当教員も毎回変わる講座が多い。
【そこで】、通常の講義のように16回とおしで、上級レベルの講座を開いた。
daigaku no kōkai kōza wa kaisū ga sukunai ue ni tantō kyōin mo maikai kawaru kōza ga ōi. soko de tsūjō no kōgi no yō ni jūrokkai tōshi de jōkyū reberu no kōza o hiraita
University courses for the general public are short and often have different lecturers each time. Therefore, we have established an advanced-level course that runs continuously for 16 classes, just like a regular course.

c 今年は猛暑だったせいもあり、北海道のトマトがことさら上等。
【したがって】ジュースもたいへん美味だ。
kotoshi wa mōsho datta sei mo ari hokkaidō no tomato ga kotosara jōtō. shitagatte jūsu mo taihen bimi da
Partly because [this summer] was a very hot one, this year's Hokkaido tomatoes are especially good. Consequently, the juice is very tasty too.

d インフルエンザワクチンはインフルエンザ以外の風邪に効果がない。
【そのため】、「ワクチンを接種しても、風邪にかかった。きかなかったのではないか」と感じる人が多い。
infuruenza wakuchin wa infuruenza igai no kaze ni kōka ga nai. sono tame wakuchin o sesshu shite mo kaze ni kakatta. kikanakatta no de wa nai ka to kanjiru hito ga ōi
Influenza vaccine has no effect on colds, only on flu. Therefore, many feel that even though they had a vaccination, they [still] caught a cold, [and] it didn't work.

30.3 IMMEDIATE CONSEQUENCE

The sense of 'just then', 'thereupon' is indicated by **suru to**.

a 【すると】その日の夜のうちに、東京へ逃げて帰った。【すると】すぐさま父親が飛んで来て、連れ戻された。
suru to sono hi no yoru no uchi ni tōkyō e nigetekaetta. suru to sugusama chichioya ga tonde kite tsure-modosareta.
Thereupon, we fled back to Tokyo that night. Then father rushed over, and we were taken back.

30.4 CONTRAST

In the meaning of 'however', 'but', 'on the contrary', the following are used: **shikashi**, **keredomo**, **da ga**, **datte**, **sore demo**, **demo**, **tokoro ga**, **to wa ie**, etc.

a 子どもを可愛がりなさいということは正しいが、【しかし】三歳までに規則正しい生活習慣をつけさせることも大切である。
kodomo o kawaigari-nasai to iu koto wa tadashii ga, shikashi sansai made-ni kisoku tadashii seikatsu shūkan o tsukesaseru koto mo taisetsu de aru
It's right to tell people to dote on their children, but it's also important to make them acquire regular living habits by the age of 3.

b 豪華なシャンデリアもなければ赤い絨毯が敷かれたエントランスホールもない。【けれども】、私には、この簡素な場所が東京でもっとも贅沢な劇の場であるように思える。
gōka na shanderia mo nakereba akai jūtan ga shikareta entoransu hōru mo nai. keredomo watashi ni wa kono kanso na basho ga tōkyō de mottomo zeitaku na geki no ba de aru yō ni omoeru
There is no luxurious chandelier, nor an entrance hall with red carpet. However, for me this simple place feels like the most luxurious spot for [staging] plays.

c ビルはケンブリッジ大学教授、労働法の権威である。【だが】彼と会っても話はすべて野球がらみである。
biru wa kenburijji daigaku kyōju rōdōhō no ken'i de aru. da ga kare to atte mo hanashi wa subete yakyūgarami de aru
Bill is a Cambridge University professor, and an authority on labour law. But when you meet him, everything he says has to do with baseball.

d 「どっか行こうよ」「今年のクリスマスは家でホームパーティーしようって言ったのは君だぜ」「【だって】、もう家にいるのあきちゃったんだもん」「じゃあ、原宿の表参道にでも行くか。」
dokka ikō yo. kotoshi no kurisumasu wa ie de hōmu-pātī shiyo tte itta no wa kimi da ze. datte mō ie ni iru no akichatta n da mon. jā, harajuku no omotesandō ni de mo iku ka
'Let's go somewhere.' 'It was you who said that this Christmas we should have a house party.' 'All right then, let's go to Omotesandō in Harajuku or somewhere.'

e 真冬で雪がちらつく夜中の二時ごろ、凍えながら馬を引き、こちらが倒れそうになったこともあった。【でも】、こうして一生懸命に世話をしても、馬が死んじゃうことはよくある。
mafuyu de yuki ga chiratsuku yonaka no niji goro kogoe-nagara uma o hiki kochira ga taoresō ni natta koto mo atta. de mo kōshite isshōkenmei ni sewa o shite mo uma ga shinjau koto wa yoku aru
There've been times when I pulled the horse around at 2 a.m. in the middle of winter with snow falling, numb with cold, and on the verge of breaking down from exhaustion. But even when I looked after the horse with great devotion like that, it often died.

f 六万円前後のボードのほか、ブーツ、ウエアなど一通りそろえると、十五万一二十万円はかかる。【それでも】週末ともなると、店は二十歳前後の若者でごった返す。
rokuman-en zengo no bōdo no hoka būtsu uea nado hitotōri soroeru to jūgoman kara nijūman-en wa kakaru. sore demo shūmatsu to mo naru to mise wa nijussai zengo no wakamono de gottagaesu
If one gets a complete outfit comprising boots and gear besides a snowboard [costing] around 60,000 yen, it sets you back at least 150,000 to 200,000 yen. And yet, at weekends the shop is bustling with young people around 20 years old.

g 決して手間を惜しむことなく、丹念に作り上げていった。それが職人の誇りであり自慢でもあった。【ところが】、今、職人という言葉さえ死語になりつつあり、その作品は消えていく。
kesshite tema o oshimu koto naku tannen ni tsukuri-agete itta. sore ga shokunin no hokori de ari jiman de mo atta. tokoro ga ima shokunin to iu kotoba sae shigo ni naritsutsu ari sono sakuhin wa kiete iku
They used to make things scrupulously, sparing no trouble. That was the craftsman's pride, and something he would boast of. But now, even the word craftsman is going out of use, and their products are disappearing.

30.5 QUALIFICATION

tadashi, **tada**, **mottomo**, etc. indicate the sense of 'mind you', 'though', 'however'.

a 県内の生産関連指標は、改善傾向を示している。【ただし】、設備投資は年間を通じて動きが乏しかった。
kennai no seisan kanren shihyō wa kaizen keikō o shimeshite iru. tadashi setsubi tōshi wa nenkan o tsūjite ugoki ga toboshikatta
The productivity-related indices in the prefecture are showing an upward trend, but investment in equipment showed poor movement throughout the year.

b 若いんだし、別にカタにはまることはないし、カッコつけて生きたっていいと思う。【ただ】、いじめは、最低だ。恥ずかしい。
wakai n da shi betsu ni kata ni hamaru koto wa nai shi kakko tsukete ikitatte ii to omou. tada ijime wa saitei da. hazukashii
They are young, there's no need for them to conform, and I think it's OK to make themselves look smart. However, bullying is the pits. It makes you feel ashamed.

c 英国から入った子ども半額が、官製料金として広まり、常識になったというわけだ。【もっとも】、官製の常識は万能ではない。
eikoku kara haitta kodomo hangaku ga kanseiryōkin to shite hiromari jōshiki ni natta to iu wake da. mottomo kansei no jōshiki wa bannō de wa nai
So half-price for children, which came in from England, spread through government-controlled prices, and became common sense. The common sense of government control is not universal, though.

30.6 REASON

The meaning of 'because', 'the reason for', etc. is indicated by **naze nara**, **naze ka to iu to**, **to iu no wa**, **to iu koto wa**, etc.

a ただ、パジェロミニはジムニーよりワゴンRの対抗車だ。
【なぜなら】パジェロミニは本当のRV志向というよりも乗用車志向の車だからだ。
tada pajero mini wa jimunī yori wagon R no taikōsha da. naze nara pajero mini ni wa hontō no RV shikō to iu yori mo jōyōsha shikō no kuruma da kara da
Mind you, the Pajero Mini is a rival car for Wagon R rather than Jimny. That is because the Pajero Mini is a more of a passenger car than a real RV car.

b バブル時代には「企業メセナ」という言葉が流行したが、バブル崩壊とともに消滅してしまった。【なぜかというと】、メセナの名の下に企業は単に「モノを売る」ための広告をしていたに過ぎなかったからだ。
baburu jidai ni wa kigyō mesena to iu kotoba ga ryūkō shita ga baburu hōkai to tomo ni shōmetsu shite shimatta. naze ka to iu to mesena no na no moto ni kigyō wa tan ni mono o uru tame no kōkoku o shite ita ni suginakatta kara da
During the bubble years, the expression 'business *mécénat* (= sponsorship of the arts)' was popular, but disappeared with the bursting of the bubble. The reason is that businesses were simply advertising to sell things under the name of *mécénat*.

c 昔の人は御不浄へいったらかならず咳払いしなさい、と言ったものである。【というのは】、そのころチミモウリョウが出て災いをもたらすからなので、咳払いはその魔除けなのである。
mukashi no hito wa gofujō e ittara kanarazu sekibarai shinasai to itta mono de aru. to iu no wa sono koro chimimōryō ga dete wazawai o motarasu kara na no de sekibarai wa sono mayoke na no de aru
In the old days, people used to say that when you went to the toilet you must clear your throat. The reason is that because around that time of day the evil spirits of mountains and rivers came out and made trouble, and clearing your throat would protect you from them.

30.7 SEQUENCE

This indicates the sense of 'first *X*, then *Y*', 'thereafter', which includes **mazu, hajime ni, sore kara, daiichi/ni/san ni** [see also 154].

a 会社に入ってからは、【まず】レンズの技術を、【次に】レンズ以外のことを極めるのが夢となった。
kaisha ni haitte kara wa mazu renzu no gijutsu o tsugi ni renzu igai no koto o kiwameru no ga yume to natta
After I entered the company, my dream was first to master lens technology, and then things other than lenses.

b いかのつぎは、白身の魚を食べることができた。鯛と比良目である。赤貝の身や、さよりなども食べられるようになった。【それから】、だんだん当り前のおかずに魚が食べられるようになってった。
ika no tsugi wa shiromi no sakana o taberu koto ga dekita. tai to hirame de aru. akagai no mi ya sayori nado mo taberareru yō ni natta. sore kara dandan atarimae no okazu ni sakana ga taberareru yō ni natta
After squid, I was able to eat white-fleshed fish. That is, snapper and flounder. I also became able to eat the flesh of ark shell and halfbeak. After that, I gradually became able to eat fish as an ordinary part of a meal.

c 三島由起夫が、「小説家の休暇」というエッセイの中で書いている。「私が太宰治の文学に対して抱いている嫌悪は一種猛烈なものだ。【第一】私はこの人の顔がきらいだ。【第二】にこの人の田舎者のハイカラ趣味がきらいだ。【第三】にこの人が自分に適しない役を演じたのがきらいだ。」
mishima yukio ga shōsetsuka no kyūka to iu essē no naka de kaite iru. watashi ga dazai osamu no bungaku ni taishite idaite iru ken'o wa isshu mōretsu na mono da. daiichi watashi wa kono hito no kao ga kirai da. daini ni kono hito no inakamono no haikara shumi ga kirai da. daisan ni kono hito ga jibun ni tekishinai yaku o enjita no ga kirai da
Mishima Yukio writes in an essay titled 'The Novelist's Vacation': 'The aversion I have to Dazai Osamu's works is quite strong. Firstly,

I dislike his face. Secondly, I dislike his country-bumpkin sense of stylishness. Thirdly, I dislike the fact that he played a part for which he was unsuited.'

30.8 CHOICE

The meaning of 'or' is expressed by **mata wa**, **arui wa**, **moshiku wa**, **naishi (wa)**, **sore tomo**, etc. Note that these are exceptional in that they commonly occur in mid-sentence, unlike most other forms classed here as 'conjunctions'.

a 契約期間中は、時価【または】「買取価格」でいつでも換金できます。
keiyaku kikanchū wa jika mata wa kaitori kakaku de itsu demo kankin dekimasu
During the contract period, you can change them into money any time, at the current market price or at the 'buying price'.

b 私はこの40年を、開発技術者として、【あるいは】経営者として仕事に没頭してきた。
watashi wa kono yonjūnen o kaihatsu gijutsusha to shite arui wa keieisha to shite shigoto ni bottō shite kita
I have devoted the past 40 years to my work, as technical developer or as manager.

c 携帯電話の普及で公衆電話の利用度は多少減ったのだろうか、【それとも】携帯電話のふえた分が上のせとなり、通話の絶対数が増加しているのか。
keitai denwa no fukyū de kōshū denwa no riyōdo wa tashō hetta no darō ka, sore tomo keitai denwa no fueta bun ga uwanose to nari tsūwa no zettaisū ga zōka shite iru no ka
Is it that owing to the spread of mobile phones the use of public telephones has somewhat decreased, or is it that the number of mobile phones has been added on, increasing the overall number of telephones?

30.9 ALTERNATIVE

These include **ippō de**, **ippō**, **tahō**, etc., in the sense of 'on the one hand', 'on the other hand'.

a 現代では、高級品だった洋ランもスーパーマーケットで売られるほどになった。【一方で】、切り花として売買され、花が終われば捨ててしまうようになったのは残念である。
gendai de wa kōkyūhin datta yōran mo sūpāmāketto de urareru hodo ni natta. ippō de kiribana to shite baibai sare hana ga owareba sutete shimau yō ni natta no wa zannen de aru
In our times, the Western orchid, which used to be a luxury item, is sold even in supermarkets. On the other hand, it's a pity that they are now sold as cut flowers and people throw them away when the flowers are finished.

b 「表現して伝達されるべき思想」が目標であり、【一方】「言語」がその目標を達成すべき手段であるということになります。

hyōgen shite dentatsu sarerubeki shisō ga mokuhyō de ari ippō gengo ga sono mokuhyō o tassei subeki shudan de aru to iu koto ni narimasu

The goal is 'An idea that needs to be expressed and communicated', but on the other hand 'language' is the means to achieve that goal.

30.10 PARAPHRASING

In the sense of 'in other words', 'in short', 'that is', 'for example', this includes **tsumari**, **sunawachi**, **yōsuru ni**, **tatoeba**, **iwaba**.

a 館内には月替わりの展示ギャラリーもあり、広い庭園では定期的に文化の祭典も開かれている。【つまり】この博物館は、民族や地域、あるいはコミュニティの百科事典なのだ。

kannai ni wa tsukigawari no tenji gyararī mo ari hiroi teien de wa teikiteki ni bunka no saiten mo hirakarete iru. tsumari kono hakubutsukan wa minzoku ya chiiki arui wa komyuniti no hyakkajiten na no da

Inside, there is a display gallery with monthly changing exhibits, and in the garden periodic cultural festivals are being held. In short, this museum is an encyclopedia of peoples and regions, or the community.

b 行政には規定に先立つ常識、【すなわち】良識が欠かせない。

gyōsei ni wa kitei ni sakidatsu jōshiki sunawachi ryōshiki ga kakasenai

Administration cannot work without the common sense that comes before regulations, in other words sensibility.

c それぞれの組織や団体は政府から独立しており、【要するに】民間のもので、企業と違って営利活動が目的ではない。

sorezore no soshiki ya dantai wa seifu kara dokuritsu shite ori yōsuru ni minkan no mono de kigyō to chigatte eiri katsudō ga mokuteki de wa nai

The various organizations and bodies are independent of the government, in short they are private, but unlike businesses their purpose is not to make a profit.

d 日本の社会には無用の音が多いという。【例えば】、バスの中。

nihon no shakai ni wa muyō no oto ga ōi to iu. tatoeba basu no naka

He says that in Japanese society there are many unnecessary sounds. For instance, inside a bus.

e 我々のような重工業は、【いわば】高級便利屋。必ず世の中に必要とされる。

wareware no yō na jūkōgyō wa iwaba kōkyū benriya. kanarazu yo no naka ni hitsuyō to sareru

Our kind of heavy industry is in a manner of speaking a high-class Jack-of-all-trades. Society will definitely have a need for us.

30.11 CHANGE OF TOPIC/COMING TO THE POINT

In the meaning of 'well', 'by the way', **sate**, **tokoro de**, **de wa**, **ja**, etc. are used.

a 「…うまい酒を飲みたかっただけ。そうしたら思いもかけず盛り上がってしまった」と、太田さんと鈴木さんは顔を見合わせ笑う。-- 【さて】冒頭の貝原益軒の言葉には続きがある。ほどよく飲めば体にいいが、「多く飲むとひとを害する。酒ほどひとを害するものはないのである」というくだりだ。
umai sake o nomitakatta dake. sō shitara omoi mo kakezu moriagatte shimatta to ōta-san to suzuki-san wa kao o miawase warau. sate bōtō no kaibara ekiken no kotoba ni wa tsuzuki ga aru. hodo yoku nomeba karada ni ii ga ōku nomu to hito o gaisuru. sake hodo hito o gaisuru mono wa nai no de aru to iu kudari da
'. . . we just wanted to drink good sake. And, unexpectedly, it ended up becoming quite a party.' Ōta-san and Suzuki-san looked at each other and laughed. Well, the words of Kaibara Ekiken quoted in the beginning have a sequel to them. It's the passage that says that drinking in moderation is good for you, but 'When you drink lots, it harms you. Nothing harms people more than alcohol.'

b 生まれつきカッコいい男なんてものは、存在しない。普段の努力でおのれに磨きをかけることで、ようやくそうなれるのだ。【では】、どうやって磨くのか。
umaretsuki kakko ii otoko nante mono wa sonzai shinai. fudan no doryoku de onore ni migaki o kakeru koto de yōyaku sō nareru no da. de wa dō yatte migaku no ka
There's no such thing as an elegant man by birth. By making constant efforts to polish oneself one finally gets there. OK then how does one do the polishing?

c 「よい水とよい米さえあればよい酒ができる。酒は正直だから」とか。【じゃ】、おれたちがよい米をつくるからおまえやってみろってけしかけたんだ。
yoi mizu to yoi kome sae areba yoi sake ga dekiru. sake wa shōjiki da kara to ka. ja ore-tachi ga yoi kome o tsukuru kara omae yatte miro tte keshikaketa n da
He said things like, 'As long as you have good water and good rice you can make good sake. Sake doesn't lie, you see.' 'Well then,' we spurred him on, 'we'll make the rice, and you try [making the sake]'.

d 元文部大臣井上毅は、間違いを指摘されて自分の無学を深く恥じ、その後、国文のほうに打ち込んだだけではなく、文部大臣になると、大いに国語教育を充実させた。これはこれなりに立派な態度だと思うが、どうだろうか。【ところで】、こういう話を聞いたとき、中年以上の読者は、一つ思い当たることがありませんか

moto monbu daijin inoue tsuyoshi wa machigai o shiteki sarete jibun no mugaku o fukaku haji sono ato kokubun no hō ni uchikonda dake de wa naku monbu daijin ni naru to ōi ni kokugo kyōiku o jūjitsu saseta. kore wa kore nari ni rippa na taido da to omou ga dō darō ka. tokoro de kō iu hanashi o kiita toki chūnen ijō no dokusha wa hitotsu omoiataru koto ga arimasen ka
Inoue Tsuyoshi, the former Minister of Culture, had a mistake pointed out to him and felt deeply ashamed about his ignorance; thereafter, he not only devoted himself to Japanese literature, but when he became Minister of Culture he also greatly improved the teaching of Japanese in the schools. I think that that in its own way is a laudable attitude – what do you [= the reader] think? Incidentally, when you hear a story like this, aren't those of you readers who are middle-aged or older reminded of something?

31 CONJUNCTIVE FORMS

The conjunctive form of V/adj. (**-te**/**-de**) and AN/N + cop. (**de**) has several important functions:

to connect or attach various V to main V, in order to form performatives, aspectual S endings, and the conjunctive P **-te kara**;
to attach the focus P **wa** and **mo** to form a variety of combinations with following items;
to form compound S;
as a NP-equivalent (sometimes called 'gerund') that can attach certain case and other particles such as **ga**, **no**, **demo**, **bakari**.

There is also a conjunctive-form equivalent, formed by V-stem or adj.-stem, used in the written style; of the above four meanings, this is used in the first meaning only, but has some further uses, too (see 178.5, 184).

31.1 With verb/adjective-**te** and adjectival noun/noun + copula-**de**: forming compound sentences
31.1.1 Compound sentences with stem forms of verbs/adjectives
31.1.2 With verbal nouns: 'zero conjunctive form'
31.1.3 Compound sentences using verb/adjective-**te** and adjectival noun/noun + copula-**de**
31.1.4 Colour words: modification and addition
31.2 Uses of sentence-**te** (**de**) + **wa**/**mo** [focus particles]
31.2.1 Verb/adjective/adjectival noun/noun-**te** (**de**) **yoi**/**ii**/**jūbun**
31.2.2 Verb/adjective/adjectival noun/noun-**te** (**de**) **mo ii**/**-tatte ii**
31.2.3 Verb/adjective/adjectival noun/noun-**te** (**de**) **wa**/**chā** (**jā**) + negative form/expression

31.2.4 Adjectival noun/noun **de wa nai/ja nai**
31.2.5 Verb-**te (de) wa**
31.3 Uses of verb-**te (de)**
31.3.1 Verb-**te ageru**, etc.
31.3.2 Verb-**te iru**, etc.
31.3.3 Verb-**te kara**
31.3.4 Sentence-**te sumimasen/gomen nasai/warui**, etc.
31.3.5 Verb-**te naranai**
31.3.5.1 After verbs of feeling
31.3.5.2 After other verbs
31.4 [Verb-**te no**] noun
31.4.1 Verb-**te no** noun (verb-**te** modifying noun)
31.5 Splitting of predicate/copula by a 'sandwiched' particle

31.1 WITH VERB/ADJECTIVE-te AND ADJECTIVAL NOUN/NOUN + COPULA-de: FORMING COMPOUND SENTENCES

Compound S are S which could also be expressed in two separate S. The meaning of a and b below can also be expressed in the following way:

a % ふたをする。赤くなるまで蒸す。
futa o suru. akaku naru made musu
You put on the lid. You steam it until it turns red.

b % 二人組は車で逃走した。夫婦にけがはなかった。
futari-gumi wa kuruma de tōsō shita. fūfu ni kega wa nakatta
The gang of two took flight. The couple were not injured.

Note how the tense of the compound sentence is indicated only by the second pred. For this reason, the **-te** form is also sometimes called the suspensive form.

With V/adj., this function can also be carried out by the stem forms, in the written and formal spoken style (speeches, etc.), and 'zero forms' with VN (see 184).

Compound sentences where the two halves are joined by stem forms indicate an addition 'and', whereas with **-te** the meaning is wider (see 31.1.3 below).

31.1.1 Compound sentences with stem forms of verbs/adjectives (see 184)

- ふたを【し】、赤くなるまで蒸す。
  futa o shi, akaku naru made musu
  You put on the lid, and steam it [crab] until it turns red.

b 二人組は車で【逃走し】、夫婦にけがはなかった。
futari-gumi wa kuruma de tōsō shi, fūfu ni kega wa nakatta
The gang of two took to flight, and the couple were not injured.

c 札幌は日の出は【早く】、日没【は】遅い。
sapporo wa hinode wa hayaku, nichibotsu wa osoi
In Sapporo, the sunrise is early, and the sunset late.

31.1.2 With verbal nouns: 'zero conjunctive form'

With VN, V-stem (**shi**) can be omitted, as the VN itself implicates an action. This is found only in the written language, i.e. newspapers (see 234).

a 車はそのまま逃走【、】女性にけがはなかった。
kuruma wa sono mama tōsō josei ni kega wa nakatta
The car drove off without stopping, and the woman was not hurt.

31.1.3 Compound sentences using verb/adjective-**te** and adjectival noun/noun + copula-**de**

-te/**-de** indicates a variety of meanings, ranging from addition 'and', reason or consequence 'and therefore', and sequence of time 'since'. However, these are meanings that result from the relationship between the parts of the S, and can be expressed more explicitly (see 75).

a せつなく【て】、つらい事件だ。
setsunakute, tsurai jiken da
It's a distressing and cruel incident.

b スポーツ好き【で】、とりわけ「素潜り」が得意。
supōtsu-zuki de, toriwake sumoguri ga tokui
He likes sports, and is especially good at skin diving.

c ドラフト３位の山田広は長打力があっ【て】、足も速い。
dorafuto san'i no yamada hiroshi wa chōdaryoku ga atte, ashi mo hayai
Yamada Hiroshi, who was third in the draft, has long hitting power, and fast legs, too.

d 実験やスライド映写を多用し【て】、分かりやすい。
jikken ya suraido eisha o tayō shite, wakariyasui
It [= the course] is easy to follow, using a lot of experiments and slide projections.

e それも【生まれて】はじめての体験だった。
sore mo umarete hajimete no taiken datta
Also, it [= cutting glass] was a first for me (*lit.* "first time since I was born").

31.1.4 Colour words: modification and addition

Note that although colour words use their **-te** form to modify another adj., when joining colours in the sense of 'and', **-te** cannot be used. Instead, their noun form is used, joined by **to** [conjoining P].

Modifying another adj.:

a 一メートルくらい掘ると、赤く【て】固い土の層にぶつかった。
ichimētoru kurai horu to akakute katai tsuchi no sō ni butsukatta
When we had dug [to the depth of] about a metre, we came upon a layer of red, hard soil.

Colours *A* and *B*:

b 色は青【と】エンジの二色。
iro wa ao to enji no nishoku
It comes in two colours, blue and dark red.

31.2 USES OF SENTENCE-**te** (**de**) + **wa**/**mo** [FOCUS PARTICLES]

31.2.1 Verb/adjective/adjectival noun/noun-**te** (**de**) **yoi**/**ii**/**jūbun**

With pred. like **yoi**/**ii** 'good', **jūbun** 'sufficient', the combination indicates sufficiency (that the state indicated by adj./AN/N 'is OK', 'is sufficient'), or recommendation, i.e. that the course of action indicated by V-**te** is/isn't recommendable.

a 判を押すだけ【でい】い。
han o osu dake de ii
All you need to do is put your seal on it.

b コメが予想以上の大豊作【でよ】かった。
kome ga yosō ijō no daihōsaku de yokatta
Thankfully, the rice harvest was a bumper harvest beyond expectation.

31.2.2 Verb/adjective/adjectival noun/noun-**te** (**de**) **mo ii**/**-tatte ii**

-te mo ii, etc. is used to give (or ask for) permission to carry out the action of the V it is attached to ('it's OK if', 'you may' and in questions 'is it OK if?').

Instead of V-**te**/**de mo ii** only (but not in questions!), an even more colloquial variant **-tatte**/**-datte ii** can be used.

a % ここは泳い【でもい】いですか。
koko wa oyoide mo ii desu ka
Can one swim here?

b ドレス買っ【てもい】い?
doresu katte mo ii
Is it OK if I buy a dress?

c クリスマスはどんな過ごし方をし【たってい】い。
kurisumasu wa donna sugoshikata o shitatte ii
You can spend Christmas any way you like.

31.2.3 Verb/adjective/adjectival noun/noun-**te** (**de**) **wa**/**chā** (**jā**) + negative form/expression

Here, **-te wa** (or its variant **-chā**) or **-de wa** (variant **-jā**) is followed by a neg. expression such as **naranai**, **ikenai**, **dame**, etc. The combination expresses the idea of 'must', 'have to'.

It can be attached to either pos. forms (examples a and c) or neg. forms (example b) (see 210.3, 210.4, 50.2).

a 趣味は仕事になっ【てはならな】い。
shumi wa shigoto ni natte wa naranai
[One's] hobby must not turn into one's job.

b 「おもしろく【なくちゃだめ】だ」という。
omoshirokunakucha dame da to iu
'It has to be interesting', he says.

c 机上の勉強だけ【ではだめ】。
kijō no benkyō dake de wa dame
Learning about things just from books (*lit.* "on the desk") is no good.

31.2.4 Adjectival noun/noun **de wa nai/ja nai**

de wa nai/ja nai is the neg. form of the cop. (see 35, 111.1.3.1).

a 安くなければ、おしゃれ【じゃな】い。
yasukunakereba oshare ja nai
If it isn't cheap, it's not fashionable.

31.2.5 Verb-**te** (**de**) **wa**

V-**te** (**de**) **wa** joins two different V to indicate repeated action, i.e. that the combined action occurs over and over again (see 210).

a % 波が寄せ【ては】返る
nami ga yosete wa kaeru
The constant motion of the surf (*lit.* "The waves keep coming in and going out")

b ちょっと口にし【ては】次々と灰皿へ。
chotto kuchi ni shite wa tsugitsugi to haizara e
He smokes them briefly [each time], and then one after the other [stubs them out] in the ashtray.

31.3 USES OF VERB-**te (de)**

31.3.1 Verb-**te ageru**, etc.

With the addition of performative V like **ageru**, V-**te** forms performatives like **-te ageru** (see 195)/**hoshii** (see 197)/**kudasai**/**kureru**/**morau** (see 202, 203, 207), although with informal commands, **kudasai**, etc. can also be omitted (see also 24).

a お菓子を買っ【てあげ】る。
okashi o katte ageru
I'll buy you sweets.

31.3.2 Verb-**te iru**, etc.

V-**te** forms aspectual S endings like **-te aru** (see 196)/**-te iku** (see 198)/**-te iru** (see 199)/**-te kuru** (see 204)/**-te oku** (see 208)/**-te shimau** (see 209).

a いつかまた、行っ【てみ】たい。
itsu ka mata itte mitai
Sometime, I'd like to go again.

31.3.3 Verb-**te kara**

This combination indicates the idea of 'after', 'once' (see **-te kara**).

a 年をとっ【てから】は町の方が暮らしやすい…
toshi o totte kara wa machi no hō ga kurashiyasui
Once you're old, it's easier to live in town . . . [than the country]

31.3.4 Sentence-**te sumimasen/gomen nasai/warui**, etc.

Followed by an expression of apology, the combination means 'sorry for . . .'. For apologizing about something that took place in the past, apologies with past forms are used. This use is also found with conjunctive forms of adj., and AN/N + cop.

a 返事が遅れ【てすみません】。
henji ga okurete sumimasen
Sorry for the late reply (*lit.* "replying late")

b 汗臭く【てすみません】。
ase-kusakute sumimasen
Sorry I smell of sweat

31.3.5 Verb-**te naranai**

31.3.5.1 *After verbs of feeling*

After V of feeling (**kanji/ki ga suru** 'have a feeling', **oshimareru** 'to be regretted', **omoeru** 'be felt', -**te naranai** indicates that one 'can't help having that feeling' (see 183).

a 大江健三郎氏がノーベル文学賞受賞者に決まり、にわかに著作が売れ出したというが、日本人の文化享受の在り方を端的に示す皮肉な現象と【思えてならな】い。
ōe kenzaburo-shi ga nōberu bungakushō jushōsha ni kimari niwaka ni chosaku ga uredashita to iu ga nihonjin no bunka kyōju no arikata o tantekini shimesu hiniku na genshō to omoete naranai
It is said that when Ōe Kenzaburō was given the Nobel prize his works suddenly began to sell; I can't help feeling that this is a phenomenon that epitomizes the way the Japanese import culture.

b 何か順序が違っているような【気がしてならな】い。
nani ka junjo ga chigatte iru yō na ki ga shite naranai
I can't help feeling that somehow the order of things is wrong.

c 関西財界にとって【惜しまれてならな】い。
kansai zaikai ni totte oshimarete naranai
For the Kansai economic world, [his death] is a great loss (*lit.* "one cannot but regret [his death]").

31.3.5.2 *After other verbs*

After other V, **te (wa) naranai** indicates prohibition 'must not'.

a 俳人は毎年原爆忌の名で、【忘れてならな】い日のことを確かめる。
haijin wa mainen genbaku-ki no na de wasurete naranai hi no koto o tashikameru
Every year the haiku poet confirms the day not to be forgotten, in the name of the anniversary of the atomic bomb.

31.4 [VERB-**te no**] NOUN

When V-**te no** modifies a following N, it functions like a NP.

31.4.1 Verb-**te no** noun (verb-**te** modifying noun)

For details and examples, see 1.3.3, 133.1.13, also 55.8.2

31.5 SPLITTING OF PREDICATE/COPULA BY A 'SANDWICHED' PARTICLE

The forms that get split include **-te/de aru/iru**, and the cop. **de aru**, as **da** cannot be split any further.

Splitting P include **mo** and **wa** 17.3, 42.3, 94.3, 94.7, 94.8 and 236.5.3.2, 236.5.3.3).

Example a is an instance of **de aru** being split by the P **mo**, which adds the sense of 'also'.

a 父親のかわり【でもあっ】た。
chichioya no kawari de mo atta
He was also a father-substitute.

32 CONJUNCTIVE FORMS AND PARTICLES: COMPARISON

Conjunctive forms and P join clauses in the sense of 'and'. They include the following: **-te**, stem forms, **shi**, **-tari** (see 31, 179, 184, 192).

32.1 Stem forms
32.2 **-te/de**
32.3 **shi**
32.4 **-tari**

32.1 STEM FORMS

Stem forms of V and adj. always mean 'and' when joining clauses into compound sentences.

a 二人組は車で【逃走し】、夫婦にけがはなかった。
futari-gumi wa kuruma de tōsō shi, fūfu ni kega wa nakatta
The gang of two took flight, and the couple were not injured.

b 札幌は日の出は【早く】、日没は遅い。
sapporo wa hinode wa hayaku, nichibotsu wa osoi
In Sapporo, the sunrise is early, and the sunset is late.

With VN only, it is also common to drop **shi**, the conjunctive form of **suru**. However, this is found only in the written language, such as newspapers (see 234).

c 車はそのまま逃走【、】女性にけがはなかった。
kuruma wa sono mama tōsō josei ni kega wa nakatta
The car drove off without stopping, and the woman was not hurt.

32.2 -te/de

-te/de can also be used in the same way in the sense of 'and' (example a), but depending on the context can indicate a wider range of meanings when forming compound S. In example b, the implication is one of reason 'and therefore', and in example c, the implication is one of time sequence 'since/after being born' (see 31).

a スポーツ好き【で】、とりわけ「素潜り」が得意。
supōtsu-zuki de, toriwake sumoguri ga tokui
He likes sports, and is especially good at skin diving.

b 実験やスライド映写を多用し【て】、分かりやすい。
jikken ya suraido eisha o tayō shite, wakariyasui
It [= the course] uses a lot of experiments and slide projections, and is therefore easy to follow.

c それも【生まれて】はじめての体験だった。
sore mo umarete hajimete no taiken datta
Also, it [= cutting glass] was a first for me (*lit.* "first time since I was born").

32.3 shi

Used between clauses, **shi** signals an addition 'and', 'and (moreover)'. It is used when giving reasons, excuses, etc. (often more than one). Example a has two instances of **shi** attached to the two reasons (or motivations) given.

Examples b and c have only one instance of **shi**, but give a second reason in different form, using **N** + **wa/mo**, respectively.

Example b is a politician's reply to being asked about the influence of a scandal on the stock market, and example c explains why the speaker thinks that in times of recession live shows don't necessarily prosper.

a 若いんだ【し】、別にカタにはまることはない【し】、カッコつけて生きたっていいと思う。
wakai n da shi betsu ni kata ni hamaru koto wa nai shi kakko tsukete ikitatte ii to omou
I think it's OK to make themselves look smart – they are young, and there's no need for them to conform.

b この事件はほぼ終息した【し】、二度と起こることはない。
kono jiken wa hobo shūsoku shita shi nido to okoru koto wa nai
This incident has more or less ended, and will never happen again.

c 家で寝転がってテレビでも見ている方が楽だ【し】、お金もかからない。
ie de nekorogatte terebi demo mite iru hō ga raku da shi o-kane mo kakaranai
Lying down at home watching TV is easier, and doesn't cost anything either.

32.4 -tari

In its use after V only, **-tari** indicates a range of actions or activities that are performed by the same person, in which use it often translates as 'and'.

-tari is mostly used twice in a sentence [*A*-**tari** *B*-**tari suru** ('do things/things are like *A* and/or *B*')], **-tari suru** can be used by itself (with the implication of 'things like'), and examples without **suru** (example b) are found too.

a 例えば、盲導犬は人にほえ【たり】、かみつい【たりする】ことがない。
tatoeba, mōdōken wa hito ni hoetari, kamitsuitari suru koto ga nai
For instance, guide dogs don't do things like barking at people and/or biting them.

b 産業の本来の役割は、物やサービスを作っ【たり】、販売することである。
sangyō no honrai no yakuwari wa mono ya sābisu o tsukuttari hanbai suru koto de aru
The original role of industry is to make things and services, and sell [them].

33 CONTRAST EXPRESSIONS: COMPARISON

A contrast can obtain between N or NP, or between clauses.

33.1 Contrast between nouns or noun phrases
33.2 Contrast between clauses
33.2.1 **ga** and **keredomo**
33.2.1.1 Weak contrast
33.2.1.2 Weak contrast in noun-modifying clauses
33.2.1.3 Introducing a comment or request
33.2.1.4 Differences
33.2.2 **-nagara (mo)**, **-tsutsu (mo)**, **noni**, **ga** and **keredomo**

33.1 CONTRAST BETWEEN NOUNS OR NOUN PHRASES

This is effected by **wa** (see 236.5), including combinations with conjunctive P.

33.2 CONTRAST BETWEEN CLAUSES

Contrast between clauses can be indicated by the conjunctive P **ga** (see 56), **keredomo** (see 79), **-nagara (mo)** (see 103), **noni** (see 140), and **-tsutsu (mo)** (see 225) (see also 8, 88).

33.2.1 ga and keredomo

33.2.1.1 *Weak contrast*

Both express a weak contrast between two clauses (often in the form [N **wa ga/keredomo**, N **wa**], 'but'.

a 恋人に別れはある【けど】、友達に別れはありません。
koibito ni wakare wa aru kedo tomodachi ni wakare wa arimasen
Lovers can split up, but not friends.

33.2.1.2 *Weak contrast in noun-modifying clauses*

Both can be used in N-mod. sequences (in [], i.e. *both* adj./V connected by **ga/keredomo** modify the final N), usually without a comma (and accompanying comma intonation in speech).

a ［忙しかった【が】いい］一年だった。
isogashikatta ga ii ichinen datta
It was a busy but good year.

b ［貧しい【けれども】村一番の働き者］。
mazushii keredomo mura ichiban no hatarakimono
She's poor but the hardest worker in the village.

33.2.1.3 *Introducing a comment or request*

Both can be used to introduce a comment or request. Both can be used in unfinished S.

a 「特に予定はない【けれど】」「じゃあ、朝十時に来てください」。
toku ni yotei wa nai keredo. jā asa jūji ni kite kudasai
'I don't have anything particular to do.' 'In that case, come at 10 a.m.'

b 「今の字名では不便だ【けれど】……」と古くからの名を惜しむ声も多い。
ima no azana de wa fuben da keredo to furuku kara no na o oshimu koe mo ōi
There are also many who are sorry to see the old names go, saying, 'The old locality names are impractical but . . .'

33.2.1.4 *Differences*

The contrast expressed by **ga** can be so weak that S1 **ga** is more like a preamble to S2, translatable as 'and', or rendered just with a colon.

a 竹内さんは病院に運ばれた【が】、頭などを強く打ち、重体。
takeuchi-san wa byōin ni hakobareta ga atama nado o tsuyoku uchi jūtai
Takeuchi-san was taken to hospital; he's in intensive care, having hit his head severely.

b 両親は離婚する【が】、母親は作家と再婚する。
ryōshin wa rikon suru ga hahaoya wa sakka to saikon suru
The parents are getting divorced, and the mother is remarrying a writer.

33.2.2 -nagara (mo), -tsutsu (mo), noni, ga and **keredomo**

-nagara/-tsutsu (**mo**) and **noni** express a stronger contrast than **ga** and **keredomo**, in the sense of 'even though'. **-nagara/-tsutsu** (**mo**) are mostly used in the written (or formal spoken) language, usually about third persons, whereas the others are more colloquial. **-nagara/-tsutsu** (**mo**) express a factual contrast, whereas **noni** indicates a more subjective or emotional contrast. This is particularly evident in the use of **noni** in unfinished sentences, where it expresses disappointment or regret (140.2).

34 CONVERSIONS

There is a number of productive ways of converting words into different word classes by attaching suf., or the V **suru**.

34.1 Adjective/adjectival noun → noun
34.1.1 Adjective-root-**sa**
34.1.2 Adjective-root-**mi**
34.1.3 Adjective-stem (-**ku**)
34.2 Verb → noun-**kata**, -**yō**
34.3 Clause → noun
34.4 Noun/Western Japanese-adjective → adjective
34.5 Noun/verb-**suru** → noun
34.5.1 Sino-Japanese/Western Japanese **suru** nouns
34.5.2 Using verb-stem of many verbs

34.1 ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN → NOUN

34.1.1 Adjective-root-**sa**

This formation is very productive, being possible with just about every adjective (see 178)

34.1.2 Adjective-root-**mi**

Some adj. proper also have N-forms ending in **-mi**. These are derived by adding **-mi** to adjective-root. Examples include **tsuyomi** 'strength', **yowami** 'weakness', **kayumi** 'itch'.

Whereas the **-sa** forms are simple nominalizations, the **-mi** forms tend to have some idiomatic meaning. Compare the examples below for the difference between **tsuyosa** 'strength' (example a) and **tsuyomi** 'strength', 'strong point' (example b).

a 常緑樹の緑は、厳冬を乗り越える命の【強さ】を象徴するのだそうだ。
jōrokuju no midori wa gentō o norikoeru inochi no tsuyosa o shōchō suru no da sō da
The green of evergreen trees is said to symbolize the strength of life in getting through severe winters.

b 豊富な業務ソフト群が98パソコンの【強み】の一つ。
hōfu na gyōmu sofuto gun ga kyūhachi pasokon no tsuyomi no hitotsu
The rich array of business software is one of the strong points of the 98 PC.

34.1.3 Adjective-stem (**-ku**)

A very small number of adj. also has a noun form which uses the adj.-stem form, **-ku**. This is limited to a select number of A that express distance or time, **tōku** 'distance', **chikaku** 'vicinity', **furuku** 'of old' and **ōku** 'plenty'.

Note 1 – in its N form (as opposed to its adj.-**ku** use, see Notes 2 and 3), **ōku** is used only to modify other N by means of **no** in the sense of 'many'.

tōku, **chikaku** and **furuku** can also attach other case or focus P besides modifying other N by means of the **no**.

Note 2 – these forms can of course also be used as conjunctive form equivalents of adj. (see 31.1.1).

Note 3 **chikaku** can also be used as an adv. in the sense of 'soon'.

a 女性は【近く】の銀行で現金を引き出した後、息子の家まで歩いて行くところだったという。
josei wa chikaku no ginkō de genkin o hikidashita ato musuko no ie made aruite iku tokoro datta to iu
The woman says that she was about to walk to her son's house after having withdrawn some cash from a nearby bank.

b 近くにいるより【遠く】から見たほうが目立つ。
chikaku ni iru yori tōku kara mita hō ga medatsu
It [= the clock] is more impressive when seen from a distance rather than close to.

34.2 VERB → NOUN-**kata**, **-yō**

For details and examples, see 78, 245, 184.

34.3 CLAUSE → NOUN

For details and examples, see 83, 135, 218.

34.4 NOUN/WESTERN JAPANESE-ADJECTIVE → ADJECTIVE

Attaching **-teki** is a very productive way of forming adj. from N and WJ adj. (see 212). Another productive suf. is **-ppoi**, indicating appearance (see 162).

Note – there are quite a few Japanese equivalents of the English expression 'Japanese', which include the following: **nihon no, nihonshiki no, nihongo no, nihonjin no**. See the following examples for the differences.

a %日本のカメラ
nihon no kamera
A Japanese camera

b %日本式（の）トイレ
nihonshiki (no) toire
A Japanese-style toilet

c %日本語の新聞
nihongo no shinbun
A Japanese [language] newspaper

d %日本人の友だち
nihonjin no tomodachi
A Japanese friend

34.5 NOUN/VERB-**suru** → NOUN

There are two ways of converting V into N.

34.5.1 Sino-Japanese/Western Japanese **suru** nouns

Using SJ and WJ N that can attach **suru** (i.e. N with a verbal meaning) without the **suru**.

a 体内時計や生体リズムの【研究】は動物でも進んでいる。
tainai-dokei ya seitai rizumu no kenkyū wa dōbutsu demo susunde iru
【Research】into body clocks and organic rhythms is progressing with animals, too.

34.5.2 Using verb-stem of many verbs

Using V-stem (the N form of many V) to form VN. This conversion is possible with most V whose action can be controlled by the actor. VN are especially common in the pattern [verb-stem **ni iku/kuru**] (see 116.10).

a またぜひ【働き】に行きたい。(cf., 働く 'to work')
mata zehi hataraki ni ikitai
I very much want to go to【work】again

Table 7 Forms of the copula

	Plain	*Polite*	*Learned-plain*	*Learned-polite*
1 Non-past	**da**, 0 (zero), **na**, **no**	**desu**	**de aru**	**de arimasu**
2 Past	**dat-ta**	**deshita**	**de atta**	**de arimashita**
3 Negative	**dewa-nai** **ja-nai**	**dewa-arimasen** **ja-arimasen**	**de (wa) nai**	**de (wa) arimasen**
4 Negative-past	**dewa-nakatta**	**dewa-arimasen-deshita** **de nakatta**		**de (wa) arimasen deshita**
	ja-nakatta	**ja-arimasen-deshita**		
5 Adverbial	**ni**	—	—	—
6 Conjunctive	**de**	**deshi-te**	**de atte**	**de arimashite**
7 Conditional	**nara**	–	**de areba** **de aru nara**	—

35 COPULA

The cop. is a grammatical word that is used in a similar way to English 'is' 'are', etc. It is always preceded by another word or word/P combination, i.e. it functions like an inflectional ending. Forms of V and adj. can complete a sentence with an inflectional ending, but AN and N usually require cop.

35.1 Ways of saying 'is/am/are'
35.2 Plain non-past forms: **da**, 0 (zero), **na**, **no**
35.2.1 **da**
35.2.2 0 (zero)
35.2.3 **no**
35.2.4 **na**
35.2.5 Adverbial form of copula
35.2.6 Presumptive/**-tara/-tari** forms of copula

35.1 WAYS OF SAYING 'IS/AM/ARE'

Compare different ways that 'is/am/are', etc. can be expressed in Japanese as follows (for more details, see 178).

Adj.	%大きい。	**ōkii**	It/he/she's big.
N	%日本人だ。	**nihonjin da**	They're Japanese.
AN	%静かだ。	**shizuka da**	It's/they're quiet.
PLACE	%家にいる・ある。	**ie ni iru/aru**	It/he/she's in the house.

35.2 PLAIN NON-PAST FORMS: **da**, 0 (ZERO), **na**, **no**

35.2.1 da

da is used clause- or S-finally, and is often replaced by 0 (zero) if nothing follows. It is *never* used before **ka** (and constructions using **ka** such as **ka mo shirenai**) in the standard language, nor before S endings of appearance such as **mitai**, **rashii**, -**sō yō**, and others (**hazu**, **tsumori**, etc.).

35.2.2 0 (zero)

Conversely, 0 is obligatory before **ka** (and constructions using **ka** such as **ka mo shirenai**), **mitai**, **rashii**, -**sō**, **yō**, and others (**hazu**, **tsumori**, etc.).

a 黄色いじゅうたん【】みたい。
kīroi jūtan mitai
They [= wild flowers] are like a yellow carpet.

Note – whereas inflectional endings of V/adj. can be used as pred. and to modify N, AN and N usually require cop. to be attached. However, the newspaper and other written styles tend to omit the cop. (**da**, etc.), as example b illustrates.

b あらしの後の静かな朝【】。
arashi no ato no shizuka na asa
A quiet morning after the storm.

35.2.3 no

This is used as the N-mod. form of **no**-adj. (see 1.6) and certain onomatope (see 153.2).

For N (but *not* AN), **no** is also used before structural N like **yō**. Compare:

a インフレ【の】ようなもの (インフレ = N)
infure no yō na mono
It's (*lit.* "something") like inflation

b 特徴のある顔は得【な】ようです。(得 = AN)
tokuchō no aru kao wa toku na yō desu
It appears that [having] a distinctive face is an advantage.

Note before the case particle **no** (incl. combinations like **no de**, **noni**, etc.), **no** is never found; instead, **na** is used (see 35.2.4).

35.2.4 na

na is used as a N-mod. form before **no** (incl. the combinations **no da**, **no de**, **noni**, etc.); also *always* after AN before all N.

a 同じことをしても中国の怒りは日本により激しく向けられる。いいも悪いもない。これが厳然とした事実【な】のだ。
onaji koto o shite mo chūgoku no ikari wa nihon ni yori kibishiku mukerareru. ii mo warui mo nai. kore ga genzen to shita jijitsu na no da
Even when we do the same thing [as the US], China expresses her anger more strongly towards Japan. I'm not saying it's good or bad. It's an indubitable fact.

b 山の上の静か【な】寺だ。
yama no ue no shizuka na tera da
It's a quiet temple on the top of the mountain.

35.2.5 Adverbial form of copula

Whereas **da** (and other forms of cop.) indicate a state, a change of state (including 'future' events like 'want to be' or 'intend to be') require not **da**, but the adverbial form of cop., **ni**. This is most commonly found with the V **suru** 'do' and **naru** 'become' (see 186).

a 今月三日、佐藤さんは三十歳【になっ】た。
kongetsu mikka, Satō-san wa sanjus-sai ni natta
On the 3rd of this month, Sato-san turned 30.

b 出す以上は地域で一番売れる店【にし】たい。
dasu ijō wa chiiki de ichiban ureru mise ni shitai
As long as I open it, I want to make it a shop that sells the best in the area.

35.2.6 Presumptive/-**tara**/-**tari** forms of copula

Although not given in Table 7, one can also distinguish a pres. form (**darō, deshō, de arō, de arimashō**, see presumptive forms: **darō/deshō**), a **-tara** form (**dat-tara, deshi-tara, de arimashi-tara**) and a **-tari** form (**dat-tari, de at-tari**, see 192).

36 COUNTERS

Numbers are typically used to count N, in similar fashion to English 'a *cup of* tea' or 'five *head of* cattle'. Although some N can be counted by num. using the 'default' C **-tsu** and **-ko** (see Table 8), many N require a specific C in the combination [num. + C].

There is a multitude of C in Japanese, and some books list a large number of them, including a counter for furniture (**-kyaku**). However, in everyday language **-tsu** or **-ko** is used for tables and chairs, and one can get by with a relatively small number, which are given in Table 8.

Note 1 there is also a number of items that are used to count money (¥ **-en**、$ **-doru**、£ **-pondo**, etc.) and others that are used with figures, such as % (**pāsento**) or the Japanese 10%-unit, **-wari**.

Note 2 there are some differences between the 'default' C **-tsu** and **-ko**, i.e. **-tsu** is attached to NJ num. up to 9 only, whereas **-ko** attaches only to SJ numbers. **-tsu** can be used with abstract items such as thoughts, but **-ko** is limited to concrete objects only (such as landmines, example d).

a 外国では発言を慎むのが【一つ】の考え方だ。
gaikoku de wa hatsugen o tsutsushimu no ga hitotsu no kangaekata da
One thought is that [Japanese politicians] refrain from making statements abroad.

-hai is mostly used for cupfuls and glassfuls, and **-hon** for tubular objects such as bottles (example 36.3 a), flowers, trees, pencils, hairs, etc., but also trousers and even phone calls (example 36.4a). **-mai** counts flat objects such as sheets of paper, coins (for coins, **-ko** is also used), CDs, bills, tickets (example 36.3 b), but also doors (example 36.1 a), shirts, kimonos, etc.

Animals are counted with **-tō** or **-hiki**, with **-tō** being used for larger species, such as cows, horses and pigs. Note that the size does not matter, e.g. piglets and calves are still counted with **-tō** (examples b and c).

b 八【頭】の子ブタを出産させるのに成功した。
hattō no kobuta o shussan saseru no ni seikō shita
They succeeded in making it produce eight piglets.

c 二十ヘクタールの放牧場で成牛、子牛合わせて四十三【頭】を飼育している。
nijū hekutāru no hōbokujō de seigyū koushi awasete yonjūsantō o shiiku shite iru
On the 20ha. dairy farm, they are keeping a total of 43 grown cattle and calves.

d 紛争地帯に埋められたままの地雷は一億一千万【個】に上る。
funsōchitai ni umerareta mama no jirai wa ichioku issenman-ko ni noboru
The [number of] landmines still buried in conflict areas amounts to 110 million.

Note 3 - C of time and measurement count themselves, i.e. they don't count other N.

e この一年【で】二倍に膨らんだ。(*not* 一年の年)
kono ichinen de nibai ni fukuranda
[In] the past year, it has doubled.

f 入場料は一回券で【七百円】。(*not* 七百円のお金)
nyūjōryō wa ikkai-ken de nanahyaku-en
The entrance fee is Y700 for a single ticket.

Note 4 the C of time, **-ji**, is used to indicate the time, but when 間 **-kan** is added, the hours are counted. Compare

Table 8 Common number and counter combinations

Counter	*Number*									
	ichi **hito-**	**ni** **futa-**	**san** **mit-**	**shi** **yo(t)-**	**go** **itsu-**	**roku** **mut-**	**shichi** **nana**	**hachi** **yat-**	**kyū/ku** **kokono-**	**jū** **tō**
doru *($)*				**yondoru**						
en *(¥)*				**yoen**						
fun *(minutes)*	**ippun**		**sanpun**	**yonpun**		**roppun**	**nanafun**	**happun** **hachifun**	**kyūfun**	**juppun** **jippun**
pondo *(lb. or £)*				**yonpondo**			**nanapondo**		**kyūpondo**	**juppondo** **jippondo**
hon *(bottles, etc.)*	**ippon**		**sanbon**	**yonhon**		**roppon**	**nanahon**	**happon**	**kyūhon**	**juppon** **jippon**
kagetsu *(months)*	**ikkagetsu**			**yonkagetsin**		**rokkagetsu**				**jukkagetsu** **jikkagetsu**
kai *(storeys)*			**sangai** **sankai**			**rokkai**	**nanakai**	**hachikai**		**jukkai** **jikkai**
ko *(default counter)*	**ikko**			**yonko**		**rokko**	**nanako**	**hakko**	**kyūko**	**jukko** **jikko**
mai *(flat objects)*				**yonmai**					**kyūmai** **kumai**	
nichi *(days)*	**ichinichi** **tsuitachi***	**futsuka**	**mikka**	**yokka**	**itsuka**	**muika**	**nanoka** **nanuka**	**yōka**	**kokonoka**	**tōka**
nin *(humans)*				**yonin**						
nen *(years)*				**yonen**						
pāsento (%)	**ippāsento**			**yonpāsento**						**juppāsento** **jippāsento**

pēji *pages)*	**ippēji**			**yonpēji**		**roppēji**	**nanapēji**	**happēji** **hachipēji**	**kyūpeji**	**juppēji** **jippeji**
ri *humans)*	**hitori**	**futari**		—		—	—	—	—	— **jikko**
sai *years of age)*	**issai**						**nanasai**	**hassai**		**jussai** **jissai**
satsu *bound objects)*	**issatsu**			**yonsatsu**			**nanasatsu**	**hassatsu**	**kyūsatsu**	**jussatsu** **jissatsu**
shū *weeks)*	**isshū**			**yonshū**			**nanashū**	**hasshū**	**kyūshū**	**jusshū** **jisshu**
tō *large animals)*	**ittō**			**yontō**			**nanatō**	**hattō**	**kyūtō**	**juttō** **jittō**
tsu *default counter: NJ numbers only)*	**hitotsu**	**futatsu**	**mittsu**	**yottsu**	**itsutsu**	**muttsu**	**nanatsu**	**yattsu**	**kokonotsu**	—
tsuki *months)*	**hitotsuki**	**futatsuki**	**mitsuki**	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
wa *birds*			**sanba**	**yonwa**						**juppa** **jippa**
wari [illegible] unit)				**yonwari**						**kyūwari**

Notes * Only used in the meaning of *the first of the month.*

The table lists some common counters and the way they combine with numerals. Only those combinations which involve sound change, irregular formation or only one of two regular ways of formation are listed (the remainder is predictable, consisting of the numeral (**ichi**, **ni**, etc.) given at the top plus the form of the counter given in the vertical left column). Note, however, that the pronunciation, especially of the syllabic **n**, varies according to its phonetic environment; for instance, before **b** and **m**, it is pronounced as **m**. Combinations with **nan-** *how many* are the same as those with **san** *three.*

With counters expressing time (**fun**, **nen**, etc.), the suffix **-kan** can be added (optionally in the case of **byō**, **fun**, **nen**, **nichi** and **shū**) to indicate *duration of time.* For instance, **goji** on its own means *5 o'clock*, whereas **gojikan** means *five hours.* Note, however, that whereas the months of the year (January–December) are counted **ichigatsu**, **nigatsu**, etc., *one month* is **ikkagetsu**, to which **-kan** can be added. The days of the month from the 11th onwards are as follows, in so far as they are irregular:

14th	**jūyokka**	20th	**hatsuka**
19th	**jūkunichi**	24th	**nijūyokka**

g 一時 **ichiji** '1 o'clock'

h 一時間 **ichijikan** '1 hour'

Other C of time can be used in the sense of 'period of time' by themselves, and adding 間**-kan** does not change that meaning, but makes it more explicit.

i % 三十分待った。 **sanjuppun matta** 'I waited 30 mins.'

j % 三十分間待った。 **sanjuppun-kan matta** 'I waited for (a period of) 30 mins.'

Num. + C is used to count N in the following ways.

36.1 Number + counter **no** noun
36.2 Number + counter + particle
36.2.1 One number only
36.2.2 Two numbers, separated by comma or hyphen: approximate numbers
36.3 Noun (+ particle) [number + counter] verb
36.4 Noun [number 1 + counter] (particle)
36.5 Number + counter with ellipted noun
36.5.1 Number + counter + particle without modified noun
36.5.2 Number + counter without modified noun

36.1 NUMBER + COUNTER **no** NOUN

Num. + C can precede N with the **P no** attached.

a その奥に【二枚】のドアが見えている。
sono oku ni ni-mai no doa ga miete iru
Beyond her [= female figure in painting], two doors are visible.

36.2 NUMBER + COUNTER + PARTICLE

36.2.1 One number only

a【三階】には宿泊客共通の浴場がある。
san-gai ni wa shukuhaku-kyaku kyōtsū no yokujō ga aru
On the third level is a bath for joint use by lodgers.

36.2.2 Two numbers, separated by comma or hyphen: approximate numbers

Two consecutive num., usually separated by a comma (but pronounced as one unit), or less commonly by a hyphen (example c) are one way of expressing approximate num. (see 29, see also 147 for other ways of expressing approximate num.).

a だが、ここ【五、六年】で風向きが一変した。
daga koko goroku-nen de kazamuki ga ippen shita
However, in the past five or six years the situation has changed completely.

b 旅に出ると、人々は普通の【五、六倍】のお金を使う。
tabi ni deru to hitobito wa futsū no goroku-bai no okane o tsukau
When they go on a trip, people spend five or six times as much money as usual.

c 決意するまでには【二―三週間】悩み抜いた。
ketsui suru made-ni wa nisan-shūkan nayaminuita
He worried for several weeks before he made up his mind.

36.3 NOUN (+ PARTICLE) [NUMBER + COUNTER] VERB

Note that [num. + C] can also be placed between [N (+ P)] and V.

a % ビールを【三本】ください。(cf., ビールをください)
bīru o san-bon kudasai
Three bottles of beer, please.

b 一番安い天井桟敷席を【一枚】買った。
ichiban yasui tenjō sajiki-seki o ichi-mai katta
I bought one ticket for an upper circle seat, which is the cheapest.

36.4 NOUN [NUMBER 1 + COUNTER] (PARTICLE)

[Num. + C] can be sandwiched between N and P. Note that only num. 'one' is used in this sense, which in negative S has the implication of 'just one', 'a single . . .'.

a 離婚原因は夫の気ままで不安定な生活ぶり。「旅行に出かけるといっては数カ月、家を空ける。その間電話【一本】ない。そんなことが何度もあった」。
rikon gen'in wa otto no kimama de fuantei na seikatsu-buri. ryokō ni dekakeru to itte wa sūkagetsu ie o akeru. sono kan denwa ip-pon nai. sonna koto ga nando mo atta
The reason for the divorce was the husband's irregular lifestyle. 'He would say he'd go on a trip, and stay away from home for months. During that time, there wouldn't be a single phone call. That sort of thing happened many times.'

b 葉っぱ【一枚】を見ても仕方がない。
happa ichi-mai o mite mo shikata ga nai
There is no point looking at a single leaf [= satellite pictures need to show more than that].

c レンズ【一枚】の価格は二万二千円。
renzu ichi-mai no kakaku wa niman nisen-en
The price for one lens is ¥22,000.

36.5 NUMBER + COUNTER WITH ELLIPTED NOUN

36.5.1 Number + counter + particle without modified noun

Where the context makes it clear which N they refer to, num. + C can be used without the N they count.

a 精密なイラストは…息をのむほど美しい。【一枚】を仕上げるのに一カ月くらいかかるそうだ。
seimitsu na irasuto wa . . . iki o nomu hodo utsukushii. ichi-mai o shiageru no ni ikkagetsu kurai kakaru sō da
The accurate illustrations . . . are breathtakingly beautiful. Apparently it takes about one month to finish one.

36.5.2 Number + counter without modified noun

This is also found without P attached.

a この装置はラベルとFDを所定の位置に置き、スイッチを押すだけではることができる。【一枚】はるのに二秒で済み、手作業に比べ二倍以上速い。
kono sōchi wa raberu to FD o shotei no ichi ni oki suitchi o osu dake de haru koto ga dekiru. ichi-mai haru no ni nibyō de sumi, tesagyō ni kurabe ni-bai ijō hayai.
With this apparatus, one places the label and the FD [= floppy disc] on the prescribed spot, and can paste it just by flicking a switch. Pasting one [= label onto a computer disk] is done in two seconds, which is more than twice as fast as doing it by hand.

37 **dake** [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

dake is an adverbial particle with the basic meaning of 'only' (see 18). It is used in variety of ways and meanings, as listed below.

37.1 Noun **dake** (particle) predicate
37.1.1 Noun **dake** particle

37.1.1.1 Replaceable by **bakari**
37.1.1.2 Not replaceable by **bakari**
37.1.2 Noun/verbal noun **dake** (no particle)
37.2 Noun **dake no** noun
37.3 Noun **dake** (+ copula)
37.4 Clause **bun dake**
37.5 Verb (**to iu**) **dake** copula
37.6 Clause **dake de (wa) nai**
37.7 Noun 1 **dake de (wa) naku** . . . noun 2 **mo/ga**
37.8 Clause 1 **dake** clause 2
37.8.1 Clause 1 **dake de** clause 2 predicate-positive
37.8.2 Clause 1 **dake de wa** clause 2 predicate-negative
37.9 Clause **dake ni**

37.1 NOUN **dake** (PARTICLE) PREDICATE

In this use, **dake** is inserted between a N and the case P required by the valency of pred. However, **o/ga** can be omitted.

Where no case P is required in the first place, as after N of time (**yoru** 'night', etc.), **dake** is attached to N directly.

37.1.1 Noun **dake** particle

37.1.1.1 *Replaceable by* ***bakari***

When used in the sense of 'just', or 'just . . . all the time', **dake** can be replaced with **bakari**.

a 政府【だけ】が悪いわけではない。
seifu dake ga warui wake de wa nai
It's not just the government that's at fault.

b 心は決まらないまま、時間【だけ】が過ぎていく。
kokoro wa kimaranai mama jikan dake ga sugite iku
While I remain unable to make up [my] mind, time just keeps passing.

c 形式【だけ】をみていても本質は理解できない。
keishiki dake o mite ite mo honshitsu wa rikai dekinai
If you look at the form alone, you cannot grasp the substance.

37.1.1.2 *Not replaceable by* ***bakari***

In the more exclusive sense of 'just only', 'nothing but', **dake** cannot be replaced by **bakari**.

a 自分のため【だけ】に生きたい。
jibun no tame dake ni ikitai
I want to live only for myself.

b 昨年【だけ】で約四十社が新設した。
sakunen dake de yaku yonjussha ga shinsetsu shita
About 40 companies were established just last year.

c ただ制度【だけ】では人は動かない。
tada seido dake de wa hito wa ugokanai
People don't take action when there is nothing but a system [in place].

37.1.2 Noun/verbal noun **dake** (no particle)

In examples a and b, **o** is ellipted (omitted), whereas example c has a time N, which takes no particle in the first place. **bakari** can replace **dake** after VN (example b) only.

a 概要【だけ】聞けば、日米に違いはないようにも見える。
gaiyō dake kikeba nichibei ni chigai wa nai yō ni mo mieru
If you just listen to the outline, it looks as if there are no differences between Japan and the US.

b 部下に指示【だけ】して仕事したような気になっている管理者は要らない。
buka ni shiji dake shite shigoto shita yō na ki ni natte iru kanrisha wa iranai
We don't need administrators who think they've done a job just by giving instructions to their subordinates.

c 会社に勤めるかたわら、週末や平日の夜【だけ】通ってくる。
kaisha ni tsutomeru katawara shūmatsu ya heijitsu no yoru dake kayotte kuru
He works in a company and comes only on weekends and weekday nights [to the research institute].

37.2 NOUN **dake no** NOUN

In this use, **dake** cannot be replaced by **bakari**.

a 言葉【だけ】の人間だ。
kotoba dake no ningen da
He is ["a person who is"] all talk.

b 再婚はお互い【だけ】の問題ではない。
saikon wa o-tagai dake no mondai de wa nai
Remarriage is not a matter which concerns just the two of us.

c 待っている【だけ】のスタンスの人はもう結構。
matte iru dake no sutansu no hito wa mō kekkō
[We've] had enough of people with just a 'wait-and-see' stance.

d 告別式は故人の遺志により近親者【だけ】の密葬で行う。
kokubetsu-shiki wa kojin no ishi ni yori kinshinsha dake no missō de okonau
In accordance with the wish of the deceased, the funeral is held as a private ceremony for the next-of-kin only.

37.3 NOUN **dake** (+ COPULA)

When used as pred., N **dake** attaches cop., (although in practice it is often omitted). This is commonly used with cleft S (see 23). **gurai** can also be used instead of **dake** here, although **dake** has a more restrictive ring, i.e. 'only' as opposed to 'about the only' (see 61.1.3).

a 「それ【だけ】です」ときっぱり。
sore dake desu to kippari
'That's all', [he] said flatly.

b 自宅でのんびりするのは正月三が日【だけ】。
jitaku de nonbiri suru no wa shōgatsu sanganichi dake
The only time I relax at home is the first three days of the new year.

37.4 CLAUSE **bun dake**

bun is a N meaning 'rate', and in combination with **dake** indicates that a state (a clause ending in an adjectival expression) applies 'in proportion to' or 'to the extent of S' of the clause to which it is attached (see 2).

a 人数が多い分【だけ】人間関係は複雑になる。
ninzū ga ōi bun dake ningen kankei wa fukuzatsu ni naru
As the number of persons [sharing accommodation] is large, human relationships become proportionally complex.

b 一緒にいる時間が少ない分【だけ】、真剣に息子と向き合えた。
issho ni iru jikan ga sukunai bun dake shinken ni musuko to muki-aeta
It was because we had so little time together that I was able to face my son more seriously.

37.5 VERB **(to iu) dake** COPULA

After V, **dake** (usually followed by a form of the cop.) indicates that the action of V is 'all one/it, etc. does/achieves'. **dake** can be reinforced by **tada**, as in example b.

Note also the combination V **dake de sumu** (see also 31.2 for similar uses of cop.).

a 「そうか。本当に行くのか」と簡単に答えた【だけ】。
sō ka. hontō ni iku no ka to kantan ni kotaeta dake
All [he] did was reply briefly, 'I see. Are you really going?'

b 大事な時に役に立たなくて……。ただ謝る【だけ】ですよ。
daiji na toki ni yaku ni tatanakute . . . tada ayamaru dake desu yo
Having been useless when it matters . . . all I can do is just apologize.

c 景観や生き物たちを眺める【だけ】でも楽しい。
keikan ya ikimono-tachi o nagameru dake de mo tanoshii
Just looking at the sights and the [wild] life is fun.

d カセット式にはめ込む【だけ】で済む。
kasetto-shiki ni hamekomu dake de sumu
All you have to do is insert it [= the water filter] like a cassette.

37.6 CLAUSE **dake de (wa) nai**

With a following neg., the meaning is 'not only', 'not merely'.

a 創意工夫はメーカー【だけではない】。
sōi kufū wa mēkā dake de wa nai
It is not only the manufacturers who are creative and resourceful.

b 植林は緑を回復する【だけではない】のだ。
shokurin wa midori o kaifuku suru dake de wa nai no da
Reforestation does not merely restore the greenery.

37.7 NOUN 1 **dake de (wa) naku** . . . NOUN 2 **mo/ga**

Attached to N (or NP), this indicates the meaning of 'not only, but also'. **bakari** can be used in exactly the same way (see 17.5).

a 量【だけでなく】質の面で【も】差異は大きい。
ryō dake de naku shitsu no men de mo sai wa ōkii
The difference is considerable, not only in quantity, but also in quality.

b 肉体【だけでなく】精神の若さを保つことが重要。
nikutai dake de naku seishin no wakasa o tamotsu koto ga jūyō
It is important to maintain youthfulness in spirit as well as in body.

c 音声【だけではなく】、鮮明な動画像【も】送り合うことができる。
onsei dake de wa naku senmei na dōgazō mo okuriau koto ga dekiru
One can transmit not only sound, but also clear moving images.

d お年寄りは身の回りの世話【だけでなく】、話し相手【も】求めている。
o-toshiyori wa mi no mawari no sewa dake de naku hanashi-aite mo motomete iru
Elderly people are looking not only for someone to take care of them, but also for someone to talk to.

37.8 CLAUSE 1 **dake** CLAUSE 2

37.8.1 Clause 1 **dake de** clause 2 predicate-positive

de is the conjunctive form of cop., making S1 a condition for S2 in the sense of 'just by doing S1', 'doing S1 is all you need to do'. **bakari** cannot be used in this way.

a 家庭のテレビに接続する【だけで】画像と音を同時に再生できる。
katei no terebi ni setsuzoku suru dake de gazō to oto o dōji ni saisei dekiru
All you do is hook it up to your television at home, and you can play back images and sound simultaneously.

b 女性はちょっと洋服を変えた【だけで】気分が前向きになる。
josei wa chotto yōfuku o kaeta dake de kibun ga maemuki ni naru
Women get a positive feeling just from changing their clothes.

37.8.2 Clause 1 **dake de wa** clause 2 predicate-negative

de is the conjunctive form of cop., making S1 a condition for S2 in the sense that S1 is insufficient for S2 to happen: 'just by doing S1', 'if all you do is . . .'.

a 安い【だけでは】商品は売れない。
yasui dake de wa shōhin wa urenai
Products don't sell just by being cheap.

b 地理的に近い【だけでは】経済圏など成り立たない。
chiri-teki ni chikai dake de wa keizaiken nado naritatanai
Just because [certain countries] are in geographical proximity does not mean that an economic bloc is feasible.

37.9 CLAUSE **dake ni**

This indicates an emphasized reason 'all the more so because', 'precisely because'.

a 前例がない【だけに】、どれだけ出したらいいのか見当がつかなかった。
zenrei ga nai dake ni dore dake dashitara ii no ka kentō ga tsukanakatta
Because of the lack of precedent, we had no idea how much [severance money] we should pay.

b 大自然の中での競技【だけに】生傷が絶えない。
daishizen no naka de no kyōgi dake ni namakizu ga taenai
As might be expected from an outdoor contest [cycle racing], he's always bruised and raw.

c 育児休業をとれば、中小企業【だけに】現職復帰の保証はない。
ikuji kyūka o toreba chūshō kigyō dake ni genshoku fukki no hoshō wa nai
As it's a small-sized business, if you take leave of absence for childcare, there is no guarantee of getting back your former post.

38 **dattara** [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

(See 191)

39 **datte** [FOCUS PARTICLE]

The focus P **datte** is attached to N/pron. as a more colloquial and emphatic equivalent to the focus P **mo** (see 94.1, 94.6.1).

Note – there is also a conjunction **datte** (used on its own, at the beginning of a sentence, in the sense of 'but') (see 30.4).

a 私【だって】子供がほしい。
watashi datte kodomo ga hoshii
I too want children.

b 二万円台【だって】まだ高いくらいだ。
niman-en-dai datte mada takai kurai da
[A price in the] 20,000-yen range is still too high.

40 **de** [CASE PARTICLE]

The basic function of the case particle **de** is to mark the location or means of an action. It often translates into an English preposition ('in'/'at'/'by'/'with'/'for', etc.). Some further uses are given below.

Note that before N, [**ni no** N] is not possible, instead [**de no** N] is used. In other words, **de no** N *can* in this case express a stative location (see 116), although this is limited to N that have verbal or adjectival meaning (see 40.1.2 for details).

For the combinations **de** + **yoi/ii/jūbun**, etc. see 31.2. See also 37.5 d.

40.1 Active or stative location
40.1.1 Noun **de** predicate: active location
40.1.2 Noun **de no** noun: active or stative location
40.2 Means or method of action of verb
40.2.1 With action verb
40.2.2 With verb of information: source of information
40.3 Indicates basis for judgement
40.4 Noun **de shirareru**
40.5 Noun (noun = time expression) **de**
40.6 Marks the extent of people involved in the action of verb
40.6.1 Noun (noun = individual(s)) **de**
40.6.2 Noun (noun = organization) **de**: marks a topic
40.7 Noun (noun = amount) **de**: marks unit or total
40.8 Indicates reason

40.1 ACTIVE OR STATIVE LOCATION

Depending on whether pred. is dynamic or stative, **de** indicates active or stative location. In English, both translate as 'in', 'at'.

40.1.1 Noun **de** predicate: active location

This indicates the place where the action of V takes place.

a もともとレストラン【で】食事するのは好き。
motomoto resutoran de shokuji suru no wa suki
I've always liked eating [in] restaurants.

b 大阪大学【で】発酵工学を学んだ。
ōsaka daigaku de hakkō kōgaku o mananda
He studied fermentation engineering [at] Osaka University.

40.1.2 Noun **de no** noun: active or stative location

This indicates the place to which an action or state applies. Note that this is limited to N that have verbal or adjectival meaning implied, and would take **de** anyway.

a 店頭【での】人気も上々だ。(cf., 店頭で人気が上々だ)。
tentō de no ninki mo jōjō da
Its popularity in the shops is also great (cf., *is popular* in the shops).

b これがこの国【での】やり方だ。
kore ga kono kuni de no yarikata da
This is the way things are done in this country (cf., things *are done* in this country).

40.2 MEANS OR METHOD OF ACTION OF VERB

With action V, the meaning is 'by', 'with', 'through', etc. whereas with V of information the meaning is 'from' or 'through' some medium of communication.

40.2.1 With action verb

a 軽いうえ、家庭の洗濯機【で】洗える。
karui ue katei no sentakuki de araeru
It's light, and moreover one can machine wash it (*lit.* "wash [by] machine") at home.

b 情報はカネ【で】は買えない。
jōhō wa kane de wa kaenai
You can't buy information [with] money.

c 風邪は、ウイルスの飛沫（まつ）感染【で】伝染する。
kaze wa uirusu no himatsu kansen de densen suru
Colds spread [through] viral droplet infection.

40.2.2 With verb of information: source of information

With V of information like **shiru/wakaru**, etc., **de** can indicate the source of the information, or the means by which one learns/understands something.

a 報道【で】知っているだけだ。
hōdō de shitte iru dake da
I only know it from the news.

b …アンケート調査【で】分かった。
ankēto chōsa de wakatta
. . . became clear through a survey.

40.3 INDICATES BASIS FOR JUDGEMENT

This translates as 'according to', 'by', etc.

a 高さは推定【で】約六十センチ。
takasa wa suitei de yaku rokujus-senchi
The height is about 60cm by estimate.

b 新鮮なのが一目【で】分かる。
shinsen na no ga hitome de wakaru
You can see it's fresh at a glance.

c 金子さんの観察【で】は、男性よりも女性の方が冷静だ。
kaneko-san no kansatsu de wa dansei yori mo josei no hō ga reisei da
According to Kaneko-san's observation, women are more cool-headed than men.

40.4 NOUN de shirareru

With the pass. of the V **shiru**, indicates what something/body is 'known for'.

a 誠実な人柄【で】知られる。
seijitsu na hitogara de shirareru
He is known for his sincere personality.

b 自家製豆腐の料理【で】知られる店だ。
jikasei tōfu no ryōri de shirareru mise da
It's a restaurant that is known for dishes of homemade bean curd.

40.5 NOUN (NOUN = TIME EXPRESSION) de

This indicates the time or period over which action of V takes place/is completed 'in', 'over', 'as of'.

a この一年【で】二倍に膨らんだ。
kono ichinen de nibai ni fukuranda
[In] the past year, it [the number of buyers for foreign parts] has doubled.

b 一月一日付【で】就任する。
ichigatsu tsuitachi-zuke de shūnin suru
He takes up the position as of January 1st.

c 組合数は二年連続【で】減少した。
kumiai-sū wa ninen renzoku de genshō shita
The number of unions decreased [for] two years in succession.

d 今年【で】四半世紀が過ぎた。
kotoshi de shihan seiki ga sugita
This year, a quarter of a century has passed.

40.6 MARKS THE EXTENT OF PEOPLE INVOLVED IN THE ACTION OF VERB

The N to which **de** attaches can refer to either individuals or organizations.

40.6.1 Noun (noun = individual(s)) **de**

Here, **de** means 'by' or 'with' when the noun refers to individuals.

a 自分の評価は、自分【で】するもの。
jibun no hyōka wa jibun de suru mono
My own assessment is something I do myself.

b 従業員七十人【で】スタートする。
jūgyōin nanajū-nin de sutāto suru
We will start with 70 employees.

40.6.2 Noun (noun = organization) **de:** marks a topic

Although **de** can be interpreted as marking the place of action here, it is similar in use to the particle **wa** in that it is customary to mark the topic of the sentence with **de** if the topic is an organization. In other words, to mark organizations that are topics, **de** (**wa**) tends to be used rather than just **wa** (see 236.4).

a 同署など【で】原因を調べている。
dōsho nado de gen'in o shirabete iru
The said police station, among others, is looking into the cause.

b 同動物園【で】は死因は老衰としている。
dō-dōbutsuen de wa shiin wa rōsui to shite iru
The said zoo views the cause of death [of the animal] as old age.

40.7 NOUN (NOUN = AMOUNT) **de**: MARKS UNIT OR TOTAL

Here, **de** marks a unit or a total.

a 入場料は一回券【で】七百円。
nyūjōryō wa ikkai-ken de nanahyaku-en
The entrance fee is ¥700 for a single ticket.

b 全部【で】十八サイズある。
zenbu de jūhachi saizu aru
In all, there are 18 sizes.

40.8 INDICATES REASON

In compound S (S1 **de** S2), **de** can indicate the reason for S2. (See 75, 139, 190).

a ことしは天候不順【で】山にはなお雪が多いそうだ。
kotoshi wa tenkō fujun de yama ni wa nao yuki ga ōi sō da
This year, [owing to] bad weather, they say that there is still a lot of snow in the mountains.

Note – **de** (the conjunctive form of cop.) is often used in similar contexts (for an example, see 41).

41 **de** [CASE PARTICLE] AND **de** [CONJUNCTIVE FORM OF COPULA]: COMPARISON

The case P **de** must not be confused with the pln. conjunctive form of the cop., especially as they can appear in similar-looking types of sentence. (see 35) cop. **de** usually appears in **wa-de**-type sentences which could be ended as an independent sentence with **da/desu/datta/deshita**, etc. Compare the following:

a 過熱するカメラブーム【で】、多くの機種が登場した。
kanetsu suru kamera būmu de ōku no kishu ga tōjō shita
【In】 the mad craze for new cameras, many new models have appeared. (**de** = case P)

b 1時間と答えた女性は65.0%【で】、男性の倍近い。
ichijikan to kotaeta josei wa rokujūgo-pāsento de dansei no bai chikai
(The ratio of) women who replied '1 hour' 【was】 65.0%, nearly double that of men. (**de** = conjunctive form of cop., cf., b′ below)

b′ %1時間と答えた女性は65.0%【だった】。(これは) 男性の倍近い。
ichijikan to kotaeta josei wa rokujūgo-pāsento datta. (korewa) dansei no bai chikai
[The ratio of] women who replied '1 hour' 【was】 65.0%. [That is] nearly double that of men.

Note – in combinations like **de yoi/ii/jūbun**, **de** is also the conjunctive form of cop. (see 31.2).

42 **demo** [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

demo must not be confused with **de mo** [case P] + [focus P]. In the latter case **mo** can be taken away without changing the logical meaning of the sentence. **demo**, on the other hand, is one (non-detachable) unit that indicates the idea of 'for instance', i.e. an item is specified that could be replaced by a similar one without changing the meaning (note, however, the use of **demo** with question words, where this test does not work (see 167). Examples a and b show instances where **mo** can be detached.

a いずれ人間【でも】発見される可能性はある。(cf., 人間【で】発見される)
izure ningen de mo hakken sareru kanō-sei wa aru
There is a possibility that sooner or later it [= the body clock] will be discovered in humans, too.

b もう少し小さければ二千五百万円【でも】建つ。(cf., 二千五百万円【で】建つ)
mō sukoshi chiisakereba nisen gohyakuman-en demo tatsu
If it [= the house] were a little smaller, it could be built even for 25 million yen.

Another difference between **de mo** and **demo** is that the latter can attach to other case P, such as **kara**, **ni**, **to**, etc.:

c 良いものは日本だろうが欧州だろうが、どこから【でも】取り入れる。
yoi mono wa nihon daroū ga ōshū darō ga doko kara demo toriireru
We take good products from anywhere, whether it's Japan or Europe.

For a comparison with other P used in the sense of 'even', see 43.

42.1 Noun (particle) **demo**
42.1.1 Noun **demo** + positive predicate
42.1.2 Noun **demo** + negative predicate
42.1.3 Noun **to demo** + verb of communication
42.2 Noun **dake demo**
42.3 Adverbial clause-**te demo**
42.4 Question word + **demo**
42.4.1 Question word (+ particle) **demo**
42.4.2 Noun-modifying question word + noun **demo**
42.4.3 **donna ni . . . demo**
42.5 Idiomatic uses

42.1 NOUN (PARTICLE) demo

42.1.1 Noun **demo** + positive predicate

This indicates the idea of 'even'. **mo** can also be used here, with less emphasis on the idea of 'even'.

a 「こうした偏見は今【でも】残っている」と指摘する。
kō shita henken wa ima demo nokotte iru to shiteki suru
'This kind of prejudice remains even now,' he points out.

b 五十万円を下回った場合【でも】、普通預金と同じ金利が適用される。
gojūman-en o shitamawatta baai demo futsū yokin to onaji kinri ga tekiyō sareru
Even when [the balance] falls below half a million yen, the same rate of interest applies as for ordinary deposits.

42.1.2 Noun **demo** + negative predicate

With a neg. pred. **demo** indicates the meaning of 'not even'. **mo**, **sae** and **sura** could all be used instead of **demo**; **mo** with less emphasis, **sae/sura** with more.

a 昔の石原裕次郎とか美空ひばり【でも】百万枚は売れていない。
mukashi no ishihara yūjirō toka misora hibari demo hyakuman-mai wa urete inai
Not even the old Yujiro Ishihara and Hibari Misora [albums] have sold a million.

b テレビ好きの子供【でも】ニュースやドキュメントはあまり見ないらしい。
terebizuki no kodomo demo nyūsu ya dokyumento wa amari minai rashii
It seems that not even children who like TV watch news and documentaries much.

42.1.3 Noun **to demo** + verb of communication

Sandwiched between N + quotation P **to** and a V of communication, this indicates a non-committal or unsure way of putting something 'for instance', 'perhaps'.

a 心のすき間を埋めるような本【とでも】呼べばよいだろうか。
kokoro no sukima o umeru yō na hon to demo yobenai darō ka
Couldn't one perhaps call it a book that heals a broken heart?

b 細身の体の線が強調されている。柳腰【とでも】言うのだろうか。
hosomi no karada no sen ga kyōchō sarete iru yanagigoshi to demo iu no darō ka
The line of her slim body is emphasized. This is what one might call 'willow hips' (= a slim figure), I suppose.

42.2 NOUN **dake demo**

This expresses the idea of 'just', 'even just' (see 37).

a せめて交通費【だけでも】…
semete kōtsūhi dake demo
If even just the transportation expenses (could be paid) . . .

b この主要四業種【だけでも】三億円を超えたようだ。
kono shuyō yon-gyōshu dake demo san'oku-en o koeta yō da
It appears that [the donations by] just these four main types of industry exceeded three hundred million yen

42.3 ADVERBIAL CLAUSE-**te demo**

demo can be sandwiched between an adverbial clause and the pred. it modifies, in the sense of ‘even if it means doing’, ‘for instance’ (see 31.5).

a 国内基幹空港が神戸に移っても、伊丹をコミューターやセスナ用とし【てでも】残す。
kokunai kikan kūkō ga kōbe ni utsutte mo itami o komyūtā ya sesuna-yō to shite demo nokosu
Even if the domestic hub airport moves to Kobe, we will retain Itami as, for instance, [an airport] for commuters or Cessnas.

b 「美術というものは、だまし【てでも】いいから他人に作品をいかに納得させるかで決まるもの」と言ってはばからない。
bijutsu to iu mono wa damashite demo ii kara tanin ni sakuhin o ika ni nattoku saseru ka de kimaru mono to itte habakaranai
He doesn’t hesitate to say ‘Art [business] is decided by how you convince others of the work, even if it means cheating them’.

c 九四年産が記録的な豊作になった半面、売れ行きも悪いとあって、値下げし【てでも】さばかざるを得なくなった。
kyūjū yonen-san ga kiroku-teki na hōsaku ni natta hanmen ureyuki mo warui to atte nesage shite demo sabakazaru o enaku natta
While ’94 was a bumper harvest [rice] wasn’t selling well, and therefore we had to get rid of it, even if it meant lowering prices.

42.4 QUESTION WORD + **demo**

42.4.1 Question word (+ particle) **demo**

The combination of a question word and **demo** results in a variety of meanings depending on the question word, including ‘every’, ‘any’, ‘no matter’ (see Table 23, 167).

Note especially how particles like **ka** and **ni** are ‘sandwiched’ between the question word and **demo** (examples d and e).

a 赤星さんは営業からふろ掃除まで【何でも】こなす。
akaboshi-san wa eigyō kara furo sōji made nan demo konasu
Akaboshi-san handles everything [in the hotel], from operations to cleaning the bath.

b 買ってくれるところがあれば、【いつでも】供給する。
katte kureru tokoro ga areba itsu demo kyōkyū suru
If there are places that will buy from us, we’ll supply any time.

c 【いつでも】、【どこでも】、【だれでも】、酒やたばこなどを買うことができる。
itsu demo doko demo dare demo sake ya tabako nado o kau koto ga dekiru
[In Japan,] anybody can buy alcohol and cigarettes any time, any place.

d 【何枚かでも】絵を見せてごらん。
nanmai ka demo e o misete goran
Go ahead and show me even just a few pictures.

e 基地局を 【どこにでも】 設けられるため地下街でも通話できる。
kichikyoku o doko ni demo mōkerareru tame chikagai demo tsūwa dekiru
Because the base station can be set up anywhere, one can use the [mobile] telephone even in an underground mall.

42.4.2 Noun-modifying question word + noun **demo**

Q words used before N include **dono** and **donna**, with the combination meaning 'every' (see Table 23, 167, Table 9). **mo** can also be used in the same sense.

a 【どの】 芝居 【でも】 前半に辛気臭いところがある。
dono shibai demo zenhan ni shinki-kusai tokoro ga aru
Every play has a tedious part in the first half.

42.4.3 donna ni . . . demo

Here the meaning is 'no matter how' or 'even'. Note that **demo** can be positioned quite a long distance away from the question-word, as in example b (see 167.2.1.2).

a 制服は 【どんなに】 しゃれたデザイン 【でも】 会社の物。
seifuku wa donna ni shareta dezain demo kaisha no mono
Uniforms, no matter how smart the design, belong to the company.

b 【どんなに】 預貯金をたくわえマンションを購入済みの独身貴族 【でも】 状況は同じ。
donna ni yochokin o takuwae manshon o kōnyūzumi no dokushin kizoku demo jōkyō wa onaji
The situation is the same, even with single people with large savings and an apartment already purchased.

42.5 IDIOMATIC USES

Idiomatic expressions with **demo** include **sukoshi demo** 'even a little' and **naka demo** 'of/among'.

a 【少しでも】電気代を減らそうとしている。
sukoshi demo denkidai o herasō to shite iru
We're trying to reduce our electricity bill, even by just a little.

b 見識、品格に【少しでも】近づきたいと思った。
kenshiki hinkaku ni sukoshi demo chikazukitai to omotta
I thought that I wanted to come into contact with discernment and dignity, even in a minor way.

43 demo, made, mo, sae, sura: COMPARISON

These P can all mean 'even'. However, **mo** is used in this sense only in certain uses (see 94.2, 94.3 and 94.8 (after V/adj.-**te**)). In several uses (see 94.2.2, 94.2.1.2 and 94.3), **sae/sura** can be used instead of **mo**. In 94.6.1, **mo** can be replaced with **demo**. In 94.7, **sae/sura** could be used instead of **mo**, but with the meaning of 'even', not 'also'.

demo can be replaced with the weaker **mo** in uses 42.1.1 and 42.1.2, and by **sae** and **sura** in 42.1.2.

made can be replaced by **sae** and **sura** in uses 86.2 a and b (**mo** is also possible, but only in the sense of 'also'), but *not* after amounts (see 86.2c).

sae can be replaced by the weaker **mo** in uses 176.1.1 (neg. S only, with pos. S **mo** means 'also', not 'even') and 176.1.3. **sae** can be replaced by **sura** in all its uses, except in uses **sae** 176.1.4 (but *only* with N-**suru** V) and 176.2.

sura can be replaced by **sae** in all uses, and by **mo** in uses 185.1 and 185.2 (neg. S only; in pos. S the meaning of **mo** would be 'also'), 185.1.2 and 185.3. In 185.1.1.1, **made** can also be used instead of **sura**, and in 185.1.3 **sura mo** can be replaced with **sae mo** and **made mo**.

44 DEMONSTRATIVE/QUESTION WORDS AND PRONOUNS

When used to point at things, demonstrative words/pron. make a three-way distinction, which is based on proximity to the speaker or listener: **ko-** 'this' (near speaker), **so-** 'that' (near listener) and **a-** 'that over there' (distant from both). The endings attached differ according to whether what is referred to is a thing or place, is used by itself like a N or to modify a N, etc.

However, demonstrative words/pron. are also used to refer to previous or following context, where the above three-way distinction does not apply to in quite the same way – refer to the examples in 45.2.

Question (or interrogative) words + pron. (beginning with the syllable '**do-**', which is equivalent to English 'wh~') share the same endings as the **ko-/so-/a-** series (see 167, 164).

Table 9 **ko-so-a-do** sets of demonstrative pronouns and question words

	ko-	*so-*	*a-*	*do-*	*meaning (ko-/do-)*
N-equivalent	**kore**	**sore**	**are**	**dore**	‘this/which (one)’
	kochira*	**sochira**	**achira**	**dochira**	‘this/which (direction)’ ‘this/which (one) of two’ ‘this/which (person)’
	(konata)	**(sonata)**	**anata**	**donata**	‘you/who (polite)’
	koko	**soko**	**asoko**	**doko**	‘this/which (place)’, ‘here/where’
	koitsu	**soitsu**	**aitsu**	**doitsu**	‘this fellow’ [male informal use]
N-modifying	**kono**	**sono**	**ano**	**dono**	‘this/which N’
	kōiu	**sōiu**	**āiu**	**dōiu**	‘this/what kind of N’
	kōitta	**sōitta**	**āitta**	**dōitta**	‘this/what kind of N’
	konna	**sonna**	**anna**	**donna**	‘this/what kind of N’
Adverbial	**kō**	**sō**	**ā**	**dō**	‘like this/how’
	konna ni	**sonna ni**	**anna ni**	**donna ni**	‘this much/how much’**
	kono yō ni			**dono yō ni**	
	konna fū ni			**donna fū ni**	

Notes * colloquially **kotchi**, **sotchi**, **atchi**, **dotchi**.
** indicating degree; cf., **ikura** ‘how much (money)’

Others include **dare** ‘who’, **dochira** ‘which’, **dore** ‘which’, **itsu** ‘when’, **ikura** ‘how much (money)’, **nani** ‘what’ (see 167 and Table 23).

One of the differences between **dore** and **dochira** is its use in comparative sentences, where **dochira** refers to a choice of two items, and **dore** of three of more (see 25).

45 DEMONSTRATIVE WORDS AND PRONOUNS: USE

45.1 Demonstratives: spatial/temporal reference
45.2 Demonstratives: discourse reference
45.2.1 Preceding context: **kono/sono/ano** noun, **kore**, **sore**, **are**, **kō iu**, **kō itta**, **konna**, **sonna**, **anna**
45.2.2 Following context: **konna**

45.1 DEMONSTRATIVES: SPATIAL/TEMPORAL REFERENCE

Demonstratives are used to point at, or refer to, persons, places, time, and things. Note especially example c, where **kono** expresses the literal meaning of "these 22 years", i.e. 'the past 22 years'.

a 答えは【この】ページの右下にあります。
kotae wa kono pēji no migishita ni arimasu
The answer is [found] on the lower right of 【this】 page.

b 【その】時かけていただいた言葉は、今でも私の宝物のようになっている。
sono toki kakete itadaita kotoba wa ima demo watashi no takaramono no yō ni natte iru
I still treasure the words people said to me at 【those】 times [when I needed help with my pottery].

c 【この】二十二年間、元日だろうが外国に居ようが毎朝欠かさず六キロメートル歩いてきた。
kono nijūni nenkan ganjitsu darō ga gaikoku ni iyō ga maiasa kakasazu rokkiromētoru aruite kita
For 【the past】 22 years, I've walked 6km every morning without fail, be it New Year's Day, [at home] or abroad.

d 「飛んでいる飛行機を見ながら、『【あの】飛行機のエンジンはオレがつくったんだ』って言ってみたいんですよ」。
tonde iru hikōki o minagara ano hikōki no enjin wa ore ga tsukutta n da tte itte mitai n desu yo
Looking at a flying aircraft, I'd like to say 'I made the engine of that aircraft'.

45.2 DEMONSTRATIVES: DISCOURSE REFERENCE

One important use of demonstratives is to refer to previous or following context.

45.2.1 Preceding context: **kono/sono/ano** noun, **kore**, **sore**, **are**, **kō iu**, **kō itta**, **konna**, **sonna**, **anna**

In general, the **a-** series is often used to refer to something that is shared knowledge between speaker/listener, writer/audience, etc. (example i).

konna/sonna/anna sometimes refer back to previous context in a critical way (example f, etc.).

Note also the use of **sonna** before personal pron. (example h), and relational N (example j), which is something you do not find in English.

a 三十八億年前のことだ。【このころ】の海水の量や化学組成は現在とあまり違いはなかった。
sanjūhachioku-nen mae no koto da. kono koro no kaisui no ryō ya kagaku sosei wa genzai to amari chigai wa nakatta
3800 million years ago. At that time, there wasn't much difference to now with regard to things like the amount of ocean water and chemical make-up.

b まさに世紀末を象徴するかのような「殺人本」ブーム。【それ】を読みたがる現代人の心理を探ってみた。
masa ni seiki-matsu o shōchō suru ka no yō na satsujin-bon būmu. sore o yomi-tagaru gendaijin no shinri o sagutte mita
There's a veritable [non-fiction] murder book boom. We've looked into the psychology of contemporary people, who want to read these [= murder books].

c 【あれ】以来、島の活動のすべてが止まってしまって……。
are irai shima no katsudō no subete ga tomatte shimatte . . .
Since that time [of the earthquake], all activity on the island has come to a standstill . . .

d わずか百何十円という鉄道やバス料金も、うかつに支払えない額に違いない。…【こういう】人も大勢日本に来ているのだ。
wazuka hyakunanjū-en to iu tetsudō ya basu ryōkin mo ukatsu ni shiharaenai gaku ni chigainai . . . kō iu hito mo ōzei nihon ni kite iru no da
No doubt, [for her] a train or bus fare of a mere hundred and something yen is an amount that is not easily affordable . . . Lots of people [like this] have come to Japan.

e 意識がはっきりしているのに身体が動かない、なにやら恐ろしいものが自分を襲ってくるような感じがする。【こういった】症状もKさんには見られた。
ishiki ga hakkiri shite iru no ni karada ga ugokanai, nani yara osoroshii mono ga jibun o osotte kuru yō na kanji ga suru. kō itta shōjō mo K-san ni wa mirareta
You can't move your body even though you are fully conscious, and you feel as if something terrible is going to attack you. [That kind of] symptom, too, was observed with K.

f 所管官庁が【こんな】認識では、特殊法人改革はできない。
shokan kanchō ga konna ninshiki de wa, tokushu hōjin kaikaku wa dekinai
If the authorities in charge have [such [= insufficient]] understanding, a reform of special administrative corporations is impossible.

g 理想は屋外だけど東京には【そんな】場所ないでしょう。
risō wa okugai da kedo tōkyō ni wa sonna basho nai desho
The ideal [place for our rural dance] is outdoors, but in Tokyo there isn't [that sort of] space, I think

h 勝負どころでコースを間違えて、浅利純子（ダイハツ）に続く２位。「わたしってまぬけですね」のセリフで、一躍全国区の人気者となった。【そんな】彼女も今では堂々たる世界のトップランナーだ。
shōbu-dokoro de kōsu o machigaete asari junko (daihatsu) ni tsuzuku nii. watashi tte manuke desu ne no serifu de ichiyaku zenkokuku no ninkimono to natta. sonna kanojo mo ima de wa dōdō-taru sekai no toppu rannā da
At the decisive moment she took the wrong course and ended up second behind Asari Junko (Daihatsu). Her words 'I'm a bit thick, aren't I?' made her instantly famous nationwide. **[**She (*lit.* "that sort of she")**]** is now without question one of the world's top runners.

i サッカーのワールドカップ、【あれ】は国を代表する十一人の決闘だ。
sakkā no wārudo kappu are wa kuni o daihyō suru jūichinin no kettō da
The soccer World Cup, **[**that**]**'s a battle [fought by] 11 men representing their country.

j 【そんな】中、これほど大きくて目立つ時計も珍しい。
sonna naka, kore hodo ōkikute medatsu tokei mo mezurashii
Among such [clocks at well-known meeting points], there are few clocks that are that large and noticeable.

45.2.2 Following context: **konna**

konna can also be used to introduce things that are mentioned in the following context:

a ある男子大学生が【こんな】ことを言っていた
aru danshi daigakusei ga konna koto o itte ita.
A certain male university student said **[**this**]**:

b 【こんな】趣旨の文書だ
konna shushi no bunsho da
It's a document with **[**this kind of**]** content:

46 DESIDERATIVE SENTENCES

Desiderative S are S that indicate what somebody wants to do, have, or wishes (an) other(s) to do. S endings like **-tai (to omou)** (see 189), **-(y)ō to omou/kangaeru** (see 249) indicate what the speaker wants to do; the adj. **hoshii** (see 68) indicates what the speaker wants to have; and the S ending **-te hoshii** (see 197) indicates what the speaker wants others to do for his/her benefit (see also 57).

Note with **-tai** and **hoshii**, both the case Ps **ga** and **o** can be used (see 55.5, 148.3)

47 de wa [SOURCE OF INFORMATION]

Other than being simply a regular combination of **de** [case particle or cop.] + **wa** [focus particle], **de wa** also has the specialized use of indicating source of information (see 181.3). In this use it is synonymous with **ni yoru to** and **ni yoreba**, but can only be added to non-human sources (see 131).

a %テレビでは **terebi de wa** according to the TV

But *not*

b %Suzuki-san **de wa**

With human sources, **hanashi** or an other appropriate N (**shirabe**, etc.) must be inserted.

c 天野技官の話【では】、アパレルなどは「JISを厳密に守った服は売れない」とまで主張している【そう】だ。
amano gikan no hanashi dewa apareru nado wa JIS o genmitsu ni mamotta fuku wa urenai to made shuchō shite iru sō da
According to what technical officer Amano says, garment [maufacturers] even claim that clothing that follows the JIS [= Japan Industrial Standard] to the letter doesn't sell.

48 DIALECT FORMS

Japanese has a lot of dialect variation, although the media are having the effect of levelling the differences. The Kansai dialect of the Kyoto/Osaka area is encountered sometimes in writing (i.e. fiction) and films (esp. gangster movies), and is also quite ubiquitous on TV, with the abundance of 'TV talents' from the Kansai area. Most Japanese are quite familiar with its characteristics, and especially among the young in Tokyo it is quite fashionable to throw in some Kansai forms, partly due to the abundance of popular TV talents from Kansai who appear on national television.

In Table 10 are some common variants, compared to standard usage.

Some other general tendencies:

Long vowels are shortened

dō 'how' → **do**
darō (-(y)ō form of cop.) → **yaro**
no → **n**

Double consonants are often changed to single consonants (with accompanying vowel changes).

Table 10 Some standard/Kansai dialect forms

Standard	*Kansai*
yo	→ **wa** (by men also)
ne	→ **nen**
zo	→ **de**
da	→ **ya**
darō	→ **yaro**
ii	→ **ee**
to [quotation P]	→ usually omitted (except set phrases and before **chigau**)
to iu N	→ **iu** N
V-**nai**	→ V-**hen***
V-**masu**	→ V-**haru**
V-**mashita**	→ V-**hatta**
V-**te irassharu**	→ V-**te haru**

Note * **-hen** is usually attached to the same forms as **-nai**, but note **kama-hen** below, which is a contraction of **kamawa-hen**. Note also **sēhen**, which is the form derived from **suru**, equivalent to **shinai** in standard Japanese (for an example of **sēhen** see 115 c).

itte → **iute**
katte → **kōte**
shimatte → **shimote**

But note **detotta**, a contraction of **dete otta** (**oru/otta** is the Kansai equivalent of **iru/ita**).

Some fixed expressions include the following:

arigatō → **ōki ni** 'thank you'
n ja nai ka → **n to chau/chaimasu ka** 'isn't it' (a contraction of **no to chigau**)
sumimasen → **sunmahen** 'sorry'
ikura → **nanbo** 'how much'
taihen → **erai** 'very'

Most of the above-mentioned features can be found illustrated in the examples below.

a 買わ【へん】か。
kawa-hen ka
Won't you buy?

b 何事かと尋ねると「だれか倒れ【はった】【ん】【や】」。
nanigoto ka to tazuneru to dare ka taore-hatta n ya
When we asked what was happening [we were told] 'Somebody's collapsed'.

c 明石でやっ【てはる】昼網の記事を読んで、活性化の決め手はこれ【や】、と思いました。
akashi de yatte haru hiruami no kiji o yonde kassei-ka no kimete wa kore ya to omoimashita
Reading the article about the daytime fishing they’re doing in Akashi, I thought that’s the way to revitalize things.

d 土壌がないところで【なんぼ】全国発信【や】【】【いうて】も、掛け声倒れに終わる【んと違います】か。
dojō ga nai tokoro de nanbo zenkoku hasshin ya iute mo kakegoe daore ni owaru n to chigaimasu ka
No matter how much you might say (*lit.* “giving out information to the whole country”), where the ground’s not prepared, it’ll be just a shout with no reaction.

e 京都【や】ったら「【えらい】勉強し【てはり】ます【なあ】」なんて【いうて】くれるけども、こっちは「勉強して（まけて）おくんなはれ」(笑い)。
kyōto yattara erai benkyō shite harimasu nā nante iute kureru kedomo kotchi wa benkyō shite(makete) okunnahare (warai)
If it were Kyoto, people might say to me ‘You are very cheap!’, but here they say ‘Make it cheaper!’ (laughter).

f 【すんまへん】、そこに座っ【てはる】花嫁さんがあんまりきれいなも【や】から、よそ見して【しもて】。
sunmahen soko ni suwatte haru hanayome-san ga anmari kirei na mon ya kara yosomi shite shimote
Sorry, the bride sitting there is just so beautiful, I just couldn’t help gazing at her.

g 「どうしたの」と声をかけると「やっぱり帰れ【へん】【わ】【なぁ】」とつぶやく男性。
dō shita no to koe o kakeru to yappari kaerehen wa nā to tsubuyaku dansei
When I asked ‘What’s the problem?’, a man muttered ‘Can’t get home, after all’.

h 関西圏以外の出身者の間で一番気に入られている大阪弁は「まいど、おおきに」。…二位は「好っきやねん」、三位には「かまへん」と温かみのある言葉が上位に挙がっている。
kansaiken igai no shusshinsha no aida de ichiban ki ni irarete iru ōsakaben wa maido ōki ni . . . nii wa sukki ya nen san'i ni wa kawahen to atatakami no aru kotoba ga jōi ni agatte iru
The most popular Osaka dialect among those from areas other than Kansai was **maido ōki ni** (‘thanks every time’) . . . In second position was **sukki ya nen** ‘you like it, don’t you’), and in third, **kamahen** ‘I don’t mind’, all warm-hearted expressions.

i 「先週の総会で出た問題【や】けど、設計料の負担配分は占有面積を基準にしたら【ど】【やろ】か」「三十戸で頭割りにするほうが【ええ】【んとちゃう】」「それと、一階で占有地にマンホールがある組合員はその分割り引いて値段決めてほしい【】いう提案も出【とった】【で】」コーポラティブハウス——。

senshū no sōkai de deta mondai ya kedo sekkeiryō no futan haibun wa sen'yū menseki o kijun ni shitara do yaro ka sanjukko de atamawari ni suru hō ga ee n to chau sore to ikkai de senyūchi ni manhōru ga aru kumiaiin wa sono bun waribiite nedan kimete hoshii iu teian mo detotta de kōporatibu hausu

'This is a point that was raised in last week's general meeting: how about basing the share of the planning fee on the area occupied?' 'Isn't it better to pay an equal share for each of the 30 houses?' 'There was also a proposal by those association members whose land has a manhole at ground level, that they wanted something taken off the price on that basis.' [corporate housing].

49 -domo [SUFFIX]

Attached to N and pron. that refer to persons, **-domo** indicates plural. When attached to first person pron. (usually **watakushi**), **-domo** has a humble ring. When used with third persons, it indicates a feeling of contempt or belittling.

Note - where the same plural is used twice in a sentence, the second one is usually formed by different means, for stylistic reasons. (see 188, 168, 158, 145).

49.1 First person (**watakushi**)-**domo**
49.2 Third person-**domo**

49.1 FIRST PERSON (watakushi)-domo

watakushi-domo means 'we' and is used in formal situations, often by persons representing an organization (company, political party, hospital, etc.).

a 私【ども】は野に下りました。
watakushi-domo wa ya ni kudarimashita
We have become the opposition.

b 私【ども】でやりましょう。
watakushi-domo de yarimashō
We (= our company) will take it on.

c 私【ども】の店には膨大な数の、お客様が来店する。
watakushi-domo no mise ni wa bōdai na kazu no o-kyaku-sama ga raiten suru
An enormous number of customers visits our shop.

49.2 THIRD PERSON-**domo**

Attached to N, **-domo** gives the plural a ring of contempt. In example b, the implication is that the other cats are useless or inferior, compared to the old cat.

a ジェシーらはそこで銃をとり、悪党【ども】に反撃を始めるのだ。
jeshī-ra wa soko de jū o tori akutō-domo ni hangeki o hajimeru no da
At that stage, Jesse and his men take their guns and begin to fight the baddies.

b 夜、猫【ども】が古猫にその極意を聞く。古猫はそれぞれ腕自慢の猫たちの至らぬところを教え、…
yoru, neko-domo ga furuneko ni sono gokui o kiku. furuneko wa sorezore udejiman no neko-tachi no itaranu tokoro o oshie
At night, the cats ask the old cat about the secret [of catching rats]. The old cat tells the cats, each of whom takes pride in her abilities, where they fall short, and . . .

50 DOUBLE NEGATIVES

Double neg. are widely used in Japanese. There are three types: double neg. proper, which are a rhetorical device (e.g. 'it's not that I don't . . .'), neg. conditionals ('must', etc.), and the phrase V-**zu ni wa irarenai** 'can't help doing'.

As negatives cancel each other out, resulting in a positive meaning, they can be seen as an alternative way of expressing things, which in meaning ranges from tentative to emphatic.

Double neg. can consist of two neg. forms (incl. the negative adjective **nai** 'there isn't'), or a negative form following a lexical word that has neg. meaning, such as **chiisai** 'little', **sukunai** 'few', **yasui** 'cheap', etc.

50.1 Double negatives proper
50.1.1 Negative noun **wa nai**
50.1.2 **nai**/verb-**nai de wa/mo nai**
50.1.3 **-nai de wa nai ka**
50.1.4 Adj.-**ku (wa) nai**
50.2 Negative conditionals
50.2.1 Negative conditionals + negative
50.2.2 Negative conditionals (with ellipted negative)
50.2.3 Negative conditionals followed by other negative expressions
50.2.4 Negative conditionals + **-mai** (negative presumptive)
50.2.5 Negative conditionals: verb-**zaru o enai**
50.3 Verb-**zu ni (wa) irarenai**

50.1 DOUBLE NEGATIVES PROPER

(See also 115)

50.1.1 Negative noun **wa nai**

This is an emphatic way of expressing positive states such as ‘always’, ‘everyone’ by using two neg.

a 絵を見ない日はあっても建築を見【ない】日は【ない】。
e o minai hi wa atte mo kenchiku o minai hi wa nai
Even though there are days when I don’t look at a painting, there are no days when I don’t look at architecture.

b 目を細め【ぬ】方は【ない】。
me o hosomenu kata wa nai
There is no one who doesn’t narrow their eyes [with delight].

50.1.2 **nai**/verb-**nai de wa**/**mo nai**

Lit. “it’s not the case that . . . doesn’t”, etc.: this is a tentative way of expressing a positive state of affairs ‘a bit’, ‘some’.

a 中小側の気持ちも【わからないではない】。
chūshō-gawa no kimochi mo wakaranai dewa nai
We do have some sympathy for the feelings of small and medium businesses.

b 股さきのシーンには、ちょっとゾクゾクし【ないでもない】。
matasaki no shīn ni wa chotto zokuzoku shinai demo nai
The scene [in the film] where the legs are torn apart feels a bit creepy.

c 開会前にはさめた声が【聞こえないではなかった】。
kaikai-mae ni wa sameta koe ga kikoenai dewa nakatta
Before the congress, some sensible opinions were heard.

50.1.3 **-nai de wa nai ka**

In question form, double neg. are a way of making a point forcefully or aggressively (see 114.7).

a 遅かれ早かれ人員の見直しが始まるの【ではないか】。
osokare hayakare jin'in no minaoshi ga hajimaru no de wa nai ka
Sooner or later, a reconsideration of personnel will surely begin.

b 「それが守られない【ではないですか】」と怒りをあらわにする。
sore ga mamorarenai de wa nai desu ka to ikari o arawa ni suru
‘That [promise that the performances will be strictly local] will not be kept, right?’ he said, making his anger clear.

50.1.4 Adj.-ku (wa) nai

An adj. with-neg. meaning plus neg. makes for a somewhat emphatic way of expressing a positive content, in the sense of *lit.* "*not* few", i.e. '*quite* a few', etc.

a 売却に際し、地価下落に泣かされたところも【少なくない】。
baikyaku ni saishi chika geraku ni nakasareta tokoro mo sukunakunai
When selling, quite a few places suffered from the drop in land prices.

50.2 NEGATIVE CONDITIONALS

These are found in many combinations between *A* and *B* below; literally, they all mean "it won't do"/"it's no good (= *B*) if not (= *A*)", i.e. 'must'.

Table 11 Negative conditional combinations

A		B
Neg. condition/informal var.*		_Second neg. (often omitted)_
-nakereba	**/-nakya**	**naranai**
-nakute wa	**/-nakucha**	**ikenai**
-nai to		**ikan**
-neba	**/-nya**	**dame**

Note * Can be lengthened to **nakyā**, etc.

50.2.1 Negative conditionals + negative

a パパと話し【てはダメ】。
papa to hanashite wa dame
You mustn't talk with daddy.

b 本を読ま【なくてはならない】。
hon o yomanakute wa naranai
We need to read the book.

c 言わ【なければならない】ことは申し上げた。
iwanakereba naranai koto wa mōshiageta
I've told him the things that needed saying.

d 企業の社会的責任からいっても続け【なきゃいかん】。
kigyō no shakai-teki sekinin kara itte mo tsuzukenakya ikan
We must continue, also from the point of view of the company's responsibility towards society.

e その志は僕らが引き継いで、行革はやら【ねばならない】。
sono kokorozashi wa bokura ga hikitsuide gyōkaku wa yaraneba naranai
We need to carry on his [= late MP] intentions, and carry out administrative reform.

f しかし、ほかの可能性も考え【なくてはならな】かった。
shikashi hoka no kanōsei mo kangaenakute wa naranakatta
However, we had to consider other possibilities, too.

g コンパニオンはずっと笑顔で立って【なくちゃいけない】から疲れる。
konpanion wa zutto egao de tatte nakucha ikenai kara tsukareru
[Being a] companion is tiring as you need to be standing all the time with a smile on your face.

h （プレゼントを）「やら【なくちゃいかん】な、そりゃ」とニヤリ。
(sorya = sore wa)
(purezento o) yaranakucha ikan na sorya to niyari
'I'll have to give her (a [birthday] present), won't I', he smirked.

i とにかく新しいことをやら【にゃいかん】、…
tonikaku atarashii koto o yaranya ikan
At any rate, we must do something new . . .

50.2.2 Negative conditionals (with ellipted negative)

The second neg. (*B*) is frequently omitted in speech and when indicating the content of one's thoughts.

a 今やら【ねば】。
ima yaraneba
We must do [it] now.

b 納得してもらわ【にゃ】。
nattoku shite morawanya
We must get people convinced.

c 記者団に対し「どうするかって？ 決め【にゃー】なー」
kishadan ni taishi dō suru ka tte kimenyā nā
To the press corps [he said] 'What are we going to do? We've got to decide . . .'

d 今さら変えるわけには行かないでしょ。誇りを持ってやら【ないと】。
imasara kaeru wake ni wa ikanai desho. hokori o motte yaranai to
We can't change things now. We must do it [= forming a cabinet] with pride.

e 勉強し【なくては】。
benkyō shinakute wa
We must study it [= the proposal]

f まず教習所に行か【なくちゃ】」。
mazu kyōshūjo ni ikanakucha
First of all, I need to go to driving school.

g たばこ、やめ【なきゃ】。
tabako yamenakya
I must stop smoking.

h 大脳のように創造的であら【ねば】。
dainō no yō ni sōzō-teki de araneba
It [= the Council] must be creative like the brain proper [= not mechanical like the cerebellum].

50.2.3 Negative conditionals followed by other negative expressions

a とりまとめは早くやら【ないと】意味が【ない】。
torimatome wa hayaku yaranai to imi ga nai
There's no point unless we settle matters quickly.

50.2.4 Negative conditionals + -mai (negative presumptive)

-mai is a neg. pres. ending, which has the same meaning as **nai darō** (see 89, 163).

a 大いに自戒せ【ねば】なる【まい】。
ōi ni jikai seneba narumai
No doubt we must take great care [not to repeat the same mistake].

b 日本の経済システムを変えていか【ねばならないだろう】。
nihon no keizai shisutemu o kaete ikaneba naranai darō
We'll probably need to change Japan's economic system.

50.2.5 Negative conditionals: verb-zaru o enai

V-**zaru** is a classical neg., and the combination V-**zaru o enai** literally means "cannot not", i.e. 'must', 'have to'. It has a more written/formal ring than combinations like **nakereba naranai** (see 50.2.1).

a お客様がいるならやら【ざるをえない】。
o-kyaku-sama ga iru nara yarazaru o enai
If there are customers, we have to [provide it = the service].

b サービスのあり方も変わってこ【ざるを得ない】。
sābisu no arikata mo kawatte kozaru o enai
The way service is [provided] must change too.

c 介護のために仕事を辞め【ざるを得なかった】。
kaigo no tame ni shigoto o yamezaru o enakatta
She had to quit working to look after the home.

50.3 VERB-zu ni (wa) irarenai

Attached to the neg. V-base, this combination consists of the written/formal style neg. conjunctive ending -**zu ni** (equivalent to colloquial **-nai de**) + the negative pot. form of **iru**, together meaning literally "cannot exist without doing", i.e. 'can't help doing' (see 183).

a 「ただ、なぜか酒を飲ま【ずにいられな】かった」と振り返る。
tada naze ka sake o nomazu ni irarenakatta to furikaeru
'But for some reason I couldn't help drinking', he recalls.

b 「物は十分すぎるぐらい持っているが、何か物足りない。小さな花でも育【ずにはいられな】くなった」と話す。
mono wa jūbun sugiru gurai motte iru ga nani ka monotarinai. chīsana hana demo sodatezu ni wa irarenaku natta to hanasu
'I have plenty of material things, but don't feel fulfilled. I can't help with raising even a small flower now', she says.

51 e [CASE PARTICLE]

The case P **e** (written へ) indicates a direction or goal 'to', 'towards'. It overlaps with **ni** [**case particle**] to a considerable extent (see 116).

51.1 With verb of motion
51.2 With ellipted predicate
51.3 Noun **e no** noun
51.4 Noun **e to** verb/verb phrase

51.1 WITH VERB OF MOTION

With V of motion, **e** can be used instead of **ni** to mark a core case (dative of direction). Whereas **ni** indicates the goal of a motion, **e** is said to be concerned more with the direction towards the goal, but in practice the two are often interchangeable (see 116).

Note – in all of the examples in 51.1, **e** can be replaced by **ni**.

A number of verbs typically take **ni**. These include verbs of arriving, putting and posture (**tsuku**, **oku**, **noru**, **suwaru**, **tatsu**) but note examples a + b for exceptions!

This is also the case in the sense of beneficiary or recipient of an object or action, except when **no** is attached, in which case only **e no** is possible (see 51.3).

Verbs of entering and inserting (**hairu**, **ireru**, etc.) mostly take **ni**. However, despite what most textbooks say, they can also take **e** (examples c–e), without any change in meaning.

a さあ、そこ【へ】座れ。
sā soko e suware
Right, sit down there!

b 最近、教科書を家に持ち帰らずに、学校【へ】置いていく生徒が多い。
saikin kyōkasho o ie ni mochikaerazu ni gakkō e oite iku seito ga ōi
These days there are lots of pupils who don't take their textbooks home, but leave them at school.

c JR【へ】入るのは子供のころからの夢。
jē āru e hairu no wa kodomo no koro kara no yume
Entering JR [Japan Rail] has been a dream since childhood days.

d ペットを砂場【へ】入れないよう…
petto o sunaba e irenai yō
Do not let pets into the sandpit . . .

e …「中【へ】入れろ」と脅迫。
naka e irero to kyōhaku
. . . he threated him, saying 'Let me in'.

f 島【へ】渡るツアーは週一回で、毎回ほぼ満席という。
shima e wataru tsuā wa shū ikkai de maikai hobo manseki to iu
They say that tours to the island take place once a week, and are more or less fully booked each time.

g この時期の経歴は空白だ。「実は大学【へ】行ったんです」。
kono jiki no keireki wa kūhaku da jitsu wa daigaku e itta n desu
Her CV for this period is blank. 'Actually, I went to university.'

h 六月に名古屋【へ】着任した。
rokugatsu ni nagoya e chakunin shita
In June, he arrived at his post in Nagoya.

i 組合員【へ】は冷凍のまま供給する。
kumiaiin e wa reitō no mama kyōkyū suru
To co-op members they provide them [eels] frozen.

j 黒字はどうして生まれ、どこ【へ】行ってしまったのか。
kuroji wa dō shite umare doko e itte shimatta no ka
How did the surplus arise, and where did it go?

51.2 WITH ELLIPTED PREDICATE

With ellipted pred., **e** also indicates direction or goal.

a 十一時半ぐらいにはベッドルーム【へ】。
jūichiji-han gurai ni wa beddo rūmu e
By about 11:30, [he heads] for the bedroom.

b ちょっと口にしては次々と灰皿【へ】。
chotto kuchi ni shite wa tsugitsugi to haizara e
He smokes them briefly, and then [stubs them out] in the ashtray one after the other.

In newspaper-style headlines, **ni** indicates plans, or developments. In this use, **e** cannot be replaced by **ni**.

c パキスタン大統領が訪中【へ】。
pakisutan daitōryō ga hōchū e
Pakistani president set to visit China

d タイ、ミャンマーから天然ガス購入【へ】。
tai myanmā kara tennengasu kōnyū e
[Plans] to buy natural gas from Thailand and Myanmar

51.3 NOUN e no NOUN

To modify a N, **e** is used instead of **ni**; the combination **ni no** N is not found, but it is not possible to explain every instance of **e no** as a conversion from **ni**, as examples c and d show.

a 新規分野【への】進出も探っている。(cf., 新規分野【に】進出する)
shinki bunya e no shinshutsu mo sagutte iru (shinki bunya ni shinshutsu suru)
They are also looking to expand into new areas.

b Eサイズから Lサイズ【への】切り替えを急ぎたい。(cf., Lサイズ【に】切り替える)
E-saizu kara L-saizu e no kirikae o isogitai (cf., **L-saizu ni kirikaeru)**
We'd like to speed up the changeover from E size to L size.

c 記事【への】批判もあった。(cf., 記事を批判する)
kiji e no hihan mo atta (cf., **kiji o hihan suru)**
There were also criticisms of the article.

d それは、日本【への】警告でもある。
sore wa nihon e no keikoku de mo aru
This [= the bipolarization of political parties in the US] is also a warning for Japan.

51.4 NOUN **e to** VERB/VERB PHRASE

[N **e to**] is used to describe the manner in which some change (indicated by a V/V phrase of change) takes place. Again, **ni to** is not found (see 213).

a 文明はなぜか西【へと】回る。
bunmei wa naze ka nishi e to mawaru
For some reason, civilization moves westwards.

b パソコンがテレビ【へと】変身を始めた。
pasokon ga terebi e to henshin o hajimeta
The PC has begun to change into a TV.

52 ELLIPSIS

Ellipsis in Japanese is a tricky issue, because it's sometimes not clear whether something is omitted or whether it's not needed in the first place. Personal pron., which are frequently absent (e.g. example 52.1a) are a case in point. They exist, but are only used when required for purposes such as clarification, emphasis, etc. They are therefore *not* included under ellipsis.

Also, when compared to English, Japanese 'lacks' certain grammatical features, such as the article (definite and indefinite), and relative pronouns, which therefore by definition cannot be ellipted.

Ellipsis here refers to a sentence where some part (ranging from a case or focus P to a pred.) is missing, the meaning of which can, however, easily be recovered, either from the context or because that part tends to be omitted customarily (see 55.3).

Where a verb would be repeated in English, it is usually ellipted (or substituted with words like 'do' or auxiliaries such as 'will' 'might', etc. in English. In Japanese, where there is a sense of 'also', this can be conveyed by using the focus P **mo** (see 94.1.2). Where an addition is indicated, the *first* verb can be omitted (see example 53.2 g), because in Japanese the object of a sentence comes before the verb.

Note also the use of the adverb **sō**: 'in that way', 'so' to substitute for a full pred., normally used (just like 'so' in English) when replying to others' comments.

a 日本は世界的な視野を持たなければいけないと思います。私も【そう】思います。
nihon wa sekai-teki na shiya o motanakereba ikenai to omoimasu. watashi mo sō omoimasu.
'I think that Japan needs to view things globally.' 'I think so too.'

52.1 Ellipsis of particle
52.2 Ellipsis of noun
52.3 Ellipsis of predicate (whole or part)

52.1 ELLIPSIS OF PARTICLE

The P **o**, **wa** and **ga** are often ellipted in informal speech; ellipted **o** and **wa** are often indicated by comma intonation (and by a comma in writing) (see 148.1.2, 236.4.1.2, 55.2).

a たばこ【、】やめなきゃ。(= ellipsis of **o**)
tabako yamenakya
I must stop smoking (*lit.* "stop tobacco").

b 仕事【、】ありませんか。(= ellipsis of **wa** [focus P])
shigoto arimasen ka
Isn't there any work?

c 今夜はお父さん【】帰ってこないの。(= ellipsis of **ga** [case P])
kon'ya wa otōsan kaette konai no
Tonight, hubby's not coming home.

52.2 ELLIPSIS OF NOUN

N can be ellipted in Japanese in a way similar to English to avoid unneccessary repetition. However, whereas in English the second N is usually ellipted, in Japanese it is the first one.

In example a, the N after the first **gotoki** is ellipted (omitted) because it is identical to the second one.

Counters [num. + C] can also be used without the N they count where the context makes it clear which N they refer to (example b) (see 36.5)

a 政治家と官僚が対等であるかのごとき【】、争っているかのごとき状態は自然ではない。
seijika to kanryō ga taitō de aru ka no gotoki arasotte iru ka no gotoki jōtai wa shizen de wa nai
A state of affairs where politicians and administrators seem on an equal footing, and seem to compete, is unnatural.

b 精密なイラストは…息をのむほど美しい。【】一枚を仕上げるのに一カ月くらいかかるそうだ。
seimitsu na irasuto wa . . . iki o nomu hodo utsukushii. ichi-mai o shiageru no ni ik-kagetsu kurai kakaru sō da
The accurate illustrations . . . are breathtakingly beautiful. Apparently it takes about a month to finish one.

52.3 ELLIPSIS OF PREDICATE (WHOLE OR PART)

The pred. (or part of it) that may be assumed to be ellipted is given in brackets below (see 5.4.2.2, 50.2.2, 55.3, 51.2, 116.3, 94.1.2, 107.6, 148.1.3, 236.4.2.2).

a まさか取締役になるとは【】。(= 思わなかった, etc.)
masaka torishimari-yaku ni naru to wa
I'd never [have thought] that I'd be executive president.

b ちょっと口にしては次々と灰皿へ【】。(= 入れる, etc.)
chotto kuchi ni shite wa tsugitsugi to haizara e
He smokes them briefly [each time], and then one after the other [stubs them out] in the ashtray.

c【おふくろ】に花束を! (= 贈ろう, etc.)
ofukuro ni hanataba o
Flowers for 【mum】!

d ヨーロッパのブランドものはモノトーンで大人っぽく、私にはどうも【】。(= 似合わない, etc.)
yōroppa no burando-mono wa monotōn de otona-ppoku, watashi ni wa dōmo
European designer clothes are in plain colours and have a grown-up feel about them, and are not quite [right] for me.

e そんなに焦らなくても【】、まだ若いのだから。(= いい, etc.)
sonna ni aseranakute mo, mada wakai no da kara
You needn't fret so much, because you're still young.

f たばこ、やめなきゃ【】。(= いけない, etc.)
tabako yamenakya
I must stop smoking.

g 肉は動物を殺してまで【】、と思うので、食べることが少なくなりました。(= は食べたくない, etc.)
niku wa dōbutsu o koroshite made to omou no de taberu koto ga sukunaku narimashita.
I don't eat much meat now, because I feel that [I don't want to eat it] if it means killing animals.

h 会社に入ってからは、まずレンズの技術を【】、次にレンズ以外のこと極めるのが夢となった。(= 極める)
kaisha ni haitte kara wa mazu renzu no gijutsu o tsugi ni renzu igai no koto kiwameru no ga yume to natta
After I entered the company, my dream was first to master lens technology, and then things other than lenses.

53 FORMS OF ADDRESS: FAMILY (OWN AND OTHERS')

As with non-family, instead of personal pron. other forms of address/reference are frequently used (see 158).

53.1 Address
53.2 Reference

An important distinction in use depends on whether one is *addressing* others, or *referring* to them.

When referring to others, an ingroup outgroup distinction is also applied. This distinction requires that towards outgroup listeners, members of one's own group are referred to without hon. pref. (**o-/go-**) and/or personal suf. (**-san/-sama**, etc.), as in examples 53.2 b, d, f and h–j. However, note the use of the words for mother/father**(o-)tōsan/chan/(o-)kāsan/chan**, and also **papa/mama**, by parents towards their children like first person personal pron. (example 2 c), where this rule does not apply. Wives/husbands also commonly use **(o-)tōsan/(o-)kāsan** and variants to refer to their marriage partners (example 2 a). Also, children need to learn the address/reference distinction, and often fail to distinguish them (example 2 g) (see 158, 160.4).

The choice between **o-** and **go-** depends on whether the word the pref. is attached to is WJ or SJ vocabulary (see 235). Exceptions include **o-jōsan** and **o-bot-chan**.

Where names are used for addressing, the general rule is to attach **-san**, etc. for seniors, and nothing (except for intimate children, etc., **-chan/-kun**) for those junior to the speaker.

Note 1 – older-generation husbands also use **oi** ('say', 'hey') to address their wives (example 53.2 l), and wives (or girlfriends) often use **nē** ('I say') towards their husband (boyfriend), in a variety of intonations (example a).

a 「【ねえ】、入るんならこっちのホテルがいいな」。平日の午後七時、連れの男性と腕を組んでいた若い女の子が嬌声（きょうせい）をあげた。
nē hairu n nara kotchi no hoteru ga ii na. heijitsu no gogo shichi-ji tsure no dansei to ude o kunde ita wakai onna no ko ga kyōsei o ageta
'Look, if we go to [a love hotel], then I'd like this one'. Around 7p.m. on a weekday, a young girl who had been walking arm in arm with her male companion, raised her voice coquettishly.

Note 2 when there is no need to make the in/outgroup distinction or to use honorifics, as in narrative text or when referring to historical or fictional figures, the terms in the first column in Table 12 (but not the ones in brackets) are used, *excepting* the words for husband and wife, where only **tsuma** and **otto** are normally used (example 53.2 e), although depending on such situational factors as the speaker-listener relationship, formality, etc., the terms in the last columns are also used (example 53.2 a) .

53.1 ADDRESS

a 【お父さん、お母さん】、長い間【ありがとうございまし】た。
otōsan okāsan nagai aida arigatō gozaimashita
Father, mother, thank you for all [you've done] all these years.

b なあ【オヤジ】、早く隠居しなよ。
nā oyaji hayaku inkyo shi na yo
Come on, dad, retire soon, will you.

c 【おふくろ】、死ぬなよ。
ofukuro shinu na yo
【Mum】, don't die!

53.2 REFERENCE

a 今夜は【お父さん】帰ってこないの。
konya wa otōsan kaette konai no
Tonight 【hubby】's not coming home.

b 「【父】は解剖学の偉大な先生だった」という。
chichi wa kaibōgaku no idai na sensei datta to iu
She says '【Father】 was a great anatomist'.

c どんなことがあっても、【お父さん】と【お母さん】は守ってやる。
donna koto ga attemo otōsan to okāsan wa mamotte yaru
No matter what happens 【daddy and mummy】 will protect you.

d 【親父】の墓には既に【おふくろ】が入っている。
oyaji no haka ni wa sude ni ofukuro ga haitte iru
Mum is already interred in daddy's grave.

e 【おふくろ】に花束を!
ofukuro ni hanataba o
Flowers for 【mum】!

f …男子生徒が「【おふくろ】に教えてやろう」と喜んでいた。
danshi seito ga ofukuro ni oshiete yarō to yorokonde ita
. . . a male pupil rejoiced, saying 'I'll tell 【mum】 [that the nutritional value of spinach is in the roots]'.

g 「もう少ししたら、シベリアの【おばあさん】の所に行く」という。
mō sukoshi shitara shiberia no obāsan no tokoro ni iku to iu
'Soon, I'll go to 【my grandmother】's place in Siberia', he said.

h 昨年、【主人】と離婚しました。
sakunen shujin to rikon shimashita
Last year, I got divorced from 【my husband】.

Table 12 Address forms: family

Relation	*Speaker's family*		*Listener/third person's family*
	Referring (my . . .)	*Addressing*	*Referring* (your . . . , someone else's . . .)
family	家族 **kazoku**	— —	ご家族 **go-kazoku**
parents	両親 **ryōshin**	— —	ご両親 **go-ryōshin**
father	父、おやじ・親父 **chichi (oyaji)**	(お)父さん* おやじ・親父(さん) **(o-)tōsan*,** **oyaji(-san)** パパ **papa**	お父さん **o-tōsan**
mother	母、おふくろ **haha (ofukuro)**	(お)母さん* **(o)kā-san*** おふくろさん **ofukuro-san** ママ、マミー **mama, mamī**	お母さん **o-kā-san**
older brother	兄 **ani**	(お)兄さん* **(o-)niisan***	お兄さん **o-niisan***
older sister	姉 **ane**	(お)姉さん* **(o-)nēsan***	お姉さん **o-nēsan***
younger brother	弟 **otōto**	(name) (name)	弟さん **otōto-san**
younger sister	妹 **imōto**	(name) (name)	妹さん **imōto-san**
brothers (& sisters)	兄弟 **kyōdai**	— —	ご兄弟 **go-kyōdai**
sisters	姉妹 **shimai**	—	姉妹 **go-shimai**
child(ren)	子ども **kodomo**	(name) (name)	お子さん **o-ko-san**
son(s)	息子、倅 **musuko (segare)**	(name) (name)	息子さん、 お坊ちゃん **musuko-san, o-botchan**

Table 12 (Cont'd)

Relation	*Speaker's family*		*Listener/third person's family*
	Referring (my . . .)	*Addressing*	*Referring* (your . . . , someone else's . . .)
daughter(s)	娘 **musume**	(name) (name)	娘さん、お嬢さん **musume-san, o-jōsan***
grandfather	祖父 **sofu (jī-san)**	(お) じいさん* **(o-) jī-san***	おじいさん **o-jī-san**
grandmother	祖母 **sobo (bā-san)**	(お) ばあさん* **(o-) bā-san***	おばあさん **o-bā-san**
grandchild	孫 **mago**	(name) (name)	お孫さん **o-mago-san**
uncle	叔父・伯父 **oji**	おじさん* **o-ji-san***	おじさん **o-ji-san**
aunt	叔母・伯母 **oba**	おばさん* **o-ba-san***	おばさん **o-ba-san**
cousin	いとこ **itoko**	(name) (name)	(お) いとこさん **(o-)itoko-san**
nephew	甥 **oi**	(name) (name)	甥ごさん **oi-go-san**
niece	姪 **mei**	(name) (name)	姪ごさん **mei-go-san**
husband	主人、旦那、夫、ハズ、ダーリン **shujin (danna, otto, hazu, dārin)** surname	あなた、ねえ、お父さん、パパ、 **anata**, **otōsan**, **papa** name	ご主人、だんなさん* **go-shujin, danna-san***
wife	家内、ワイフ、母さん、妻 **kanai (waifu, kā-chan, tsuma)**	おい、お母さん、ママ、 **o-kāchan, mama** name	奥さん* **oku-san***

Note * -**chan** often replaces -**san** when referring to others' children, and when children address their kin. Instead of -**san**, the superpolite -**sama** can be used for reference to others' kin.

Some of the above forms, such as **oyaji** and **ofukuro**, are only used by men in informal contexts.

i …【家内】と一緒に住むつもりです。
kanai to issho ni sumu tsumori desu
I intend to live [there = in the official residence] with 【my wife】.

j 【家族】を食わせないといけないし。
kazoku o kuwasenai to ikenai shi
I also need to feed 【my family】.

k 【奥さん】が【ご主人】の会社の車で買い物に行くなどというのも、さほど珍しいことではなかった。
oku-san ga go-shujin no kaisha no kuruma de kaimono ni iku nado to iu no mo sahodo mezurashii koto de wa nakatta
It's wasn't that unusual [in the old days] for the wife to go out shopping in the husband's company car.

l 「【おい】、仕事で疲れているんだから早くなんとかしてくれよ」——、幼い我が子がむずかると【夫】が【妻】に文句を言う。
oi shigoto de tsukarete iru n da kara hayaku nan to ka shite kure yo osanai waga ko ga muzukaru to otto ga tsuma ni monku o iu
'Hey, I'm tired from work, so do something about him right away', the husband complains to the wife when their little son gets fretful.

54 FORMS OF ADDRESS: NON-FAMILY

Where a title (**sensei** 'teacher', 'MP', or **daijin** 'government minister') can be used, names are often avoided. Where names are used, suf. like **-sama**, **-san**, **-kun** and **-chan** are usually attached (see 158).

a このことについての【大臣】の考えは。
kono koto ni tsuite no daijin no kangae wa
What are your [= the minister's] thoughts on this?

b 【先生】、こんなに暑くては授業できないよ。打ち切ろうよ!
sensei konna ni atsukute wa jugyō dekinai yo. uchikirō yo
Sir, if it's this hot we can't have classes! Let's finish!

c キャディー【さん】、こっちへ寄って。
kyadī-san kotchi e yotte
Caddy, come over here.

d A【君】もぜひ遊びに来て下さい。
A-kun mo zehi asobi ni kite kudasai
You [= A-kun] too please do come and visit.

55 **ga** [CASE PARTICLE]

ga generally marks the subject of a S (but with certain pred. it translates into English like an object).

ga is often contrasted with **wa** [focus P], and the distinction in use of the two is said to be one of the most difficult problems facing the foreign learner of the language (see 238).

Depending on the type of sentence, **ga** also contrasts with some other case P (see 55.4, 55.5).

55.1 With one-place verb/adjective
55.2 With ellipted **ga**
55.3 With ellipted predicate
55.4 **ga** in potential sentences
55.5 **ga** in desiderative sentences
55.6 **ga** in passive sentences
55.7 **ga** emphasizing the preceding subject noun/noun phrase
55.8 **ga** in comparative/superlative sentences: marking the preferred item (= subject)
55.8.1 Noun **ga**
55.8.2 Adverbial clause-**te ga**
55.9 **ga** attached to question words in subject position
55.10 (Noun **ni**) **ga aru/iru**: **ga** in existential/locational sentences
55.11 **ga** in 'double-subject' (noun **wa** noun **ga**) sentences
55.12 **ga** in 'double-subject' (noun **wa** noun **ga**) sentences with ellipted noun **wa**
55.13 **ga** marking the subject in a noun-modifying clause
55.13.1 Complement clauses
55.13.2 Relative clauses
55.14 **ga** marking a nominalized clause

55.1 WITH ONE-PLACE VERB/ADJECTIVE

With one-place (i.e. intransitive) V, or adj., **ga** marks the subject of a spontaneous happening or phenomenon (examples b–f). **wa**, on the other hand, is typically used in considered statements (example a) (see 236, 231).

a 日本【は】豊かになった。ぜいたくな時代のまちづくりでは、今までと違った視点が必要になる。(= considered statement)
nihon wa yutaka ni natta. zeitaku na jidai no machi-zukuri de wa ima made to chigatta shiten ga hitsuyō ni naru
Japan has become affluent. One needs a different stance [= from before] about improving one's town in times of luxury.

b 涙【が】出た。(= spontaneous happening)
namida ga deta
Tears came to my eyes (*lit.* "tears came out").

c 空【が】暗くなった。
sora ga kuraku natta
The sky darkened.

d 頭【が】混乱してきました。
atama ga konran shite kimashita
I'm confused (*lit.* "my head has got confused").

e 時間【が】止まったようだった。
jikan ga tomatta yō datta
It was as if time had stopped.

f 日本海側では雪【が】降った。
nihonkai-gawa de wa yuki ga futta
On the Japan Sea side, it snowed (*lit.* "snow fell").

55.2 WITH ELLIPTED **ga**

Colloquially, **ga** is often ellipted.

a 今夜はお父さん【】帰ってこないの。
kon'ya wa otōsan kaette konai no
Tonight, hubby's not coming home.

55.3 WITH ELLIPTED PREDICATE

Where the context makes it clear what the meaning is, pred. can be ellipted.

a しかし、だれ【が】、なぜ。
shikashi dare ga naze
But who [did this], and why?

55.4 **ga** IN POTENTIAL SENTENCES

ga in a pot. S usually marks the NP that would be marked by **o** in its non-pot. counterpart. In English, this translates as the object of a pot. V. Note that in pot. S also using the comparative **hō ga** (example c), **ga** is used twice in a sentence.

The effect of **wa** in these sentences would be to imply a contrast (see 161, 236.5).

a 勝つゴルフ【が】出来ない。
katsu gorufu ga dekinai
I can't play winning golf.

b もう暑いところでは研究【が】できない。
mō atsui tokoro de wa kenkyū ga dekinai
I can't do research in hot climates (*lit.* "places") any more

c ワイドな画面の方が動き【が】楽しめるためだ。
waido na gamen no hō ga ugoki ga tanoshimeru tame da
This is because movement can be enjoyed better on a wide screen.

55.5 ga IN DESIDERATIVE SENTENCES

In desiderative S (**hoshii/-tai**), **ga** marks the object of desire (see 46, 68, 189).

In English, this translates as the object of a desiderative V. The effect of **wa** in these sentences would imply a contrast (see 236.5).

Alternatively, the object of desire in these sentences can be marked by **o** (see 148.3, 46).

a 何か、刺激【が】ほしい。
nani ka shigeki ga hoshii
I want some stimulus.

b 本を五、六冊書く時間【が】ほしい。
hon o goroku-satsu kaku jikan ga hoshii
I want the time to write five or six books.

c ほかの仕事【が】やりたい。
hoka no shigoto ga yaritai
I want to do a different job.

d すごく大きい。早く飛行機【が】見たい。
sugoku ōkii. hayaku hikōki ga mitai
It [the airport]'s so big. I want to see the aeroplanes soon.

e 海外の反応【が】早く知りたい。
kaigai no hannō ga hayaku shiritai
I want to find out quickly about reactions abroad.

f「肉やお菓子【が】食べたい」と笑う。
niku ya o-kashi ga tabetai to warau
'I want to eat meat and cakes', she laughs.

g いっしょに笑い、いっしょに泣けるような結婚【が】したい。
issho ni warai issho ni nakeru yō na kekkon ga shitai
I want a marriage where we can laugh and cry together.

55.6 ga IN PASSIVE SENTENCES

In a pass. S, **ga** marks the NP that would be marked by **o** in its active counterpart (see 156).

a また、インド洋でも海水温度の上昇【が】報告されている。
mata indoyō de mo kaisui ondo no jōshō ga hōkoku sarete iru
Furthermore, in the Indian Ocean a rise in the sea temperature has been reported

b 僕ひとり【が】認められたんじゃない。
boku hitori ga mitomerareta n ja nai
I wasn't the only one to receive recognition.

55.7 **ga** EMPHASIZING THE PRECEDING SUBJECT NOUN/ NOUN PHRASE

ga emphasizes the N or NP it is attached to (shown in 【】), in the (implicit) sense of 'nothing else'; this is one of the major differences between **ga** and **wa** in subject position, the latter having the effect of subduing the N/NP it is attached to (see 236).

a 【これ】【が】一番おいしい食べ方です。
kore ga ichiban oishii tabekata desu
This is the best way of eating [it].

b 【ほとんど】【が】家庭の主婦だ。
hotondo ga katei no shufu da
Almost all are housewives.

c 警察庁によると、今年に入っていじめが原因と推定される子供の自殺事件は未遂を含め計八件起きた。このうち【六人】【が】死亡している。
keisatsu-chō ni yoru to kotoshi ni haitte ijime ga gen'in to suitei sareru kodomo no jisatsu jiken wa misui o fukume kei hak-ken okita. kono uchi roku-nin ga shibō shite iru
According to the police agency, this year there has been a total of eight cases of child suicides, including attempted ones, which are assumed to have been caused by bullying. Six of them have died.

d 【キャベツ、タマネギ、ニンジン、ハクサイなど】【が】主な品目だ。
kyabetsu tamanegi ninjin hakusai nado ga omo na hinmoku da
Cabbages, onions, carrots, Chinese cabbage, etc. are the main items.

55.8 **ga** IN COMPARATIVE/SUPERLATIVE SENTENCES: MARKING THE PREFERRED ITEM (= SUBJECT)

Similar in effect to its use in 55.7, **ga** marks the item singled out as having some property or quality to a larger/the largest extent in comparative (often together with **hō**) and superlative S (see 25.1.1, 25.2.3, 252).

55.8.1 Noun **ga**

a 豚肉より牛肉の方【が】安い。
butaniku yori gyūniku no hō ga yasui
Beef is cheaper than pork.

b 牛肉【が】豚肉より安い——。
gyūniku ga butaniku yori yasui
Beef is cheaper than pork.

c 今【が】一番、仕事がおもしろい時期だ。
ima ga ichiban shigoto ga omoshiroi jiki da
Now is the time when work is most interesting.

d お客様【が】一番正直です。
o-kyaku-sama ga ichiban shōjiki desu
The customer is frankest.

55.8.2 Adverbial clause-**te ga**

ga can attach to an adverbial clause ending in the conjunctive form (in 【】), which can function in the same way as a NP. The **-te** clause in 【】indicates a state (see 1.3.3).

a やっぱり【夫婦そろってが】一番?
yappari fūfu sorotte ga ichiban
After all, husband and wife [= going to the movies] together is best?

55.9 **ga** ATTACHED TO QUESTION WORDS IN SUBJECT POSITION

In Q that have a Q word as subject, the Q word always attaches **ga**, never **wa** (there are some exceptions to this, but this is limited to set expressions such as **nani wa nakutomo** 'in any case', **nani wa tomo are** 'whatever else', or 'above all', etc.). Example a shows the latter case.

a ズボンの二本の足をストラップ（布ベルト）で結んだらどうなるか?
【何はともあれ】歩きにくくなることだけは確実だ。
zubon no nihon no ashi o sutorappu (nunoberuto) de musundara dō naru ka? nani wa tomo are aruki-nikuku naru koto dake wa kakujitsu da
What happens if you tie the two trouser legs together with a strap (a cloth belt)? Whatever else, it becomes more difficult to walk.

After Q words, much like the use of **ga** in 55.7 and 55.8, the effect is to emphasize the where/what/who, etc. Note also the combination [Q word **mo ga**] 'every', and [Q word **ga . . . -te/de mo**] (see 164.5, 167.2.1.1).

b 何【が】問題なのか。
nani ga mondai na no ka
What is the problem?

c 背景には何【が】あるのか。
haikei ni wa nani ga aru no ka
What is in the background [to this]?

d アジア女性の何【が】日本人に受けているのだろうか。
ajia josei no nani ga nihonjin ni ukete iru no darō ka
What is it about Asian women that makes them popular with the Japanese?

e 「ユキヒコ、バーカ」「何【が】バカだよっ」。
yukihiko bāka nani ga baka da yo'
'Yukihiko, you fool!' 'What do you mean, "fool"?'

f 一体だれ【が】カネを払ってると思ってるんだ——。
ittai dare ga kane o haratteru to omotteru n da
Who the hell do they think is paying! [= we are!]

g 経済はだれ【が】やっても同じでしょ。
keizai wa dare ga yatte mo onaji desho
The economy should be the same, no matter who runs it.

h だれ【が】見てもよくわかる自然な人事をやる。
dare ga mite mo yoku wakaru shizen na jinji o yaru
His staff appointments are natural, understandable by all.

i 中古部品をだれ【が】買うのか。
chūkobuhin o dare ga kau no ka
Who is going to buy second-hand parts!

55.10 (NOUN ni) ga aru/iru: ga IN EXISTENTIAL/LOCATIONAL SENTENCES

This indicates existence or possession, and location (see 116.4, 116.5, 178, 9).

a 妻と二男【が】いる。
tsuma to ninan ga iru
[He has] a wife and two sons.

b この発言【に】は重み【が】ある。
kono hatsugen ni wa omomi ga aru
This statement has weight.

c 著書【に】「日本児童演劇史」など【が】ある。
chosho ni nihon jidō engekishi nado ga aru
Among his books is 'A history of child acting in Japan'.

d 三階【に】は宿泊客共通の浴場【が】ある。
sangai ni wa shukuhaku-kyaku kyōtsū no yokujō ga aru
On the third level is a bath for joint use by lodgers.

55.11 ga IN 'DOUBLE-SUBJECT' (NOUN wa NOUN ga) SENTENCES

This is a common S type in Japanese (see 178.1.8), and is known as 'double-subject' S because both **wa** and **ga** mark NP that are grammatical subjects.

However, the first NP-**wa** is more like a topic which is followed by a [NP-**ga** pred.] comment (see 236.8) and the second can look like an object in English translation, as in example 55.12 a.

a 古代【は】個人【が】主体だった。
kodai wa kojin ga shutai datta
In antiquity, the individual was central.

b スペインと浜松【は】共通項【が】多い。
supein to hamamatsu wa kyōtsūkō ga ōi
Spain and Hamamatsu have a lot of things in common.

c イタリアとギリシャ【は】統計【が】ない。
itaria to girisha wa tōkei ga nai
For Italy and Greece, there are no statistics.

d 今年のプレゼント【は】、パパ【が】カシミヤのマフラー。
kotoshi no purezento wa papa ga kashimiya no mafurā
For this year's [Christmas] present, hubby [gets] a cashmere muffler.

55.12 **ga** IN 'DOUBLE-SUBJECT' (NOUN **wa** NOUN **ga**) SENTENCES WITH ELLIPTED NOUN **wa**

a 「空【が】好き。体を動かすの【が】好き。人と話すの【が】もっと好き」。
sora ga suki karada o ugokasu no ga suki hito to hanasu no ga motto suki
'[I] like the sky. [I] like moving my body. Talking with people [I] like even more.'

55.13 **ga** MARKING THE SUBJECT IN A NOUN-MODIFYING CLAUSE

The subject of a N-mod. clause (shown in **[]**) is usually marked by **ga** or **no** in both complement clauses (55.13.1) and relative clauses (55.13.2) (see 26, 133.2, 143).

55.13.1 Complement clauses

a 「[生存者【が】いた]ことは幸運だった」と話している。
seizonsha ga ita koto wa kōun datta to hanashite iru
They are saying, 'It was lucky that there were survivors'.

55.13.2 Relative clauses

The first example below has first a N-mod. clause (in []) marked by **ga**, then another N-mod. clause (in ||) marked by **no**.

a 誰も[彼【が】来た]ことに[気【の】つく]者はいなかった。
dare mo kare ga kita koto ni ki no tsuku mono wa inakatta
There was nobody who noticed that he had come.

b [外国人犯罪【が】増える]最大の背景は日本【の】豊かさだ。
gaikokujin hanzai ga fueru saidai no haikei wa nihon no yutakasa da
The biggest reason why crimes by foreigners are on the increase is Japan's affluence.

55.14 ga MARKING A NOMINALIZED CLAUSE

Like **no**, **ga** can also mark a nominalized clause (complement or relative clause) that occupies subject position in the S (see 26, 133.2, 143).

a [いい演奏をするの]【が】私の仕事だ。
ii ensō o suru no ga watashi no shigoto da
Giving a good performance is my job.

b いじめの責任者探しもさることながら、子供の世界で何が失われたかを見詰めることが大事ではないか。まず、[目を向けるべきなの]【が】都市である。
ijime no sekininsha-sagashi mo saru koto-nagara kodomo no sekai de nani ga ushinawareta ka o mitsumeru koto ga daiji de wa nai ka. mazu me o mukeru beki na no ga toshi de aru
It's one thing to look for those responsible for bullying, but it's also important to take a hard look at what has gone missing from the children's world. What we need to direct our attention to first are the cities.

c [何より印象的なの]【が】、カメラの位置が低いことだ。
nani yori inshō-teki na no ga kamera no ichi ga hikui koto da
What's interesting above all is the low position of the camera.

56 ga [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

ga basically expresses a weak contrast between two clauses, S1 and S2 'but' (see 79, 140, 33).

56.1 Clause 1 **ga**, clause 2 N cop. 'but'
56.2 Clause 1 **ga**, clause 2
56.3 Clause 1 **ga**, clause 2 expressing 'and' or ';'
56.4 Clause 1 **ga**. (. . .) in unfinished sentences
56.5 Clause 1-presumptive **ga** clause 2-presumptive **ga** adverbial clauses

56.1 CLAUSE 1 **ga**, CLAUSE 2 N COP. 'BUT'

This is a N-mod. sequence (indicated in []) where two clauses are linked by **ga** in the sense of 'N (which is/was) *A* but *B*'. In writing, this use is usually distinguished from that shown in 56.2 below by the presence of a comma in the latter.

a [忙しかった【が】いい一年]だった。
isogashikatta ga ii toshi datta
It was a busy but good year.

56.2 CLAUSE 1 **ga**, CLAUSE 2

Unlike 56.1, in this use **ga** 'but' links are two clauses with separate pred. (i.e. the content of these sentences could equally be expressed in two separate sentences). A comma is usually present in writing.

a 約一時間かかる【が】、ドライブは快適だ。
yaku ichijikan kakaru ga doraibu wa kaiteki da
It takes about one hour, but it's a pleasant drive.

b 料理はちょっと辛い【が】、なかなかの味だ。
ryōri wa chotto karai ga nakanaka no aji da
The dishes are a little spicy, but quite tasty.

c 参加は無料だ【が】、事前申し込みが必要。
sanka wa muryō da ga jizen mōshikomi ga hitsuyō
Attendance is free, but one needs to apply in advance.

d 技術的には難しい歌です【が】、みな熱心でした。
gijutsu-teki ni wa muzukashī uta desu ga mina nesshin deshita
Technically it's a difficult song, but everyone was enthusiastic.

56.3 CLAUSE 1 **ga**, CLAUSE 2 EXPRESSING 'AND' OR ';'

In some contexts, the force of **ga** is so weak that it is more appropriate to translate it as 'and', or use a semicolon.

a 四七年に米国に渡った【が】、彼の才能をいち早く認めたのはベニー・グッドマンだったという。
yonjū nananen ni beikoku ni watatta ga kare no sainō o ichihayaku mitometa no wa benī guddoman datta to iu
In '47 he went to the US, and it was Benny Goodman who was the first to discover his talent, it is said.

b 今年の自動車業界は低価格車ブームにわいた【が】、この傾向はまだ続くのか。
kotoshi no jidōsha gyōkai wa teikakakusha būmu ni waita ga kono keikō wa mada tsuzuku no ka
In this year's car business low-priced models were all the rage; is this trend going to continue?

56.4 CLAUSE 1 **ga**. (. . .) IN UNFINISHED SENTENCES

S where S2 is left unsaid (implied) are commonly used, especially for introducing requests, to test the listener's reaction, but also to imply that realization of S2 is not possible or realistic.

a ちょっとすみません【が】……。
chotto sumimasen ga
Excuse me.

b ちょっとお伺いしたいんです【が】。
chotto o-ukagai shitai n desu ga
Could I ask you something.

c 覚えていないんです【が】……。
oboete inai n desu ga
I don't remember.

56.5 CLAUSE 1-PRESUMPTIVE **ga** CLAUSE 2-PRESUMPTIVE **ga**: ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

Here we see **ga** repeated twice (or three times, as in example h) after pos., or pos. and neg. hortative or presumptive forms, the combination forms adverbial clauses in the sense of 'whether . . . or', 'regardless of' (see 163, 172).

a【彼がいようがいまいが】、大した違いはなかった。
kare ga iyō ga imai ga taishita chigai wa nakatta
Whether he was there or not didn't make [or wouldn't have made] much difference.

b【足をくじこうが転倒しようが】何が何でも完走する。
ashi o kujikō ga tentō shiyō ga nani ga nan demo kansō suru
Whether I sprain my foot, or fall, I'll complete [the marathon], no matter what.

c【外に着ようが内に着ようが】着る人次第といったところ。
soto ni kiyō ga uchi ni kiyō ga kiru hito shidai to itta tokoro
Whether one wears [clothes] inside or out is up to the person wearing them, I guess.

d この二十二年間、【元日だろうが外国に居ようが】毎朝欠かさず六キロメートル歩いてきた。
kono nijūni-nenkan ganjitsu darō ga gaikoku ni iyō ga maiasa kakasazu rok-kiromētoru aruite kita
For the past 22 years, I've walked 6km every morning without fail, be it New Year's Day, [at home] or abroad.

e 良いものは【日本だろうが欧州だろうが】、どこからでも取り入れる。
yoi mono wa nihon darō ga ōshū darō ga doko kara demo tori-ireru
We take good products from anywhere, whether it's Japan or Europe.

f すこし前までビールはどこの店でも、【大量に買おうが少量だろうが】価格はメーカー希望価格だった。
sukoshi mae made bīru wa doko no mise de mo tairyō ni kaō ga shōryō darō ga kakaku wa mēkā kibō kakaku datta
Until a short time ago, in every shop the price of beer was the price requested by the manufacturer, regardless of whether you bought a lot or a little.

g 二人の間に愛がなくなり争いが激しくなれば、【結婚していようがいまいが】別れるし、別れるべきだ。
futari no aida ni ai ga naku nari arasoi ga hageshiku nareba kekkon shite iyō ga imai ga wakareru shi wakareru-beki da
If love's gone and the fighting gets worse, a couple will split, and ought to do so, whether they are married or not.

h …料亭などには【旬（しゅん）のタケノコだろうが山菜の珍味だろうが高価な魚だろうが】、おいしいものをドーンと出して、お客さんからは高いお金をバーンと取る。
ryōtei nado ni wa shun no takenoko darō ga sansai no chinmi darō ga kōka na sakana darō ga oishii mono o dōn to dashite o-kyaku-san kara wa takai okane o bān to toru
. . . they deliver lots of delicious things to places like Japanese restaurants, whether seasonal bamboo shoots, prized wild vegetables or expensive fish, and charge them plenty of money.

57 -garu [SUFFIX]

-garu indicates that some feeling is openly displayed, usually by persons other than the speaker. The suffix **-garu** can be attached to the stem forms of A and AN (^cop.) that express a feeling or attitude, to the stem form of the S-ending **-tai** (which in turn attaches to V), and the stem form of the adj. of desire **hoshii**. Note that **-garu** itself works like a Group I verb.

57.1 Adjective/adjectival noun-stem-**garu**
57.2 Verb-**tagaru**
57.3 **hoshi-garu**

57.1 ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN-STEM-**garu**

Adj./AN to which -**garu** attaches are limited to those that express a feeling, i.e. **omoshiroi** (besides the meaning of 'interesting') also means 'to show an interest in', and **fushigi na** 'to feel mystified'. -**garu** adds the nuance that the subject visibly or audibly displays such feelings.

a 子供たちが一番【面白がっ】たのは折り紙。
kodomo-tachi ga ichiban omoshiro-gatta no wa origami
What the children showed most interest in was origami.

b【かわいがり】ようは子供並み。
kawaigari-yō wa kodomo-nami
They lavish affection [on pets] as if they were their children.

c 国民が【いやが】ることも必要があればやらなければならない。
kokumin ga iyagaru koto mo hitsuyō ga areba yaranakereba naranai
If necessary, we must also do things that the people express dislike for.

d かつて「安全と水はタダだと思っている」と外国人に【不思議がら】れた日本人だが、水に関する限りこの言葉はもうあてはまらない。
katsute anzen to mizu wa tada da to omotte iru to gaikokujin ni fushigi-garareta nihonjin da ga mizu ni kansuru kagiri kono kotoba wa mō atehamaranai
In the past, foreigners used to be mystified at the Japanese, saying 'they think that safety and water come free', but with regard to water these words no longer apply.

57.2 VERB-**tagaru**

Attached to V-**tai**, -**garu** usually indicates that a second person, or most commonly a third, 'want(s) to' (see 189). Note, however, example g, where the speaker uses -**tagaru** about himself!

a 君が【辞めたがっ】ているという話を聞いたのだけど。
kimi ga yame-tagatte iru to iu hanashi o kiita no da kedo
I've heard that you want to quit.

b 日本旅行の関係者はこの問題に【触れたがら】ない。
nihon ryokō no kankeisha wa kono mondai ni fure-tagaranai
The people at Japan Travel are unwilling to comment on this problem.

c うちの社員は技術者が大半で、設計も頑丈に【したが】る。
uchi no shain wa gijutsusha ga taihan de sekkei mo ganjō ni shi-tagaru
Our staff are mostly technicians, and therefore want to make designs sturdy.

d 親にも教師にもいじめの事実を【隠したが】る。
oya ni mo kyōshi ni mo ijime no jijitsu o kakushi-tagaru
[The children] want to hide the fact that they are being bullied from both parents and teachers.

e あいつは部を【出たがっ】ている。
aitsu wa bu o de-tagatte iru
He wants to leave the section.

f 母親は「汚い言葉がはんらんしている」と、子供を競技場に【行かせたがら】ない。
hahaoya wa kitanai kotoba ha ganran shite iru to kodomo o kyōgijō ni ikase-tagaranai
Mothers feel that the place is awash with foul language, and don't want to let their children go to the stadium.

g 自身を評して「何でも【してみたが】る好奇心の固まりのような性格」とか。
jishin o hyōshite nan demo shite mi-tagaru kōkishin no katamari no yō na seikaku to ka
Assessing himself, he says things like 'My nature is curiosity personified, wanting to try everything'.

57.3 hoshi-garu

Whereas **hoshii** [adj.] usually indicates what first persons (or second persons in questions) want, **hoshi-garu** is used for the wants of third persons.

a ドイツのオーケストラは今、ドイツ人を【ほしがっ】ている。
doitsu no ōkesutora wa ima doitsujin o hoshi-gatte iru
German orchestras at present want [to employ] Germans.

b いま日本が、本当に子供を【ほしがっ】ているのなら、アフリカや東南アジアの子供たちをひきとって育ててもいいと思う。
ima nihon ga hontō ni kodomo o hoshi-gatte iru no nara afurika ya tōnan ajia no kodomo-tachi o hikitotte sodatete mo ii to omou
If Japan really wants [more] children now, I think people should adopt and raise children from Africa or Southeast Asia.

c 「モノの時代からココロの時代へ」といわれるなかで、消費者が特に【ほしがっ】ているのはクルマや住宅などのモノだ。
mono no jidai kara kokoro no jidai e to iwareru naka de shōhisha ga toku ni hoshi-gatte iru no wa kuruma ya jūtaku nado no mono da
In the midst of the supposed shift of emphasis of our age from objects to spiritual matters, what consumers really want are objects like cars and housing.

58 -gata [PLURAL SUFFIX: HONORIFIC]

To express an hon. plural, **-gata** (rather than **-tachi**) is usually attached to the title of persons of higher social status (**sensei** 'teacher', 'professor', 'member of parliament', 'politician', etc.) and forms of address ending in **-sama** (hon. equivalent of **-san**). However, **-tachi** can also be used (see 188, 53, 54).

a 大学の先生【方】は美しい自然を強調していたが、それだけでは人は来ない。
daigaku no sensei-gata wa utsukushii shizen o kyōchō shite ita ga sore dake de wa hito wa konai
The academics at the university were stressing the beautiful natural surroundings, but that's not enough to attract people [= students].

b 教科書、副読本、副教材は市販のものではなく先生【方】の手作りだ。
kyōkasho fukudokuhon fukukyōzai wa shihan no mono de wa naku sensei-gata no tezukuri da
Textbooks and supplementary texts and materials are not commercial products but handmade by the teachers.

c どうか、ここにおられる奥様【方】も安心していただきたい。
dōka koko ni orareru okusama-gata mo anshin shite itadakitai
We also want you wives who are here not to worry [about your husbands getting the sack].

d お開きのとき、高齢者たちは「あなた【がた】を愛している」と言いましたが、少年たちは無視しました。
ohiraki no toki kōreisha-tachi wa anata-gata o aishite iru to iimashita ga shōnen-tachi wa mushi shimashita
At the end [of the gathering], the old people said 'We love you', but the youths ignored it.

e …そのとき非常に印象に残ったのは、先生【方】や守衛さん【ら】多くの人々が、私が日本人だと分かると、数年前にプリンスがおられたが非常にジェントルマンだ、と言っていたことです。
sono toki hijō ni inshō ni nokotta no wa sensei-gata ya shuei-san-ra ōku no hitobito ga watashi ga nihonjin da to wakaru to sūnenmae ni purinsu ga orareta ga hijō ni jentoruman da to itte ita koto desu

. . . what impressed me very much at the time was that many people such as the professors and the porters, once they realized I was Japanese, told me that some years ago the prince was here and that he's a real gentleman.

59 -goro [SUFFIX]

-goro is a suf. that attaches to N and adj. indicating a point of time (incl. seasons) only. It indicates that the point of time is approximate. Like other N/A of time, the particle **ni** can optionally be attached to **goro** (see 61, 64, 81, 116.13).

a 今月十五日【ごろに】妻を殺した疑いが持たれている。
kongetsu jūgonichi-goro ni tsuma o koroshita utagai ga motarete iru
He is suspected of having killed his wife around the 15th of this month.

b 二〇〇〇年【ごろに】は一日四十本の列車が運行されます。
nisennen-goro ni wa ichinichi yonjuppon no ressha ga unkō saremasu
Around the year 2000, 40 trains per day will be run.

c 二日午前零時三十二分【ごろ】、関東南部で地震があった。
futsuka gozen reiji sanjūnifun-goro kantōnanbu chihō de jishin ga atta
Around 12.32am on the 2nd, there was an earthquake in the South Kanto area.

d 朝は六時【ごろに】は起きて学校に向かい、授業が終わった後は下宿でスペイン語の勉強に打ち込んだ。
asa wa rokuji-goro ni wa okite gakkō ni mukai jugyō ga owatta ato wa geshuku de supeingo no benkyō ni uchikonda
In the morning he got up by around 6 and went to school [to teach], and after the end of classes he immersed himself in the study of Spanish in his room.

e (同日) 午前二時から三時【ごろ】、ドーンと物が倒れるような音がした。
dōjitsu gozen niji kara sanji-goro dōn to mono ga taoreru yō na oto ga shita
Between about 2 and 3 a.m. (on that day), there was a sound as if something had toppled over.

f 出生数急増の背景には九〇年【ごろ】から始まったウエディング・ブームがある。
shusseisū kyūzō no haikei ni wa kyūjūnen-goro kara hajimatta uedingu būmu ga aru
Behind the sudden increase in births there is the wedding boom that started around '90.

60 gotoshi [STRUCTURAL NOUN]

gotoshi is like a N in that it is preceded by the case P **no** (and occasionally still the classical genitive P **ga**), but inflects like a classical adj., ending in **-shi** (fin. form) and **-ki** (N-mod. form) (see 22). It can nowadays also be followed by forms of the cop.

Like **yō**, **gotoshi** indicates a simile (likening two things or situations) in the sense of 'like' (see 243).

60.1 **gotoshi** (+ copula)
60.2 Noun **no gotoki** noun
60.3 Sentence **ka no gotoki** noun
60.4 Noun-**gotoki** + particle

60.1 gotoshi (+ COPULA)

gotoshi can be attached to N + **no**, [Sentence]-verb ending in V-**ru** + **ga**, or the adj.-**i** classical equivalent adj.-**ki** + **ga** (see 22) in the set phrase **atte naki ga gotoshi** (example c), which is a written-style equivalent of **atte nai yō na mono** 'virtually non-existing' (see 243.2.3).

a 難しい政局だけど、心は鉄石の【ごとし】だ。
muzukashii seikyoku da kedo kokoro wa tesseki no gotoshi da
It's a difficult political situation, but my resolve is like steel.

b「人生は重荷を負いて遠き道を行くが【ごとし】、が今の心境」と言う。
jinsei wa omoni o oite tōki michi o yuku ga gotoshi ga ima no shinkyō to iu
He said, 'My feeling at the moment is that life is like going along a road with a heavy burden'.

c おれの田舎じゃ、誕生日やクリスマスなんて【あってなきがごとし】だけど。
ore no inaka ja tanjōbi ya kurisumasu nante atte naki ga gotoshi da kedo
In my part of the country, events like birthdays and Christmas are virtually non-existent.

60.2 NOUN no gotoki NOUN

This indicates the idea of 'like', making a simile in the same way as N **no yō na** N (see 243.2.4).

a いずれも過度の単純化による【妄想、神話のごときもの】とされる。
izure mo kado no tanjun-ka ni yoru mōsō shinwa no gotoki mono to sareru
Both ['supplysiders' and 'strategic traders'] are said to be something like a delusion or myth, caused by oversimplification

b 読者は著者のとどまることを知らぬ発想にのせられ、【ジェットコースターのごとき快楽】を味わうことになる。
dokusha wa chosha no todomaru koto o shiranu hassō ni noserare jetto kōsutā no gotoki kairaku o ajiwau koto ni naru
The reader is made to ride on the author's boundless [flow of] ideas, and ends up enjoying himself like being on a jetcoaster.

60.3 SENTENCE **ka no gotoki** NOUN

The combination N/S **ka no gotoki** N is equivalent to the more colloquial N **ka no yō na** N 'as if' (see 243.4.2). In example b, the N after the first **gotoki** is ellipted (omitted) because it is identical to the second one.

a 【国会議員の名誉を傷付けるかのごとき質問】は残念だ。
kokkai giin no meiyo o kizutsukeru ka no gotoki shitsumon wa zannen da
A question that looks as if [posed to] damage the reputation of an MP is regrettable.

b 【政治家と官僚が対等であるかのごとき】、【争っているかのごとき状態】は自然ではない。
seijika to kanryō ga taitō de aru ka no gotoki arasotte iru ka no gotoki jōtai wa shizen de wa nai
A state of affairs where politicians and administrators seem on an equal footing, and seem to compete, is unnatural.

60.4 NOUN-**gotoki** + PARTICLE

In this use, **gotoki** is used like a suf., with a pejorative ring, in the sense of 'someone/something like'. The P following **gotoki** is the one required by the valency of the V.

a 【外国人ごときに】何が分かるか。
gaikokujin-gotoki ni nani ga wakaru ka
How can a foreigner possibly understand [= my paintings]?

b 【メダカごときで】人が呼べるのかね。
medaka-gotoki de hito ga yoberu no ka ne
Can we attract visitors with something [as lowly as] *medaka* [= a small freshwater fish]?

61 **gurai/kurai** [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

gurai (or **kurai**) is as an adverbial P that is attached directly to N (including N of amount, amount + counter, and N of time), and to N-mod. forms of V/adj./AN. It indicates an approximate amount, or an extent (see 59, 64).

Comparing **gurai/kurai** and **goro**, **gurai/kurai** is much wider in use than **goro**. After time N, **goro** indicates an approximate point of time, whereas **gurai** indicates an approximate period of time. The difference between **kurai** and **gurai** is that **kurai** has a slightly more formal ring.

61.1 Noun (amount, etc.) **gurai/kurai (wa)**
61.1.1 Number + (counter) **gurai/kurai**
61.1.2 **gurai/kurai shika** negative
61.1.3 Cleft sentence **no wa** noun **gurai/kurai** (copula)
61.1.4 **(semete)** noun **gurai/kurai wa**
61.1.5 Noun phrase **gurai/kurai**
61.2 Clause **gurai/kurai**: indicating an extent or degree
61.2.1 Clause **gurai/kurai** predicate
61.2.2 Clause **gurai/kurai da**
61.2.3 Clause-imperative **to gurai/kurai**
61.2.4 Clause **gurai/kurai no** noun
61.2.5 Clause **gurai/kurai de**
61.2.6 Clause **gurai/kurai ga (chōdo) ii**
61.2.7 Verb **gurai/kurai nara**

61.1 NOUN (AMOUNT, ETC.) **gurai/kurai (wa)**

61.1.1 Number + (counter) **gurai/kurai**

Attached to amounts [num. (+ C)] including time, **gurai/kurai** indicates that the amount or period of time is approximate 'approximately', 'about'. Note the combination **gurai wa**, which has the implication of 'at least' that amount.

a 母よ! 一分【ぐらい】だまっとれ。(だまっとれ = だまっておれ)
haha yo ippun gurai damattore
Mother! Shut up for a minute or so.

b この内閣は二年【くらい】大丈夫だろう。
kono naikaku wa ninen kurai daijōbu darō
I suppose this cabinet will be all right for about two years.

c 月収は「十万円【ぐらい】」という。
gesshū wa jūman-en gurai to iu
She says that her monthly income is 'about 100,000 yen'.

d 今の七十歳は明治時代の五十六歳【ぐらい】。
ima no nanajus-sai wa meiji jidai no gojūroku-sai gurai
Being 70 now is equivalent to being about 56 during the Meiji era.

e 「企業のリストラや銀行の不良債権の償却などにどのくらいの時間がかかるとみますか」。「二年【ぐらい】はかかるだろう」。
kigyō no risutora ya ginkō no furyōsaiken no shōkyaku nado ni dono kurai no jikan ga kakaru to mimasu ka. ninen gurai wa kakaru darō
'How long do you think it'll take for companies to restructure and banks to sell off their bad debts?' 'It should take at least two years.'

61.1.2 **gurai/kurai shika** negative

In combination with **shika** . . . neg. 'only', **gurai/kurai** indicates that the N is 'about the only N' (see 180).

a 名古屋というと金のしゃちほこ【ぐらいしか】思い浮かばない。
nagoya to iu to kin no shachihoko gurai shika omoiukabanai
At the mention of Nagoya, about the only thing that comes to mind are the gold dolphins [on top of the castle roof].

b 観光【くらいしか】産業がなく、それで私もホテルマンになったのです。
kankō kurai shika sangyō ga naku sore de watashi mo hoteruman ni natta no desu
Tourism is about the only industry [here], and so I too became a hotel man.

c 夜間は、トイレの時【ぐらいしか】水を使わないので、ほとんど困っていない。
yakan wa toire no toki gurai shika mizu o tsukawanai no de hotondo komatte inai
[Water restrictions] During the night, I have almost no problems as about the only time I use water is for the toilet.

61.1.3 Cleft sentence **no wa** noun **gurai/kurai** (copula)

Here, **gurai/kurai** indicates that the N (item/s) it is attached to is/are 'about all' there is to it, 'only' (see 23).

a [ほかに必要なのは送料、箱代、氷代]【ぐらい】。
hoka ni hitsuyō na no wa sōryō hakodai kōridai gurai
The only other things required are money for postage, the charge for the box and the charge for ice.

b 買えるのは一部の駅の新幹線ホーム【ぐらい】だ。
kaeru no wa ichibu no eki no shinkansen hōmu da
About the only place you can buy it [the magazine] is on the bullet-train platform of some stations.

61.1.4 (semete) noun **gurai/kurai wa**

wa adds the idea of 'at least' (see 236.6), which is often reinforced by the adj. of degree **semete** 'at (the very) least'. This is used in situations where the speaker wants to emphasize that surely he or she is not asking too much.

a 【せめて】電車の中【くらいは】ゆっくりしたいものだ。
semete densha no naka kurai wa yukkuri shitai mono da
I want to take it easy, at least on the train.

b トイレの水【くらいは】雨水を使えないものか。
toire no mizu kurai wa amamizu o tsukaenai mono ka
Why can't rainwater be used, at least for water in the toilet?

61.1.5 Noun phrase **gurai/kurai**

This gives the NP to which **gurai/kurai** is attached a belittling ring 'doesn't amount to much'.

a やってみれば[調理タオルの洗濯]【くらい】たいしたことではない。
yatte mireba chōri taoru no sentaku kurai taishita koto de wa nai
When you try doing it, laundering the kitchen towels doesn't amount to much.

61.2 CLAUSE **gurai/kurai**: INDICATING AN EXTENT OR DEGREE

61.2.1 Clause **gurai/kurai** predicate

This indicates that the pred. applies 'to a . . . extent/degree', 'so . . . that' (see 64).

a [見事な]【くらい】何もない。
migoto na kurai nani mo nai
[The place] is so empty that it's spectacular.

b [間近に定年が迫っているとは思えない]【くらい】健康である。
majika ni teinen ga sematte iru to wa omoenai kurai kenkō de aru
He is in such good health that it's hard to believe his retirement is close at hand.

61.2.2 Clause **gurai/kurai da**

Attached to S that express insufficiency or comparison, **gurai/kurai** emphasizes this insufficiency or the comparison 'if anything' (see 64).

a [まだ足りない]【くらいだ】。
mada tarinai kurai da
It's not quite enough yet.

b [対策は遅すぎた]【くらいだ】。
taisaku wa oso-sugita kurai da
The countermeasures were practically too late.

c 周りの道路などの音の方がうるさい【くらいだ】った。
mawari no dōro nado no oto no hō ga urusai kurai datta
The noise from the nearby roads were just about louder [than the sound of planes landing at the airport].

61.2.3 Clause-imperative **to gurai/kurai**

After a quoted S ending in the imp., the meaning is 'say at least'.

a 「覚えておけ」【とぐらい】言ってやれ、松井クン。
oboete oke to gurai itte yare matsui-kun
Matsui-kun, tell them at least 'Remember this!'

61.2.4 Clause **gurai/kurai no** noun

When used to modify N, the implication is that the modifying section is the minimum that is required for the N 'akin to', 'no less than'.

a 安全には[十分すぎる]【くらいの用意】と注意を心がけること。
anzen ni wa jūbun-sugiru kurai no yōi to chūi o kokorogakeru koto
For safety, it is necessary to aim for more than adequate preparation and attention.

b 君は[一年間謹慎する]【くらいの反省】が必要だろう。
kimi wa ichinenkan kinshin suru kurai no hansei ga hitsuyō darō
You probably need as much reflection on your past conduct as confinement at home for a year [would give you].

c 失業率が三%というのは[奇跡に近い]【ぐらいのこと】です。
shitsugyōritsu ga san-pāsento to iu no wa kiseki ni chikai gurai no koto desu
The fact that the unemployment rate is 3 per cent amounts to a miracle.

61.2.5 Clause **gurai/kurai de**

With **de**, the conjunctive form of the cop., attached, the combination means 'just because' (see 35)

a 眠い【くらいで】死にはしない。
nemui kurai de shini wa shinai
No one dies just of sleepiness.

b 子供たちと海遊館や遊園地に行った【くらいで】、のんびりできました。
kodomo-tachi to kaiyūkan ya yūenchi ni itta kurai de nonbiri dekimashita
I had a relaxed time. Just about all I did was go to Aqua World and the amusement park with my children.

61.2.6 Clause **gurai/kurai ga (chōdo) ii**

This indicates that the situation or state mentioned is the least that one would expect 'just about right'.

a 子供は少しケガをする【くらいがいい】。
kodomo wa sukoshi kega o suru kurai ga ii
It's just about right for a child [to be active enough] to get a few cuts.

b 男は生意気【ぐらいがちょうどいい】。(歌)
otoko wa namaiki gurai ga chōdo ii
Men who are cocky and brash – no more, no less – are just right. (song)

61.2.7 Verb **gurai/kurai nara**

The combination means 'If it means doing . . . , I'd rather' (see 108).

a 「温厚」は周囲の一致した人物評。「ケンカは絶対にしない。する【くらいなら】降りる」。
onkō wa shūi no itchi shita jinbutsu-hyō. kenka wa zettai ni shinai. suru kurai nara oriru
The people around him judge his personality to be 'affable'. 'He never gets into fights. He'd sooner give in [than fight].'

b 毛皮を着る【ぐらいなら】裸の方がまし。
kegawa o kiru gurai nara hadaka no hō ga mashi
I would rather go naked than wear a fur.

62 **hazu** [SENTENCE ENDING]

hazu is originally a structural N, and is therefore preceded and followed by forms and P that precede and follow N.

hazu expresses the speaker's conviction regarding the likelihood of an action or situation occurring, on the basis of some objective information, knowledge or common sense: 'is supposed to'. The speaker is not simply making a guess, as with the more subjective **darō** or **kamoshirenai** (see 240).

62.1 Clause **hazu**
62.1.1 Clause **hazu da**
62.1.2 Clause 1 **hazu da ga**, clause 2
62.1.3 Clause **hazu datta/datta ga/datta** noun/**datta**
62.1.4 Clause **hazu ga/wa nai**
62.1.5 Verb-**nai hazu ga/wa nai**

62.1 CLAUSE hazu

62.1.1 Clause hazu da

Completing a S with a form of cop., this means ‘is/can be expected’, ‘should’, ‘ought to’. When applied to past-tense situations, **hazu da** is attached to the **-ta** form (example e).

a 外国産米が安ければ買う【はずだ】。
gaikoku-san-mai ga yasukereba kau hazu da
If foreign rice is cheap, people ought to buy it.

b 英文の論文誌なら世界中の科学者が目を通す【はず】だ。
eibun no ronbunshi nara sekaijū no kagakusha ga me o tōsu hazu da
If it’s [published] in an English-language journal, scientists throughout the world can be expected to look at it.

c 平和の嫌いな人間はいない【はず】だ。
heiwa no kirai na ningen wa inai hazu da
There ought to be no human being who dislikes peace.

d 子供たちも転校はつらい【はず】だ。
kodomo-tachi mo tenkō wa tsurai hazu da
Changing schools must be hard for the children, too.

e この現状を変えるのが政治改革の目的だった【はず】だ。
kono genjō o kaeru no ga seiji kaikaku no mokuteki datta hazu da
To change this situation [of there being too many MPs] should have been the aim of political reform.

f 平和主義と国際主義は本来、コインの裏表のように一体の【はず】だ。
heiwa shugi to kokusai shugi wa honrai, koin no uraomote no yō ni ittai no hazu da
Pacifism and internationalism ought to have been one and the same thing from the beginning, like the two sides of a coin.

62.1.2 Clause 1 **hazu da ga**, clause 2

In compound S joined by the conjunctive P **ga**, S1 and S2 are contrastive in nature (see 56).

a 「光は直進する」【はず】だが、ブラックホールの周りでは光も曲がる。
hikari wa chokushin suru hazu da ga, burakku hōru no mawari de wa hikari mo magaru
Light is supposed to travel straight, but in the vicinity of a black hole, light also curves.

b 大阪が世界に誇れるのは“食”の【はず】だが、それを知っている外国人は少ない。
ōsaka ga sekai ni hokoreru no wa shoku no hazu da ga, sore o shitte iru gaikokujin wa sukunai
What Osaka can boast about to the world is its food, but there aren't many foreigners who know this.

c 近代になって封建制はとっくに終わった【はず】だが、女性にはまだ近代はない。
kindai ni natte hōkensei wa tokku ni owatta hazu da ga, josei ni wa mada kindai wa nai
With the advent of the modern age the feudal system is supposed to have long ended, but for women there is as yet no modern age.

62.1.3 Clause **hazu datta/datta ga/datta** noun/**datta**

Here, the contrast is either implied, or made clear in the remainder of the sentence 'was supposed to . . . (but actually)'.

a 地震さえなければ二人そろって学校に通っていた【はず】だった。
jishin sae nakereba futari sorotte gakkō ni kayotte ita hazu datta
If there hadn't been the earthquake, the two were supposed to go to school together.

b 彼女は幸せな結婚生活を送っている【はず】だったが……。
kanojo wa shiawase na kekkon seikatsu o okutte iru hazu datta ga
She was supposed to have been leading a happy married life, but . . .

c JR名古屋駅ビルでは、出店する【はず】だった地元の松坂屋が撤退を決めた。
JR nagoya ekibiru de wa, shutten suru hazu datta jimoto no matsuzakaya ga tettai o kimeta
In the JR Nagoya building, the local [firm] Matsuzakaya, which was supposed to open a shop, decided to withdraw

62.1.4 Clause **hazu ga/wa nai**

With the case P **ga** or the focus P + neg., the meaning is 'can't (possibly)'. As **hazu ga nai** carries a stronger conviction than **hazu wa nai**, the difference can often be rendered in translation by adding 'possibly' for **hazu ga nai**.

a 法務局が不備な書類を受け付ける【はずがない】。
hōmukyoku ga fubi na shorui o uketsukeru hazu ga nai
The Legal Affairs Bureau can't possibly accept documents that are not in order.

b 世界貿易拡大が悪いニュースである【はずはない】。
sekai-bōeki-kakudai ga warui nyūsu de aru hazu wa nai
An expansion of world trade can't be bad news.

c 一年足らずで四つの内閣ができるような国を世界が信用する【はずがない】。
ichinen tarazu de yottsu no naikaku ga dekiru yō na kuni o sekai ga shin'yō suru hazu ga nai
The world can't possibly be expected to trust a country that has had four governments in less than a year.

d …大量の資料が送られてきた。「ここの生産性は驚くほど高い。日本も見習え」。「そんな【はずはない】」と最初は思ったが、「資料を読むうちに、本当だと考え直した」。
tairyō no shiryō ga okurarete kita. koko no seisan-sei wa odoroku hodo takai. nihon mo minarae. sonna hazu wa nai to saisho wa omotta ga shiryō o yomu uchi ni hontō da to kangaenaoshita
I was sent a large amount of material. 'The productivity in this company is amazingly high. Japan should learn from this.' In the beginning I thought, 'That can't possibly be' but as I was reading the material, I changed my mind.

62.1.5 Verb-**nai hazu ga/wa nai**

The combination V-neg. and **hazu ga/wa nai** usually amounts to a positive meaning 'must surely', 'can't but' (see 50).

a 政府がいつまでも約束を守ら【ないはずはない】。
seifu ga itsu made mo yakusoku o mamoranai hazu wa nai
The government can't go on forever not keeping its promises.

b ニューファミリー、友達夫婦という言葉を生み出していった家庭で育った子供たちがその影響を受けない【はずがない】。
nyū famirī tomodachi fūfu to iu kotoba o umidashite itta katei de sodatta kodomo-tachi ga sono eikyō o ukenai hazu ga nai
Children who were raised in a household that produced expressions like New Family and Husband-and-Wife-as Friends, must surely be influenced by it.

63 hō [STRUCTURAL NOUN]

As a structural N, **hō** is preceded and followed by the forms that precede follow N.

The basic meaning of **hō** as a lexical N (方) is 'area' or 'direction', but as a structural N, **hō** (usually followed by the case P **ga**) indicates the preferred item or course of action.

This is effected by emphasizing the preferred item (by means of **hō ga**) when two items, courses of action, etc. are (explicitly or implicitly) being compared.

63.1 Noun/noun phrase **no hō ga**
63.2 Clause-verb **hō ga** adjective/adjectival noun
63.3 Clause-verb/adjective/adjectival noun **hō ga ii/yoi/mashi da**
63.4 Verb/adjective/adjectival noun **hō** copula

63.1 NOUN/NOUN PHRASE **no hō ga**

Like any other N, **hō** is attached to a N or NP by means of **no** (see also 25, 252).

a 野球よりサッカーの【方】が面白い。
yakyū yori sakkā no hō ga omoshiroi
Soccer is more interesting than baseball.

b 男性の【方】がお金にはルーズなようだ。
dansei no hō ga okane ni wa rūzu na yō da
[Compared to women] men seem to be more careless with money.

c 社会主義時代の生活の【方】がよかった。
shakai shugi jidai no seikatsu no hō ga yokatta
Life was better during socialist times.

d 年をとってからは町の【方】が暮らしやすい…
toshi o totte kara wa machi no hō ga kurashiyasui
Once you're old, a town is easier to live in [than the country] . . .

63.2 CLAUSE-VERB **hō ga** ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN

Depending on the context, this can indicate the idea of 'doing . . . is adj./AN-er' or 'doing . . . would be adj./AN-er'.

a ［家で寝転がってテレビでも見ている］【方】が楽だし、お金もかからない。
ie de nekorogatte terebi demo mite iru hō ga raku da shi o-kane mo kakaranai
Lying down at home watching TV is easier [than going to a show], and doesn't cost anything either.

b ［これだけ県費をつぎ込んでうまくいかない］【方】がおかしい。
kore dake kenpi o tsugikonde umaku ikanai hō ga okashii
Considering all the prefectural funds going into [the project], it would be strange if it didn't succeed.

63.3 CLAUSE-VERB/ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN **hō ga ii/yoi/ mashi da**

Followed by evaluatory adj./AN such as **ii/yoi** 'good' and **mashi da** 'preferable', this is used for recommending a course of action, or stating a preference 'you should', 'is better/preferable'.

V often use the ending **-ta** (which indicates not past but completion here) before **hō**, but **-te iru** and **-ru** are also found (in the neg., **-nai** is used).

a 医師に詳しく診てもらった【方】がいいだろう。
ishi ni kuwashiku mite moratta hō ga ii darō
You'd better have a thorough check-up by a doctor.

b 辞任するのなら早く辞任した【方】がよい。
jinin suru no nara hayaku jinin shita hō ga yoi
If he resigns, then he should do so soon.

c 財布のひもはやっぱり女性が握った【方】がいい？
saifu no himo wa yappari josei ga nigitta hō ga ii
Is it in the end better if women control the purse strings?

d 効率を考えると解体して何か新しい物を建てる【方】が簡単だ。
kōritsu o kangaeru to kaitai shite nani ka atarashii mono o tateru hō ga kantan da
When you consider efficiency, it's easier to dismantle them [= historic buildings] and build something new.

e 缶は持ち運ぶのに軽い【方】がいい。
kan wa mochihakobu no ni karui hō ga ii
Cans are better light, for carrying them around.

f 平凡でけっこう、平凡で幸せな【方】がはるかにいい。
heibon de kekkō heibon de shiawase na hō ga haruka ni ii
Mediocre is fine, it's far better to be mediocre and happy.

g 毛皮を着るぐらいなら裸の【方】がまし。
kegawa o kiru gurai nara hadaka no hō ga mashi
I'd rather be naked than wear a fur.

63.4 VERB/ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN **hō** COPULA

This indicates a tendency, compared to other people or entities that are not explicitly mentioned: 'on the . . . side', 'relatively', 'tend to'.

a 私なんかおとなしい【方】よ。
watashi nanka otonashii hō yo
I'm on the quiet side, you know.

b 自分からすすんで、新しい友だちをつくる【ほう】ですか。
jibun kara susunde atarashii tomodachi o tsukuru hō desu ka
Do you tend to go out of your way to make new friends?

64 hodo [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

hodo is attached directly to N, and to the forms of V/adj./AN that precede N.

hodo and the word it is attached to together form an adverbial phrase, i.e. modify a following V/adj./AN or the cop., indicating the degree to which the following V/adj./AN (or cop.) applies 'about' (see 25, 61).

64.1 Number + counter **hodo**
64.1.1 Number + counter **hodo** (+ particle) predicate
64.1.2 Noun (or noun phrase) **wa** . . . number + counter **hodo (da)**
64.1.3 Number + counter **hodo no** noun (noun-modifying)
64.2 Noun **hodo** noun (indicating an extent)
64.2.1 Noun **hodo** (. . . noun) (predicate-negative)
64.2.2 Noun **hodo** noun (predicate-positive)
64.2.3 Idiomatic use of noun **hodo** predicate
64.3 Verb/adjective **hodo**
64.3.1 Verb/adjective **hodo** (predicate-positive)
64.3.2 Verb/adjective **hodo no** noun
64.3.3 Verb/adjective **hodo da**
64.3.4 Verb/adjective **hodo** (predicate-negative)
64.4 (Verb/adjective-**ba**) verb/adjective **hodo**
64.4.1 Verb/adjective-**ba** verb/adjective **hodo** (with repeated verb or adjective)
64.4.2 Verb/adjective **hodo**
64.4.3 Verb **hodo ni** predicate
64.5 Noun **hodo . . . mono/koto wa nai**
64.5.1 **hodo . . . mono wa nai**
64.5.2 **hodo . . . koto wa nai**

64.1 NUMBER + COUNTER hodo

Attached to num. + counter, **hodo**, like **gurai**, indicates an approximate amount 'about' (see 61, 147, 36).

64.1.1 Number + counter **hodo** (+ particle) predicate

a 高さ五メートル【ほど】はあるだろうか。
takasa gomētoru hodo wa aru darō ka
The height [of the building replica] might be about five metres.

b 研究会は十人【ほど】で構成する。
kenkyūkai wa jūnin hodo de kōsei suru
The research society will be formed by about 10 people.

c 五キロのコースを一時間半【ほど】かけてゆっくり歩く。
gokiro no kōsu o ichijikanhan hodo kakete yukkuri aruku
They walk the 5-km course slowly, taking about an hour and a half.

64.1.2 Noun (or noun phrase) **wa** . . . number + counter **hodo (da)**

In equational S, the meaning is '*A* is about *B*'. The N can be a simple N, a NP (N **no** N, etc.), or a nominalized N (V + **no**, etc.).

a 現在の会員【は】二百五十人【ほど】だ。
genzai no kaiin wa nihyakugojū-nin hodo da
There are currently about 250 members.

b 一日の乗降客【は】現在一万人【ほど】だ。
ichinichi no jōkōkyaku wa genzai ichimannin hodo da
At present, the number of passengers getting on and off in a day is about 10,000.

c 働くの【は】一カ月のうち半月【ほど】だ。
hataraku no wa ikkagetsu no uchi hantsuki hodo da
He works about two weeks out of every month.

64.1.3 Number + counter **hodo no** noun (noun-modifying)

When modifying a N, the meaning is 'of about', 'or so'.

a 二十年【ほど】の間に何が変わのたのだろう。
nijūnen hodo no aida ni nani ga kawatta no darō
I wonder what has changed over the past 20 years or so.

b 九月に休みをもらって二泊【ほど】の旅行を考えている。
kugatsu ni yasumi o moratte nihaku hodo no ryokō o kangaete iru
I'm thinking of taking some time off in September and going on a trip of about [three days and] two nights.

c 開館日には一日十組【ほど】の客が訪れる。
kaikanbi ni wa ichinichi jukkumi hodo no kyaku ga otozureru
On the days when the museum is open, about ten groups of visitors come per day.

64.2 NOUN **hodo** NOUN (INDICATING AN EXTENT)

64.2.1 Noun **hodo** (. . . noun) (predicate-negative)

This indicates the meaning of 'not as . . . as'. The pred. is either neg. or has neg. meaning.

a これ【ほど】多国籍な銀行も【まれ】です。
kore hodo takokuseki na ginkō mo mare desu
There are very few banks that are as multinational as this.

b 日本人からみれば中国人【ほど】手ごわい相手はい【ない】。
nihonjin kara mireba chūgokujin hodo tegowai aite wa inai
From the point of view of the Japanese, there are few [negotiating] partners who are as tough as the Chinese.

c そんな中、これ【ほど】大きくて目立つ時計も【珍しい】。
sonna naka, kore hodo ōkikute medatsu tokei mo mezurashii
Among such [clocks at well-known meeting points], there are few clocks that are so large and noticeable.

d どんな動物でも犬【ほど】バラエティーに富む例は見当たら【ない】。
donna dōbutsu demo inu hodo baraetī ni tomu rei wa miataranai
There is no other kind of animal as rich in variety as the dog.

64.2.2 Noun **hodo** noun (predicate-positive)

With pos. pred., the meaning is 'more than', 'to the extent that'.

a 苦しい時【ほど】愛する対象が欲しいんです。
kurushii toki hodo aisuru taishō ga hoshii n desu
One never wants something to love [= a pet] as much as in hard times.

b 母の居ない人【ほど】母への思いは強くなる。
haha no inai hito hodo haha e no omoi wa tsuyoku naru
No one has stronger feelings towards his mother than someone who doesn't have one.

64.2.3 Idiomatic use of noun **hodo** predicate

Idiomatic uses include expressions like **yama hodo** 'lots', sayings, etc.

a したいことは山【ほど】ある。
shitai koto wa yama hodo aru
There are heaps of things I want to do.

b わからないことは山【ほど】ある。
wakaranai koto wa yama hodo aru
There are lots of things I don't understand

64.3 VERB/ADJECTIVE **hodo**

64.3.1 Verb/adjective **hodo** (predicate-positive)

Here, **hodo** is modified by a N-mod. clause ending in the same forms that are used before N (note the classical neg. forms -**nu** instead of -**nai**, example e). Together with **hodo**, this forms an adverbial clause in the sense of 'so . . . that' (with pos. pred.).

a 安すぎる【ほど】安い。
yasusugiru hodo yasui
It's so cheap that it's almost too cheap.

b 驚く【ほど】甘い。
odoroku hodo amai
It's amazingly sweet.

c 腰を抜かす【ほど】驚いた。
koshi o nukasu hodo odoroita
I was so surprised that I could hardly move.

d 泣けてきそうな【ほど】、感激した。
nakete kisō na hodo kandō shita
I was moved so deeply that I almost cried.

e 人間の体は数えきれぬ【ほど】多くの細胞でできている。
ningen no karada wa kazoekirenu hodo ōku no saibō de dekite iru
The human body is made up of innumerable cells.

64.3.2 Verb/adjective **hodo no** noun

When modifing a N, the meaning is 'a N that is so . . . that'.

a まぶしい【ほど】の笑顔だった。
mabushii hodo no egao datta
It was a smile that was virtually dazzling.

b 会場の大教室は立ち見が出る【ほど】の盛況ぶりだった。
kaijō no daikyōshitsu wa tachimi ga deru hodo no seikyōburi datta
The [event in the] large auditorium (*lit.* "at the venue") was so well attended that there was standing room only.

c はたから見れば恋人と見間違える【ほど】の親密な交際ぶりだ。
hata kara mireba koibito to mimachigaeru hodo no shinmitsu na kōsaiburi da
To the innocent bystander, their friendship looks so intimate that they might be mistaken for sweethearts.

64.3.3 Verb/adjective **hodo da**

As the pred. of an equational S, V/adj. **hodo da** means '*A* is *B* to an extent that'.

a 技術力の進歩は驚く【ほど】だ。
gijutsuryoku no shinpo wa odoroku hodo da
The advances made in technical skill are amazing.

b 街を歩くサラリーマンの姿は数える【ほど】だ。
machi o aruku sararīman no sugata wa kazoeru hodo da
There are so [few] white-collar workers walking around town that you could count them.

c 外は猛暑でもここの気温は一三度で寒い【ほど】だ。
soto wa mōsho demo koko no kion wa jūsando de samui hodo da
Even if there's a heatwave outside, the temperature in here, at thirteen degrees, still feels cold.

64.3.4 Verb/adjective **hodo** (predicate-negative)

With neg. pred., the meaning is 'not as . . . as'.

a しかし、それは口で言う【ほど】簡単なことではない。
shikashi sore wa kuchi de iu hodo kantan na koto de wa nai
[Making clothes that customers buy regardless of price] However, that's easier said than done.

b 道は広いし、交通マナーも言われている【ほど】悪くない。
michi wa hiroi shi kōtsū manā mo iwarete iru hodo waruku nai
The streets are wide and people's driving manners are not as bad as they are said to be.

c 女性は本当に意外な【ほど】、男性の「好きなモノ」を知らない。
josei wa hontō ni igaina hodo dansei no sukina mono o shiranai
It's quite incredible how little women know about the things men like.

64.4 (VERB/ADJECTIVE-**ba**) VERB/ADJECTIVE **hodo**

64.4.1 Verb/adjective-**ba** verb/adjective **hodo** (with repeated verb or adjective)

Here, a V or adj. is repeated, first in the -**ba** form, then in the N-mod. form, in the sense of 'the more . . . , the -er' (see 13).

a まちづくりを【すればするほど】、まちが悪くなる。
machizukuri o sureba suru hodo machi ga waruku naru
The more you 'engineer' a town, the worse it gets.

b 組織が【大きければ大きいほど】決定は遅い。
soshiki ga ōkikereba ōkii hodo kettei wa osoi
The larger an organization is, the longer it takes to make decisions.

c 計画達成は【早ければ早いほど】良い。
keikaku tassei wa hayakereba hayai hodo ii
The sooner we achieve the plan the better.

d 日本政府の態度を【知れば知るほど】、怒りが高まった。
nihon seifu no taido o shireba shiru hodo ikari ga takamatta
The more I got to know the attitude of the Japanese government, the angrier I became.

e 住宅は、建築後年数が【たてばたつほど】、維持費用がかさむ。
jūtaku wa kenchikugo nensū ga tateba tatsu hodo iji hiyō ga kasamu
The older a house gets, the greater the cost of maintaining it.

64.4.2 Verb/adjective **hodo**

Without repeated V or adj., the meaning also works out as 'the more . . . , the -er'.

a 高齢化が進む【ほど】医療費は膨らみます。
kōrei-ka ga susumu hodo iryōhi wa fukuramimasu
The further the ageing of society progresses, the bigger the medical bills get.

b コメは気温が高い【ほど】消費量が減る傾向にある。
kome wa kion ga takai hodo shōhiryo ga heru keikō ni aru
Higher temperatures make for less consumption of rice.

64.4.3 Verb **hodo ni** predicate

This may be regarded as a variant of 64.4.1 and 64.4.2, 'the more . . . , the more'.

a かむ【ほどに】うまみが出てくる。
kamu hodo ni umami ga dete kuru
The longer one chews the better it tastes.

64.5 NOUN **hodo . . . mono/koto wa nai**

64.5.1 **hodo . . . mono wa nai**

hodo . . . mono wa nai expresses the meaning of 'nothing better than' (see 96).

a 絹製品【ほど】体に良いものはない。
kinu seihin hodo karada ni yoi mono wa nai
There is nothing better for the body than silk products.

b 一方通行の会議【ほど】退屈なものはない。
ippō tsūkō no kaigi hodo taikutsuna mono wa nai
There is nothing as dull as a one-way meeting (= where all the communication is from one direction only).

64.5.2 hodo . . . koto wa nai

Here, the meaning is 'never . . . more than' (see 64).

a 今年【ほど】、夏休みが待ち遠しかったことはない。
kotoshi hodo natsuyasumi ga machidōshikatta koto wa nai
I've never looked forward to the summer holidays as much as I did this year.

65 HONORIFIC AND HUMBLE FORMS (SUBJECT- AND OBJECT-HONORIFICS)

In comparison to 'ordinary' or unmarked forms expressing the same cognitive meaning, hon. forms and humble forms both elevate the listener or referent in relation to the speaker. The assumption behind this is that persons of senior/higher social status than the speaker are linguistically treated as superiors.

Hon. forms are distinct from the pol. ending **-masu**, but in practice often combine, especially when used as pred. (i.e. many forms given below are often used in their **-masu** form (see 91, 66).

65.1 Regular honorific forms
65.1.1 **o/go**-verb-stem **ni naru**
65.1.2 Clause-**te** (**de**) **irassharu**
65.1.3 Passive honorifics
65.2 Regular humble forms
65.2.1 **o/go**-verb-stem **suru**
65.2.2 Clause (**-te/de**) **gozaimasu** and (**-te/de**) **orimasu**
65.2.2.1 **gozaimasu** and adjective-**u gozaimasu/mashita**
65.2.2.2 Noun/adjectival noun/clause **de gozaimasu**
65.2.2.3 **-te/de oru/orimasu** and **orimasu**
65.3 Irregular honorific and humble verb forms

65.1 REGULAR HONORIFIC FORMS

There are two regular hon. formations, **o/go** V-stem **ni naru** and pass.-form hon. (see 156.8). Verbs that have special (irregular) forms do not usually have regular equivalents (see 65.3).

65.1.1 o/go-verb-stem ni naru

In this structure, V-stem is sandwiched between **o/go** and **ni naru**. In the case of VN (see 234), **ni naru** replaces **suru**.

The choice between the hon. pref. **o-** and **go-** basically depends on whether the item they attach to is NJ (**o-**) or SJ (**go-**) vocabulary (see 235), but there are some exceptions, such as **o-denwa** ('telephone'), which is SJ.

By replacing **ni naru** with **kudasai**, i.e. in the form **o/go**-V-stem **kudasai**, a pol. command is formed, which is commonly used (see 69.5).

For an example of **o**-V-stem-**ni naru** + attached pass. hon., see 65.1.1 d.

a 【お辞めになっ】たのはもったいない。(cf., 辞める 'quit')
o-yame ni natta no wa mottainai
It's a waste that he quit.

b やりたい方がいれば【おやりになれ】ばいい。(cf., やる 'do')
yaritai kata ga ireba o-yari ni nareba ii
If there's anyone who'd like to give it a try, let them.

In the media, **o/go**-V-stem **ni naru** (but also pass. hon.) is often used with reference to members of the Imperial family, although some newspapers have largely abandoned the practice.

Note also that in super-hon. usage, (**o/go-** V-stem **ni**) **naru** can be used in the pass. hon. form (**o/go-** V-stem **ni**) **narareru** to make it even more polite.

c 昭和天皇も【お泊まりになっ】たことがあるという。(cf., 泊まる 'stay')
shōwa tennō mo o-tomari ni natta koto ga aru to iu
They say that the Showa emperor too has stayed.

d 両陛下は参加者とともに苗木を【お手植えになら】れます。
(cf., 手植えする 'plant in person')
ryōheika wa sankasha to tomo ni naegi o o-teue ni nararemasu
Their Majesties will personally plant the seedlings together with the participants.

Note that there are some fixed expressions that look like **o/go** V-stem **ni naru**, but are in fact not (example e). Also note example f, where the expression **sankō ni naru** 'be useful' (*not* **sankō suru**!) is made honorific by attaching the pref. **go-**.

e いろいろな人にお世話になった。(**o-sewa ni naru** ‘be taken care of’)
iroiro na hito ni o-sewa ni natta
I was looked after by all sorts of people.

f 観光関係者の方々、ご参考になっただろうか。
kankō kankeisha no katagata go-sankō ni natta darō ka
[Advice how to advertise a local area for sightseeing] Has [our advice] been useful for you people in the sightseeing business?

65.1.2 Clause-**te (de) irassharu**

In hon. use, **-te/-de iru** is regularly changed to **te/de irassharu**, and **da/desu** to **de irassharu** (see 199, 35).

On irregular **-masu** and imperative forms, see 65.3.

a あなた大変困っ【ていらっしゃい】ましたよね。
anata taihen komatte irasshaimashita yo ne
You were greatly embarrassed [at the time], weren’t you.

b 先月お見舞いに行ったときには元気に笑っ【ていらっしゃっ】て、必ず帰ってくると信じていたのに。
sengetsu o-mimai ni itta toki ni wa genki ni waratte irasshatte kanarazu kaette kuru to shinjite ita no ni
When I visited him last month, he was laughing and in good spirits, and I believed that he’d definitely come back.

c お志高く、行動力にあふれるお二人【でいらっしゃい】ますので、必ずや素晴らしいご家庭をお築きになられることと確信しております。
o-kokorozashi takaku kōdōryoku ni afureru o-futari de irasshaimasu no de kanarazuya subarashii go-katei o o-kizuki ni narareru koto to kakushin shite orimasu
As both are of noble mind and brimming with activity, I’m convinced that they will surely build a wonderful family.

65.1.3 Passive honorifics

Pass. forms (for the forms see 156) can be used as a slightly less polite hon.; this is particularly popular with the younger generation.

However, in combination with **o/go-ni naru**, **-te orimasu** in the pass. hon. form makes for a super-hon. form (see 65.2.2 re **-te orimasu**).

a 28日は音楽をきいたり、読書をして過ごさ【れ】た。
nijū hachinichi wa ongaku o kiitari dokusho o shite sugosareta
The 28th she [= a member of the Imperial family] spent [doing things like] listening to music and reading.

b ご自身に対する警備が厳しすぎると感想をもらさ【れ】たこともある。
go-jishin ni taisuru keibi ga kibishi-sugiru to kansō o morasareta koto mo aru
He [= a member of the Imperial family] once commented that he felt that he was being guarded too strictly.

c 「どちらからいらっしゃいましたか」「どの程度【入院され】ていますか」などと【声をかけられ】た。
dochira kara irasshaimashita ka dono teido nyūin sarete imasu ka nado to koe o kakerareta
She addressed people with questions like 'Where do you come from?' and 'How long have you been in hospital?'

Note – compare the above hon. uses to the following example of pass. use (see 156).

d おばあさんに席を譲ったら、何度もお礼を【言われ】、降りる際には【最敬礼され】て、とまどってしまった。
obāsan ni seki o yuzuttara nando mo orei o iware oriru sai ni wa saikeirei sarete tomadotte shimatta
After I'd given my seat to the old woman, she thanked me many times, and I was really embarassed when she bowed deeply as she got off the train.

65.2 REGULAR HUMBLE FORMS

65.2.1 o/go-verb-stem suru

The regular humble formation takes the form of **o/go**-V-stem **suru** (for extra politeness, **suru** can be changed to **itasu**, see 3 below).

The choice between **o-** and **go-** is conditioned by the same factors as mentioned above under 65.1. V that have special (irregular) forms do not usually have regular formations (see 65.3).

a 時には「しばらく【お会いし】ていないので、ごあいさつということで……」という訳のわからない名目もある。
toki ni wa shibaraku o-ai shite inai no de go-aisatsu to iu koto de to iu wake no wakaranai meimoku mo aru
On occasion, people come under the flimsy pretext of 'I haven't seen you for a while, so [I'd like to see you] to extend my greetings . . .'.

b 副党首を【お願いし】たらすぐになってくれた。
fukutōshu o o-negai shitara sugu ni natte kureta
When I asked [him to be] deputy party chairman, he took it on right away.

c お客様には、表示と適合しない製品を【お届けし】、多大な迷惑をかけたことを【おわびし】たい。
o-kyaku-sama ni wa hyōji to tekigō shinai seihin o o-todoke shi tadai na meiwaku o kaketa koto o o-wabi shitai
I want to apologize for having delivered to our customers a product that does not match the labelling, and for having inconvenienced them greatly.

65.2.2 Clause (**-te/de**) **gozaimasu** and (**-te/de**) **orimasu**

gozaimasu is humble for **aru**, and **orimasu** for **iru**. Similarly, **-te** (**-de**) **gozaimasu** is used instead of **-te aru** (see 196), **-te gozaimasu** instead of **iru** (see 199), **de gozaimasu** instead of **da/desu** (see 35), and **-te orimasu** for **-te iru**.

For irregular **-masu** and imp. forms see 65.3.

65.2.2.1 *gozaimasu and adjective-u gozaimasu/mashita*

gozaimasu is the humble equivalent of **aru/arimasu**. Note also the somewhat archaic combination adj. **-u** (**o** + **u** = **ō**) **gozaimasu** (the adj. ending **-u** is a variant of **-ku**), which is still used, especially by elderly ladies, but also in greetings such as **arigatō gozaimasu**, **o-hayō gozaimasu**, **o-medetō gozaimasu**, etc.

Note – when referring to events that are already completed, **-mashita** is used rather than **-masu**.

a「白寿」を迎えた感想をきかれると「とくに【ございませ】ん。」
hakuju o mukaeta kansō o kikareru to toku ni gozaimasen
When asked about his thoughts on having reached the age of 99, [he replied] 'I don't really have any'.

b …に失敗したという話があるが。「全く【ございませ】ん。」
ni shippai shita to iu hanashi ga aru ga. mattaku gozaimasen.
. . . there's talk that you made a mistake in . . . 'That's not at all so'.

c「今日は何から始まるんじゃ？」「まず最初は閣議の前に閣僚会議が【ございまし】て、そこでの主なテーマは……」
kyō wa nani kara hajimaru n ja. mazu saisho wa kakugi no mae ni kakuryōkaigi ga gozaimashite soko de no omo na tēma wa
(PM) 'What's on first today?' (Secretary) 'First, before the Cabinet meeting there is a Ministerial conference; the main topic there is . . .'

d【悪うございまし】た。
warū gozaimashita
Sorry (*lit.* "It was bad of me").

e 第三子誕生【おめでとうございまし】た。
daisanshi tanjō omedetō gozaimashita
Congratulations on the birth of your third child

f 「本日は私の葬儀にご出席頂き、【ありがとうございま】す」と故人がスクリーンに登場し、会葬者に別れのあいさつをする。
honjitsu wa watakushi no sōgi ni go-shusseki itadaki arigatō gozaimasu to kojin ga sukurīn ni tōjō shi kaisōsha ni wakare no aisatsu o suru
With the words 'Thank you for attending my funeral today', the deceased appears on the screen, and gives a farewell speech to the funeral guests.

65.2.2.2 *Noun/adjectival noun/clause* **de gozaimasu**

de gozaimasu is humble for **da/desu** (strictly speaking, **de aru/arimasu** is converted into **de gozaimasu**, which is used in place of **da/desu**).

Note that **wa** can be 'sandwiched' between **de** and **gozaimasu** for contrast/emphasis (example d) in the same way as between **de** and forms of cop. (see 236.5.3.3).

In fairy tales and some other forms of literature, **no de gozaimasu** is also used instead of S endings such as **n/no da/desu**.

For irregular -**masu** and imp. forms, see 65.3.

a 右手に見えますのは、二条城【でございま】す。
migite ni miemasu no wa nijōjō de gozaimasu
What can be seen on the right is Nijō Castle.

b 「それは反乱か」という王に、公爵は答えた。「いえ陛下、革命【でございま】す」。
sore wa hanran ka to iu ō ni kōshaku wa kotaeta. ie heika kakumei de gozaimasu
To the king's question 'Is this an uprising?' the duke replied, 'No, Your Majesty, it's a revolution'.

c 三世代同居時代には嫁は姑（しゅうとめ）に「お食事【でございます】」と告げたが、核家族では「ご飯よ」でも済んでしまう。
sansedai dōkyo jidai ni wa yome wa shūtome ni o-shokuji de gozaimasu to tsugeta ga kakukazoku de wa go-han yo de mo sunde shimau
In the times when three generations lived under one roof, the wife would say to the mother-in-law 'Your dinner is served', but in the nuclear family 'Dinner!' is sufficient.

d はなはだせんえつ【ではございま】すが、自己紹介させていただきます……。
hanahada sen'etsu de wa gozaimasu ga jikoshōkai sasete itadakimasu
Please permit me (*lit.* "It is totally out of order of me to do so, but allow me") to introduce myself . . .

e 男は、それまでにそんな美しい女の肌を見たことがなかったの【でございま】す。
otoko wa sore made-ni sonna utsukushii onna no hada o mita koto ga nakatta no de gozaimasu
The man had never before seen a woman with such beautiful skin.

65.2.2.3 *-te/de oru/orimasu* and *orimasu*

-**te/de orimasu** is the humble equivalent to verb-**te/de iru/imasu**. Note how **nado** causes the insertion of an 'extra' **shite ori** in example f; the non-hon., non-formal equivalent would be **hone o ottari shite ite**, i.e. **orimasu** is used instead of **iru** (see 192, 103.3).

Note – the imperative plain form **-te ore** (example a) is used as an imperative form of **-te iru** (**-te iro** being not a standard form), and does not have any hon. meaning.

a 母よ! 一分ぐらいだまっ【とれ】。(だまっとれ = だまっ【ておれ】)
haha yo ippun gurai damattore
Mother! Shut up for a minute or so.

b 釣り銭が不足し【ております】。
tsurisen ga fusoku itashite orimasu
We are short of change.

c 冷えたドリンクを販売いたし【ております】。
hieta dorinku o hanbai shite orimasu
We're selling cold drinks.

d まったく存じ【ておりませ】ん。
mattaku zonjite orimasen
I know absolutely nothing [about it].

e 電話や消火器も床に転がっ【ており】、手が付けられない状態だった。
denwa ya shōkaki mo yuka ni korogatte ori te ga tsukerarenai jōtai datta
Telephones and fire extinguishers too were lying on the floor, and [the place] was in a state where we couldn't do anything.

f 優輝ちゃんは病院に運ばれたが頭の骨を折るなどし【ており】、約二時間半後に死亡した。
yūki-chan wa byōin ni hakobareta ga atama no hone o oru nado shite ori yaku nijikanhan-go ni shibō shita
Yūki-chan was taken to hospital but had a fractured skull and died two and a half hours later.

65.3 IRREGULAR HONORIFIC AND HUMBLE VERB FORMS

A number of commonly used V that refer to a person's action are not used in their regular hon. form; instead, a different 'specialized' hon. V is used (some hon. V can be used for more than one action: **meshiagaru** is used for both eating and drinking, and **irassharu** is used for coming, going, and being there).

Table 13 shows the more common of these irregular V (for slots where no irregular verb exists, regular formations are given in brackets).

Note also that the following among the verbs below are irregular in forming their **-masu** form and imp. form. This also applies when they are used with V-**te** (see 65.1.2 and 65.2.2 above).

honorific verb	***-masu** form*	*imperative form*
gozaru	**gozai-masu**	—
irassharu	**irasshai-masu**	**irasshai**
kudasaru	**kudasai-masu**	**kudasai**
nasaru	**nasai-masu**	**nasai**
ossharu	**osshai-masu**	**osshai**

As seen already above (65.1.2 and 65.2.2), many of the above forms can in turn be used to replace the second V in [V-**te** + V] combinations, such as **-te iru** into **-te irasshaimasu/-te orimasu**, and **-te kuru** into **-te irasshaimasu/-te mairimasu**, etc.

a 【ご覧になり】ましたか。
go-ran ni narimashita ka
Have you seen [it]?

b 続いて陛下は別館の標本館に移動し、魚類標本を【ご覧になっ】た。
tsuzuite heika wa bekkan no hyōhonkan ni idō shi, gyorui hyōhon o go-ran ni natta
Thereafter, His Majesty moved to the Specimen Hall, which is a separate building, and looked at fish specimens.

c 負傷された方々には心からのお見舞いを【申し上げ】たい。
fushō sareta katagata ni wa kokoro kara no o-mimai o mōshiagetai
To those wounded, I'd like to extend my heartfelt wishes for their recuperation.

d …歌舞伎にも時々【おいでいただい】ております。
kabuki ni mo tokidoki o-ide itadaite orimasu
. . . occasionally he [= Imperial Family member] honours us with a visit to the Kabuki.

Table 13 Major irregular honorific and humble verbs

Ordinary	*Honorific*	*Humble*
ageru 'give'	**kudasaru**	**sashiageru**
aru 'be', 'have'	**o-ari desu**	**gozaru**
au 'meet'	**(o-ai ni naru)**	**o-me ni kakaru** **(o-ai suru)**
deru 'attend'	**(o-de ni naru)**	—
iku 'go'	**irassharu** **o-ide ni naru**	**mairu**
iru 'be'	**irassharu** **o-ide ni naru** **orareru**	**oru** **iru**
iu 'say'	**ossharu**	**mōsu** **mōshiageru**
kariru 'borrow'	**(o-kari ni nara)**	**haishaku suru** **(o-kari suru)**
kiku 'ask'	**(o-kiki ni naru)**	**ukagau** **uketamawaru** **(o-kiki suru)**
kiru 'wear'	**o-meshi ni naru**	
kuru 'come'	**irassharu** **o-ide ni naru** **o-ide itadaku** **o-koshi ni naru** **mieru** **o-mie ni naru**	**mairu**
miru 'see'	**go-ran ni naru**	**haiken suru**
miseru 'show'	**(o-mise ni naru)**	**o-me ni kakeru**
morau 'receive'	**(o-morai ni naru)**	**itadaku** **chōdai suru**
motsu 'have'	**o-mochi da** **motte irassharu**	**(o-mochi suru)** **motte oru**
neru 'go to bed', 'sleep'	**o-yasumi ni naru**	—
nomu 'drink'	**o-agari ni naru** **meshiagaru**	**itadaku**
omou 'think'	**(o-omoi ni naru)**	**zonjiru**

Table 13 (Cont'd)

Ordinary	*Honorific*	*Humble*
shinu 'die'	**o-nakunari ni naru**	**naku naru**
shiru 'know'	**go-zonji da** **go-shōchi da**	**zonjiru** **zonjite oru**
shiru 'know s.o.'	**go-zonji da**	**zonjiageru**
suru 'do'	**nasaru** **sareru** **o-yari ni naru?**	**itasu**
taberu 'eat'	**o-agari ni naru** **meshiagaru**	**itadaku**
tazuneru 'ask', 'visit'	**o-tazune ni naru**	**ukagau**

e 着物のお客様にナプキンを【差し上げ】たり、女性らしい気配りにも気を使います。
kimono no o-kyaku-sama ni napukin o sashiagetari josei rashii kikubari ni mo ki o tsukaimasu
I provide napkins for people in kimonos, and try to pay attention to things in a female sort of way.

f 焼き物を始めて四十八年、土との闘いをずっと続け【てまいり】ました。
yakimono o hajimete yonjūhachi-nen tsuchi to no tatakai o zutto tsuzukete mairimashita
[It's] 48 years since I've taken up pottery, and I've continued the struggle with the clay all the way.

66 HONORIFIC AND HUMBLE NOUNS

Honorific and humble N can be divided in N that refer to a person, N that refer to people's actions, and N that are used as euphemisms.

66.1 Nouns referring to a person
66.1.1 Without honorific prefix
66.1.2 With honorific prefix
66.2 Nouns referring to a person's actions or belongings
66.3 Nouns used as euphemisms
66.4 Nouns used when speaking to children

66.1 NOUNS REFERRING TO A PERSON

66.1.1 Without honorific prefix

To refer to a person, apart from titles and pron. the honorific equivalent of **hito**, **kata**, can be used in the singular, and the reduplicated **katagata** for the plural (see 54, 158).

a 大変健康な【方】だ。
taihen kenkō na kata da
He is a very healthy person.

b 観光関係者の【方々】、ご参考になっただろうか。
kankō kankeisha no katagata go-sankō ni natta darō ka
[Advice on how to advertise a local area for sightseeing] Has [our advice] been useful for you people in the sightseeing business?

66.1.2 With honorific prefix

The hon. pref. **o/go-** (the choice is mainly conditioned by the type of N attached to, i.e. **o**-NJ and **go**-SJ (see 65.1.1)) can be attached to N in the sense of 'your N', and also to reflexive pron. (→) like **jishin** to make them hon. (example c)

For address and reference, these pref. are also attached to some family terms (see 53).

a 今、初盆を迎え、【ご親族】のもとへあなたはひとときお帰りになっておられるのだろうと思います。
ima hatsubon o mukae go-shinzoku no moto e anata wa hitotoki o-kaeri ni natte orareru no darō to omoimasu
Now, on the occasion of your first Bon festival, I believe that you have returned for a short time to your family.

b 三世代同居時代には嫁は姑（しゅうとめ）に「【お食事】でございます」と告げたが、核家族では「ご飯よ」でも済んでしまう。
sansedai dōkyo jidai ni wa yome wa shūtome ni o-shokuji de gozaimasu to tsugeta ga kakukazoku de wa go-han yo de mo sunde shimau
In the times when three generations lived under one roof, the wife would say to the mother-in-law 'Your dinner is served', but in the nuclear family 'Dinner!' is sufficient.

c 【ご自身】に対する警備が厳しすぎると感想をもらされたこともある。
go-jishin ni taisuru keibi ga kibishi-sugiru to kansō o morasareta koto mo aru
He [= member of the Imperial family] once commented that he felt that he (*lit.* "Honorific himself") was being guarded too strictly.

66.2 NOUNS REFERRING TO A PERSON'S ACTIONS OR BELONGINGS

These are typically used in **o/go**-V-stem **ni naru** and **o/go**-V-stem **suru**, where V-stem is a VN. With **o/go**-V-stem **ni naru/kudasai**, the VN refers to the subject's actions, and with **o/go**-V-stem **suru** to an action the subject performs for a second/third person (see 65.1.1, 65.2.1, 69.5).

66.3 NOUNS USED AS EUPHEMISMS

These are mostly N that have to do with eating, drinking and toilet, etc. in general, i.e. they do not refer to anyone's action. Typically, these N attach the pref. **o-** and **go-**, and some also contain hon. V elements. They fall into three main groups as follows:

o-cha 'tea', **o-hashi** 'chopsticks', **o-miyage** 'gift', **o-tearai** 'toilet', **o-sake** 'alcoholic drink', **o-kane** 'money', **o-tsuri** 'change'.
go-fujō 'toilet', **go-han** 'food', 'meal'.
o-meshimono (this is hon. for kimono) 'apparel', **mesu** being an irregular hon. V for **kiru**).

66.4 NOUNS USED WHEN SPEAKING TO CHILDREN

Mothers and other, usually female, siblings of small children often use 'children's talk' when conversing. Examples include parts of the body like **o-meme** 'eyes' and **o-tete** 'hands' (instead of **me** and **te**), nouns that are normally used to denote an action (even when **suru** is not attached), such as **an'yo (suru)** 'walk', **nenne (suru)** 'sleep/go to sleep', **o-shikko (suru)** 'pee'. The last one has gained common currency, even among men (in informal situations).

67 HORTATIVE: VERB-(y)ō [SENTENCE ENDING]

Hortative expresses proposed action 'shall I/we', or an invitation to do something together 'let's', and therefore can be attached only to V that express an action that can be controlled by the speaker.

For this purpose, the ending -**(y)ō** is used, attached to V. The combination V-**(y)ō** is the plain-form equivalent of V-**mashō** 'let's' etc. (see 91).

Apart from the hortative meaning, -**(y)ō** can also be used in the pres. sense, which is a supposition about what might happen or be the case. Here, no restriction about controllability of the action of V applies (see 67.1.4, 163, 246 50).

The ending -**(y)ō** is attached to V as shown below:

Group I: change final **-u** to **ō**
Group II: attach **yō** to V-stem
Group III: **kuru** → **koyō**
suru → **shiyō**

Note – polite sentence ending: **-masu** → **mashō.**

67.1 Sentence-verb-(y)ō in statements
67.1.1 Invitation
67.1.2 Offering one's services
67.1.3 Suggesting rules of conduct
67.1.4 Presumptive meaning
67.2 Verb-(y)ō in questions
67.2.1 Verb-(y)ō **ka**: offering
67.2.2 Verb-(y)ō **ka to/tte**

67.1 SENTENCE-VERB-(y)ō IN STATEMENTS

Apart from the speaker inviting others to join him or her in some action, -(y)ō is also commonly used in slogans, to offer one's services, and when suggesting to the public (or other groups of people) the correct rules of conduct (see 67.1.3).

67.1.1 Invitation

This translates simply as 'let's'.

a どっか【行こう】よ。(どっか = どこか)
dokka ikō yo
Let's go somewhere.

b さあ、【いきましょう】。
sā ikimashō
Come on, let's go.

c 来年また【会いましょう】。
rainen mata aimashō
Let's meet again next year.

d 演題は「人生をどん欲に【生きよう】」。
endai wa jinsei o donyoku ni ikiyō
The subject of the lecture is 'Let's live our lives greedily'.

e 「子供を家庭・地域に【帰そう】」を目指した学校五日制。
kodomo o katei chiiki ni kaesō o mezashita gakkō itsukasei
The five-day school system, which has the aim of 'Let's return the children to the home and the neighbourhood'

67.1.2 Offering one's services

This translates as 'I/we will', 'let me/us'. Note that **ga** or **kara** can be used to mark the person/s making the offer, but **wa** cannot be used (see 74.6, 238).

a お宅の犬の写真でカレンダーを【作りましょう】。
otaku no inu no shashin de karendā o tsukurimashō
We'll make [you] a calendar from photos of your dog.

b 足りない分は私が【考えましょう】。
tarinai bun wa watashi ga kangaemashō
I'll do something about the shortfall [in funds].

c 世界銀行の「東アジアの奇跡」というリポートの内容は、私から簡単に【説明しましょう】。
sekai ginkō no higashi ajia no kiseki to iu repōto no naiyō wa watashi kara kantan ni setsumei shimashō
Let me explain briefly the content of the World Bank's report 'The East Asian Miracle'.

67.1.3 Suggesting rules of conduct

This is used to tell others what they should do, couched in a way that suggests that it should be done together 'one/you should' (see 19, 63.3).

a 蛇口はこまめに【閉めましょう】。
jaguchi wa komame ni shimemashō
The tap should be turned off diligently.

b マイカーの通勤は【自粛しましょう】。
maikā no tsūkin wa jishuku shimashō
People should refrain from commuting in private cars.

67.1.4 Presumptive meaning

Here, the -(y)ō form is used as an equivalent of V **darō** 'should', 'may'. This pres. is largely restricted to the formal spoken and the written language (see presumptive forms and endings). Occasionally, the old-fashioned forms A-**karō** (= A-**i darō**) and V-**tarō** (= V-**ta darō**) are still encountered (for examples see 163).

a 史料として一級の価値が【あろう】。(= …【価値があるだろう】。)
shiryō to shite ikkyū no kachi ga arō
As a historical document, it should have first-rate importance.

b 女性のヤル気をいかに引き出すかが、企業経営の重要なかぎを握る時代【来よう】。
josei no yaru ki o ika ni hikidasu ka ga kigyō keiei no jūyō na kagi o nigiru jidai ga koyō
The time may come when how to get women to take a keen interest in their work will be an important key to business management.

67.2 VERB-(y)ō IN QUESTIONS

67.2.1 Verb-(y)ō **ka**: offering

This translates as 'shall I/we?'.

a 何、【話しましょうか】……。
nani hanashimashō ka
What shall I talk about? . . .

b テニスなんてやったことはないが、ひとつ【挑戦してみようか】。
tenisu nante yatta koto wa nai ga hitotsu chōsen shite miyō ka
I've never played any tennis before, but maybe I'll give it a try.

67.2.2 Verb-(y)ō **ka to/tte**

Followed by a V of communication like **hanasu** 'discuss' or **omou** 'think' etc., this indicates the meaning of (discuss, etc.) 'whether I/we should/might'.

a クリスマス直前の週末には皆で横浜に行って、おいしいケーキでも食べてブラブラする。イブの日は、友達の家に集まって、女の子五人でなべパーティー。その翌日は、ディズニーランドに【行こうかって】話しているんです……。
kurisumasu chokuzen no shūmatsu ni wa minna de yokohama ni itte oishii kēki de mo tabete burabura suru. ibu no hi wa tomodachi no ie ni atsumatte onna no ko gonin de nabepātī. sono yokujitsu wa dizunīrando ni ikō ka tte hanashite iru n desu
On the weekend directly before Christmas, we'll go to Yokohama, have some tasty cake and walk around. On the Eve, we'll gather at a friend's place and have a hot-pot party among us five girls. We're discussing whether we might go to Disneyland on the following day . . .

68 hoshii [ADJECTIVE OF DESIRE]

The adj. **hoshii** indicates the object of the speaker's desire or wishes. 'Object' includes things, persons (children and other people that can belong to one or one's organization), time, money or other desirables. The object is usually marked by **ga**, but occasionally **o** is also found (see 46, 55.5, 57, 148.3, 197).

Typically, **hoshii** is used of the first person in statements, and second person in questions, but examples of third person use are also found, even though it is more usual to use **hoshi-garu** for third persons (see 57).

68.1 Present
68.2 Past

68.1 PRESENT

a % お金が【ほし】い。
okane ga hoshii
I want money.

b % 誕生日に何が【ほし】い?
tanjōbi ni nani ga hoshii
What do you want for your birthday?

c テレビでも研究が紹介され、「出演者の一人がこのシステムを【ほし】いと話していた」。
terebi de mo kenkyū ga shōkai sare shutsuensha no hitori ga kono shisutemu o hoshii to hanashite ita
[The virtual organism system] was shown on TV, too, and 'one of the people on the programme said he wanted this system'.

68.2 PAST

Like **-te hoshikatta**, **hoshikatta** can indicate both desires that have been fulfilled and those that were left unfulfilled (see 197.1.2).

a「自分の心の落ち着き場所が【ほしかった】」ことが妊娠願望の原因だったという。
jibun no kokoro no ochitsuki-basho ga hoshikatta koto ga ninshin ganbō no gen'in datta to iu
She says that the reason for her wish to become pregnant was that 'I wanted a place for my heart to settle down'.

b カリフォルニア出身のマーサさんはメキシコ系なので、メキシコからの赤ちゃんが【ほしかった】が、同性愛者は養子がもらえないことがわかり涙をのんだ。
kariforunia shusshin no māsa-san wa mekishiko-kei na no de mekishiko kara no akachan ga hoshikatta ga dōseiaisha wa yōshi ga moraenai koto ga wakari namida o nonda
Martha, who is from California and of Mexican extraction, therefore wanted a Mexican baby, but had to give up when she learned that lesbians are not allowed to adopt children.

69 IMPERATIVE SENTENCES

Imperative sentences typically use the imp. form of V (see 232) for pln. imp. Pln. imp. are used on some traffic signs (止まれ **tomare** 'stop!'), by robbers, for yelling slogans in demonstrations, etc., but also to an extent in informal communication between males.

For 'softened' imperatives, **yo** [final P] is attached. 'Familiar' imperatives involve adding final P such as **na (yo)** to V-stem.

Note – Japanese imp. can be used with a subject present (examples a c). Since this is not possible in English, this cannot be translated as an imperative (see also 22, 100, 113).

a 【学生は】コピーを【とらないで下さい】[= written notice on copier]
gakusei wa kopī o toranai de kudasai
Students must not take copies

b「ここの生産性は驚くほど高い。【日本も】【見習え】」。
koko no seisan-sei wa odoroku hodo takai. nihon mo minarae
'The productivity in this company is amazingly high. Japan should learn from this.'

c【官僚は】株に手を【出すな】。
kanryō wa kabu ni te o dasu na
Bureaucrats shouldn't dabble in shares!

Pol. imp. or commands attach performatives such as **kudasai** to V-**te**, but informally V-**te** is also used by itself, especially by women (see 24.2).

69.1 Plain imperatives (imperative forms)
69.2 'Softened' plain imperatives (imperative form + **yo** [final particle])
69.3 'Familiar' imperatives (verb-stem + **na/na yo**)
69.4 Classical-form imperatives
69.5 Polite imperatives and commands: **-nasai**, **-te kudasai**, **o/go**-V-stem **kudasai**
69.6 Indirect imperatives or commands

69.1 PLAIN IMPERATIVES (IMPERATIVE FORMS)

Imp. forms are derived from V-non-past as given below (see also 232).

a 手を【挙げろ】。
te o agero
Hands up!

b 一億円【払え】。
ichioku-en harae
Pay one hundred million yen!

c 静かな空を【返せ】。
shizuka na sora o kaese
Give us back a quiet sky!

d
minoshirokin o yōi shiro
Bring a ransom!

Table 14 Imperative verb formation

Verb type	*Replacement pattern*		
Group I	***-u***	→	***-e***
	ik-u	→	**ik-e**
	nom-n	→	**nom-e**
	ka(w)-u	→	**ka(w)-e**
Group II	***-ru***	→	***-ro***
	tabe-ru	→	**tabe-ro**
	mi-ru	→	**mi-ro**
Group III	**kuru**	→	**koi**
	suru	→	**shiro**
	kureru	→	**kure**

69.2 'SOFTENED' PLAIN IMPERATIVES (IMPERATIVE FORM + **yo** [FINAL PARTICLE])

For the softer form of pln. imperatives, the final P **yo** is added (see 242).

a きて【みろよ】。
kite miro yo
Try it on.

b いいから早く買いに【行けよ】。
ii kara hayaku kai ni ike yo
Never mind, just go and buy it.

c 元気【出せよ】。
genki dase yo
Cheer up.

d【がんばれよ】。
ganbare yo
Keep going.

69.3 'FAMILIAR' IMPERATIVES (VERB-STEM + **na/na yo**)

Pln imp. with an intimate or familiar ring are formed by using the combination V-stem + **na (yo)** (see 100, 101, 242).

a なあオヤジ、早く隠居し【なよ】。
nā oyaji hayaku inkyo shi na yo
Come on, dad, retire soon, will you.

b おふくろ、死ぬ【なよ】。
ofukuro shinu na yo
Mum, don't die!

69.4 CLASSICAL-FORM IMPERATIVES

Imp. forms from the classical language are still used in the written language, or formal spoken style. Such forms exist only for Group II V and the irregular V **suru**. For Group II Verbs, the final **-ro** is replaced with **-yo**. For **suru**, the form is **seyo**.

a 県名を全部、【あげよ】。
kenmei o zenbu ageyo
Give the names of all the prefectures.

b マフィアに法律はいらない。その場で【射殺せよ】。
mafia ni hōritsu wa iranai. sono ba de shasatsu seyo
No laws are needed for the Mafia. Shoot [them] on the spot.

c その思い込みをまず【捨てよ】。
sono omoikomi o mazu suteyo
Discard that preconception first of all.

69.5 POLITE IMPERATIVES AND COMMANDS: -**nasai**, -**te kudasai**, **o/go**-V-STEM **kudasai**

Pol. imp. are formed by attaching the pol. ending **-nasai** to V-stem, and commands by adding **kudasai** to V-**te**, or using **o/go**-V-stem **kudasai** (examples c and d). The rules for attaching **o/go-** are set out in 65.1.1 (see also 24, 202.1.2).

a 「泣いてないで、部屋の掃除でもし【なさい】」「マラソンでも【なさい】」。
(泣いてない = 泣いていない)
naitenai de heya no sōji demo shinasai marason demo shinasai
'Don't cry, clean up your room or something.' 'Go for a run or something.'

b A君もぜひ【遊びに来て下さい】。
A-kun mo zehi asobi ni kite kudasai
You [= A-kun] too please do come and visit.

c どうぞ、【ご安心下さい】。
dōzo go-anshin kudasai
【Please】 don't worry (*lit.* "feel at ease").

d どうぞ、安らかに【お眠りください】。
dōzo yasuraka ni o-nemuri kudasai
【Please】 rest in peace.

69.6 INDIRECT IMPERATIVES OR COMMANDS

Indirect (or quoted) commands are usually given in their communicative content only, by 'reducing' any pol. forms to pln. ones. That means that a command in the form **-te kudasai** 'please' is reduced to a pln. imp. (see 203.3.2).

a 以前のように【早く嫁にいけ】といった周囲からのプレッシャーも弱くなり、女性も納得できる生き方をしたいと考えるようになった証拠。
izen no yō ni hayaku yome ni ike to itta shūi kara no puresshā mo yowaku nari josei mo nattoku dekiru ikikata o shitai to kangaeru yō ni natta shōko
This is proof that the pressure from the family to get married quickly has weakened, and women too now want a way of life they find acceptable.

70 INVERSION

Inverted S are S where the order of constituents is reversed, usually to place emphasis on the part that is brought to the beginning of the S. It is not really possible to imitate the effect of this in English translation, where the word order is different.

a 【何だ】その言い方は。
nan da sono iikata wa
What sort of language is this! (= Mind your language!)

b 「覚えておけ」とぐらい言ってやれ、【松井クン】。
oboete oke to gurai itte yare matsui-kun
Matsui-kun, at least tell them, 'Remember this'.

c 「(プレゼントを) やらなくちゃいかんな、【そりゃ】」とニヤリ。
(purezento o) yaranakucha ikan na sorya to niyari
'I'll have to give her (a [b'day] present), won't I', he smirked.
(sorya = sore wa)

d 喫煙者率——日本になじんだ？【外国たばこ】
kitsuensha-ritsu nihon ni najinda gaikoku tabako
Percentage of smokers [of foreign brands is rising]: foreign cigarettes – have people got used to them?

e 世界へ広げよう、五輪の感動。
sekai e hirogeyō gorin no kandō
The exitement of the Olympics – let's spread it to the world.

71 **ka** [CONJOINING PARTICLE]

ka conjoins N/AN in the sense of 'or' (see 29.2).

ka can optionally be repeated after the second item. The resulting (conjoined) NP (shown in [ ]) can attach case P like any other NP.

a プレゼントは[花束【か】陶磁器]を用意している。
purezento wa hanataba ka tōjiki o yōi shite iru
For presents, they use flowers or pottery.

b 気温は[平年並み【か】平年より高い]所が多い。
kion wa heinen-nami ka heinen yori takai tokoro ga ōi
There are many places where temperatures are average for the time of year or above.

c 前菜と[パスタ【か】ピザ]、手作りデザートで二千七百円のコース。
zensai to pasuta ka piza tezukuri dezāto de nisen nanahyaku-en no kōsu
A ¥2,700-course consisting of an entree and pasta or pizza, and a homemade dessert.

Note – examples such as d appear to consist of N **ka**, but this is in fact the question P **ka** (replacing cop.), indicating an indirect question 'whether . . . or' (see 164.11, 166.1.2.5).

d 今の時点で一概に[有利【か】不利【か】]を判断するのは難しい。
ima no jiten de ichigai ni yūri ka furi ka o handan suru no wa muzukashii
At this point in time it is difficult to make an unconditional judgement as to advantage or disadvantage.

72 **ka** [QUESTION PARTICLE]

The question P **ka** is used in a variety of ways. By attaching it to a statement, it can indicate a direct question (unlike in English, no change in word order is required) or, by embedding the question in another sentence, an indirect question see 164.3, 164.5, 164.6, 166.1.2.5.

When **ka** is attached to question words, it gives the question word an indefinite meaning (see 167.1).

ka is also used in sentences that look like questions but function differently, such as rhetorical questions, etc. (see 165).

73 **kamoshirenai** [SENTENCE ENDING]

Made up of the question P **ka**, the focus P **mo** and the neg. pot. form of the V **shiru**, this literally means 'one cannot know if', but is used as a S ending indicating the idea of 'probably', 'possibly', or 'might' (see also 118).

kamoshirenai is attached to V/adj.-fin. After AN/N + cop., the forms are AN/N + cop. except that **kamoshirenai** deletes a preceding **da**. **kamoshirenai** can also be attached to the S ending **n(o) da**, where again it deletes a preceding **da** (example a).

a お寺や教会のようなものだったの【かもしれない】。
otera ya kyōkai no yō na mono datta no kamoshirenai
It may have been something like a temple or a church.

b「話はわかった。ではいったい、どうすればいいんだ？」と思う人が少なくない【かもしれない】。
hanashi wa wakatta. de wa ittai dō sureba ii n da? to omou hito ga sukunakunai kamoshirenai
There may be quite a few who think ‘I understand the idea. What is it then that I need to do?’

c マラソンの場合、「二位キープ」という作戦は素人の想像以上に難しいようだ。企業についても、これと似たことが言える【かもしれない】。
marason no baai nii kīpu to iu sakusen wa shirōto no sōzō ijō ni muzukashii yō da. kigyō ni tsuite mo kore to nita koto ga ieru kamoshirenai
In a marathon, the strategy to keep in second place seems harder than the layman would think. One could probably say similar things about business.

74 kara [CASE PARTICLE]

kara marks the point of origin or departure of the action of a V ‘from’. It is mostly attached to N of time or place, or other N that can be used with the idea of ‘from . . . to’. **kara** is often used in combination with **made** ‘to’ or **e** ‘towards’ (see 85, 51). Note that unlike other case P, **kara** can be followed by **ga/o**.

74.1 Noun/demonstrative pronoun **kara**
74.1.1 Noun **kara no** noun
74.2 Noun **kara naru**
74.3 Noun **kara tsukuru/dekiru**
74.4 Noun **kara** + verb of motion **(deru/oriru)**
74.5 Indicating reason (**koto kara**, **riyū kara**, etc.)
74.6 Noun/pronoun **kara** (noun/pronoun = person)
74.7 Indicating the agent in a passive sentence
74.8 Idiomatic uses

74.1 NOUN/DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN kara

After time and place N or dem. pron., **kara** translates as ‘from’, but after other N also variously as ‘out of’, ‘compared to’, ‘against’.

a 小学校五年【から】サッカーを始めた。
shōgakkō gonen kara sakkā o hajimeta
He started soccer in year 5 of primary school.

b 三十日【から】試験運用を始める。
sanjūnichi kara shiken un'yō o hajimeru
From the 30th they will start a trial run.

c アラスカ【から】ホーン岬【まで】。
arasuka kara hōn misaki made
From Alaska to Cape Horn.

d これ【から】が一年中で一番水を多く使う時期だ。
kore kara ga ichinenjū de ichiban mizu o ōku tsukau jiki da
From now on is the time when [people] use the largest amount of water in the whole year.

e 期間は九五年一月四日【から】二月六日【まで】。
kikan wa kyūjūgonen ichigatsu yokka kara nigatsu muika made
The period is from 4 January to 26 February '95.

f クルマの街【から】生活者の街【へ】。
kuruma no machi kara seikatsusha no machi e
From a town for cars towards a town for those living there.

g 「技術を人【から】人【へ】と伝えることは重要」と説明する。
gijutsu o hito kara hito e to tsutaeru koto wa jūyō to setsumei suru
'It is important to pass on know-how from person to person', he explains.

h 何枚【から】でも購入できる。
nanmai kara demo kōnyū dekiru
One can buy them [= shares] in any quantity [= there is no minimum].

i ただ全体【から】すれば女子はまだ少数派。
tada zentai kara sureba joshi wa mada shōsūha
[Government ministries are now hiring females] However, seen against the total [of public servants], women are still in the minority.

74.1.1 Noun **kara no** noun

In N-mod. use, the meaning is the same as in 74.1.

a うち、九割近くは米国【から】の輸入品だ。
uchi kyūwari chikaku wa beikoku kara no yunyūhin da
Nearly 90 per cent [of products] are imports from the US.

b 中東【から】の学生は減少した。
chūtō kara no gakusei wa genshō shita
Students from the Middle East have decreased in number.

74.2 NOUN **kara naru**

When N = component, the meaning of **kara naru** is 'consist of'.

a 条例は十二条【からなる】。
jōrei wa jūnijō kara naru
The by-law consists of 12 articles.

b 解説編と実践編【からなっ】ている。
kaisetsuhen to jissenhen kara natte iru
It [= the manual] consists of a commentary and a practical part.

c 家庭という言葉は家と庭【からなっ】ている。
katei to iu kotoba wa ie to niwa kara natte iru
The word *katei* (home) consists of *ka/ie* (house) amd *tei/niwa* (garden).

d 市内料金は通話料と基本料【からなっ】ている。
shinai ryōkin wa tsūwaryō to kihonryō kara natte iru
The local charge consists of a call charge and a basic fee.

74.3 NOUN **kara tsukuru/dekiru**

Where N = material, the meaning is 'make from', 'made of'.

a アルマニャックはブドウ酒【から作っ】た蒸留酒。
arumanyakku wa budōshu kara tsukutta jōryūshu
Armagnac is a distilled alcoholic drink made from wine.

b 日米関係は三つの柱【からでき】ています。
nichibei kankei wa mittsu no hashira kara dekite imasu
Japan US relations consist of three mainstays.

Note there are cases that look like **kara dekiru** at first sight (example c), but turn out to be a different use, belonging to 74.1, as **kara dekiru** is attached to a time N.

c 行事や呼び出しの原形もこのころ【からでき】たという。
gyōji ya yobidashi no genkei mo kono koro kara dekita to iu
The archetype of the *gyōji* and *yobidashi* [in Sumo] too came into being from that time, they say.

74.4 NOUN **kara** + VERB OF MOTION (**deru/oriru**)

With V of motion like **deru** 'leave', 'come out' and **oriru** 'alight', 'come down', **kara** indicates the place one gets down from or leaves. The same V can also take the **P o**. With some N, such as **doa**, **naka** and **toire**, only **kara** is possible. With others, e.g. **ie** 'house', the nuance is different in that **ie o deru** means 'leave home', whereas **ie kara deru** 'come/go outside' (see 148.5, 149).

a 村【から】出て立派になるんだ。
mura kara dete rippa ni naru n da
You should get out of the village and make a career.

b 心配そうに家【から】出てきた人もいる。
shinpaisō ni ie kara dete kita hito mo iru
There were people who came out of their houses, looking worried.

c カプセル【から】降りたときはふらふらだ。
kapuseru kara orita toki wa furafura da
[Astronaut's training] When you step out of the capsule, you stagger.

d 二人の老人が中【から】出てきて話しかけてきた。
futari no rōjin ga naka kara dete kite hanashikakete kita
Two old men came out and started talking to me.

74.5 INDICATING REASON (**koto kara**, **riyū kara**, ETC.)

This is used with a limited number of N, such as **koto** and **riyū**, both meaning 'reason' in this context.

a 刺し身がハマチより日持ちすること【から】、高値で取引されてきた。
sashimi ga hamachi yori himochi suru koto kara takane de torihiki sarete kita
Because it [= *kanpachi* fish] keeps fresh longer than *hamachi*, it has been traded at high prices.

b 健康上の理由【から】横山良一社長は取締役に退く。
kenkōjō no riyū kara yokoyama ryōichi shachō wa torishimariyaku ni shirizoku
For reasons of health, president Yokoyama Ryōichi moves down to director.

c 東京の二店が好調なこと【から】、全国展開を計画中だ。
tōkyō no niten ga kōchō na koto kara zenkoku tenkai o keikakuchū da
Because the two stores in Tokyo are doing well, they are planning to expand nationwide.

d 経済制裁には、いくつかの理由【から】慎重論もある。
keizai seisai ni wa ikutsu ka no riyū kara shinchōron mo aru
For several reasons, some are cautious about economic sanctions.

74.6 NOUN/PRONOUN **kara** (NOUN/PRONOUN = PERSON)

When **kara** is attached to a personal N or pron., it indicates the person who initiates an action, ventures an opinion, etc.

a 私【から】口を出すつもりはない。
watashi kara kuchi o dasu tsumori wa nai
I have no intention of interfering from my end.

b 私【から】言わせれば国連には三つの市民がいます。
watashi kara iwasereba kokuren ni wa mittsu no shimin ga imasu
According to my opinion (*lit.* “If you let me say it from my end”), there are three [types of] citizens in the UN.

74.7 INDICATING THE AGENT IN A PASSIVE SENTENCE

In a pass. sentence, **kara** indicates the agent ‘by’, which is more commonly indicated by **ni** (see 156, 116.9).

a「ある青年は現地の人々【から】神様のように慕われていた」と驚く。
aru seinen wa genchi no hitobito kara kamisama no yō ni shitawarete ita to odoroku
‘Some boys were idolized by the locals like gods’, he said in amazement.

b 君【から】僕の転勤先のことを聞かれて、困ってしまいました。
kimi kara boku no tenkinsaki no koto o kikarete komatte shimaimashita
I was perplexed when asked by you about the place of my new posting.

74.8 IDIOMATIC USES

This includes expressions like **kokoro kara** and **ima/kore kara**.

a 皆さんのご出席を【心から】歓迎します。
minasan no go-shusseki o kokoro kara kangei shimasu
I welcome the attendance of all of you from [the bottom of] my heart.

b【これから】行く。
kore kara iku
I’m coming (*lit.* “going”) right now.

c【これから】演奏する曲は…
kore kara ensō suru kyoku wa
The piece we’re going to play now . . .

d「自分も【今から】死ぬつもりだ」と110番通報があった。
jibun mo ima kara shinu tsumori da to hyakutōban tsūhō ga atta
There was a call to an emergency number saying ‘I intend to kill myself (*lit.* “die”) now too’.

75 kara [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

In S1 **kara** S2, **kara** basically indicates the reason for the action or state of S2. In use 75.1, **node** can also be used in some cases (see 139).

The forms preceding **kara** are usually pln final forms, although **desu/-masu** forms are common in speech.

75.1 Clause 1 **kara**, clause 2
75.2 Idiomatic use
75.3 Clause 1 **no wa**, clause 2 **kara** copula
75.4 Sentence **kara**
75.5 Clause 1 **no/n da kara**, clause 2
75.6 Clause 1 **kara koso** clause 2
75.7 Clause 1 **kara ni wa** clause 2
75.8 Clause 1 **kara to itte** clause 2-negative

75.1 CLAUSE 1 **kara**, CLAUSE 2

S1 **kara** gives the reason or cause for S2 'as', 'since', 'so'. In some uses (a, c and d), **kara** can be replaced by **node**. However, this is not possible in examples b and e (where the reason is emphasized), and examples g and h, where S2 is a subjective statement, an invitation, emphatic statement, etc. (see 139).

Note – in example b the neg. pred. is a negation, not of **urete iru** but of the whole clause, **kakaku ga yasui kara urete iru**.

a 安かった【から】ずいぶん売れた。
yasukatta kara zuibun ureta
Because they were cheap, they sold pretty well.

b 価格が安い【から】売れているのではない。
kakaku ga yasui kara urete iru no de wa nai
The reason it's selling is not because the price is low.

c 添加物もない【から】新鮮でおいしい。
tenkabutsu mo nai kara shinsen de oishii
There are no additives, so it's fresh and tasty.

d 仕事は楽しい【から】、ストレスはまったくない。
shigoto wa tanoshii kara sutoresu wa mattaku nai
I enjoy the work, so I'm not stressed at all.

e 好きだ【から】憎かった。
suki da kara nikukatta
I hated her [precisely] because I like her.

f 学校だと、みんなと一緒だ【から】勉強がはかどる。
gakkō da to minna to issho da kara benkyō ga hakadoru
In school, one makes progress with one's studies because one does things with the others.

g VTRが壊れたそうですね。安くします【から】買いませんか。
buitīāru ga kowareta sō desu ne. yasuku shimasu kara kaimasen ka
I hear that your video's broken down. I'll make it cheap, so how about buying one?

h 本当のことだ【から】怒りませんよ。
hontō no koto da kara okorimasen yo
It's the truth, so I'm not getting upset.

75.2 IDIOMATIC USE

In this use only a weak reason is implied.

a いい【から】早く買いに行けよ。
ii kara hayaku kai ni ike yo
Just get on with it and go buy it.

b 1937年12月生まれだ【から】もう63歳。
sen kyūhyaku sanjūnana-nen jūnigatsu umare da kara mō rokujūsan-sai
He was born in December 1937, which makes him already 63.

75.3 CLAUSE 1 **no wa**, CLAUSE 2 **kara** COPULA

Ending a cleft S **kara** indicates 'the reason why' (see 190.1.3).

a 小説を書くきっかけとなったのは、外国語で小説を読んだ【から】です。
shōsetsu o kaku kikkake to natta no wa gaikokugo de shosetsu o yonda kara desu
The reason why I started writing novels is because I read novels in foreign languages.

b 研究者たちが注目するのは、単に珍しい【から】ではない。原始の地球で起きた巨大マンガン鉱床の誕生が、ここで再現されている可能性が高い【から】だ。
kenkyūsha-tachi ga chūmoku suru no wa tan ni mezurashii kara de wa nai. genshi no chikyū de okita kyodai mangan kōshō no tanjō ga koko de saigen sarete iru kanōsei ga takai kara da
The reason why researchers pay attention [to the mineral deposit] is not just because it's unusual. It is because there is a strong possibility that the birth of gigantic manganese deposits that happened in prehistoric times has been replicated here.

75.4 SENTENCE **kara**

Without S2, the implication can be that it is understood from the context or situation, or it can appeal to the listener in the sense of 'you see'.

a 人は人、自分は自分だ【から】。
hito wa hito jibun wa jibun da kara
Others can do as they like, I go my own way (*lit.* "People are people, I am I, you see").

b 人間はしょせん、不幸の中でしか真実を学ぶことはできないのだ【から】。
ningen wa shosen fukō no naka de shika shinjitsu o manabu koto wa dekinai no da kara
Ultimately, people can only learn the truth from a position of being unhappy, you see.

c 何しろ突然でした【から】。
nanishiro totsuzen deshita kara
[His death] was so unexpected, you see.

d ちょっと待ってください。お茶を入れてきます【から】。
chotto matte kudasai. o-cha o irete kimasu kara
Please wait a little. I'll make some tea.

75.5 CLAUSE 1 **no/n da kara**, CLAUSE 2

This is a more emphatic variant of **kara** (see also 139).

a 一人で暮らす【のだから】、そんなに広い部屋はいらない。
hitori de kurasu no da kara sonna ni hiroi heya wa iranai
As he will be living alone, he doesn't need such a large room.

b 日本人な【んだから】、いつでも帰れる。
nihonjin nan da kara itsu demo kaereru
I'm Japanese, so I can always go back home.

75.6 CLAUSE 1 **kara koso** CLAUSE 2

Here, the reason is emphasized in the sense of 'precisely because', 'for the very reason that' (see 82).

a この本は私がこの村の住人じゃなかった【からこそ】書けた。
kono hon wa watashi ga kono mura no jūnin ja nakatta kara koso kaketa
I was able to write this book precisely because I wasn't living in this village.

b 物価が安い【からこそ】ぜいたくに暮らせる。
bukka ga yasui kara koso zeitaku ni kuraseru
It's for the very reason that things are cheap that you can live in luxury.

75.7 CLAUSE 1 **kara ni wa** CLAUSE 2

This indicates a reason in the sense that S2 is expected as a consequence of the action of S1 'so', 'since'.

a やると言った【からには】やる。
yaru to itta kara ni wa yaru
I said I'll do it, so I will.

b 反対する【からには】理由があるのだろう。
hantai suru kara ni wa riyū ga aru no darō
Since you oppose it, you must have a reason.

75.8 CLAUSE 1 **kara to itte** CLAUSE 2-NEGATIVE

Followed by a neg. S2, this indicates that something is not going to happen just because of the state or result of S2 'not . . . just because', 'doesn't necessarily mean that', 'may be . . . but that doesn't mean that' (see also 218).

The idea of 'not necessarily' can be reinforced by **to wa kagiranai** 'not necessarily'.

a 子供ができた【からといって】、変わるものではない。
kodomo ga dekita kara to itte kawaru mono de wa nai
This [sharing of responsibilities] is not going to change just because I got pregnant.

b 努力した【からといって】全員が試合に出場できるとは限らない。
doryoku shita kara to itte zen'in ga shiai ni shutsujō dekiru to wa kagiranai
Having tried hard doesn't necessarily guarantee that everyone can play in the match.

c 人口が増えない【からといって】新たな施設がいらないわけではない。
jinkō ga fuenai kara to itte arata na shisetsu ga iranai wake de wa nai
Just because the population is not growing doesn't mean that we don't need any new facilities.

76 **-kare** [ADJECTIVAL ENDING]

-kare is an adj. form which is used in set phrases with pairs of opposites, like **ōi/sukunai** or **hayai/osoi**.

a 逆に広東の問題は、【多かれ少なかれ】大連や上海にも共通する。
gyaku ni kanton no mondai wa ōkare sukunakare dairen ya shanhai ni mo kyōtsū suru
Conversely, the problems of Canton apply [more or less] to Dalian and Shanghai too.

b 【遅かれ早かれ】人員の見直しが始まるのではないか。
osokare hayakare jin'in no minaoshi ga hajimaru no de wa nai ka
【Sooner or later】, a reconsideration of personnel will surely begin.

77 -karō [ADJECTIVAL ENDING]

This is an old-fashioned equivalent of the pres. ending adj.**-i darō** (see 163.2).

78 -kata [NOMINALIZING SUFFIX]

Attached to V-stem, the suf. **-kata** converts the V it is attached to into a N with the meaning of 'way of doing' (see 34).

a これが一番おいしい【食べ方】です。
kore ga ichiban oishii tabekata desu
This is the best way of eating [it].

b これがこの国での【やり方】だ。
kore ga kono kuni de no yarikata da
This is the way things are done in this country.

c 百貨店には百貨店の【売り方】がありますから。
hyakkaten ni wa hyakkaten no uri-kata ga arimasu kara
Department stores have their own way of selling things, you know.

d 英語による俳句の【作り方】について講演会などを催す。
eigo ni yoru haiku no tsukuri-kata ni tsuite kōenkai nado o moyoosu
They give classes in how to compose haiku in English.

e 養蚕農家の【減り方】はすさまじいほどだ。
yōsan nōka no herikata wa susamajii hodo da
The rate at which silk farmers are disappearing is appalling.

79 keredomo (kedo/kedomo/keredo) [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

keredomo is a conjunctive P that joins two clauses in a sense of contrast 'but', 'however'. **kedo**, **keredo** and **kedomo** are colloquial variants.

79.1 Clause 1 **ke(re)do(mo)** clause 2
79.1.1 Clause 1 **ke(re)do(mo)**, clause 2: with comma
79.1.2 Clause 1 **ke(re)do(mo)** clause 2: without comma
79.2 Introducing a comment or request
79.3 Clause 1 **ke(re)do(mo)** (. . .) in unfinished sentences

79.1 CLAUSE 1 **ke(re)do(mo)** CLAUSE 2

This indicates ‘but’, ‘however’, ‘although’ (see 56, 140).

79.1.1 Clause 1 **ke(re)do(mo)**, clause 2: with comma

When there is a comma between S1 and S2, S1 can usually be understood to indicate a qualification for S2.

a 仕事は厳しい【けれど】、やりがいがある。
shigoto wa kibishii keredo yarigai ga aru
The work is hard, but it’s rewarding.

b 父さんを嫌いではない【けれど】、離婚するしかないよ。
tōsan o kirai de wa nai keredo rikon suru shika nai yo
She doesn’t dislike daddy, but divorce is the only choice.

c 長い旅で疲れた【けど】、行って良かった。
nagai tabi de tsukareta kedo itte yokatta
I’m tired from the long trip, but I’m glad I went.

d 怖い【けれども】、それが魅力でもある。
kowai keredomo sore ga miryoku de mo aru
It’s [a] frightening [town], but that’s also its attraction.

79.1.2 Clause 1 **ke(re)do(mo)** clause 2: without comma

Without a comma, the implication is usually one of contrast.

a 愛している【けど】結婚はしたくない。
aishite iru kedo kekkon wa shitakunai
I love you, but I don’t want to marry you.

b デパートは高い【けれど】便利。
depāto wa takai keredo benri
Department stores are expensive but convenient.

c 日本で言うプロというのは鋭い【けれど】狭いんですね。
nihon de iu puro to iu no wa surudoi keredo semai n desu ne
Those called professional [reseachers] in Japan are sharp but narrow [in specialization].

79.2 INTRODUCING A COMMENT OR REQUEST

In English, this often indicates a preamble for S2. It often translates as two sentences.

a 顔色悪い【けど】、大丈夫かね。
kaoiro warui kedo daijōbu ka ne
You look pale – are you OK?

b 「みんなは来春卒業する【けれど】、自分も早く学校に通って立派な技術を身に着けたい」と胸を膨らませていた。
minna wa raishun sotsugyō suru keredo jibun mo hayaku gakkō ni kayotte rippa na gijutsu o minitsuketai to mune o fukuramasete ita
'Everyone's going to graduate next spring; I, too, want to go to school and learn proper skills', he said expectantly.

c 悪い【けど】、蛍池には行きたいとは思わない。
warui kedo hotaruike ni wa ikitai to wa omowanai
I'm sorry, I don't feel like going to Hotaruike.

79.3 CLAUSE 1 ke(re)do(mo) (. . .) IN UNFINISHED SENTENCES

In unfinished S, **ke(re)do(mo)** conveys a nuance of interacting with the listener. Depending on the context, this ranges from 'you see', 'mind you', etc. to an implied S2. After **-ba ii**, it indicates a hypothetical condition 'would be good if'. Here, **ga** can also be used, but **noni** cannot be used in the same meaning (see 13.3.1, 56.4, 140).

a ダメだ、ダメだと、いつも思ってます【けれど】ね。
dame da dame da to itsumo omotte imasu keredo ne
I always think I'm no good, you see.

b 今年で四年目なんです【けれど】。主人は赴任先に女ができてしまったから帰ってくる様子は全くありません。来年になると自動的に離婚されてしまうんでしょうか。
kotoshi de yonenme nan desu keredo. shujin wa funinsaki de onna ga dekite shimatta kara kaette kuru yōsu wa mattaku arimasen. rainen ni naru to jidōteki ni rikon sarete shimau n deshō ka
[Introduction of five-year separation clause.] It's the fourth year this year, you see. My husband has found a woman at his posting and shows no signs of returning home. Will I automatically get divorced next year?

c 同じようにしてくれとは言わない【けれども】……。
onaji yō ni shite kure to wa iwanai keredomo
It's not that we're asking to be treated in the same way [as other war victims], but . . . [something should be done].

d 一緒に過ごすボーイフレンドがいればいいんです【けど】.
issho ni sugosu bōifurendo ga ireba ii n desu kedo
It'd be nice to have a boyfriend to spend [Christmas] with.

e スキンヘッドにしたのは、「とにかく目立ちたかった」から。「冬は寒くて大変です【けど】」と笑う。
sukinheddo ni shita no wa tonikaku medachi-takatta kara. fuyu wa samukute taihen desu kedo to warau
The reason why he became a skinhead was because he 'just wanted to attract attention'. 'Mind you, in winter you feel terribly cold', he laughed.

f 「お母さん。友達の誕生パーティーに呼ばれているんだけど、行っていいかな」「いい【けど】。いつ」
okāsan. tomodachi no tanjō pātī ni yobarete iru n da kedo itte ii ka na. ii kedo. itsu
'Mum, I'm invited to a friend's birthday party – is it OK to go?' 'Sure. When [is it]?'

80 -ki [CLASSICAL ADJECTIVE ENDING]

This is the classical equivalent of adj.-i before a N. It is still used for a stylish effect, mostly in headlines or in the titles of movies or books. In titles of books and movies, **utsukushii** N and **subarashii** N almost invariably become **utsukushiki** N and **subarashiki** N.

a 種子島——宇宙と生きる美し【き】島 (= headline)
tanegashima – uchū to ikiru utsukushiki shima
Tanegashima – a beautiful island that lives together with outer space

b 素晴し【き】日
subarashiki hi
One Fine Day (= title of 1996 Hollywood film)

c 四十五歳で社長に抜てきされた「若【き】エース」も、今年で在任十四年。
yonjūgo-sai de shachō ni batteki sareta wakaki ēsu mo kotoshi de zainin jūyonen
The 'young ace' who was chosen as company president at the age of 45 has this year been in his post for 14 years.

d 独身時代が長く、最近良【き】パートナーを得た。
dokushin jidai ga nagaku saikin yoki pātonā o eta
Having been single for many years, she has recently found a congenial partner.

Certain combinations are best seen as idioms:

e 古【き】良【き】時代のシャンソンを聞きたければ、日本にいけ、と言われるほどだ。
furuki yoki jidai no shanson o kikitakereba nihon ni ike to iwareru hodo da
People even say that if you want to hear chansons of the good old days, go to Japan.

81 koro [TIME NOUN]

Like **toki**, **koro** is used as a N of time, and as such can be modified by V/adj./AN and N + **no**, and attach case, focus and other P.

Compared to **toki**, **koro** indicates an approximate time, but often also translates as 'when', like **toki**. Note the common combinations **osanai koro** 'when very young', **chiisai koro** 'when small', **wakai koro** 'when young (late teens to early twenties)', **kodomo no koro** 'when young' (see the following examples).

81.1 Adjective/verb **koro**
81.2 Noun/demonstrative **no koro**

81.1 ADJECTIVE/VERB koro

a 「わしら若い【ころ】はもどしながら勉強したもんじゃ」と年寄り。
washira wakai koro wa modoshinagara benkyō shita mon ja to toshiyori
'When we were young, we used to learn [drinking] while throwing up', said an old man.

b アメリカは幼い【ころ】から、テレビの中にあり、行かなくても分かる。
amerika wa osanai koro kara terebi no naka ni ari ikanakute mo wakaru
America was on TV from the time we were small, and can be understood without going [there].

c 大学に入った【ころ】、まだ海外渡航が自由化されていなかった。
daigaku ni haitta koro mada kaigai tokō ga jiyū ka sarete inakatta
When I entered university, we weren't free to go abroad yet.

81.2 NOUN/DEMONSTRATIVE no koro

a 私の子どもの【ころ】を、教えておきたいのです。
watashi no kodomo no koro o oshiete okitai no desu
I want to tell about the time when I was a child.

b 三十八億年前のことだ。この【ころ】の海水の量や化学組成は現在とあまり違いはなかった。
sanjūhachioku-nen mae no koto da. kono koro no kaisui no ryō ya kagaku sosei wa genzai to amari chigai wa nakatta
3800 million years ago. At this time, it wasn't much different to now with regard to things like the amount of sea water and [the world's] chemical make-up.

82 koso [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

koso attaches to a variety of items: N (+ P), nominalized clauses, **koto** and **no** [nominalizers], and forms conjunctive P such as **-ba/nara/kara/-te** (see 13, 31, 32, 75, 108), and such conjunctions as **da kara** and **sore de**.

koso adds emphasis to the NP, conjunction or conjunctive clause it is attached to (but note that it is not used for everyday situations). English translations for **koso** vary, from 'indeed' (82.1.1 a, c), 'exactly' (82.1.1 b), a cleft sentence 'is . . . that' (82.1.1 e, f), to nothing (82.1.1 d).

82.1 Noun **koso**: emphasizing noun (or noun phrase)
82.1.1 Noun **koso** (+ particle)
82.1.2 Noun + particle **koso**
82.1.3 Time noun + **koso** (+ particle): emphasizing the time noun or clause
82.1.4 Nominalized clause **koso**: emphasizing the nominalized clause
82.2 Conjunctional clause **koso**: emphasizing a condition
82.2.1 Conjunctional clause **-ba/nara koso**
82.2.2 Conjunctional clause **-te koso**
82.2.3 Conjunctional clause **-kara koso**
82.3 Conjunction + **koso**: emphasizing the conjunction
82.4 Noun/verbal noun **koso sure**, noun **koso are**, noun/verbal noun **koso**, verb/adjective **ga/mono no**: emphasizing a contrast
82.4.1 Noun/verbal noun **koso sure**
82.4.2 Noun **koso are**
82.4.3 Noun/verbal noun **koso** verb/adjective **ga/mono no**

82.1 NOUN **koso**: EMPHASIZING NOUN (OR NOUN PHRASE)

82.1.1 Noun **koso** (+ particle)

koso usually replaces case P like **ga/o**, and focus P like **wa**, but occasionally these are retained after **koso**.

a 妻【こそ】最良のパートナー。
tsuma koso sairyō no pātonā
My wife is indeed [my] best partner.

b 女性の能力発揮【こそ】、これからの企業の盛衰を決める。
josei no nōryoku hakki koso kore kara no kigyō no seisui o kimeru
How women exercise their abilities is exactly what will determine the rise and fall of future businesses.

c 菊【こそ】日本の食用花である。
kiku koso nihon no shokuyō-bana de aru
The chrysanthemum is truly the edible flower of Japan.

d 自然とスポーツ【こそ】成長のビタミン剤。
shizen to supōtsu koso seichō no bitaminzai
Nature and sports are the vitamins for growth.

e 相互の信頼【こそが】我々を平和に導く。
sōgo no shinrai koso ga wareware o heiwa ni michibiku
Mutual trust is the thing that will lead us to peace.

f「秋【こそは】勝負です」と力が入る。
aki koso wa shōbu desu to chikara ga hairu
'It is autumn that will tell the tale', she stresses.

82.1.2 Noun + particle **koso**

Case P other than **ga/o** are retained before **koso**.

a この作品【にこそ】真のリアリティーがある。
kono sakuhin ni koso shin no riaritī ga aru
In this work [of art] lies true reality.

b「精かんな顔【にこそ】ひげは似合う」。
seikan na kao ni koso hige wa niau
'A fearless face is just the kind that a beard suits.'

c 情報通信は首都圏などと距離的なハンディのある過疎地【でこそ】、その機能が生かせる。
jōhō tsūshin wa shutoken nado to kyori-teki na handi no aru kasochi de koso sono kinō ga ikaseru
Information communications can be put to best use precisely in remote areas, which have the ["distance"] disadvantage of being away from the capital area.

d「安くてもけっこうぜいたくに暮らす」知恵。あるいは「安い【からこそ】ぜいたくに暮らせる」という合理的精神。それさえあれば、日本人はこんどこそ本物の豊かさに近づけるはずである。
yasukute mo kekkō zeitaku ni kurasu chie. arui wa yasui kara koso zeitaku ni kuraseru to iu gōriteki seishin. sore sae areba nihonjin wa kondo koso honmono no yutakasa ni chikazukeru hazu de aru
Knowing how to live in relative luxury even though one doesn't spend much money, the rational spirit of [knowing that] one can live in luxury precisely because one doesn't spend much money – as long as the Japanese have that [ability], they ought eventually to come close to [living in] real comfort this time round.

82.1.3 Time noun + **koso** (+ particle): emphasizing the time noun or clause

Attached to N of time, **koso** emphasizes the time N, or the whole time clause.

a 今【こそ】、チャンス到来である。
ima koso chansu tōrai de aru
Now is the time for opportunity to present itself.

b 来年【こそは】。
rainen koso wa
Next year [or never]!

c 不況の時【こそ】革新的な創造が必要だ。
fukyō no toki koso kakushin-teki na sōzō ga hitsuyō da
A recession is the very time that innovative creation is needed.

d 今度【こそは】必ず完成させます。
kondo koso wa kanarazu kansei sasemasu
This time I will finish it, without fail.

e 昨年は不況にやられっぱなしだった。今年【こそは】よい年になって欲しいですね。
sakunen wa fukyō ni yarareppanashi datta. kotoshi koso wa yoi toshi ni natte hoshii desu ne
All of last year, I was hit by the recession. This year I want to be a good year, right?

82.1.4 Nominalized clause **koso**: emphasizing the nominalized clause

a 地味でも長く続けること【こそ】大切だ。
jimi demo nagaku tsuzukeru koto koso taisetsu da
Even if [one's way of doing things is] quiet and unpretentious, it's keeping at it for a long time that's important.

b 何もしないこと【こそ】責められるべきだ。
nani mo shinai koto koso semerareru-beki da
It's taking no action at all that must be criticized.

82.2 CONJUNCTIONAL CLAUSE **koso**: EMPHASIZING A CONDITION

82.2.1 Conjunctional clause **-ba/nara koso**

a 周りの理解があったれ【ばこそ】ですけどね。（あったれば＝あれば）
mawari no rikai ga attareba koso desu kedo ne
It was only because I had the understanding of the people around me.

b 確かにファンの支援があれ【ばこそ】だろう。
tashika ni fan no shien ga areba koso darō
No doubt this [= charity activities] is [possible] because of the support of the [horse-racing] enthusiasts.

c 虚心なれ【ばこそ】、目は曇らない。
kyoshin nareba koso me wa kumoranai
It's precisely because he's open-minded that can see [things] clearly.

82.2.2 Conjunctional clause -**te koso**

After a clause ending in V-**te**, **koso** emphasizes the state or condition indicated by S-**te**, in the sense of 'only if', 'only when'.

a 釣りは、やはり釣れ【てこそ】楽しめるもの。
tsuri wa yahari tsurete koso tanoshimeru mono
Fishing is, after all, something that can only be enjoyed if you actually catch something.

b タンゴは二人の息が合っ【てこそ】成り立つものだから。
tango wa futari no iki ga atte koso naritatsu mono da kara
It's because the tango only works when both people are perfectly co-ordinated.

c 「同じ時間を過ごし【てこそ】夫婦」が持論で夫人同伴の赴任。
onaji jikan o sugoshite koso fūfu ga jiron de fujin dōhan no funin
Their philosophy being 'Married couples only qualify as such if they spend time together', when the husband is transferred to a new post, the wife goes along.

d 花火は夜空をバックに花開い【てこそ】美しい。
hanabi wa yozora o bakku ni hana-hiraite koso utsukushii
Fireworks are beautiful only if they blossom against the background of the night sky.

82.2.3 Conjunctional clause -**kara koso**

Here, **koso** is used to emphasize a reason 'precisely because'.

a 古い【からこそ】新しい。
furui kara koso atarashii
They [= antiques] are novel precisely because they're old.

b 酷寒がある【からこそ】春の到来が待たれるのだ。
kokkan ga aru kara koso haru no tōrai ga matareru no da
It's because there is a time of bitter cold that we look forward to the arrival of spring.

c 自分で見つけたテーマだ【からこそ】、研究者は熱中する
jibun de mitsuketa tēma da kara koso kenkyūsha wa netchū suru
It is because they themselves came up with their subjects of research that scholars get absorbed [in their work]

d むしろ女だ【からこそ】新しい体験ができる時代だ。
mushiro onna da kara koso atarashii taiken ga dekiru jidai da
If anything, this is an era in which you can undergo new experiences for the very reason that you are a woman.

82.3 CONJUNCTION + **koso**: EMPHASIZING THE CONJUNCTION

a 第九は平和への希求と人間愛に満ちた作品といわれる。【だからこそ】、この曲が選ばれたのだろう。
daiku wa heiwa e no kikyū to ningenai ni michita sakuhin to iwareru. dakara koso kono kyoku ga erabareta no darō
[Beethoven's] Ninth is said to be a work full of desire for peace and love of humanity. I suppose that's the very reason this piece [of music] was chosen.

b【それでこそ】、協力の意味がある。
sore de koso kyōryoku no imi ga aru
That's just why there is meaning in co-operation.

82.4 NOUN/VERBAL NOUN **koso sure**, NOUN **koso are**, NOUN/VERBAL NOUN **koso**, VERB/ADJECTIVE **ga/mono no**: EMPHASIZING A CONTRAST

The forms **sure/are** are classical forms expressing a contrast; in combination with **koso** only, these forms are still found in the modern language. **ga/mono no** are conjunctions of contrast 'but', 'although' (56, 95.1).

Note how with VN such as **kansha suru** 'be thankful' (example 82.4.1 a) and **funayoi o suru** 'get seasick' (example 82.4.3 b), **koso** is 'sandwiched' between N and **suru** (replacing the case particle **o**).

82.4.1 Noun/verbal noun **koso sure**

a 金さんは財布を隠した女房に【感謝こそすれ】怒りは感じない。
kin-san wa saifu o kakushita nyōbō ni kansha koso sure ikari wa kanjinai
[In the rakugo story, a fisherman finds a wallet full of money, but his wife hides it and tells him it was a dream to save him from turning into a drunkard:] Kin-san may feel grateful towards his wife, who hid the wallet; he certainly feels no anger.

82.4.2 Noun **koso are**

a 程度の差【こそあれ】、だれの耳も目からの情報を参考にしている。
teido no sa koso are dare no mimi mo me kara no jōhō o sankō ni shite iru
There may be differences in degree, but everyone's ears refer to information coming from the eyes

82.4.3 Noun/verbal noun **koso** verb/adjective **ga/mono no**

(See also 56)

a 車【こそ】多い【が】、歩道はガラガラだ。
kuruma koso ōi ga hodō wa garagara da
As many cars as there are, there are very few people on the pavements.

b【船酔いこそ】しなかった【が】、体中が塩まみれになった。
funayoi koso shinakatta ga karadajū ga shio-mamire ni natta
Though I didn't get seasick, my whole body got covered in salt.

83 **koto** [NOMINALIZER]

koto is a lexical N 'thing/fact', which is also used as a nominalizer (about the function of nominalizers see 135). It is preceded and followed by the forms that precede and follow N.

83.1 Lexical noun 'thing(s)'
83.2 Nominalizer
83.2.1 With number of times
83.2.2 With other predicates
83.3 Idiomatic uses
83.3.1 Clause verb-**ru koto ga dekiru**
83.3.2 Clause verb-**ta koto ga aru/nai**
83.3.3 Clause verb-**ru koto ga aru/nai**
83.3.4 Clause verb-**ru koto naku**, . . .
83.3.5 Clause **koto de, koto kara, koto mo atte**
83.3.6 Clause **koto ni suru**
83.3.7 Clause **koto ni naru**
83.3.8 **koto ni** (adverbial phrase)
83.3.9 Question word **koto (darō) ka**
83.3.10 Sentence **koto**
83.3.11 Sentence **koto da**
83.3.12 Clause **wa** . . . clause **koto da**
83.3.13 Clause-verb-**ru koto (wa) nai**
83.3.14 Noun **no koto**

83.1 LEXICAL NOUN 'THING(S)'

In Japanese, no distinction can be made between N modification and relative clauses (see 143), as both take the form of modifying clause (given below in []) + N.

a システムの見直しは必要だが、【こと】はそう簡単ではない。
shisutemu no minaoshi wa hitsuyō da ga koto wa sō kantan de wa nai
A reconsideration of the system is needed, but things are not so simple.

b ［今しかやれない］【こと】を一生懸命やりたい。
ima shika yarenai koto o isshōkenmei yaritai
I want to do things I can only do now as much as I can.

c 会社に無理して勤めるより、［好きな］【こと】で生活したい。
kaisha ni muri shite tsutomeru yori suki na koto de seikatsu shitai
Rather than force myself to work for a company, I'd like to earn my living doing things I like.

d ［これほどうれしい］【こと】はありません。
kore hodo ureshii koto wa arimasen
Nothing could make me happier (*lit.* "there is nothing that's as joyful as this").

83.2 NOMINALIZER

83.2.1 With number of times

a これ【までに】現地に渡る【こと】七回。
kore made-ni genchi ni wataru koto nanakai
So far he has been to the country seven times.

83.2.2 With other predicates

In this use, **koto** indicates the meaning of 'that', or 'doing'.

a ［あれこれ一人で悩んでいた］【こと】がばかばかしくなった。
arekore hitori de nayande ita koto ga bakabakashiku natta
I feel stupid now having worried by myself about all sorts of things.

b ［もう少し安くしないと売れない］【こと】がわかった。
mō sukoshi yasuku shinai to urenai koto ga wakatta
We've realized that it won't sell unless we make it a bit cheaper.

c ［ハイテクの力を借りる］【こと】で，自然の知恵も生きてくる。
haiteku no chikara o kariru koto de shizen no chie mo ikite kuru
Through using the power of advanced technology, one's natural resourcefulness gets activated too.

d ［モウレツに働く］【こと】の意味を見いだしにくくなっている。
mōretsu ni hataraku koto no imi o miidashinikuku natte iru
It has become difficult to find a meaning in working like a Trojan (*lit.* "furiously").

83.3 IDIOMATIC USES

Note that instead of **ga**, **wa/mo** can also be used

83.3.1 Clause verb-**ru** **koto ga dekiru**

After clauses ending in V-**ru**, **koto ga dekiru** indicates pot. 'can', 'be able to'. This is one of several ways of forming a pot. S (see 161).

a 動物や自然物はなぜか人の心に入り込む【こと】ができる。
dōbutsu ya shizenbutsu wa naze ka hito no kokoro ni hairikomu koto ga dekiru
Animals and [other] things in nature can somehow work their way into people's hearts.

b 生まれたばかりの子は自分ではどうする【こと】もできない。
umareta bakari no ko wa jibun de wa dō suru koto mo dekinai
A newly-born child is incapable of doing anything by itself.

83.3.2 Clause verb-**ta** **koto ga aru/nai**

After V-**ta**, **koto ga aru/nai** means 'have the experience of', 'have not/never'.

a マルチメディア？耳にした【こと】はあるけど、いったい何?。
maruchimedia mimi ni shita koto wa aru kedo ittai nani
Multimedia? I've heard it before, but what on earth is it?

b ぼくはまだ留学生とじっくり話した【こと】がない。
boku wa mada ryūgakusei to jikkuri hanashita koto ga nai
I haven't as yet had a proper chat with a foreign student.

c 小学生のころ、クラスの新聞委員を買って出た【こと】があった。
shōgakusei no koro kurasu no shinbun iin o katte deta koto ga atta
When I was a primary school pupil, I once volunteered to be a member of the newspaper committee.

83.3.3 Clause verb-**ru** **koto ga aru/nai**

After a clause ending in V-**ru**, this indicates that something happens, or can happen, 'occasionally', 'sometimes' or, in the neg., 'never'.

a 雨が降ったときは一時的に気温が下がる【こと】がある。
ame ga futta toki wa ichijiteki ni kion ga sagaru koto ga aru
After it has rained, the temperature can drop temporarily.

b ハワイやカリフォルニアの海岸まで足を伸ばす【こと】もある。
hawai ya kariforunia no kaigan made ashi o nobasu koto mo aru
Sometimes he goes as far as Hawaii or the Californian coast [to surf].

c この事件はほぼ終息したし、二度と起こる【こと】はない。
kono jiken wa hobo shūsoku shita shi nido to okoru koto wa nai
This incident has more or less ended, and will never happen again.

83.3.4 Clause verb-**ru koto naku**, . . .

After a clause ending in V-**ru**, **koto naku** (a neg. conjunctive equivalent of **koto ga nai**) means 'without doing'.

a 彩子ちゃんは移植手術を受ける【こと】なく、この世を去った。
ayako-chan wa ishoku shujutsu o ukeru koto naku kono yo o satta
Ayako-chan left this world without receiving a transplant operation.

b 互いに言葉を交す【こと】もなく、押し黙ったままだった。
tagai ni kotoba o kawasu koto mo naku oshidamatta mama datta
[The families of the victims] kept silent, not saying anything to each other.

83.3.5 Clause **koto de, koto kara, koto mo atte**

koto de 'due to' and **koto kara** 'from the fact that' are combinations of **koto** and case P indicating a reason. V-**te** can also indicate a reason, and in combination with the focus P **mo**, **koto mo atte** means 'partly because'.

a 年少者が減り，老年者が増えた【こと】で，高齢化は確実に進んだ。
nenshōsha ga heri rōnensha ga fueta koto de kōrei-ka wa kakujitsu ni susunda
Due to the decrease in the young and the increase in the old, the ageing [of society] has definitely advanced.

b (捨て子) へその緒がついていた【こと】から、生後間もないと見られる。
(sutego) hesonoo ga tsuite ita koto kara seigo ma mo nai to mirareru
(Abandoned baby) From the fact that it still had [part of] its umbilical cord, it is thought to have been [abandoned] soon after birth.

c 晴天が続いている【こと】もあって、プールや海水浴場は大盛況だ。
seiten ga tsuzuite iru koto mo atte pūru ya kaisuiyoku-jō wa daiseikyō da
For reasons like the continued good weather, swimming pools and seaside resorts are doing great business.

83.3.6 Clause **koto ni suru**

This combinations means 'decide to', 'make a point of' (see 186).

a そこで、平日の夜は出来る限り全員で夕食をとる【こと】にした。
soko de heijitsu no yoru wa dekiru kagiri zen'in de yūshoku o toru koto ni shita
Therefore, we decided to have dinner together on weekday nights as often as possible.

b 妻に何も言わない【こと】にしたのは当然だった。
tsuma ni nani mo iwanai koto ni shita no wa tōzen datta
That I decided to say nothing to my wife was natural.

c 他人ごととは思わずに、日ごろの運転を省みる【こと】にしよう。
taningoto to wa omowazu ni higoro no unten o kaerimiru koto ni shiyō
Let's not think that this is something that concerns only others, and make a point of rethinking our everyday driving.

83.3.7 Clause **koto ni naru**

naru means 'happen naturally' or 'come about', and the combination means 'be decided', 'come about' (see 186).

a ２年半を過ごした浜松を離れる【こと】になった。
ninenhan o sugoshita hamamatsu o hanareru koto ni natta
It came about that we left Hamamatsu, where we had spent two years.

b 十代の娘二人と私が、その間、家事を分担する【こと】になった。
jūdai no musume futari to watashi ga sono aida kaji o buntan suru koto ni natta
It was decided that during this time my two teenage daughters and I should share the household chores.

83.3.8 **koto ni** (adverbial phrase)

This is used as an adverbial phrase in the sense of 'to my/our delight'.

a 嬉しい【ことに】その大ホールが満員になるほど人が来た。
ureshii koto ni sono daihōru ga man'in ni naru hodo hito ga kita
To my delight, so many people came that that big hall was full.

83.3.9 Question word **koto (darō) ka**

Q word **koto (darō) ka** indicates emotion, positive or negative.

a 病院でコンサートを聞ければ【どんなに】素晴しい【こと】か。
byōin de konsāto o kikereba donna ni subarashii koto ka
How wonderful it would be to be able to listen to a concert in hospital!

83.3.10 Sentence **koto**

This is used in oral orders and written notices, in the sense of 'you should', 'you must'.

a 氏名，職業，住所，電話番号を明記の【こと】。
shimei shokugyō jūsho denwabangō o meiki no koto
Write clearly your family and given name, occupation, address and telephone no.

b 「まずはしっかり守る【こと】」と 守備の整備に余念がない。
mazu wa shikkari mamoru koto to shubi no seibi ni yonen ga nai
He is busy reorganizing the defence, saying 'The first thing is to defend properly'.

83.3.11 Sentence **koto da**

This is used for giving advice 'you/he etc. should', 'you/they etc. must'.

a とにかくメーカー自身がコスト競争力を強める【ことだ】。
tonikaku mēkājishin ga kosuto kyōsōryoku o tsuyomeru koto da
At any rate the manufacturers themselves must raise their cost competitiveness.

b この政権を長持ちさせるコツは選挙の話をしない【ことだ】よ。
kono seiken o nagamochi saseru kotsu wa senkyo no hanashi o shinai koto da yo
The secret of making this government last is not to mention elections.

83.3.12 Clause **wa** . . . clause **koto da**

koto da is used to complete a cleft S or equational S. After V, **to iu** can optionally be inserted before **koto** (see 23).

a 何より大事なこと【は】話し合いで解決するという【ことだ】。
nani yori daiji na koto wa hanashiai de kaiketsu suru to iu koto da
The most important thing is to find a solution through talks.

b 一番、困るの【は】祖父が「田舎に帰りたい」と言う【ことだ】。
ichiban komaru no wa sofu ga inaka ni kaeritai to iu koto da
The most troublesome thing is that grandfather says, 'I want to go back to the country'.

c 最初にその島に行ったの【は】1982年の【ことだ】。
saisho ni sono shima ni itta no wa senkyūhyaku hachijūni-nen no koto da
It was in 1982 that I first visited that island.

83.3.13 Clause verb-**ru koto (wa) nai**

After clauses ending in V-**ru**, **koto (wa) nai** indicates the meaning of 'there is no need to'.

a 慣れないことを無理してまでやる【ことはない】。
narenai koto o muri shite made yaru koto wa nai
There is no need to force oneself to do things one isn't used to.

b 今さら結婚して，わざわざ苦労する【こともない】のに。
ima sara kekkon shite wazawaza kurō suru koto mo nai noni
After all these years, what's the point of getting married and making a hard time for herself?

83.3.14 Noun **no koto**

This is used in the sense of 'about', usually with verbs of communication such as **hanasu** 'talk', etc. and verbs of knowing such as **shiru** 'get to know', etc.

a 将来の【こと】を話し合った。
shōrai no koto o hanashiatta
We talked about the future.

b 人間の方も犬の【こと】をよく知ってから飼う必要がありそうだ。
ningen no hō mo inu no koto o yoku shitte kara kau hitsuyō ga arisō da
It seems that humans need to keep dogs once they've got to know them.

84 koto AND no [NOMINALIZERS]: COMPARISON

Beside **koto**, the other main nominalizer is **no** (see 135). Their use overlaps to some degree, but the following tendencies can be stated.

84.1 In cleft and equational sentences
84.2 In complement clauses

84.1 IN CLEFT AND EQUATIONAL SENTENCES

If a cleft or equational S takes the form [S **koto/no wa** . . . S2], then S2 can only use **koto da** (see 84.3.12).

84.2 IN COMPLEMENT CLAUSES

In complement clauses, either **no** or **koto** can be used. When the pred. following the nominalizer expresses perception (i.e. **miru** 'see', **mieru** 'be seen', **kiku** 'hear', **kikoeru** 'be heard', **kanjiru** 'feel', etc.), **no** is used, except when **kiku** is used in the hearsay meaning, in which case **koto** is used. As a general tendency, **no** indicates that the complement clause is immediate or concrete, whereas with **koto** it is more abstract, as for instance 'the fact that' (see 26, 135).

Compare the following.

a % 花子がピアノを弾く【の】を聞いた。
Hanako ga piano o hiku no o kiita
I heard Hanako play the piano.

b % 花子がピアノを弾く【こと】を聞いた。
Hanako ga piano o hiku koto o kiita
I heard that Hanako plays the piano.

85 **made** [CASE PARTICLE]

As a case particle, **made** marks the endpoint of the action of V 'to'. **Made** is usually attached to N of time or place, and often used in combination with **kara** 'from' (see 51; see also 74 for examples indicating a range, involving both **kara** and **made**). Note that like **kara**, **made** can also be followed by **ga/o**.

Note 1 there is also a focus P **made** which indicates a degree or extent, and a case P **made-ni** (see 86, 87).

Note 2 **made** can either replace the case P **ga** and **o**, or attach them (**made ga**, **made o**).

85.1 Noun **made**
85.1.1 Place noun **made** (particle)
85.1.2 Time noun **made** (particle)
85.1.3 Noun **kara** noun **made**
85.1.4 (Noun **kara**) noun **made no** noun
85.1.5 Number (+ counter) **made**
85.1.6 Address, tel. no., etc., **made**
85.2 Verb **made**
85.2.1 Verb-**ru made**
85.2.2 Idiomatic use: **iu made mo nai/naku**

85.1 NOUN **made**

85.1.1 Place noun **made** (particle)

This indicates an endpoint in space 'to', 'until'.

a 駅【まで】歩いて五分。
eki made aruite gofun
It's a five-minute walk to the station.

b みんなで食堂【まで】下りていく。新聞をみんなでのぞき込んだ。
minna de shokudō made orite iku. shinbun o minna de nozokikonda
They all went down to the canteen. They all looked at the newspaper.

c 両国からレインボーブリッジ【まで】を往復する。
ryōgoku kara reinbō-burijji made o ōfuku suru
[The boat] makes a return trip from Ryōgoku to the Rainbow Bridge.

d あの丘陵の向こう【まで】が日本向けのカボチャ畑です。
ano kyuryō no mukō made ga nihon-muke no kabocha-batake desu
All the way to the other side of that hill are fields of pumpkin for the Japanese market.

85.1.2 Time noun **made** (particle)

This marks an endpoint in time ‘to’, ‘until’.

a ２歳の時に宣教師の父と来日。高校【まで】を日本で過ごす。完ぺきな日本語を話す。その後、フルブライト奨学生として日本に留学、米平和部隊のボランティアとして韓国にも滞在した。
nisai no toki ni senkyōshi no chichi to rainichi. kōkō made o nihon de sugosu. kanpeki na nihongo o hanasu.sono go furuburaito shōgakusei to shite nihon ni ryūgaku bei heiwabutai no borantia to shite kankoku ni mo taizai shita
At age 2, he came to Japan with his father, a missionary. He lived in Japan until high school. He speaks perfect Japanese. Later, he came to Japan as a Fulbright scholar, and had a stay in Korea as a volunteer in the US peace corps.

b ツリーは年明け【まで】展示される。
tsurī wa toshiake made tenji sareru
The Christmas tree will be on display until the New Year.

c 議論は夜遅く【まで】尽きない。
giron wa yoru osoku made tsukinai
The discussion continued till late.

d 政局不安も二月【まで】は残る。
seikyoku fuan mo nigatsu made wa nokoru
The political instability will remain until February at least.

85.1.3 Noun **kara** noun **made**

In combination with **kara** [case P], this indicates a range in space or time ‘from . . . to’ (see 74).

a 二月一日【から】三月十五日【まで】研究テーマを募集する。
nigatsu tsuitachi kara sangatsu jūgonichi made kenkyū tēma o boshū suru
We invite the submission of research topics from February 1st to March 15th.

b 切符は午前十時四十五分【から】午後一時四十分【まで】販売する。
kippu wa gozen jūji yonjūgo-fun kara gogo ichiji yonjup-pun made hanbai suru
Tickets will be on sale from 10.45 in the morning to 1.40 in the afternoon.

c 温泉街の端【から】端【まで】雪に埋もれ、ひっそりとしている。
onsengai no hashi kara hashi made yuki ni umore hissori to shite iru
The hot spring district looks deserted, covered in snow from one end to the other.

d 十階建てで地下一階【から】地上三階【まで】が駐車場。
jukkaidate de chika ikkai kara chijō sangai made ga chūshajō
It's a 10-storey building, and B1 to 3F is parking.

85.1.4 (Noun **kara**) noun **made no** noun

The meaning is the same when used to modify N ('from') 'to'.

a 40歳【まで】の若手作家の発掘と育成が目的だ。
yonjussai made no wakate sakka no hakkutsu to ikusei ga mokuteki da
The purpose is to scout out and nurture young writers up to the age of 40.

b 二月に就任し今年六月末【まで】の期間、教壇に立つ予定だ。
nigatsu ni shūnin shi kotoshi rokugatsu-matsu made no kikan kyōdan ni tatsu yotei da
He plans to assume the post in February and to teach for the period until the end of June of this year.

85.1.5 Number (+ counter) **made**

This incidates the maximum amount that is possible or will be accepted 'up to'.

a 二百万円【まで】融資する。
nihyakuman-en made yūshi suru
They lend [people] up to two million yen [= educational loan].

b 一枚のはがきで三人【まで】応募できる。
ichimai no hagaki de sannin made ōbo dekiru
With one postcard up to three people can apply.

c 角度約五度【まで】の坂道を登れる。
kakudo yaku godo made no sakamichi o noboreru
[Toy:] It can climb gradients of up to 5 per cent.

85.1.6 Address, tel. no., etc., **made**

This is commonly used to indicate an address/tel. no., etc. to be contacted by potential customers etc.

a 電話は専用で06·362·1245【まで】。
denwa wa senyō de reiroku sanrokuni ichinīyongō made
For telephone, contact the dedicated line on 06-362-1245.

b 問い合わせは同支店（052·231·1115)【まで】。
toiawase wa dōshiten zerogōnī nīsan'ichi ichiichiichigō made
Please [direct] inquiries to the same branch (052-231-1115).

85.2 VERB **made**

85.2.1 Verb-ru **made**

After V, **made** indicates an endpoint or time of action 'until'.

a ふたをし、赤くなる【まで】蒸す。
futa o shi akaku naru made musu
You put on the lid, and steam it [= crab] until it turns red.

b 死ぬ【まで】公開はしない。
shinu made kōkai wa shinai
I will not make it [= the work of art] public until I die.

c 政府が何かをやる【まで】待つしかない……。
seifu ga nani ka o yaru made matsu shika nai
All we can do is wait until the government does something . . .

d 過労死と言われるような状態になる【まで】働いてきた。
karōshi to iwareru yō na jōtai ni naru made hataraite kita
He has worked himself into a condition similar to what's known as death from overwork.

e 二歳から十歳前後で死ぬ【まで】、鹿の雌は毎年子を産む。
nisai kara jussai zengo de shinu made shika no mesu wa maitoshi ko o umu
From the time they're 2 years old until they die around the age of 10, does produce offspring every year.

85.2.2 Idiomatic use: **iu made mo nai/naku**

This combination is used in the sense of 'goes without saying'.

a …縦穴が、スキタイの古墳であることを証拠立てる粘土の層に突き当たった。すぐに本格的な発掘にとりかかったのは【言うまでもな】い。
tateana ga sukitai no kofun de aru koto o shōkodateru nendo no sō ni tsukiatatta. sugu ni honkaku-teki na hakkutsu ni torikakatta no wa iu made mo nai
. . . the vertical shaft hit a loam stratum that constituted proof that [we were dealing with] a Scythian burial mound. It goes without saying that we immediately started a proper excavation.

b …米政府は最も（参入の）難しい市場と懸命に取り組んでいる。【言うまでもな】くそれは日本だ。
beiseifu wa mottomo (sannyū no) muzukashii shijō to kenmei ni torikunde iru. iu made mo naku sore wa nihon da
. . . the US government is making efforts to grapple with the most difficult market (to penetrate). Needless to say, that's Japan.

86 **made** [FOCUS PARTICLE]

made is a focus P that attaches to N, N + P, and adverbial clauses. It can in turn be followed by case P that are required by the valency of pred.

made indicates the most unlikely item, or extent, that applies to a situation or action 'even', 'so far as', 'as many as', etc.

86.1 Noun **made** (+ particle)
86.2 Noun + particle **made**
86.3 Adverbial clause **made**

86.1 NOUN **made** (+ PARTICLE)

a このうち六巻【まで】をゲーム化した。
kono uchi rokkan made o gēmuka shita
Of these [= volumes of a novel], they have turned as many as six volumes into game software.

b 鉄を鍛えるためのふいご【まで】が自家製だ。
tetsu o kitaeru tame no fuigo made ga jikasei da
Even the bellows for forging the iron are self-made.

c 実際に製造部門では無人工場【まで】あります。
jissai ni seizō bumon de wa mujin kōjō made arimasu
In fact, in the manufacturing division there is even an unmanned workshop.

86.2 NOUN + PARTICLE **made**

a 病根は小学校に【まで】広がっている。
byōkon wa shōgakko ni made hirogatte iru
The roots of the disease extend all the way down to the elementary schools.

b なぜ日本人は余暇に【まで】マニュアルを持ち込むのだろうか。
naze nihonjin wa yoka ni made manyuaru o mochikomu no darō ka
Why do the Japanese bring manuals even to leisure [activities]?

c 今年中に二店を新規出店、将来は十店程度【にまで】増やす考え。
kotoshijū ni niten o shinki shutten shōrai wa jutten teido ni made fuyasu kangae
They're planning to open two new restaurants in the course of this year and increase [the number of restaurants] to as many as 10 or so in the future.

86.3 ADVERBIAL CLAUSE **made**

When **made** is attached to an adverbial clause ending in **V-te**, the combination means 'going to the extreme of doing', 'even at the expense of doing' (see also 42.3).

a 億単位の投資をして【まで】農業をする人がいるだろうか。
okutan'i no tōshi o shite made nōgyō o suru hito ga iru darō ka
Do you really think there are people who engage in farming even if it means investing hundreds of millions of yen?

b …たくさんのお金を使って【まで】アピールすることはない。
takusan o-kane o tsukatte made apīru suru koto wa nai
. . . there is no point appealing [to the electorate] at great expense (*lit.* "at the expense of using a lot of money").

c 肉は動物を殺して【まで】、と思うので、食べることが少なくなりました。
niku wa dōbutsu o koroshite made to omou no de taberu koto ga sukunaku narimashita
I don't eat much meat now, because I feel that [I don't want to eat it] if it means killing animals.

87 **made-ni** [CASE PARTICLE]

made-ni is a case P that indicates the endpoint in time or space over which an action extends, like **made** by itself. The difference between **made-ni** and **made** is that **made-ni** is concerned with the cut off point, i.e. indicates a deadline when referring to the future, or the idea of 'up to (now)' when used with past tense.

87.1 Noun/demonstrative pronoun **made-ni**
87.1.1 Time noun/demonstrative pronoun **made-ni**
87.1.2 Other nouns **made-ni**
87.2 Verb **made-ni**
87.2.1 Verbal noun **made-ni**
87.2.2 Verb-**ru made-ni**

87.1 NOUN/DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN made-ni

87.1.1 Time noun/demonstrative pronoun made-ni

This phrase means 'by', 'up to'.

a 二、三日前【までに】予約が必要だ。
nisan-nichi mae made-ni yoyaku ga hitsuyō da
Reservations need to be made no later than two or three days in advance.

b 来年二月末【までに】会社を清算する。
rainen nigatsu-matsu made-ni kaisha o seisan suru
We're going to liquidate the company by next February.

c 今世紀末【までに】中国社会は大きく変わる。
konseiki-matsu made-ni chūgoku shakai wa ōkiku kawaru
Between now and the end of the century Chinese society will change a great deal.

d これ【までに】も何度も足を運んだ場所だった。
kore made-ni mo nando mo ashi o hakonda basho datta
It was a place I'd been to many times till now.

e これ【までに】風俗店で働いたことはない。
kore made-ni fūzokuten de hataraita koto wa nai
Until now she has never worked in a nightclub.

f 往復はがきで九月十六日【までに】申し込む。
ōfuku hagaki de kugatsu jūrokunichi made-ni mōshikomu
One applies by return postcard by September 16.

87.1.2 Other nouns made-ni

Although **daigaku** 'university' in example a is not a time N as such, the implication nevertheless is one of time.

a 大学【までに】燃え尽きてしまったのかな。
daigaku made-ni moetsukite shimatta no ka na
He may have burnt out by [the time he reaches] university.

b 女性が多いが、ほとんど髪は肩ぐらい【までに】短くしている。
josei ga ōi ga hotondo kami wa kata gurai made-ni mijikaku shite iru
There are many women, but most keep their hair short to about shoulder length.

87.2 VERB **made-ni**

When attached to V, **made-ni** can follow a N-**suru**-type V in its N-form, i.e. without **suru**, or a V in its plain non-past form. The meaning is 'until', 'before' or 'by'.

87.2.1 Verbal noun **made-ni**

a 景況回復【までに】はまだ時間がかかる。
keikyō kaifuku made-ni wa mada jikan ga kakaru
It'll still take time for the economy to recover.

b 党派問題の決着【までに】八回の投票が必要だったね。
tōha mondai no ketchaku made-ni hakkai no tōhyō ga hitsuyō datta ne
It took eight ballots for the faction problem to be settled, didn't it?

c 現在は二十八業者の加盟が決まっており、発足【までに】四十業者にする。
genzai wa nijūhachi gyōsha no kamei ga kimatte ori hossoku made-ni yonjū gyōsha ni suru
At present, affiliation of 28 dealers has been agreed, and by start-up time we will make it 40.

87.2.2 Verb-**ru made-ni**

a 水は暖まる【までに】時間を要し、冷めるのが遅い。
mizu wa atatamaru made-ni jikan o yōshi sameru no ga osoi
Water requires time to heat up (*lit.* "until it heats"), and is slow to cool down.

b 決意する【までに】は二—三週間悩み抜いた。
ketsui suru made-ni wa nisan-shūkan nayami nuita
He worried for several weeks before he made up his mind.

c そうなる【までに】美術はおよそ百五十年ぐらいかかった。
sō naru made-ni bijutsu wa oyoso hyaku gojūnen gurai kakatta
It took approximately 150 years for art to develop in that way [= expressionism].

88 **mae** [RELATIONAL NOUN]

mae is a N indicating a relative position, either in time or space 'in front of', 'before'. Like other N, it can be used after other N (usually in the form N **no mae (ni)**), but it can also attach directly, like a suf., especially after N of time. **mae** can also attach to clauses, in the sense of 'before doing' (see 171, 11).

88.1 Noun **(no) mae**
88.2 Clause verb **mae**

88.1 NOUN **(no) mae**

a 一週間【前】に新築したばかりだったという。
isshūkan mae ni shinchiku shita bakari datta to iu
[Earthquake:] They say that the [destroyed] building had been completed only a week ago.

b クリスマス【前】にも送還される。
kurisumasu mae ni mo sōkan sareru
They will be deported as early as before Christmas.

c 下宿でも近所の商店でも、ラジオの【前】には人がいる。
geshuku de mo kinjo no shōten de mo rajio no mae ni wa hito ga iru
In apartment houses and the shops in the vicinity, there are people in front of the radio.

88.2 CLAUSE VERB **mae**

a なぜ死を選ぶ【前】に、救いを求めなかったのか。
naze shi o erabu mae ni sukui o motomenakatta no ka
Why didn't he seek help before choosing death?

b 内容を説明する【前】に、参加した顔ぶれを見た方がその目的が分かりやすい。
naiyō o setsumei suru mae ni sanka shita kaobure o mita hō ga sono mokuteki ga wakariyasui
Before explaining the content [of the conference], it's easier to understand its purpose by looking at what sort of people were there.

89 **-mai** [SENTENCE ENDING]

-mai is attached to Verb-non-past. Exceptions are **dekiru**, **kuru/suru**, and the Group II-type V caus. ending **-(s)aseru**, where V-stem is used.

Note especially the combination **-neba/-nakereba narumai**, which is equivalent to the more colloquial **-nakereba naranai darō** (see 50).

-mai is used in two meanings: neg. pres. and negative desiderative. With the exception of V-**mai shi**, both have a formal/written language flavour.

The former is attached to pred. that indicate a state, the latter to pred. whose action is intentional, i.e. can be controlled by the subject (see 163, 46).

89.1 Negative presumptive
89.1.1 Verb-**mai**
89.1.2 Verb-**mai ni**
89.1.3 Verb-**mai shi**
89.1.4 Sentence-**neba/-nakereba narumai**
89.2 Negative desiderative

89.1 NEGATIVE PRESUMPTIVE

Instead of **-nai darō**, the somewhat archaic but concise ending **-mai** can be used.

89.1.1 Verb-mai

This is a written style equivalent of **-nai darō** 'oughtn't', 'no doubt'.

a …国民も納得し【まい】。
kokumin mo nattoku shimai
. . . the people are unlikely to be convinced, either.

b 知っておいても損ではある【まい】。
shitte oite mo son de wa arumai
There shouldn't be any harm in knowing this.

c "戦争終結" の宣言もそう遠くはある【まい】。
sensō shūketsu no sengen mo sō tōku wa arumai
A declaration of 'end of hostilities' oughtn't to be that far away.

89.1.2 Verb-mai ni

-mai ni is used in sentences with contrastive meaning (**ni** has the same meaning as **noni**) (see 140).

a お前たち、昔はどんな暮らしだったか知りはすまい。知ってればそんな言い方は出来【まいに】。
omae-tachi, mukashi wa donna kurashi datta ka shiri wa sumai. shittereba sonna iikata wa dekimai ni
You girls don't know how we lived in the old days. If you did, you wouldn't make [critical] comments like that

89.1.3 Verb-**mai shi**

This is used is used to make a point that the speaker thinks should be patently obvious.

a そんな馬鹿な。未成年じゃある【まいし】。銀行だけ特別に損をかぶれという法律でもあるんですかね。
sonna baka na. miseinen ja arumai shi. ginkō dake tokubetsu ni son o kabure to iu hōritsu demo aru n desu ka ne
How ridiculous. They [= banks] are not minors [= devoid of responsibility], you know. Is there a law or something that states that only banks should make special losses?

89.1.4 Sentence-**neba/-nakereba narumai**

Literally, this means 'unless I/we do . . . , it presumably won't do', i.e. 'must' (see 50).

a 大いに自戒せ【ねばなるまい】。
ōi ni jikai seneba narumai
No doubt we must take great care [not to repeat the same mistake].

b 慎重に判断し【なければなるまい】。
shinchō ni handan shinakereba narumai
We no doubt need to make a careful judgement.

89.2 NEGATIVE DESIDERATIVE

-mai can also express a neg. desiderative, i.e. what the speaker doesn't want to do (see 46, 224.3, 189).

a ふるさと香川に帰ってき【まい】。
furusato kagawa ni kaette kimai
I have no intention of returning to my home [prefecture of] Kagawa.

b 「過去を忘れさせ【まい】」という中国当局の意思は明快だ。
kako o wasuresasemai to iu chūgoku tōkyoku no ishi wa meikai da
The intention of the Chinese authorities of not wishing to allow the past to be forgotten is obvious.

c 自分は努めて目立つ【まい】との配慮からだ。
jibun wa tsutomete medatsumai to no hairyo kara da
[Not giving public lectures] is because of his wish to attract as little attention as possible.

90 mama [STRUCTURAL NOUN]

mama is a structural N, which means that it is preceded and followed by the same forms as other N. However, it differs from other N in that it can also be used without any P attached.

mama indicates that a state remains without any change, which in translation comes out as 'still', 'without addition', 'unchanged', etc. The implication usually is that normally you would expect some change, or something to be done about the state, but that has not happened yet.

Depending on the form of cop. attached to **mama**, it can be used as pred., adverbially or like a conjunctive P.

90.1 Clause-**ta**/adjective-**i** **mama** + copula
90.2 Noun/**no**-adjective/demonstrative pronoun **no mama** (^particle/ ^copula): adverbial use
90.3 Used like a conjunctive particle
90.3.1 Clause verb-**ta**/adjective-**i**/adjectival noun **na mama**
90.3.2 Clause verb-**ru mama ni**

90.1 CLAUSE-ta/ADJECTIVE-i mama + COPULA

Attached to clauses ending in V-**ta**, adj.-**i** (including the negative **nai**/**-nai**) or N **no** (including N **sono mama**) **mama** means 'still' 'unchanged'.

a 借金は残った【まま】だ。
shakkin wa nokotta mama da
The loan still remains.

b 協議は平行線の【まま】だ。
kyōgi wa heikōsen no mama da
The discussions made no progress (*lit.* "are still on parallel course").

c 宿直室の掛け時計は午後9時20分をさした【まま】だ。
shukuchoku-shitsu no kake-dokei wa gogo kuji nijuppun o sashita mama da
[After earthquake:] The hands of the wall clock in the nightwatchman's room are still pointing at 9.20 p.m.

d 紛争地帯に埋められた【まま】の地雷は一億一千万個に上る。
funsō chitai ni umerareta mama no jirai wa ichioku issenman-ko ni noboru
The [number of] landmines that are still buried in conflict areas amount to 110 million.

e しかし家庭菜園で有機物【そのまま】を使っているところも多いのではないか。
shikashi katei saien de yūkibutsu sono mama o tsukatte iru tokoro mo ōi no de wa nai ka
However, surely there are many household vegetable gardens that use organic matter just like that [= without adding anything].

f 見た【まま】、感じた【まま】を、素直に十七文字に凝縮する。
mita mama kanjita mama o sunao ni jūnana moji ni gyōshuku suru
I compress what I've seen or felt straighforwardly into 17 syllables (= **haiku**).

g 不眠に悩まされていたY子さんは、眠れない【まま】に自宅の庭に出た。
fumin ni nayamasarete ita waiko-san wa nemurenai mama ni jitaku no niwa ni deta
Y-ko-san, who had been suffering from insomnia, went out into her garden at home without being able to get to sleep.

h 過去の体制の【まま】では研究は進められない。
kako no taisei no mama de wa kenkyū ga susumerarenai
We can't carry out any further research under the old system.

90.2 NOUN/**no**-ADJECTIVE/DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN **no mama** (^PARTICLE/^COPULA): ADVERBIAL USE

Attached to N, **no**-adj. and N-mod. demonstrative pron., **mama** modifies a following V or V phrase. Note the combinations **kono/sono/ano mama**.

a 建物は原形の【まま】保存する。
tatemono wa genkei no mama hozon suru
The building will be preserved in its present form.

b 生の【まま】薄く切って揚げ，塩をふるとおやつや酒の肴（さかな）になる。
nama no mama usuku kitte age shio o furu to oyatsu ya sake no sakana ni naru
If you cut [arrowhead bulb] thinly in its raw state (= without cooking it first), deep fry it and sprinkle salt on it, it can be eaten as a snack or as an accompaniment to drinks.

c 車はその【まま】逃走，女性にけがはなかった。
kuruma wa sono mama tōsō josei ni kega wa nakatta
The car drove off without stopping; the woman was not hurt.

90.3 USED LIKE A CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE

Used in the form [S1 **mama** S2], **mama** functions like a conjunctive P.

90.3.1 Clause verb-**ta**/adjective-**i**/adjectival noun **na mama**

Attached to clauses ending in V-**ta**, **mama** indicates that a state or situation remains unchanged although it ought to change or may be expected to change.

a % 日本ではくつをはいた【まま】、家に上がってはいけない。
nihon de wa kutsu o haita mama ie ni agatte wa ikenai
In Japan, you must not enter a home with your shoes on.

b % 私の辞書を借りた【まま】返してくれない。
watashi no jisho o karita mama kaeshite kurenai
He's borrowed my dictionary and will not give it back.

c 本を上向きにした【まま】コピーできる複写システムを開発した。
hon o uwamuki ni shita mama kopī dekiru fukusha shisutemu o kaihatsu shita
They have developed a copying system where you can copy a book face up [= without having to turn it upside down].

d 農業の先行きが不安な【まま】新たな事業に手を挙げる気はない。
nōgyō no sakiyuki ga fuan na mama arata na jigyō ni te o ageru ki wa nai
While the future of agriculture is uncertain, we have no intention of volunteering for new projects.

90.3.2 Clause verb-**ru mama ni**

Attached to clauses ending in V-**ru**, **mama ni** indicates that the subject or agent performs the action of S2, in compliance with some outside approach or stimulus without attempting any resistance. The outside approach or stimulus can be what one is told, what one's feelings dictate, etc.

a % 気の向く【ままに】家の近くを散歩する。
ki no muku mama ni ie no chikau o sanpo suru
I go for walks in the vicinity of the house [choosing the course] as my whim dictates.

b % 言われる【ままに】お金を貸した。
iwareru mama ni okane o kashita
I lent the money as requested.

c 心の欲する【ままに】ゆうゆうと生きられた牧歌的な時代は遠く去った。
kokoro no hossuru mama ni yūyū to ikirareta bokka-teki na jidai wa tōku satta
The idyllic age, where one could live a life of leisure to one's heart's content, has long gone.

d 勧められる【ままに】ついつい杯を重ね、あげくに正体を失った経験を持つ人も多いのでは。
susumerareru mama ni tsuitsui sakazuki o kasane ageku ni shōtai o ushinatta keiken o motsu hito mo ōi no de wa
No doubt there are many who against their better judgement have one drink after another in compliance with what's offered to them, and end up unconscious.

91 **-masu** [POLITE ENDING]

For polite forms of V, the polite ending **-masu** is attached to V-base, i.e. Group I **iki-masu**, **kai-masu**, etc.; Group II **tabe-masu**, **mi-masu**, etc.; Group III, **shi-masu** and **ki-masu** (see 232).

-masu forms belong to the same polite style as the **desu**-form of the cop. They are usually restricted to the spoken language, in ordinary conversation with strangers or those who are not intimate.

-masu itself inflects as follows (forms in ( ) are archaic, but still occasionally encountered):

1	Non-past	**-masu**
2	Past	**-mashita**
3	Neg.	**-masen**
4	Neg-past	**-masen-deshita**
5	Imperative	**-mase (-mashi)**
6	Stem	–
7	Conjunctive	**-mashite**
8	Conditional	**(-masureba)**

Note - the N-mod. use of **-masu** (**-masu** N) and the conjunctive form **-mashite** are largely restricted to the formal language of letters and speech-making.

Apart from its use as the equivalent of the **-nai** form, **-masen** is also used to make some S endings polite: **kamoshirenai** →**kamoshiremasen**. Likewise, the neg. form of the neg. adj. **nai (arimasen)** is also applied to such S endings as **ni chigai nai**, which becomes **ni chigai arimasen** (see 118).

92 **-mi** [NOMINALIZING SUFFIX]

(See 34.)

93 **mitai** [SENTENCE ENDING]

The S ending **mitai** is used in informal language, in place of more formal **yō**, **sō** and **rashii**. It indicates appearance or simile (like other S endings of appearance and simile, **mitai** can be 'reinforced' by adv. like **maru-de** 'just like' (see 5.4.7).

mitai can be followed by a form of cop. (e.g. **mitai da/desu**), but in line with its colloquial nature often ends a sentence by itself.

The forms **mitai** is attached to are pln. forms (after AN and N, without cop.). **mitai** itself changes its endings like an AN.

mitai needs to be distinguished from **mitai** (the **-tai** form of **-te miru** that is attached to V-**te** (see 205, 189). Past tense forms can precede **mitai** 'like having . . . -ed', but can also follow it 'was like'.

Being a more colloquial variant of **yō** [S ending], **mitai** can be replaced (in uses 93.1 and 93.4 only) by **yō**, but **rashii** can only be used in those examples in 93.1 where **mitai** can be interpreted as indicating hearsay (93.1 c and g), where **sō** [hearsay] and **to iu** could also be used (see 169, 181, 243, 218).

93.1 Sentence **mitai** (copula/**na n da**)
93.2 Clause 1 **mitai de**, clause 2
93.3 Clause **mitai ni**, predicate
93.4 Clause **mitai na** noun

93.1 SENTENCE **mitai** (COPULA/**na n da**)

This means that some thing, situation or person, etc. 'seems like', 'is like' another.

a マグロのトロ【みたい】でしょう。
maguro no toro mitai deshō
It's like fatty tuna, isn't it.

b 黄色いじゅうたん【みたい】。
kiiroi jūtan mitai
They [= wild flowers] are like a yellow carpet.

c 今回は違う【みたい】だ。
konkai wa chigau mitai da
This time it seems to be different.

d 外国に来た【みたい】。
gaikoku ni kita mitai
It's like having come to a foreign country.

e 「どう、似合うかしら」「うん、結構首が細く見える【みたい】」。
dō niau kashira – un, kekkō kubi ga hosoku mieru mitai
'How does it look? Does it suit me?' 'Hm, it seems to make your neck look quite slender.'

f なんだか札幌では日の暮れるのが早い【みたい】。
nandaka sapporo de wa hi no kureru no ga hayai mitai
Somehow in Sapporo it seems to get dark earlier.

g クッキングはストレス解消にも役立っている【みたい】。
kukkingu wa sutoresu kaishō ni mo yakudatte iru mitai
Cooking seems to help get rid of stress, too.

h 駅長さんの部屋【みたい】なんだよね。堅苦しいんですよ。
ekichōsan no heya mitai na n da yo ne. katagurushii n desu yo
It's like a station master's office, isn't it. It's [too] stuffy.

93.2 CLAUSE 1 mitai de, CLAUSE 2

Besides being used in compound S, **mitai de** (**de** is the conjunctive form of cop.) can also be used to finish a sentence, leaving S2 to be understood from the context 'just like . . . , (and . . .)'.

a【まるで】スパイ映画【みたいで】面白かったね。
maru-de supai eiga mitai de omoshirokatta ne
It was just like a spy movie, and very interesting.

b どうしても食欲に負けてしまう【みたいで】。
dōshite mo shokuyoku ni makete shimau mitai de
[Children] just seem to be unable to resist (*lit.* "get defeated by their appetite") [and end up eating between meals].

93.3 CLAUSE mitai ni, PREDICATE

mitai ni (**ni** is the adverbial form of the cop.) is the adverbial form of **mitai da**, used to modify pred. 'like'.

a どれも短篇小説【みたいに】おもしろい。
dore mo tanpen shōsetsu mitai ni omoshiroi
All [= jottings on the postcard] are interesting, like short stories.

b 芸能プロダクション【みたいに】、電話がひっきりなしにかかってきます。
geinō purodakushon mitai ni, denwa ga hikkirinashi ni kakatte kimasu
The phone rings continuously, like in a showbiz office.

93.4 CLAUSE mitai na NOUN

This is used to make a simile 'like', 'such as', when comparing a situation to another situation, state or object.

a あれ以来、島の活動のすべてが止まってしまって……。【まるで】、静止画像をみている【みたい】な毎日でした。
are irai shima no seikatsu no subete ga tomatte shimatte . . . maru-de, seishi eiga o mite iru mitai na mainichi deshita
Since that time [of the earthquake], all activity on the island has come to a standstill . . . Every day was just like looking at movie stills.

b 洋服【みたい】なささいな理由で落とされちゃたまらない。
yōfuku mitai na sasai na riyū de otosarecha tamaranai
The last thing I want is to be rejected [in a job interview] for some trifling reason such as the clothes [I'm wearing].

94 mo [FOCUS PARTICLE]

Like **wa**, the focus P **mo** replaces the case P **ga** (but note **mo ga** after Q words, see 94.6) and usually **o** (but **o mo** is found), and is added to others. Like **wa**, **mo** can also be inserted between forms such as **-te iru**, adj.**-ku nai** and **de aru**.

Whereas **wa** is separating or exclusive in nature, **mo** is inclusive. In its basic use, it translates as 'too' or 'also', but when used with neg. it serves to emphasize what is negated (see also 43).

94.1 Noun (particle) **mo**
94.1.1 Noun (particle) **mo** predicate
94.1.2 With ellipted predicate
94.2 Noun **mo**
94.2.1 Noun = amount
94.2.1.1 With positive predicate
94.2.1.2 With negative predicate
94.2.2 After other nouns
94.3 Verb-**te mo** negative predicate
94.4 With two or more items
94.4.1 With positive predicate
94.4.2 With negative predicate
94.4.2.1 After noun
94.4.2.2 After adjective
94.5 Time noun **ni mo**
94.6 After question words
94.6.1 After question words, with positive predicate
94.6.2 After question words, with negative predicate
94.7 Noun **de mo aru**
94.8 **-te (de) mo**
94.9 Idiomatic uses

94.1 NOUN (PARTICLE) mo

Here, **mo** means ‘too’, ‘also’.

94.1.1 Noun (particle) mo predicate

a 値段【も】安い。
nedan mo yasui
The price is cheap, too.

b この冬【も】鍋の売れ行きが好調だ。
kono fuyu mo nabe no ureyuki ga kōchō da
This winter, too, casserole dishes are doing well.

c こうした犯罪グループは不法滞在者がほとんどで、取り締まりには困難が伴う。情報に【も】敏感だ。
kōshita hanzai gurūpu wa fuhō taizaisha ga hotondo de torishimari ni wa konnan ga tomonau. johō ni mo binkan da
This kind of crime syndicate consists almost entirely of people staying in the country illegally, and so they are difficult to control. They are sensitive to information, too.

94.1.2 With ellipted predicate

a 日本語のわからん日本人などというのが出てくる。——日本語のうまい米国人【も】。(わからん = わからない)
nihongo no wakaran nihonjin nado to iu no ga dete kuru. nihongo no umai beikokujin mo
[In a world without frontiers] There will be Japanese who don’t understand the Japanese language. And Americans who are good at Japanese.

94.2 NOUN mo

94.2.1 Noun = amount

After amounts, **mo** emphasizes the amount (with pos. and neg. pred.).

94.2.1.1 *With positive predicate*

This is used to indicate an unexpectedly large amount ‘as many as’ etc.

a 途中、何十カ所【も】の橋を渡った。
tochū nanjukkasho mo no hashi o watatta
On the way we crossed dozens of bridges.

94.2.1.2 *With negative predicate*

With negative pred., the meaning is 'not even', or 'not either'.

a 今は一人【も】残っていない。
ima wa hitori mo nokotte inai
Now, there isn't even a single person left.

b 会員登録をしている人が百人弱、案内状を差し上げる人が三百人くらい。会則や会費【も】ありません。
kaiin tōroku o shite iru hito ga hyakunin-jaku annaijō o sashiageru hito ga sanbyaku-nin kurai. kaisoku ya kaihi mo arimasen
The number of registered members is just under a hundred. People whom we send information number about 300. There aren't any membership fees or statutes, either.

94.2.2 After other nouns

After N not indicating an amount, **mo** can also impart the meaning of 'even'.

a 今度の不況期における財政の出動規模は第一次石油ショック時を【も】しのぐものだった。
kondo no fukyōki ni okeru zaisei no shutsudō kibo wa daiichi-ji sekiyu shokku-ji o mo shinogu mono datta
The magnitude of public finances marshalled in the present depression exceeded even the time of the first oil shock.

94.3 VERB-te mo NEGATIVE PREDICATE

Note how **mo** can be sandwiched between **-te** (or V-stem, the conjunctive-form equivalent) and **iru, suru** (see 94.7, 31.5).

a 思って【も】いなかった。
omotte mo inakatta
It never even occurred to me.

b まさか自分が優勝するなんて思い【も】しなかった。
masaka jibun ga yūshō suru nante omoi mo shinakatta
I never even imagined that I'd win.

94.4 WITH TWO OR MORE ITEMS

94.4.1 With positive predicate

a 芸術家【も】科学者【も】同じ。
geijutsuka mo kagakusha mo onaji
Artists and scientists are the same sort

b カネ【も】出すが口【も】出す。
kane mo dasu ga kuchi mo dasu
They give money but also meddle [in our affairs]

94.4.2 With negative predicate

This indicates the idea of 'neither . . . nor'.

94.4.2.1 *After noun*

a ところが、部屋にはテレビ【も】ラジオ【も】電話【も】ない。
tokoro ga heya ni wa terebi mo rajio mo denwa mo nai
However, in the room there is neither TV nor radio nor telephone.

94.4.2.2 *After adjective*

a 気候は暑く【も】寒く【も】ない。
kikō wa atsuku mo samuku mo nai
The climate is neither hot nor cold.

94.5 TIME NOUN **ni mo**

In journalistic writing, **mo** is often used to emphasize proximity of time: 'as soon as', 'as early as'.

a 二十八日に【も】発表する。
nijūhachi-nichi ni mo happyō suru
They are going to announce it as early as the 28th.

b 月内に【も】着工して、十月稼働を目指す。
getsunai ni mo chakkō shite jūgatsu kadō o mezasu
They will start building within the month, and aim to have [the plant] running in October.

94.6 AFTER QUESTION WORDS

After question words, too, **mo** can be used with either pos. or neg. pred.; with pos. pred. the combination means 'any' or 'every', with neg. pred. 'no (one/thing, etc.)' (see 167).

94.6.1 After question words, with positive predicate

a だれ【も】が一度は抱きそうな夢だ。
dare mo ga ichido wa idakisō na yume da
This is a dream that everyone is likely to entertain once.

94.6.2 After question words, with negative predicate

a 「私は芝居のうまい役者じゃありません」。「だれ【も】そう思いませんよ」。
watashi wa shibai no umai yakusha ja arimasen. dare mo sō omoimasen yo
'I'm not an actor who's good on stage.' 'Nobody thinks so.'

b 死亡した五人はいずれ【も】外傷などはなかった。
shibō shita gonin wa izure mo gaishō nado wa nakatta
None of the five people who died had any external injuries.

94.7 NOUN de mo aru

Here, **mo** is sandwiched between **de** (conjunctive form of the cop. **da**) and **aru**; the combination also functions as a cop., with the added meaning of 'is *also*', 'is *at the same time*' (see also 94.3).

a 父親のかわりで【も】あった。
chichioya no kawari de mo atta
He was also a father-substitute.

b 着付けの教師で【も】ある。
kitsuke no kyōshi de mo aru
She is also a teacher of how to dress [in kimono].

94.8 -te (de) mo

When **mo** is used instead of cop. + **wa**, the implication is 'not necessarily', whereas after V/A-**te**, the meaning is 'even'. **mo** is also used in phrases like **-te/de mo ii** 'it's OK if' (see 31.2).

a そうで【も】ない。(cf., そうで【は】ない。That's not so.)
sō de mo nai
That's not necessarily so.

b スターがいて【も】勝てませんよ。(cf., いて【は】勝てません。
= If there's a star, we can't win.)
sutā ga ite mo katemasen yo
Even with a star [in the team] we can't win!

94.9 IDIOMATIC USES

a 【一日も早く】夫の声が聞きたい。
ichinichi mo hayaku otto no koe ga kikitai
I want to hear my husband's voice [as soon as possible].

b 「経済界よ。【お前も】か」と思ってしまう。
keizaikai yo. omae mo ka to omotte shimau
One feels '【You too】, business world?' (Variation on Caesar's 'Et tu, Brute?' from Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*)

c (予想より)【一歩も二歩も】後退した判決でショックだ。
(yosō yori) ippo mo niho mo kōtai shita hanketsu de shokku da
We are shocked by the verdict, which has reversed [what was expected] 【by several steps/degrees】.

d 【いいも悪いもない】。これが厳然とした事実なのだ。
ii mo warui mo nai. kore ga genzen to shita jijitsu na no da
It's neither good nor bad. It's an indubitable fact.

95 mon(o) [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

As a conjunctive P, **mon(o)** expresses a contrast.

95.1 Clause 1 **mono no** clause 2
95.2 Clause 1 **mono o** clause 2

95.1 CLAUSE 1 mono no CLAUSE 2

In this construction, **mono no** means 'whereas', 'while' (see 140, 56, 103).

a 株価は上昇している【ものの】、景気は低迷が続いている。
kabuka wa jōshō shite iru mono no keiki wa teimei ga tsuzuite iru
Although share prices are rising, the recession is continuing.

b 風雪の影響で一部の路線に遅れが出た【ものの】、大きな混乱はなかった。
fūsetsu no eikyō de ichibu no rosen ni okure ga deta mono no ōki na konran wa nakatta
There were delays on some lines due to the influence of the snow and wind, but there were no major disturbances.

c 県内景気はテンポは緩慢な【ものの】、回復傾向を持続している。
kennai keiki wa tenpo wa kanman na mono no kaifuku keikō o jizoku shite iru
Business in the prefecture is slow (*lit.* "in tempo"), but the recovery trend continues.

95.2 CLAUSE 1 mono o CLAUSE 2

This means 'but', 'although', and is used typically in the form -**ba ii mono o** 'should have . . . , but' (see 13).

a 「心外」なら断わればいい【ものを】受けてしまった。
shingai nara kotowareba ii mono o ukete shimatta
If he thought it 'unexpected' he should have turned it [= the premiership] down, but ended up taking it on.

Note – the combination **mono o** itself can also be **mono** [lexical N] + **o** [case P], or [nominalizer] + **o** [case P] (see 97, 98).

96 mon(o) [FINAL PARTICLE]

As a final P, **mon(o)** is basically used in two ways, S-finally and at the end of S1 in complex S.

96.1 Sentence-final use
96.1.1 Sentence **mon(o) (da)**
96.1.2 **gurai no mon(o) (da)**
96.1.3 Sentence **da mon(o)**
96.1.4 Sentence-**tai mon(o) da**
96.1.5 Sentence-**ta mon(o) da**
96.1.6 **nai mon(o) darō ka**
96.1.7 Sentence-verb-**ru mon(o) ka**
96.2 In compound and complex sentences
96.2.1 Sentence **mon(o) de** . . .
96.2.2 **hayai mon(o) de**, clause 2
96.2.3 Clause 1 **mon(o) da kara**, clause 2
96.2.4 Clause 1-(verb-potential) **mon(o) nara**, clause 2
96.2.5 Clause 1-(y)ō **mon(o) nara**, clause 2
96.2.6 Sentence-**ba** + **ii to iu/tte mon/mono ja/dewa nai**
96.2.7 Clause 1-**te/sore kara to iu mono** clause 2

96.1 SENTENCE-FINAL USE

96.1.1 Sentence mon(o) (da)

Attached to statements, **mon (da)** emphasizes the statement in the sense of 'you see'. [S] **mon** tends to be used by women, and [S] **mon da** by men.

a この仕事、"風俗"とは思ってない【もん】(思ってない = 思っていない)
kono shigoto fūzoku to wa omotte nai mon
I don't think of this job [working in a massage parlour] as 'immoral', you know.

b 想像以上に難しい【もんだ】。
sōzō ijōni muzukashii mon da
[The work] is a lot more difficult than I imagined.

c ボランティアなんて、ヒマな人がする【もんだ】。
borantia nante hima na hito ga suru mon da
Volunteer [work] is something that people with time on their hands do.

96.1.2 gurai no mon(o) (da)

This is used in the sense of 'that's about it' (see 61).

a …もう何日も、家族以外の者と顔を合わせていない。お医者さんぐらい【もん】だ。
mō nannichi mo kazoku igai no mono to kao o awasete inai. oishasan gurai no mono da
. . . for many days now, [the sick child] hasn't seen anyone outside the family. The doctor is about the only exception.

96.1.3 Sentence **da mon(o)**

Often used in combination with **datte**, **da mon/mono** (usually preceded by **n**, i.e. in the form **n da mon/mono**) is typically used by children and teenagers when complaining. It is not really translatable, but perhaps '. . . ! (+ context)' comes close.

a だって、もう家にいるのあきちゃったん【だもん】。
datte mō ie ni iru no akichatta n da mon
But, I've got bored with being in the house . . . !

b だってぇ、港の近くには見たり遊んだりする所がないん【だもん】。
dattē minato no chikaku ni wa mitari asondari suru tokoro ga nai n da mon
But, near the port there is nowhere to see or have fun . . . !

c 不審に思って一人の子に問いただしたところ、「だって、学校のトイレじゃ、おしりが洗えないん【だもの】」。
fushin ni omotte hitori no ko ni toitadashita tokoro datte gakkō no toire ja oshiri ga araenai n da mono
The teacher thought it strange [that some pupils had soiled their trousers] and asked one of the children. The reply was 'But I can't wash my bottom in the school toilet [unlike at home]!'

96.1.4 Sentence-**tai mon(o) da**

This is used for general statements about the way one ideally would like things to be 'would really like to' (see 189)

a やはり子供には元気に外で遊んでもらい【たいものだ】。
yahari kodomo ni wa genki ni soto de asonde moraitai mono da
After all, one does want one's children to play energetically outside.

b もう一度、日常の生活を見直し【たいものである】。
mō ichido nichijō no seikatsu o minaoshitai mono de aru
I really want to take another good look at our daily life.

96.1.5 Sentence-**ta mon(o) da**

This is used when recalling the past with a feeling of nostalgia 'used to', often together with **mukashi wa** 'in the old days'.

a 昔は春と秋だけ、商売し【たもん】だ。
mukashi wa haru to aki dake shōbai shita mon da
In the old days, we used to do business only in spring and autumn.

b 小さい子どもは、年上の子から遊びを教わっ【たものだ】。
chīsai kodomo wa toshiue no ko kara asobi o osowatta mono da
The small children used to be taught games by the older children.

96.1.6 **nai mon(o) darō ka**

In neg. Q form, this is used as a rhetorical device 'might there not' (see 114.7, 163.3.4).

a 何か新しい、別の人生は【ないものだろうか】。
nani ka atarashii betsu no jinsei wa nai mono darō ka
Might there not be a new and different life, I wonder.

96.1.7 Sentence-verb-**ru mon(o) ka**

This indicates a rhetorical Q 'certainly not' (see 165.1).

a 負けてなる【ものか】。
makete naru mono ka
I'm *not* going to lose! (*lit.* "Losing will do? No way!")

96.2 IN COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

In compound and complex S, **mon(o)** is used at the end of S1, including sentences where S2 is ellipted (understood from the context).

96.2.1 Sentence **mon(o) de** . . .

Being an unfinished sentence, this is often used to make unenthusiastic or non-committal statements. The phrase itself is equivalent to 'you see . . .'.

a 私、ゲームやらない【もんで】……
watashi gēmu yaranai mon de
I don't play games, you see . . .

b 攻撃するのはいやな【もんでして】ね」と…
kōgeki suru no wa iya na mon deshite ne to
. . . [he] said 'Going on the attack is something I don't like, you see'.

96.2.2 hayai mon(o) de, clause 2

Often used in combination with **mō**, this idiomatic combination emphasizes the rapid passage of time 'already'.

a 【早いもので】、入社してもう７年目に入っていた。
hayai mono de nyūsha shite mō shichinen-me ni haitte ita
Time passing so fast, it was already the seventh year since I had entered the company.

96.2.3 Clause 1 **mon(o) da kara**, clause 2

Like the conjunctive P **kara**, this combination indicates a reason; **mono** serves to emphasize the reason 'you see . . ., because' (see 75).

a 呼吸困難で言葉が出ない【ものだから】、手と目で必死に「アリガトウ」と伝えようとしてくれたんですね。
kokyū konnan de kotoba ga denai mono da kara te to me de hisshi ni arigatō to tsutaeyō to shite kureta n desu ne
You see, as he could not talk due to breathing difficulties, he tried his hardest to convey 'thank you' with his hands and eyes.

b 久しぶりに熱出して一人で寝た【もんだから】、子供のころ、カゼで熱出した時を思い出した。
hisashiburi ni netsu dashite hitori de neta mon da kara kodomo no koro kaze de netsu dashita toki o omoidashita
Because I had a fever, something I hadn't had for a long time, and went to bed alone, I remembered the times when I had had a fever because of a cold.

96.2.4 Clause 1-(verb-potential) **mon(o) nara**, clause 2

Used with the same V-pot. (or a pot. V with similar meaning) repeated, **mono** emphasizes the condition indicated by **nara** '*if* you can' (see 108).

a やれる【ものなら】、やってみろ。自社なれあいが天下に明らかになる。
yareru mono nara yatte miro. jisha nareai ga tenka ni akiraka ni naru
Go ahead and try (*lit.* "if you can do it, give it a try") [but] the conspiracy between the LPD and the Social Party will be obvious to all.

b 短くできる【ものなら】、短くすべく努力してほしいと思う。
mijikaku dekiru mono nara mijikaku su beku doryoku shite hoshii to omou
If they can speed things up (*lit.* "shorten them"), I'd like them to try.

96.2.5 Clause 1-**(y)ō mon(o) nara**, clause 2

This indicates a hypothetical condition 'if you were to do anything like' (see 247).

a 悠長に酒など飲んでい【ようものなら】、まったく取材にならない。
yūchō ni sake nado nonde iyō mono nara mattaku shuzai ni naranai
[Foreign correspondent:] If you were to hang around idly having drinks etc., you wouldn't be able to collect any news.

96.2.6 Sentence-**ba** + **ii to iu/tte mon/mono ja/dewa nai**

This means 'not necessarily'. **-ba ii** is colloquially often contracted to **-rya ii** (see 13.3.1).

a 休みだって長け【りゃいいってもんじゃない】らしい。
yasumi datte nagakerya ii tte mon ja nai rashii
Holidays, it seems, are not necessarily the longer the better.

96.2.7 Clause 1**-te/sore kara to iu mono** clause 2

Here, **to iu mono** is used to emphasize **kara** 'since', in the sense of 'ever since' (see 75).

a 小説『帝都物語』のヒットで脚光を浴びて【からというもの】、ほとんど休む間もなかった。
shōsetsu teito monogatari no hitto de kyakkō o abite kara to iu mono hotondo yasumu ma mo nakatta
Ever since he was thrown into the limelight through the popularity of the novel *Teito Mononogatari*, he's hardly had time to rest.

b …温泉施設をオープンして【からというもの】人気はうなぎ登り。
onsen shisetsu o ōpun shite kara to iu mono ninki wa unaginobori
. . . ever since they opened a hot spring facility, their popularity has been rising fast.

c それ【からというもの】、妻やその両親を説得するために頻繁に九州に足を運んだ。
sore kara to iu mono tsuma ya sono ryōshin o settoku suru tame ni hinpan ni kyūshū ni ashi o hakonda
Ever since [his divorce], he has visited Kyushu frequently in order to convince his wife and her parents [to allow him access to his son].

97 mon(o) [LEXICAL NOUN]

Used in the meaning of 'thing', **mono** (colloquially often contracted to **mon**) is a lexical N. As such, it is preceded and followed by forms that precede/follow N.

97.1 Lexical noun
97.1.1 **mon(o)** = thing
97.1.2 In generalizing statements
97.1.3 Noun/sentence-**no (to) wa/tte** . . . evaluatory adjective **mon(o) da**
97.1.4 Sentence **mono de wa nai**
97.1.5 **sono mono**
97.1.5.1 Noun **sono mono** particle . . . predicate
97.1.5.2 Noun/adjectival noun **sono mono**

97.1 LEXICAL NOUN

As a lexical N, the use of **mon(o)** 'thing' ranges from reference to things and goods, via indicating that a generalizing statement is made, to the phrase **sono mono** 'itself'.

97.1.1 mon(o) = thing

a おいしい【もの】を食べに行きましょう。
oishii mono o tabe ni ikimashō
Let's go and eat something nice.

b 人間が一番望む【もの】は自由ですよね。
ningen ga ichiban nozomu mono wa jiyū desu yo ne
What humans want most is freedom, isn't it.

c 日本の企業から、会社のノウハウを売ってほしいと申し込まれたことがある。でも売る【もん】なんてないのよね。
nihon no kigyō kara kaisha no nōhau o utte hoshii to mōshikomareta koto ga aru. demo uru mon nante nai no yo ne
We've been asked by Japanese businesses to sell their company's expertise. But they don't really have anything to sell, right?

97.1.2 In generalizing statements

a カネという【もの】は恐ろしい。
kane to iu mono wa osoroshii
Money is a frightening thing.

b お客様が一番正直です。甘い【もん】じゃないですよ。我々はただただ一生懸命勤めるだけです。
o-kyaku-sama ga ichiban shōjiki desu. amai mon ja nai desu yo. wareware wa tadatada isshōkenmei tsutomeru dake desu
The customers are very straightforward. They're not easily deceived. All we [can] do is to try and work as hard as we can.

97.1.3 Noun/sentence-**no (to) wa/tte** . . . evaluatory adjective **mon(o) da**

In a topic-comment sentence, **mono/mon da** gives emphasis to pred. in the sense of 'really'. The topic can be indicated by **wa, to wa**, or **tte.**

a【家族】とは【ありがたいものだ】。
kazoku to wa arigatai mono da
Family is really something to be thankful for.

b【落ち葉を踏んで、散歩するの】は【いいものだ】。
ochiba o funde sanpo suru no wa ii mono da
Taking a walk (*lit.* "stepping") on the fallen leaves feels really good.

c …「【ピース】って【いいもんだ】な」と感じられるのは、ピース御飯であろう。
pīsu tte ii mon da na to kanjirareru no wa pīsu gohan de arō
. . . [one food] where one feels that peas are really something nice is rice with peas, I think.

97.1.4 Sentence **mono de wa nai**

Attached to a statement, **mono de wa nai** gives it a generalizing ring 'not something that', 'naturally' 'can't be expected to'.

a まちづくりは建築家だけでできる【ものではない】。
machizukuri wa kenchikuka dake de dekiru mono de wa nai
Creating a town is not something that can be done by architects alone.

b ところが、世の中そううまくいく【もんじゃない】。
tokoro ga yo no naka sō umaku iku mon ja nai
However, things don't go as planned in this world.

97.1.5 sono mono

sono mono gives emphasis to what precedes it, i.e. a N or NP, or an adjective/AN.

97.1.5.1 *Noun* ***sono mono*** *particle . . . predicate*

Attached to N or NP, and followed by the case P required by the valency of V, **sono mono** emphasizes the preceding N in the sense of 'itself', 'per se'.

a 電子メール【そのもの】は決して新しい技術ではない。
denshimēru sono mono wa kesshite atarashii gijutsu de wa nai
Electronic mail per se is not a new technology at all.

b 銃【そのもの】が悪いわけではない。
jū sono mono ga warui wake de wa nai
It's not the case that guns themselves are to blame.

c 役員の数【そのもの】を減らす。
yakuin no kazu sono mono o herasu
We are going to reduce the actual number of officials.

97.1.5.2 *Noun/adjectival noun* ***sono mono***

This also provides emphasis 'the very N'.

a 政治は本来、税金【そのもの】。
seiji wa honrai zeikin sono mono
Politics is by [its] nature tax itself.

b 体長一メートル二、三十センチあるメバチの頭を一時間かけて焼きあげ「かぶと焼き」は、豪快【そのもの】。
taichō ichimētoru ni-san-senchi aru mebachi no atama o ichijikan kakete yakiageta kabutoyaki wa gōkai sono mono
The *kabutoyaki*, the roast head of a big-eye tuna with a body length of 1.2 to 1.3m cooked for an hour, was quite spectacular.

98 mono/mon [NOMINALIZER]

In this use, **mon(o)** is similar to **no** [nominalizer] (see 135).

a いくつかの選択肢の中から一番条件に合った【もの】を自然に選んだだけ。
ikutsu ka no sentakushi no naka kara ichiban jōken ni atta mono o shizen ni eranda dake
From several choices, I just naturally selected the one that suited the conditions best.

99 MORPHOLOGY

Japanese morphology is of the agglutative type, i.e. V and other inflected items often attach quite a number of separable elements. For instance, besides the pln. neg. ending -**nai**, the neg. form of V can also attach the causative/pass. (or hon.) endings -**(sa)seru**/**(ra)reru**. For this reason, it is useful to refer to some of the above forms as a 'base'. For instance, the 'V-neg. base' is the form of verb to which (among others) -**nai** attaches.

a ‥痛感させられたそうだ。
tsūkan-sa-se-rare-ta-sō da
apparently [he] was made to feel acutely . . .

This can be analysed as follows:

V: **tsūkan-suru** 'feel acutely', **nai**-base = **tsūkan-sa**
Causative ending -**se**
Passive ending -**rare**
Past ending -**ta**
Sentence ending -**sō** [hearsay]

100 na (yo) [FOLLOWS VERB-STEM]: FAMILIAR IMPERATIVE

Attached to V-stem, **na (yo)** is used for 'familiar' imp. These are used (mostly by males) towards younger members of family, between schoolfriends, etc. (see 69.3).

a なあオヤジ、早く隠居し【なよ】。
nā oyaji hayaku inkyo shi na yo
Come on, dad, retire soon, will you.

b「孝行をしたい時にジジババなし」とは、言わないけど、そうなんだよ、早く気がつき【なよ】。
kōkō o shitai toki ni jiji baba nashi to wa iwanai kedo sō na n da yo hayaku ki ga tsuki na yo
There is no saying 'When you want to be filial, your parents are already gone', but that's the way it is, come on, wake up to it!

101 na (yo) [FOLLOWS VERB-ru]: NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE

Attached to V-**ru**, **na** indicates a neg. imp. 'don't'. Used by itself, it is quite rude, and is therefore limited to such situations as the army and other male bastions, and irate remarks to strangers. The combination **na yo**, on the other hand, gives the imp. a familiar or friendly ring. Note also the informal contraction V-**ru na** → V-**nna** (101.2 c).

101.1 **na**
101.2 **na yo**

101.1 na

a 押す【な】。
osu na
Don't push!

b 電車の中でいちゃいちゃする【な】。
densha no naka de ichaicha suru na
Don't fondle [each other] on the train!

c 官僚は株に手を出す【な】。
kanryō wa kabu ni te o dasu na
Bureaucrats shouldn't dabble in shares!

d 心配なさる【な】。
Shinpai nasaru na
Don't worry, please!

101.2 na yo

a おふくろ、死ぬ【なよ】。
ofukuro shinu na yo
Mother, don't die!

b いいと言うまで死ぬ【なよ】。
ii to iu made shinu na yo
Don't die until I say so!

c …「無理すん【なよ】」。
muri sun na yo
. . . don't overexert yourself!

d いきなり変なものを送る【なよ】。
ikinari hen na mono o okuru na yo
'Don't just send something strange all of a sudden.'

102 nado [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

nado is basically used as an adverbial P, but can also be used to modify a N by means of **no** or **to iu** (see also 241).

102.1 Noun **nado**
102.1.1 Noun **nado** particle . . . predicate
102.2 Noun **nado** . . . noun
102.2.1 Noun **nado** noun/noun phrase
102.2.2 Noun **nado no/to iu** noun
102.3 Verb **nado**

102.1 NOUN **nado**

Attached to N, **nado** indicates that the item(s) mentioned is/are representative samples, with further ones being implied 'for example', 'among others', 'and so on'.

102.1.1 Noun **nado** particle . . . predicate

nado is sandwiched between the N and the case (or other) P required by the valency of V. Note that pred. can be a final pred., or the pred. of a subordinate or co-ordinate clause.

a 代表作に「桜川」「花軍」「雨月物語」【など】がある。
daihyōsaku ni sakuragawa hanaikusa ugetsu monogatari nado ga aru
Representative works include 【among others】 *Sakuragawa*, *Hanaikusa* and *Ugetsu Monogatari.*

b 契約者には腕時計【など】を贈る。
keiyakusha ni wa udedokei nado o okuru
They give wristwatches 【and whatnot】 to the contracting parties.

c 周りは大掃除【など】に大忙しだけど、ボクらの年越し準備は快適だ。
mawari wa ōsōji nado ni ōisogashi da kedo bokura no toshikoshi junbi wa kaiteki da
[Everyone else in] the neighbourhood is very busy with general housecleaning 【and whatnot】, but our year-end preparations are quite pleasant.

d 八戸市内【など】では断水が続き、市民生活に影響が出ている。
hachinohe shinai nado de wa dansui ga tsuzuki shimin seikatsu ni eikyō ga dete iru
In the city of Hachinohe 【for instance】, the water supply remains shut off, and the living conditions of the townspeople are being affected.

102.2 NOUN **nado** . . . NOUN

102.2.1 Noun **nado** noun/noun phrase

Modifying a N or a NP, **nado** serves to give concrete examples of the content of that N or NP.

a ハモ、カキ料理【など】季節メニューも増やすことを検討中だ。
hamo kaki ryōri nado kisetsu menyū mo fuyasu koto o kentōchū da
We are presently looking into the possibility of adding seasonal menus of 【for example】 sea eel and oyster dishes.

b すでに十月から宮城、福島【など】四県で販売している。
sude ni jūgatsu kara miyagi fukushima nado yonken de hanbai shite iru
Since October, we have already been marketing [our product] in four prefectures, 【including】 Miyagi and Fukushima.

c 今後はボランティアの育成【など】、ソフト面の準備が課題になるだろう。
kongo wa borantia no ikusei nado sofutomen no junbi ga kadai ni naru darō
In the future, the task at hand will probably be to set up the 'soft' side – for instance, training volunteers 【etc.】.

102.2.2 Noun **nado no/to iu** noun

Similar to 102.2.1, the N **nado** is attached to serve as one or several example/s of the content of the modified N.

a トウモロコシは品種改良、栽培技術の改善【などの】努力が続いている。
tōmorokoshi wa hinshu kairyō saibai gijutsu no kaizen nado no doryoku ga tsuzuite iru
With respect to corn, efforts continue to be made 【in areas like】 improving strains and cultivation techniques.

b ヌエは顔がサル、胴はタヌキ、尻尾はヘビ【などという】怪物である。
nue wa kao ga saru dō wa tanuki shippo wa hebi nado to iu kaibutsu de aru
The Japanese chimera is a creature 【with [features] like】 the face of a monkey, the body of a *tanuki* [raccoon dog], and the tail of a snake.

102.3 VERB **nado**

Here, **nado** is attached to examples of actions taken and means 'such as doing', as a more formal/written equivalent of **-tari** (see 192).

Note how the V can attach an 'extra' **shite (ori)** after **nado** (examples a and b).

a PRチラシを作成する【など】して地元の協力を求めていく。
PR chirashi o sakusei suru nado shite jimoto no kyōryoku o motomete iku
We'll draw up PR flyers and do other such things to request co-operation at the local level.

b 優輝ちゃんは病院に運ばれたが頭の骨を折る【など】しており、約二時間半後に死亡した。
yūki-chan wa byōin ni hakobareta ga atama no hone o oru nado shite ori yaku nijikanhan-go ni shibō shita
Yūki-chan was taken to hospital but had a broken skull, and died two and a half hours later

c スーパーが営業時間を延長する【など】、業態間競争も起きている。
sūpā ga eigyō jikan o enchō suru nado gyōtai-kan kyōsō mo okite iru
Competition in business conditions is also taking place – for instance, grocery stores are extending their hours of business and so on.

103 **-nagara** [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

-nagara has two major uses, linking simultaneous actions 'while', and actions that are contrastive in nature 'even though'. In the second use only **-nagara** can attach **mo**.

103.1 Clause 1 verb-stem-**nagara** clause 2
103.2 Clause 1 verb-stem/adjective-noun-modifying/adjectival noun/noun-**nagara (mo)** clause 2
103.3 Idiomatic uses

103.1 CLAUSE 1 VERB-STEM-**nagara** CLAUSE 2

-nagara indicates that two concurrent or simultaneous actions are performed by the same person (or subject) in the sense of 'while'. V1 can be a durative or repeatable V, but not an instant V, i.e. in example a **-nagara** cannot be used.

a % ×私たちはすわり【ながら】話した。
×**watashitachi wa suwari-nagara hanashita**

Instead, this would be expressed by V1-**te**, V2 (see 31.1):

b % 私たちはすわっ【て】話した。
watashitachi wa suwatte hanashita
We talked while sitting down.

Other conjunctive P that translate as 'while' are **aida**, **-tsutsu**, and **uchi** (see 8).

Japanese being a V-final language, the main V or V phrase is S2. Note that in English the word order is usually reversed, with the main V coming first.

c 眠い目をこすり【ながら】、空港へ急ぐ。
nemui me o kosuri-nagara kūkō e isogu
I rush to the airport, rubbing my sleepy eyes.

d 小学校の教師をし【ながら】地元紙に連載小説を書いたこともある。
shōgakkō no kyōshi o shi-nagara jimotoshi ni rensai shōsetsu o kaita koto mo aru
Once he wrote serial novels for a local newspaper while working as a primary school teacher.

103.2 CLAUSE 1 VERB-STEM/ADJECTIVE-NOUN-MODIFYING/ ADJECTIVAL NOUN/NOUN-**nagara** (mo) CLAUSE 2

This indicates a contrast 'even though' (see 140, 56, 79, 33).

The actions or events before and after -**nagara** are contrastive in meaning.

a 彼等は悲しみや苦しみがあり【ながら】誇りをもって生きている。
kare-ra wa kanashimi ya kurushimi ga ari-nagara hokori o motte ikite iru
Even though they have sorrows and hardship, they live with pride.

b あふれる情報の刺激を受け【ながらも】退屈している。
afureru jōhō no shigeki o uke-nagara mo taikutsu shite iru
Even though [modern man] is exposed to the stimulus of abundant information, he is bored.

c 若い【ながら】、次期社長との呼び声も高かった。
wakai-nagara jiki shachō to no yobigoe mo takakatta
Though he was young, there were many calls for him to be the next company president.

d 家計の消費支出が穏やか【ながらも】着実に上向いてきた。
kakei no shōhi shishutsu ga odayaka-nagara mo chakujitsu ni uwamuite kita
The household spending outgoings were steadily improving, albeit slowly.

e 80歳の高齢【ながら】かくしゃくとしている。
hachijussai no kōrei-nagara kakushaku to shite iru
Despite her advanced age of 80 she is full of vigour.

103.3 IDIOMATIC USES

As part of a lexical expression, -**nagara** forms an adverbial expression (some expressions require **ni/ni shite** after -**nagara**). When used to modify N, the particle **no** is attached. Translations are idiomatic.

a 「【微力ながら】町のお手伝いができれば」と抱負を語った。
biryoku-nagara machi no o-tetsudai ga dekireba to hōfu o katatta
He talked about his aspirations, saying '[I'd be glad] to be of help to the town [with my limited abilities]'.

b 【残念ながら】この病気の原因はまだ分からない。
zannen-nagara kono byōki no gen'in wa mada wakaranai
[Unfortunately], the cause of this disease is still unknown.

c 社長が【涙ながらに】謝罪したが，会場は重苦しいムードが支配していた。
shachō ga namida-nagara ni shazai shita ga kaijō wa omokurushii mūdo ga shihai shite ita
The company president apologized [in tears], but in the hall a strained atmosphere prevailed.

d 【居ながらにして】アフリカを体験できる番組になりそうだ。
i-nagara ni shite afurika o taiken dekiru bangumi ni narisō da
It should be a programme where you can experience Africa from your armchair.

e 負傷者の救出訓練が本番【さながらに】繰り広げられた。
fushōsha no kyūshutsu kunren ga honban sa-nagara ni kurihirogerareta
The practice for rescuing the injured took place 【as if】real.

f 【昔ながら】の簡素なパッケージも人気がある。
mukashi-nagara no kanso na pakkēji mo ninki ga aru
Simple packaging 【as of old】 is popular, too.

g 【生まれながら】の悲観主義者（ペシミスト）もオプティミストに変身できる。
umare-nagara no hikan shugisha (peshimisuto) mo oputimisuto ni henshin dekiru
Even 【born】 pessimists can change to optimists.

104 (-)nai [NEGATIVE ENDING/NEGATIVE ADJECTIVE]: FORMS

There is both a neg. adj. **nai** 'there isn't' (i.e. the opposite of **aru** or **iru** 'there is'), and a neg. ending **-nai**. Both inflect like adj. (see 3), but note that the neg. ending **-nai** has two conjunctive forms, **-naide** and **-nakute**, as shown in Table 15 (for differences in use see 112).

In colloquial language, especially the language of men from Eastern Japan, **(-)nai** is often pronounced as **nē**.

Table 15 Forms of the negative adjective **nai**/negative ending **-nai**

		Plain	*Polite*
Finite N-mod. (Plain only)	1 Non-past	**na-i**	**na-i desu**
	2 Past	**nakat-ta**	**nakat-ta desu**
	3 Neg.	**naku-nai**	**naku-nai desu/** **naku arimasen**
	4 Neg.-past	**nakunakat-ta**	**naku-arimasen-deshita**
	5 Stem	**naku**	
	6 Root	**na**	
	7 Conjunctive	**naku-te/-nai-de**	
	8 Conditional	**nakere-ba**	

a ああ、二度と浮気なんかしっこ【ねえ】。(V-っこない = no way will V)
aa nido to uwaki nanka shikko nē
Yeah, there's no way he's gonna cheat on his wife again.

Note – There are some lexical items ending in **-nai**, which do not have negative meaning, such as **sukunai** 'few' and **tsumaranai** 'boring'.

105 naka [RELATIONAL NOUN]

The relational N **naka** is similar in meaning to the English prepositions 'among', 'in', 'inside' (see 171, 230).

a 男性の【中】には磨かない人もいるが、…
dansei no naka ni wa migakanai hito mo iru ga
Among men, there are people who don't brush [their teeth], but . . .

b …心の【中】では泣いているときがあるのです。
kokoro no naka de wa naite iru toki ga aru no desu
. . . there are times when I cry inside my heart.

c タイムカプセルの【中】に入り込んだような錯覚を覚えさせる。
taimu kapuseru no naka ni hairikonda yō na sakkaku o oboesaseru
[The exhibition] makes you feel as if you have entered a time capsule.

106 nanka [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

nanka is very similar in use to **nante** (see 107). Like **nante**, it places emphasis on the N or V etc. preceding it, with either a pos. or neg. implication 'such a thing/place as'. Often there is no need to translate it, its force being clear from the context (see also 102).

The difference to **nante** is that **nante** attaches mainly to N that are subjects and objects (replacing the case P **ga/o**), whereas **nanka** can also attach to other cases. It can attach case P like **de, ni, yori**; can be sandwiched between **ni** (adverbial form of cop.) and **naru**; and between an adj. and its neg. ending. **nanka** is also used before pred. in the sense of 'somehow'.

106.1 Noun **nanka** + negative
106.2 Noun **nanka** + rhetorical question
106.3 Noun **nanka** + positive
106.4 Verb/adjective **nanka** (negative)
106.5 **nanka** + predicate

106.1 NOUN **nanka** + NEGATIVE

This indicates that the N to which **nanka** is attached is belittled, slighted or emphasized 'and such like', 'any such', etc.

a 別に秘密【なんか】ない。
betsu ni himitsu nanka nai
There aren't any particular secrets or anything.

b こちらの意見【なんか】聞きませんよ。
kochira no iken nanka kikimasen yo
They won't listen to the likes of our opinions, I tell you!

c スポーツに学歴【なんか】関係ない。
supōtsu ni gakureki nanka kankei nai
In sports, academic background and all that doesn't matter.

d 僕は金【なんか】稼ぎたくもないし、先生だなんて呼ばれたくもない。
boku wa kane nanka kasegitaku mo nai shi sensei da nante yobaretaku mo nai
I have no desire to make money or anything like that, and I don't want to be called a teacher either.

e 日本ではサラリーマンはだれ一人豪邸【なんか】建てることはできない。
nihon de wa sararīman wa dare hitori gōtei nanka tateru koto wa dekinai
In Japan, no white-collar worker can build a great big fancy house.

106.2 NOUN **nanka** + RHETORICAL QUESTION

The meaning imparted by **nanka** is the same as in 106.1.

a 絵【なんか】で食っていけるか。
e nanka de kutte ikeru ka
Do you expect one can make a living from painting!

106.3 NOUN **nanka** + POSITIVE

With pos. pred., **nanka** is also used in a belittling or emphasizing sense; after first person pron., the implication is usually one of modesty 'such a person/thing/place/time as'.

a 私【なんか】おとなしい方】よ
watashi nanka otonashii hō yo
I'm on the quiet side, you know

b 公募【なんか】うそばっかり。
kōbo nanka uso bakkari
Public advertisements for posts are a total fake.

c テレビ【なんか】けとばせるよう、足元に置けばいい。
terebi nanka ketobaseru yō ashimoto ni okeba ii
Something like TV should put be on the floor, so that one can kick it.

d サラリーマンとOLばっかりのディスコ【なんか】退屈だもの。
sararīman to ōeru bakkari no disuko nanka taikutsu da mono
Discos with just male and female company workers are boring, you see [= so we tried something else].

e 「洋服【なんか】何でもいい」と言いたいのだ。
yōfuku nanka nan demo ii to iitai no da
I want to state [= by the way I dress] 'Clothes are of no concern to me'.

f 魚市場の活気に触れ、「銀座【なんか】よりニッポンを実感できたよ」と笑う。
uoichiba no kakki ni fure ginza nanka yori nippon o jikkan dekita yo to warau
Mentioning the energy of the fish market, 'I've got a much more real feel about Japan than [having gone somewhere] like Ginza', he laughs.

g 口の悪いKさんは『オリンピックなんか全く関心がない』と言った。
kuchi no warui K-san wa orinpikku nanka mattaku kanshin ga nai to itta
The foul-mouthed K-san said, 'I haven't the faintest interest in the Olympics'.

106.4 VERB/ADJECTIVE **nanka** (NEGATIVE)

Sandwiched between conjunctive forms (-**te** forms and conjunctive-form equivalents) of V/adj. and **iru**, **nai**, etc., **nanka** emphasizes the meaning of V/A + **iru/nai,** etc.

a 私は別に外見にこだわって【なんか】いないの。
watashi wa betsu ni gaiken ni kodawatte nanka inai no
I'm not particularly concerned about my appearance.

b どうか、私の主張に賛同された方は、清く【なんか】ない一票を…。
dōka watashi no shuchō ni sandō sareta kata wa kiyoku nanka nai ippyō o
Those who agree with my position, please [give me] your tarnished (*lit.* "far-from-clean") vote . . .

106.5 **nanka** + PREDICATE

When modifying a pred., **nanka** indicates the idea of 'somehow'.

a お父さん! 僕が腕相撲で勝ってしまったとき、【なんか】寂しかった。
otōsan boku ga udezumō de katte shimatta toki nanka sabishikatta
Daddy! When I defeated you at arm-wrestling, I felt somehow lonely.

b 「この人、【なんか】ものすごくシロウトだなあ」という印象を持ってしまう。
kono hito nanka monosugoku shirōto da nā to iu inshō o motte shimau
One gets the impression that this person is somehow unbelievably amateurish.

107 nante [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

nante gives emphasis to the N or V, etc. preceding it, with either a pos. or neg. implication 'such a thing as'. Often there is no need to translate it, its force being clear from the context (see 102, 106).

107.1 Noun **nante** + negative
107.2 Noun **nante** + positive
107.3 **nante** + **(iu) mono/koto/no**/noun **wa** + predicate
107.4 Clause **nante**
107.5 Quoted speech or thought **nante**
107.6 **nante** with ellipted predicate

107.1 NOUN nante + NEGATIVE

With a neg. pred., **nante** emphasizes that the proposition of the sentence is out of the question or ridiculous for the speaker, or that he/she never even considered it before 'no such person/thing/place/time'.

a 年齢【なんて】数えたこともない。
nenrei nante kazoeta koto mo nai
I've never counted my age.

b 世界中どこに行っても豚肉が牛肉より高い所【なんて】ない。
sekaijū doko ni itte mo butaniku ga gyūniku yori takai tokoro nante nai
No matter where you go in the world, there is no place where pork is more expensive than beef.

c 人間の力【なんて】そんなに変わりゃしません。（変わりゃしません ＝ 変わりはしません）
ningen no chikara nante sonna ni kawarya shimasen
[Don't be ridiculous,] people's abilities don't vary that much.

107.2 NOUN **nante** + POSITIVE

With a pos. pred., **nante** singles out (or emphasizes) the N (or NP) it is attached to as something specially attractive or frightening etc. 'such a person/thing/place/time as'.

a とくに星降る夜【なんて】最高よ!。
toku ni hoshi furu yoru nante saikō yo
Especially, nights with shooting stars are great, you know!

b 「まぁ、赤ちゃんの声【なんて】何年ぶり」と老夫婦が感動した面持ち。
mā akachan no koe nante nannenburi to rōfūfu ga kandō shita omomochi
'Oh my, how many years has it been since we've heard a baby's voice', said the elderly couple, with an emotional look on their faces.

c 無言の生活【なんて】恐怖ですよね。
mugon no seikatsu nante kyōfu desu yo ne
How dreadful a life without words would be, wouldn't it?

107.3 **nante** + **(iu) mono/koto/no**/NOUN **wa** + PREDICATE

Here, **nante** often imparts a belittling nuance 'such a thing as'.

a 昔は偏差値【なんて】ものはなかった。
mukashi wa hensachi nante mono wa nakatta
Formerly there was no such thing as 'deviation value' [in the exam system].

b 教科書【なんて】いうものは永らくつまらないのが当たり前だった。
kyōkasho nante iu mono wa nagaraku tsumaranai no ga atarimae datta
It was taken for granted that a textbook was something that was long and tedious.

107.4 CLAUSE **nante**

Depending on whether pred. is pos. or neg., the meaning is 'something like' or 'anything like', but is often best not translated.

a 学校に行ってこんなにうれしい【なんて】初めて。
gakkō ni itte konna ni ureshii nante hajimete
It's the first time I've been so happy to be at school.

b 初めは、芸術だ【なんて】とても思えなかった。
hajime wa geijutsu da nante totemo omoenakatta
At first, it just didn't feel like art.

c お父さん、もう勉強しなさい【なんて】いわないで。
otōsan mō benkyō shinasai nante iwanai de
Daddy, please don't tell me to study any more.

d 「まさか、こんなことになる【なんて】」と驚いた表情だった。
masaka konna koto ni naru nante to odoroita hyōjō datta
'I never thought it would come to this', [the relatives of the hostage] said with a shocked look.

e 大学をドロップアウトする【なんて】とんでもない。
daigaku o doroppuauto suru nante tonde mo nai
Drop out of university? Out of the question.

107.5 QUOTED SPEECH OR THOUGHT **nante**

This gives emphasis to the quoted speech or thought (direct or indirect) 'saying/thinking things like'.

a 「会社に一生尽くす気はない」【なんて】いう新人もいた。
kaisha ni isshō tsukusu ki wa nai nante iu shinjin mo ita
There were even some new employees who had the nerve to say, 'I have no intention of devoting my whole life to the company'.

b 別々に住む【なんて】考えられない。
betsubetsu ni sumu nante kangaerarenai
Living apart is unthinkable.

c 昔はどこの大学か【なんて】関係なかった。ところが会社が大きくなると一流大学の学生が来て、つい採用してしまう。
mukashi wa doko no daigaku ka nante kankei nakatta. tokoro ga kaisha ga ōkiku naru to ichiryū daigaku no gakusei ga kite tsui saiyō shite shimau
In the old days, it didn't make any difference which university [applicants came from]. But as the company gets bigger, students from first-rate universities come [to apply], and you end up employing them.

107.6 **nante** WITH ELLIPTED PREDICATE

The meaning of pred. being clear from the context, this indicates the meaning of 'fancy (that)', 'can you believe it?', 'how can they'.

a こんな不況の時期に値上げする【なんて】
konna fukyō no jiki ni neage suru nante
How can they raise prices during this [terrible] recession?

b 「女性が泊まりで旅行だ【なんて】。危ないからやめなさい」「だってもう二十六歳よ。少しは自由にさせて」
josei ga tomari de ryokō da nante. abunai kara yamenasai. datte mō nijūrokusai yo. sukoshi wa jiyū ni sasete
'A woman going on an overnight trip? Cancel, it's too dangerous.' 'But, I'm 26 already! Give me a bit of freedom.'

c 「こんな所で発砲事件がある【なんて】」と声を震わせた。
konna tokoro de happō jiken ga aru nante to koe o furuwaseta
'How could there be a shooting incident in a place like this?' she said, with a tremor in her voice.

108 nara [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

Like **-ba**, **dattara**, **-tara** and **to**, **nara** indicates a condition, and often translates as 'if'. Note especially use 108.1, which is particular to **nara** and **dattara** (i.e. **-ba**, **-tara** and **to** cannot be used in this way).

nara (like its more colloquial variants **(n) nara** and **(n) dattara**) is attached to V and A, and N/AN as follows.

V-ru/A-i (n(o)) nara	(Past: **-ta (n(o)) nara**)
N/AN **nara**	(Past: noun **datta (no) nara**)

108.1	Taking up what someone else has said
108.2	Clause 1 **nara(-ba)** clause 2: replaceable by **-tara**
108.3	Clause 1 is a condition for clause 2 to take place
108.4	Clause 1 and clause 2 expressing a contrast
108.5	Clause 1-**ta nara** (clause 2 = past)
108.6	Idiomatic expressions
108.6.1	**onaji/dōse** verb-**ru nara**
108.6.2	With same verb repeated
108.6.2.1	Verb-**ru nara** verb-**te miro**
108.6.2.2	Verb-**ru mono nara** verb-**tai**
108.6.2.3	Verb-(y)ō **mono nara**
108.7	Noun **nara**, where **nara** functions like **wa** [focus particle]

108.1 TAKING UP WHAT SOMEONE ELSE HAS SAID

a 会社に文句がある【なら】、自分で変えてみたら。
kaisha ni monku ga aru nara jibun de kaete mitara
If you have complaints about the company, how about changing it yourself?

b 出るという【なら】、どうしてもいたくないと言うの【なら】、仕方がない。
deru to iu nara dōshite mo itakunai to iu no nara shikata ga nai
If he says he'll leave [the Party], and doesn't want to stay under any circumstances that can't be helped.

c ワイエスさん【なら】今朝この店に来たわよ。
waiesu-san nara kesa kono mise ni kita wa yo
If you're looking for Wyeth, he came to my shop this morning.

d そんなに高い【なら】、おたくで買わないからいいですよ、という態度……
sonna ni takai nara otaku de kawanai kara ii desu yo to iu taido
[The attitude of:] if it's that price, no thanks, I won't buy it at your shop . . .

108.2 CLAUSE 1 **nara(-ba)** CLAUSE 2: REPLACEABLE BY **-tara**

Here, the hypothetical nature of S1 is weak, being more like an established fact.

a これ以上水不足が続く【なら】、ここらの稲が駄目になるのも時間の問題だ。
kore ijō mizu busoku ga tsuzuku nara kokora no ine ga dame ni naru no mo jikan no mondai da
If the water shortage continues any longer, it's only a matter of time before the rice plants around here are ruined.

b 直接あった【なら】、ありがとうと言いたい。
chokusetsu atta nara arigatō to iitai
Once I've met her in person, I want to say thanks.

c 百万円預けた【なら】、三年後の受取額は百十万二千円。
hyakuman-en azuketa nara sannen-go no uketori-gaku wa hyakujūman nisen-en
If one has invested one million yen, the amount one receives after three years is 1,102,000 yen.

d しかし、せっかく自然を求めて野外に来【たならば】、日帰りハイキングのような気持ちで、車から降り自分の足で散策することを勧めたい。
shikashi sekkaku shizen o motomete yagai ni kita naraba higaeri haikingu no yō na kimochi de kuruma kara ori jibun no ashi de sansaku suru koto o susumetai
However, if people have come all the way in search of nature, I would recommend they get out of the car and travel on foot, like on a one-day hiking trip.

e 最初、冷水であら熱をとった【なら】、たっぷり氷を入れた水に移し入れ、キューット冷やす。
saisho reisui de aranetsu o totta nara tappuri kōri o ireta mizu ni utsushiire kyūtto hiyasu
After you've cooled off the first heat [of the dumplings] in cold water, you put them in water with plenty of ice, and make them really cold.

f ブランド品や有名店で買ったの【なら】すぐ分かりますよ。
burandohin ya yūmeiten de katta no nara sugu wakarimasu yo
If it's a well-known brand or one [= a diamond] that was bought in a reputable shop, you check [the price] easily.

g …金融機関は「ダブルA【なら】安心」と油断していた。
kin'yū kikan wa daburu ē nara anshin to yudan shite ita
. . . monetary institutions were off their guard, thinking that if they're [rated] double A, there's nothing to worry about.

108.3 CLAUSE 1 IS A CONDITION FOR CLAUSE 2 TO TAKE PLACE

Usually, S2 (if it takes place) precedes S1 in time.

a 三つの願いがかなう【なら】、何を望むか。
mittsu no negai ga kanau nara nani o nozomu ka
If you could have three wishes fulfilled, what would you ask for?

b 君が喜ぶ【なら】、ダイヤの指輪だって買ってあげよう。
kimi ga yorokobu nara daiya no yubiwa datte katte ageyō
If it makes you happy, I'll even buy you a diamond ring.

c 女性があんないい人生を送れる【なら】、今度は断然女性に生まれ変わりたいですね。
josei ga anna ii jinsei o okureru nara kondo wa danzen josei ni umarekawaritai desu ne
If women can have such good lives, I definitely want to be reborn as a woman next time.

d フルタイムで働く【なら】、子供は産んでも一人。
furutaimu de hataraku nara kodomo wa unde mo hitori
If I was to work full time, I'd have one child at most.

e ねえ、へるん【なら】こっちのホテルがいいな。
nē hairu n nara kotchi no hoteru ga ii na
Look, if we go [to a love hotel], then I'd like this one.

f 「あなたが本当のサンタさん【なら】できるでしょ」とねだるシーン…(でしょ = でしょう)
anata ga hontō no santa-san nara dekiru desho to nedaru shīn
The scene where [the girl] asks [to be given a brother and father] with the words 'If you're the real Santa, you should be able to do it' . . .

108.4 CLAUSE 1 AND CLAUSE 2 EXPRESSING A CONTRAST

'If on the one hand . . . , then on the other'.

a 東京が欧米を向く【なら】、関西はアジアへの玄関口となるべきだ。
tōkyō ga ōbei o muku nara kansai wa ajia e no genkanguchi to narubeki da
If Tokyo looks to the West, then Kansai should became the gateway to Asia.

b 理事長が辞める【なら】、私も辞める。
rijichō ga yameru nara watashi mo yameru
If the chairman is going to quit, then I will too.

c 相手がタックル練習を百回やる【なら】、こっちは二百回やったんだ。
aite ga takkuru renshū o hyakkai yaru nara kotchi wa nihyakkai yatta n da
If the rival team practised a tackle 100 times, we'd do it 200 times.

108.5 CLAUSE 1-**ta nara** (CLAUSE 2 = PAST)

This indicates a hypothetical condition, although S2 can be left unsaid (example a).

Note the combination **kari ni** . . . **nara** 'supposing that', 'assuming that'.

a 君がここにいてくれ【たなら】。
kimi ga koko ni ite kureta nara
If you'd only stayed here.

b 【仮に】、いじめと認識できてい【たなら】、学校側はどんな対応ができたのか。
kari ni ijime to ninshiki dekite ita nara gakkōgawa wa donna taiō ga dekita no ka
Supposing that they'd perceived things as bullying, what would the school have been able to do about it?

c コンピューターよりパイロットの操縦を優先させるボーイング社の航空機だっ【たなら】、今回のような事故は起きなかったという意見はある。
konpyūtā yori pairotto no sōjū o yūsen saseru bōingu-sha no kōkūki datta nara konkai no yō na jiko wa okinakatta to iu iken wa aru
There are some who feel that had it been a Boeing plane, which gives priority to the pilot's control rather than the computer, this accident wouldn't have happened

108.6 IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

108.6.1 onaji/dōse verb-ru nara

This has the meaning 'if . . . anyway'.

a 同じもめる【なら】、今もめた方がいい。
onaji momeru nara ima mometa hō ga ii
If we're going to have a dispute anyway, we might as well have it now.

b 同じ払う【なら】、ローンを払った方が資産が残っていい。
onaji harau nara rōn o haratta hō ga shisan ga nokotte ii
If one pays anyway, it's better to pay off a loan, in which case property remains.

c 同じ働く【なら】、自分の好きなことを仕事にした方がやりがいがあるし、楽しい。
onaji hataraku nara jibun no suki na koto o shigoto ni shita hō ga yarigai ga aru shi tanoshii
If one works anyway, doing a job one likes is more rewarding and enjoyable.

108.6.2 With same verb repeated

108.6.2.1 *Verb-ru nara verb-te miro*

This involves a repetition of the same V, flanked by **nara** and **-te miro**, literally meaning "if you do, then just try", i.e. 'I'll be ready for you!'

a 大型店進出に対する危機感を「来る【なら】来【てみろ】」と迎え撃つ気概に変える地元商店が増えることが結局は商店街の活性化につながるのではないか。
ōgata-ten shinshutsu ni taisuru kikikan o kuru nara kite miro to mukae-utsu kigai ni kaeru jimoto shōten ga fueru koto ga kekkyoku wa shōtengai no kassei-ka ni tsunagaru no de wa nai ka
I think that the emergence of more local shops which stop panicking about the arrival of large retailers and adopt an attitude of defiance such as 'You come and we'll be ready for you' will in the end revitalize the shopping streets.

108.6.2.2 *Verb-ru mono nara verb-tai*

This is one way of emphasizing the condition, with a repeated V (see 96.2.4).

a 信組の監督は好きでやっているんじゃない。こんな権限、返せるもの【なら】返したい。
shinkumi no kantoku wa suki de yatte iru n ja nai. konna kengen kaeseru mono nara kaeshitai
Supervising the credit associations is not something we enjoy doing. We'd rather give up this power if we could

108.6.2.3 *Verb-(y)ō mono nara*

This indicates a hypothetical condition 'if you were to do anything like' (see 96.2.5, 247).

a うかつに手を出そうもの【なら】、大けがしかねない。
ukatsu ni te o dasō mono nara, ōkega shi-kanenai
If you were to dabble [in the stock market], you might get your hands burned badly.

108.7 NOUN **nara**, WHERE **nara** FUNCTIONS LIKE **wa** [FOCUS PARTICLE]

Here, **nara** can be replaced with **wa**, except when **nara** is used twice (**wa** in the sense of topic can be used only once in a sentence).

a 震度５までの地震【なら】慣れっこだが、今回の揺れは過去と比べものにならないほど激しかった。
shindo go made no jishin nara narekko da ga konkai no yure wa kako to kurabemono ni naranai hodo hageshikatta
An earthquake up to an intensity of 5 is something one's used to, but this tremor was so violent that it defies all comparisons with the past.

b パソコン通信に慣れた人【なら】、５分とかからない。
pasokon tsūshin ni nareta hito nara gofun to kakaranai
Someone who is used to communicating by computer can do it [= order through the Internet] in less than five minutes.

c 観光客相手【なら】、ギフト用【なら】、高く売れる。
kankōkyaku aite nara gifutoyō nara takaku ureru
If the buyers are tourists, and it's [bought] as a present, it'll sell for a good price.

109 NATIONALITY

The names of most regions and countries (other than those from *kanji*-using areas) enter Japanese in *katakana*, *but* for some, *kanji* are used in certain cases, such as 日米関係 (**nichibei kankei**, US–Japan relations) and other combinations (see Table 14 for other instances). Note that the *kanji* for Japan in such expressions comes before the other country, just as Anglo- does in English.

The names of regions/continents are shown in Table 16.

a 十日はコロンブスの【米大陸】発見を記念する「コロンブス・デー」。
tōka wa koronbusu no bei-tairiku hakken o kinen suru koronbusu dē
The 10th is Columbus Day in celebration of Columbus's discovery of the American continent.

Table 16 Names of regions/continents

Continent/region	*Standard version*	*Alternate version*
Asia	アジア **asia(jin)**	
Southeast Asia	東南アジア **tōnan ajia**	
Europe	ヨーロッパ **yōroppa**	欧（州） **ō(shū)**
Near and Middle East	中近東 **chūkintō**	
America	アメリカ **amerika**	米 **bei**
North America	北アメリカ **kita amerika**	北米 **hokubei**
South America	南アメリカ **minami amerika**	南米 **nanbei**
Oceania	オセアンア **oseania**	大洋州 **taiyōshū**

Table 17 Names of countries (selection)

Country	*Native person/language*	*Common compounds*
China	中国（人・語） **chūgoku(jin/go)**	日中 **nitchū**
Taiwan	台湾（人・語） **taiwan(jin/go)**	
Hongkong	香港（人） **honkon(jin)**	
Korea	韓国（人・語） **kankoku(jin/go)**	日韓 **nikkan**
Japan	日本（人*・語**） **nihon(jin/go)** **nippon(jin/go)**	日米、日中、日独、etc. **nichibei, nitchū, nichidoku** also 和 **wa** (英和 **eiwa**, 和英 **waei**, etc. for dictionaries)
US	アメリカ（人） **amerika(jin)**	米国、米語、英米、日米 **beikoku, beigo, eibei, nichibei**
UK	イギリス（人） **igirisu(jin)**	英語、日英、英米 **eigo, nichiei, eibei**
France	フランス（人・語） **furansn(jin/go)**	日仏 **nichifutsu**
Germany	ドイツ（人・語） **doitsu(jin/go)**	日独、独仏 **nichidoku, dokufutsu**
Italy	イタリア（人・語） **itaria(jin/go)**	伊 **i**
Russia	ロシア（人・語） **roshia(jin/go)**	日ロ（日露） **nichiro**
India	インド（人） **indo(jin/go)**	印 **in**
Pakistan	パキスタン（人） **pakisutan(jin/go)**	印パ **inpa**
Australia	オーストラリア（人） **ōsutoraria(jin)**	日豪 **nichigō**
Brazil	ブラジル（人） **burajiru(jin)**	日伯 **nippaku**

Notes * also 邦人 **hōjin** (written language only)
** also 国語 **kokugo** (except for the school subject 'Japanese', used in written language and combinations only)

b 【英米】に本社を置き、【独】、チェコ、インド、日本に支店を設けている。
ei-bei ni honsha o oki doitsu cheko indo nihon ni shiten o mōkete iru
They have head offices in the UK and the US, and branch offices in Germany, Czechoslovakia, India and Japan.

c シェフの大野吉正さん（45）は二十四年間、【仏、伊料理店】などで修業を積んだ。
shefu no Ōno Yoshimasa-san (45) wa nijūyonen-kan futsu i ryōriten nado de shugyō o tsunda
The chef, Ōno Yoshimasa (45), trained for 24 years in Italian and French restaurants.

d 【豪連銀】が1%利上げ (headline)
gōrengin ga ichi-pāsento riage
Australian Federal Bank raises interest rates by 1%

e 世界の安定、カギは【日ロ】(headline)
sekai no antei kagi wa nichi-ro
For the world's stability, the key is Japan–Russia [relations].

f そして、「【香港人】」は基本的に楽天家が多い。
soshite honkonjin wa kihon-teki ni rakutenka ga ōi
Moreover, most 'Hongkongites' are basically optimists.

g 【米国】と【印パ両国】との協議はまだスタートラインに立っているに過ぎない。
beikoku to in-pa ryōkoku no kyōgi wa sutāto rain ni tatte iru ni suginai
Negotiations between the US and (*lit.* "the two countries of") India and Pakistan have only reached the starting line.

h ポケット版【英和辞典】が点字では百冊にもなるのだ。
poketto-ban eiwa jiten ga tenji de wa hyakusatsu ni mo naru no da
A pocket edition of a Japanese–English dictionary increases to 100 volumes in Braille.

i フィリピン、大麻所持【邦人】に死刑判決 (headline)
firipin taima shoji hōjin ni shikei hanketsu
Philippines: death penality for Japanese possessing cannabis

j サービスという言葉を国語辞典で引くと、「奉仕」とか「値引き」と書いてある。
sābisu to iu kotoba o kokugo jiten de hiku to hōshi toka nebiki to kaite aru
When you look up the word *sābisu* in a Japanese dictionary, it gives [meanings like] 'service' and 'reduced price'.

110 ne [FINAL PARTICLE] (ALSO nē/nā/na)

Attached to S that are statements (also exclamations, etc.), **ne** (and its variants **nē** and **na/nā**, the former emphatic, the latter mostly male usage) are basically used for soliciting agreement from the listener, but in the form ねっ **ne'** (example 110.1c) can also express anger or frustration.

ne, etc. can also be used for talking to oneself, especially in the form **nā**.

110.1 Sentence **ne**
110.2 Question **ne**

110.1 SENTENCE NE

Depending on the type of S, statements end variously in fin. forms of V and adj., AN and N + cop., or with the S ending **(na) n(o) da** or its variant **no**, **yo** [Final P], or **-te** used in the sense of 'you see' (see 112.3.5, 134, 138, 242).

a うまそうだ【ね】。
umasō da ne
Looks delicious, doesn't it.

b 忙しそうだ【ね】。
isogashisō da ne
You look busy.

c 娘を全然信用しないの【ねっ】。
musume o zenzen shin'yō shinai no ne'
You don't trust me [= your daughter] at all, do you!

d マンションなんて、ただでも住む気ない【な】。
manshon nante tada de mo sumu ki nai na
An apartment house? I don't feel like living there even for free.

e そう聞いて皆から「いい【なあ】」と感想が漏れた。
sō kiite minna kara ii nā to kansō ga moreta
Hearing this, all gave vent to their feelings, saying 'How nice'.

f やけに重い【なあ】。
yake ni omoi nā
It's bloody heavy!

g「大きい【なあ】」「きれいな空港だ【ね】」。
ōkii nā kirei na kukō da ne
'How big!' 'It's a beautiful airport.'

h マルチメディアも分かったような分からないような言葉だ【な】。
maruchi media mo wakatta yō na wakaranai yō na kotoba da na
Multimedia too is a term that one thinks one understands but doesn't really.

i だれにも話せなくて【ね】
dare ni mo hanasenakute ne
I can't tell anyone, you see

110.2 QUESTION **ne**

Attached to Q (pos. or neg.) ending in the Q P **ka**, the resulting meaning is one of wondering or supposing. For more examples, see 114.5, 165.

a 収穫は七月末【かなあ】。
shūkaku wa shichigatsu-matsu ka nā
The harvest will be at the end of July, I suppose.

111 NEGATIVE SENTENCES

Negation is formally expressed by the neg. forms of V (see 232), adj. (see 3) and AN/N (see 35) which end in -**nai** or **de wa/ja nai** in the plain form.

For variants of -**nai** (-**n**, **nu**, **zu**, . . .), see 111.1.2.

Like V-**ru**, V-**nai** can also indicate intention or future (example a).

a 絶対に日本には帰ら【ない】。
zettai ni nihon ni wa kaeranai
No matter what, [I] will not go back to Japan.

There is also a neg. adj. **nai** 'there isn't', 'haven't' (see 104).

Both the neg. ending -**nai** (and its variants -**nu**, -**n**) and the adj. **nai** can be used as pred. *and* before N and structural N (see 111.1.2).

111.1 Simple negative sentences
111.1.1 Negative existential/possessive sentences
111.1.1.1 Noun + case and/or focus particle **nai**
111.1.1.2 Noun + case and/or focus particle **nashi**
111.1.1.3 **wa** in negative sentences
111.1.2 Variants of the negative ending -**nai** (-**nu**, -**n**, -**zu**, . . .)
111.1.2.1 **-nu**
111.1.2.2 **-n**
111.1.2.3 **-zu**
111.1.3 Negative equational sentences
111.1.3.1 **de wa nai**, etc.
111.1.3.2 **ni arazu (= de wa nai)**
111.1.4 Negative questions
111.2 Noun-modifying uses
111.2.1 **-nai/-nu** noun
111.2.2 *A* **naranu** *B*
111.2.3 Idiomatic use: **omowanu** noun
111.2.4 -**zaru** noun

111.1 SIMPLE NEGATIVE SENTENCES

111.1.1 Negative existential/possessive sentences

111.1.1.1 *Noun + case and/or focus particle **nai***

The meaning here is 'there isn't'.

a 私は人気が【ない】。
watashi wa ninki ga nai
I am not popular (*lit.* "I have no popularity").

b 駐車場は【ない】。
chūshajō wa nai
There is no parking space.

111.1.1.2 *Noun + case and/or focus particle **nashi***

The meaning is again 'there isn't'.

nashi is a written-style equivalent of **nai**, and is often used without the case particle **ga**, in line with the compressed nature of this style. Note especially that in the form N **nashi de** and **nashi no**, no P can be used before **nashi**.

a 入会金【なし】。
nyūkaikin nashi
No joining fee.

b テレビも新聞も【なし】。
terebi mo shinbun mo nashi
No TV or newspapers.

c 読経は【なし】、お焼香は【なし】、香典も【なし】。
dokyō wa nashi o-shōkō wa nashi kōden mo nashi
[Funeral] There's no sutra-chanting, no incense-burning and no condolence money either.

d 「肉声コンサート」というのを手がけたことがある。マイク【なし】で歌うのである。
nikusei konsāto to iu no o tegaketa koto ga aru. maiku nashi de utau no de aru
We've done some 'natural-voice [pop] concerts'. One sings without a microphone.

111.1.1.3 ***wa** in negative sentences*

(See 236.)

Note also how **wa** can colloquially be shortened to **ya**, attached to the consonant of the preceding syllable (i.e. **ri wa** → **rya**), etc. (example b).

a 系列の問題が足かせになっているのか。「そんなこと【は】ない」。
keiretsu no mondai ga ashikase ni natte iru no ka sonna koto wa nai
Is the *keiretsu* [affiliation of companies] hampering [developments]? 'That's not so'.

Note – **wa** can also be sandwiched between VN and some other forms (see example b; see also 236.5.3.2)

b 人間の力なんてそんなに変わり【ゃ】しません。
ningen no chikara nante sonna ni kawarya shimasen
People's abilities don't vary that much.

111.1.2 Variants of the negative ending **-nai** (**-nu**, **-n**, **-zu**, . . .)

111.1.2.1 *-nu*

-nu is a written-style variant of **-nai** (but note that some idiomatic expressions such as [**omowanu** N] 'unexpected' cannot be changed into **omowanai** N).

a 眠れ【ぬ】夜が続いている。
nemurenu yoru ga tsuzuite iru
Nights when one can't sleep [because of the heat] continue.

b 秋の訪れは存外はやいかもしれ【ぬ】。(see 73)
aki no otozure wa zongai hayai ka mo shirenu
The coming of autumn can be surprisingly sudden.

111.1.2.2 *-n*

-n is a spoken variant of **-nai**, used by men. Note especially the form **sen** instead of **shinai**.

a 経済団体の役割はいか【ん】。
keizai dantai no yakuwari wa ikan
The role of the Federation of Economic Organizations is no good.

b 正直に白状せ【ん】か」。
shōjiki ni hakujō sen ka
Just make a frank confession, won't you.

111.1.2.3 *-zu*

-zu is mostly used as the written-style neg. conjunctive form, but can also be used to end a neg. S, especially in newspaper headlines and sayings etc.

Group I/II V attach **-zu** to the same forms as **-nai** (note especially the form **arazu** for colloquial **nai**); for the Group III verbs **kuru** and **suru**, the forms are **kozu** and **sezu**.

a インテルの優位は動か【ず】。
interu no yūi wa ugokazu
The predominance of Intel is unshaken.

b ロシア機墜落、邦人遺体発見でき【ず】。(headline)
roshiaki tsuiraku, hōjin itai hakken dekizu
Russian plane crashes, no Japanese bodies (*lit.* "can be") discovered.

c 輸入米、２月はブレンドせ【ず】。(headline)
yunyūmai nigatsu wa burendo sezu
Imported rice – no blending in February.

d 百聞は一見にしか【ず】。
hyakubun wa ikken ni shikazu
Seeing is believing (*lit.* "100 hearings do not rival one viewing").

111.1.3 Negative equational sentences

(See 178.1.7)

111.1.3.1 *de wa nai, etc.*

(See also 236.2)

a 電子メールそのものは決して新しい技術【ではない】。
denshi mēru sono mono wa kesshite atarashii gijutsu de wa nai
Electronic mail per se is not a new technology at all.

b システムの見直しは必要だが、ことはそう簡単【ではない】。
shisutemu no minaoshi wa hitsuyō da ga koto wa sō kantan de wa nai
A reconsideration of the system is needed, but things aren't that simple.

c 冗談【ではない】。
jōdan de wa nai
[It]'s no joke.

111.1.3.2 *ni arazu (= de wa nai)*

ni arazu can be used as a written-style equivalent of **de wa nai** (**ni** here is the conjunctive form of the cop.).

a 自分は任【にあらず】。
jibun wa nin ni arazu
I'm not the person for the job.

b 若いカップルや女にあらずんば、人【にあらず】。(にあらずんば = でなければ)
wakai kappuru ya onna ni arazunba hito ni arazu
It you're not a young couple or a female, you don't count (*lit.* "you're not human").

c 一見ただのヤクザ映画だが、さ【にあらず】。
ikken tada no yakuza eiga daga, sa ni arazu
At first glance it's just an ordinary *yakuza* film, but that's not so.

111.1.4 Negative questions

Neg. Q are Q ending in **-nai (ka/no)** (see 114).

111.2 NOUN-MODIFYING USES

111.2.1 -nai/-nu noun

Like its more colloquial equivalent **-nai**, **-nu** can also be used to modify N.

a とても全部は食べれ【ない】量だ。
totemo zenbu wa taberenai ryō da
It's [such a large] amount that one can't possibly eat it all up.

b そして女性とは思え【ぬ】ほど発達した筋肉。
soshite josei to wa omoenu hodo hattatsu shita kinniku
And their [= female swimmers'] muscles are developed to a degree where you'd hardly believe they're women.

111.2.2 *A* naranu *B*

A **naranu** *B* ('*B* rather than/as opposed to *A*', 'not *A*, but *B*') is used to compare what is often a newly coined expression that is created by twisting a familiar one.

a 蝶（ちょう）の中にも渡り鳥【ならぬ】渡り蝶がいる。
chō no naka ni mo wataridori naranu watarichō ga iru
Amongst butterflies, there are migrating butterflies, as opposed to migrating birds.

b 日本的【ならぬ】アメリカ的経営とは何なのかを手際よく教えてくれる。
nihon-teki naranu amerika-teki keiei to wa nan na no ka o tegiwayoku oshiete kureru
It informs us efficiently what American management, as opposed to Japanese, is.

111.2.3 Idiomatic use: **omowanu** noun

This phrase means ‘unexpected N’. Note that **omowanai** cannot be used in the same context.

a 【思わぬ】ハプニングに場内が沸いた。
omowanu hapuningu ni jōnai ga waita
The audience got excited at the unexpected happening.

111.2.4 -zaru noun

-zaru is a classical N-mod. form of **-zu**. Apart from the common phrase **V-zaru o enai** ‘must’, it is used occasionally in the written style and more commonly in titles of books, films, headlines, slogans etc.

Note example g, where **-zaru** attaches **-beki**, with the combination functioning like a double neg. ‘must’ (see 19.2, 50.2).

a 「帰ら【ざる】河」(film title)
kaerazaru kawa
River of No Return

b 「許され【ざる】者」(film title)
yurusarezaru mono
The Unforgiven

c 『責任ある政治、たゆま【ざる】改革』(slogan)
sekinin aru seiji tayumazaru kaikaku
‘Responsible politics, relentless reform’

d 過ぎたるは及ば【ざる】が如し
sugitaru wa oyobazaru ga gotoshi
Too much is the same as too little (*lit.* “Too much water drowns the miller”).

e 我が社に欠くべから【ざる】人なんていない。
wa ga sha ni kakubekarazaru hito nante inai
In our company, there’s no such thing as an indispensable person.

f 好むと好ま【ざる】とにかかわらず、それに見合った責任を担わねばならない。
konomu to konomazaru to ni kakawarazu sore ni miatta sekinin o ninawaneba naranai
Like it or not, it [= Japan] needs to assume the responsibility that is commensurate [with its position].

g やら【ざる】べきことはやらなかった」と述べ、日銀の独立性・中立性の維持に努めてきたことを強調した。
yarazaru-beki koto wa yaranakatta to nobe nichigin no dokuritsu-sei chūritsu-sei no iji ni tsutomete kita koto o kyōchō shita
He stated, 'We didn't do anything we shouldn't have done', emphasizing that he had worked to maintain the independence and neutrality of the Bank of Japan.

112 NEGATIVE CONJUNCTIVE FORMS

The neg. adj. **nai** and neg. ending **-nai** have both **nakute** (and the stem-form **naku** as written-form equivalent) and **-nai de** as their conjunctive forms. Instead of **-nai de**, **-zu** is also used in written language (see 31, 104).

The use of these forms to add other V or clauses is shown in the following sections.

112.1 Noun/**sō de wa/ja naku naru**
112.2 Noun + particle **naku(te)**
112.2.1 *A* **de wa/ja naku(te),** ***B***
112.2.2 Noun **de wa/ja naku(te), . . .**
112.2.3 A/N-**dokoro de wa naku, . . .**
112.3 Verb-**nakute**
112.3.1 Verb-**nakute (mo) yoi/ii/daijōbu**
112.3.2 Verb-**nakute gomen/sumanai**, etc.
112.3.3 Noun + particle/clause **nakute wa** (negative)
112.3.4 Noun **narade wa**
112.3.5 Noun + particle/clause **nakute ne**
112.4 Verb-**nai de**
112.4.1 In compound sentences
112.4.2 Modifying predicates
112.4.3 Verb-potential-**nai de iru**
112.4.4 Verb-**nai de (kudasai/kure/hoshii/moraitai)**
112.5 Verb-**zu (ni)**: written-style negative conjunctive form
112.5.1 **-zu, . . .**
112.5.2 Verb-**zu ni** (= **-nai de**)
112.5.3 Verb-**zu ni iru** (= **-nai de iru**)
112.5.4 Verb-**zu-jimai da**

112.1 NOUN/sō de wa/ja naku naru

-naku is used to attach the V **naru** 'become', or the adv. **sō** 'this way', 'so', with the combined meaning being 'cease to be', 'be no longer'.

a がんは不治の病【ではなくなっ】た。
gan wa fuji no yamai de wa naku natta
Cancer is no longer an incurable disease.

b だから今度は、そう【じゃなくな】る始まりではないでしょうか。
dakara kondo wa sō ja naku naru hajimari de wa nai deshō ka
So, I wonder if this time might be the beginning of things no longer being the way they were [= citizens being expected to be passive].

112.2 NOUN + PARTICLE **naku(te)**

nakute is the neg. conjunctive form of the neg. adj. **nai** 'there isn't' (in the written style, **naku** is often used instead). The meaning is 'without', 'free from', 'not . . . and'.

a 癖が【なくて】予想以上に飲みやすい。
kuse ga nakute yosō ijō ni nomiyasui
It's free from peculiar tastes, and easier to drink than expected.

b けが人は【なく】、大きな混乱もなかった。
keganin wa naku ōkina konran mo nakatta
Nobody was injured, and there wasn't any major disturbance.

c 事故当時、海上は波が【なく】静かだった。
jiko tōji kaijō wa nami ga naku shizuka datta
At the time of the accident, the ocean was calm and smooth (*lit.* "free of waves").

112.2.1 *A* de wa/ja naku(te), *B*

This indicates the sense of 'not *A*, but *B*'.

a 丈夫なだけ【ではなくて】美しい歯を。
jōbu na dake de wa nakute utsukushii ha o
[One should have] teeth that are not only strong, but [also] beautiful.

b ピアニストの命は、手や指だけ【じゃなくて】、心なんです。
pianisuto no inochi wa te ya yubi dake ja nakute kokoro nan desu
The life of a pianist in is not the hands or fingers, but the heart.

c ドル安【ではなく】、円高だ」と強調した。
doruyasu de wa naku endaka da to kyōchō shita
'It's not that the yen is low, but the dollar is high', he emphasized.

d 「ハーフって何」…「ハーフ【じゃなくて】ダブルよ」
hāfu tte nani hāfu ja nakute daburu yo
'What's half[-breed]?' 'You're not "half", you know, you're "double"!'
[by having parents from two different cultures]

112.2.2 Noun **de wa/ja naku(te)**, . . .

As a neg. equivalent of **de**, . . . , this means 'not N, and' (see 31).

a 私は政治家【ではなく】、特別なイデオロギーを持っていない。
watashi wa seijika de wa naku tokubetsu na ideorogī o motte inai
I'm not a politician, and don't have any particular ideology.

112.2.3 A/N-**dokoro de wa naku**, . . .

This expresses that some state is of a surprising degree 'you must be joking', 'far from it'.

a 暗い【どころではなく】、もう真っ暗。
kurai dokoro de wa naku mō makkura
Dark? You must be joking, it was pitch-black!

b 紅葉【どころではなく】、冬山になっている。
kōyō dokoro de wa naku fuyuyama ni natte iru
Far from [having] coloured leaves, the mountains are covered in snow.

112.3 VERB-**nakute**

112.3.1 Verb-**nakute** (**mo**) **yoi/ii/daijōbu**

This indicates permission not to do something: 'it's OK if you don't', 'you needn't' (see 31.2.2).

a 「明日から来【なくて】いい」と言われた。
ashita kara konakute ii to iwareta
I was told 'You needn't come from tomorrow'.

b お米は買いだめし【なくて】も大丈夫です。
okome wa kaidame shinakute mo daijōbu desu
There is no need to hoard rice.

c そんなに焦ら【なくて】も、まだ若いのだから。
sonna ni aseranakute mo mada wakai no da kara
You needn't be so impatient; you're still young.

d ふろを沸かす熱も少【なくて】すむ。
furo o wakasu netsu mo sukunakute sumu
One also needs less heat to warm the water for a bath [= using waste energy].

112.3.2 Verb-**nakute gomen/sumanai**, etc.

Like its counterpart using the pos. conjunctive form (see 31.3.4), this is used for apologies: 'sorry for not having done'

a 就職し【なくて】ごめんね。
shūshoku shinakute gomen ne
Sorry I haven't found a job.

b ご期待に沿え【なくて】すみません。
gokitai ni soenakute sumimasen
I'm sorry not to have met your expectations.

112.3.3 Noun + particle/clause **nakute wa** (negative)

With ellipted second neg., the meaning is usually 'must' or 'without' (see 50.2.2).

a 人間は酸素が【なくては】生きていけ【ない】。
ningen wa sanso ga nakutewa ikite ikenai
Man cannot live without oxygen.

b でも、産んだからには子供を幸せにし【なくては】」。
demo unda kara ni wa kodomo o shiawase ni shinakute wa
But, now that you've had a child you have to make him happy.

c 映画館は学校ではない。まず、見る人が楽しめ【なくては】。
eigakan wa gakkō de wa nai. mazu miru hito ga tanoshimenakute wa
A movie theatre is not a school. Above all, the viewers have to be able to enjoy themselves.

112.3.4 Noun **narade wa**

narade wa is a classical equivalent to modern **de (wa) nai to** 'unless is'; it is used in the sense of 'not possible unless', 'the hallmark of'.

a はらわたの苦みは新鮮なアユ【ならでは】。
harawata no nigami wa shinsen na ayu narade wa
The bitter [and delicious] taste of the entrails is the hallmark of fresh sweetfish [= is what you get only with fresh sweetfish].

112.3.5 Noun + particle/clause **nakute ne**

In the form **nakute, ne** is used to complete a S in the explanatory sense of 'you see'. The second half of the sentence, which is ellipted or 'understood', implies something like **komatte iru** 'I'm in trouble' (see 110).

a 肉が買え【なくて】ね。
niku ga kaenakute ne
We can't buy any meat, you see.

b 集中力が【なくて】ね。
shūchūryoku ga nakute ne
He has no ability to concentrate, you see

c 料亭が悪いと言ったわけ【じゃなくて】ね。(see 239)
ryōtei ga warui to itta wake ja nakute ne
I didn't say that Japanese restaurants are to blame.

112.4 VERB-nai de

-nai de is the other neg. conjunctive form of the neg. V ending **-nai**. It has four uses, as shown below (compare with the uses of **-nakute** in 112.3).

112.4.1 In compound sentences

When joining two clauses in a compound S (which could easily be expressed in two separate S – see also 31.1) the meaning is 'not . . . and'.

a 「心配し【ないで】強気で行ってくれ」と進言したほどだ。
shinpai shinai de tsuyoki de itte kure to shingen shita hodo da
We went so far as to suggest, 'Don't worry; just take the bull by the horns'.

b 「日系人にはすぐ帰ら【ないで】もっといなさいと言いたい」。
nikkeijin ni wa sugu kaeranai de motto inasai to iitai
'To [foreigners] of Japanese descent I want to say, don't go back home so soon, stay longer.'

c 「泣いて【ないで】、部屋の掃除でもしなさい」「マラソンでもしなさい」。
(泣いてない = 泣いていない)
naite nai de heya no sōji demo shinasai marason demo shinasai
'Don't cry; clean up your room or something.' 'Go for a run or something.'

112.4.2 Modifying predicates

This expresses the idea of 'without (doing)'.

a あんたが決断し【ないで】どうする。
anta ga ketsudan shinai de dō suru
If you don't decide, who will? (*lit.* "What are we going to do without your deciding?")

b 役者が面白いと思えるようになったのは50すぎてから。それまでは人生、分から【ないで】やってたから。
yakusha ga omoshiroi to omoeru yō ni natta no wa gojū sugite kara. sore made wa jinsei wakaranai de yatteta kara
It was after 50 that I was able to begin to think that acting was fun. Until then, I had led my life without understanding things, you see.

112.4.3 Verb-potential-**nai de iru**

Literally “be in a state without being able to”, this combination means ‘be unable to’.

a 「特別な例では」と、いまだに驚きを隠せ【ないでい】た。
tokubetsu na rei de wa to imada ni odoroki o kakusenai de ita
‘Isn’t it a special case?’ he said, even now unable to conceal his surprise.

b 約束はまだ果たせ【ないでい】る。
yakusoku wa mada hatasenai de iru
He is still unable to fulfil his promise.

112.4.4 Verb-**nai de (kudasai/kure/hoshii/moraitai)**

The pattern V-**nai de** can be followed by a request (**kure/kudasai/hoshii/moraitai**), although these forms are often ellipted.

kudasai/kure is used for neg. commands, but as **kudasai/kure** is often ellipted (or ‘understood’), the command frequently ends in **-te** (**ne**) or **-te** (**nē**). Without **kudasai/kure**, the command has a more informal and intimate ring ‘don’t’ (see 24, 110).

With **hoshii** and **moraitai**, the meaning is one of request (see 173, 189).

a 息は止め【ないで】下さいねー。
iki wa tomenai de kudasai ne
Please don’t hold your breath.

b マミー行か【ないで】。
mamī ikanai de
Mummy, don’t go.

c その子が「先生には言わ【ないで】」と私に手を合わせる。
sono ko ga sensei ni wa iwanai de to watashi ni te o awaseru
The child said beseechingly (*lit.* “clasped her hands towards me”), ‘Don’t tell the teacher’.

d 会合には出【ないで】欲しい。
kaigō ni wa denai de hoshii
I don’t want you to attend the meeting.

e 決して腰くだけにならら【ないで】もらいたい。
kesshite koshikudake ni naranai de moraitai
I don’t want you to lose your nerve on any account.

112.5 VERB-zu (ni): WRITTEN-STYLE NEGATIVE CONJUNCTIVE FORM

This is the written-style equivalent of **-nai de** (see 112.5.2). The difference between **-zu** and **-zu ni** is that **-zu** joins two clauses in the sense of 'not . . . , but' or 'not . . . , and' (see 112.5.1), whereas **-zu ni** modifies pred. in the sense of 'without' (see 112.5.2).

112.5.1 -zu, . . .

-zu joins two clauses in the sense of 'not . . . , but . . .' or 'not . . . , and . . .'

a 中華麺を油で揚げ【ず】、ゆでて袋詰めした。(= 揚げないで)
chūkamen o abura de agezu, yudete fukurozume shita
We have packaged Chinese noodles boiled, not deep-fried in oil.

b 熱帯雨林の内部は光が届か【ず】、意外に静かなのだ。(= 届かなくて)
nettai urin no naibu wa hikari ga todokazu igai ni shizuka na no da
Light doesn't penetrate the inside of a tropical rainforest, and it's surprisingly quiet.

c 名前を知ら【ず】、話したことがなくてもあいさつをする。(= 知らないで)
namae o shirazu hanashita koto ga nakutemo aisatsu o suru
He says hello even if he doesn't know the name, and hasn't talked [to the person] before.

112.5.2 Verb-zu ni (= -nai de)

Here, V-**zu** modifies a following pred. in the sense of 'without (doing)'.

a 男は何も取ら【ずに】逃走した。
otoko wa nani mo torazu ni tōsō shita
The man fled without taking anything.

b つまらないことを考え【ずに】勉強しなさい。
tsumaranai koto o kangaezu ni benkyō shinasai
Don't think silly thoughts, and get on with your studies.

c メモも見【ずに】すらすら数字が出る。
memo mo mizu ni surasura sūji ga deru
Without even consulting his notes, figures flow smoothly [from his mouth].

d 売り込むことはせ【ずに】、自然にということらしい。
urikomu koto wa sezu ni shizen ni to iu koto rashii
The intention seems to leave things [= selling sake in India] to the market, without pushing it.

After time expressions, **-zu ni** can mean the equivalent of **-nai uchi ni** 'before' (see 229).

e 半年たた【ずに】先輩四人を飛び越し社長に。
hantoshi tatazu ni senpai yonin o tobikoshi shachō ni
Before six months had elapsed, he rose over the heads of four of his superiors to become company president.

112.5.3 Verb-**zu ni iru** (= **-nai de iru**)

This is the equivalent of **-nai de iru** 'unable to' (see 112.4.3).

a 赤ん坊の時に抱かれた記憶もなく、父の愛情を実感でき【ずに】いた。
akanbō no toki ni dakareta kioku mo naku chichi no aijō o jikkan dekizu ni ita
I didn't even have any recollection of being held when I was a baby, and I was unable to feel my father's love.

112.5.4 Verb-**zu-jimai da**

This consists of the neg. ending **-zu** and the stem-form of the V **shimau** (voiced), a combination that means 'end up' (see 209). It indicates that one ends up not doing something one was going to do or wanted to do.

a 結局はおふろに【入れずじまい】。
kekkyoku wa o-furo ni hairezu-jimai
In the end I was unable to take a bath.

b ああ今日も外に【出ずじまい】だった。
aa kyō mo soto ni dezu-jimai datta
Ah, I ended up not going outside again today.

113 NEGATIVE IMPERATIVES: **nakare**

Apart from the usual way of forming neg. imp. (see 101), there is a written-style form, **nakare**, that is used as will be shown in this section.

113.1 **nakare**
113.1.1 Verb-**ru nakare**

113.1 nakare

113.1.1 Verb-**ru nakare**

nakare is a classical imp. form of **nai** that is often used in the media, etc. when addressing the reader. It is attached to V-**ru** and has the general meaning of 'don't'.

a 「これがパジャマ!?」と驚く【なかれ】。
kore ga pajama to odoroku nakare
You may not believe it, but these are pyjamas! (*lit.* "Don't be taken aback, saying, 'Are these pyjamas!'")

b おセンチ、と笑う【なかれ】。
o-senchi to warau nakare
Don't laugh, calling me sentimental.

114 NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

Neg. Q are Q that end with a neg. form, such as **nai (ka)**, **nai no (ka)**, **-masen (ka)**, etc. (see 164).

114.1 By intonation only
114.2 Ending in **no** (+ intonation)
114.3 Ending in question word + **no**
114.4 Ending in the question particle **ka**
114.5 Ending in **-nai ka na/nā/ne**
114.6 Ending in **-nai mono ka**
114.7 Questions ending in (positive/negative) **de wa/ja nai (ka/no/kashira)**
114.7.1 Questions ending in **de wa/ja nai (ka/no/kashira)**
114.7.2 Questions ending in **-nai (n) ja nai (ka/no/kashira)**
114.7.3 Questions ending in **-nai de wa nai ka**

114.1 BY INTONATION ONLY

a 味に変わりはあり【ません?】
aji ni kawari wa arimasen
The taste hasn't changed?

b ちょっと見てみ【ない】」「これって、浅井慎平の写真じゃん。
chotto mite minai kore tte asai shinpei no shashin jan
'Won't you take a look [over here]?' 'That's a photo by Asai Shinpei, isn't it!'

114.2 ENDING IN **no** (+ INTONATION)

a 買わ【ないの?】新しい車。(see 70)
kawanai no atarashii kuruma
Aren't you going to buy one? A new car, I mean

b パパ、歴史は夜つくられるって言葉知ら【ないの】。
papa rekishi wa yoru tsukurareru tte kotoba shiranai no
Daddy, don't you know the saying 'History is made at night'?

114.3 ENDING IN QUESTION WORD + **no**

a ぼくには【どうして】お父さんがい【ないの】。
boku ni wa dōshite otōsan ga inai no
Why don't I have a father?

114.4 ENDING IN THE QUESTION PARTICLE **ka**

Note that with V that express an action, the meaning is usually one of invitation to do something 'how about' (example b).

a 高く【ないですか】。
takakunai desu ka
Isn't it expensive?

b 一緒に農業ネットワークを作り【ませんか】!。
issho ni nōgyō nettowāku o tsukurimasen ka
How about joining with us to form an agricultural network!

c 仕事、あり【ませんか】。
shigoto arimasen ka
Got any work?

114.5 ENDING IN **-nai ka na/nā/ne**

ka na is a combination of the question P **ka** and **na**, a variant of the fin. P **ne**. The combination expresses wondering or guessing, in the fashion of thinking out loud. Although **ka na** by itself doesn't usually ask for a reaction, with **moraenai** it does (example d). **na** can be lengthened to **nā** (example d) (see 114.7, 207.3.2).

Note – **ka ne** is mostly used in a different way, for extracting a reaction from someone else (example e).

a 解散は再来年以降じゃ【ないかな】。
kaisan wa sarainen ikō ja nai ka na
The dissolution [of the Diet] should be the year after next or beyond.

b 来年はやっと回復を実感できる年になるんじゃ【ないかな】。
rainen wa yatto kaifuku o jikkan dekiru toshi ni naru n ja nai ka na
Next year might be the year when we can finally feel the [economic] recovery.

c 小遣いの半分は社員との飲み代に消えているんじゃ【ないかな】。
kozukai no hanbun wa shain to no nomidai ni kiete iru n ja nai ka na
About half of my pocket money goes on drinking with the employees.

d 「わたしの写真もこんなきれいなところに飾ってもらえ【ないかなぁ】」
「だめだめ、このギャラリーはけやきがメーンテーマなんだから」
watashi no shashin mo konna kirei na tokoro ni kazatte moraenai ka nā. damedame kono gyararī wa keyaki ga mēn tēma na n da kara
'I wish I could have my photo also displayed in such a beautiful place.'
'No way, the main theme of this gallery is Zelkova trees.'

e そうじゃ【ないかね】、寅さん。
sō ja nai ka ne tora-san
Isn't that right, Tora-san?

114.6 ENDING IN **-nai mono ka**

This means 'is there not some way' (see 96.1.6).

a トイレの水くらいは雨水を使え【ないものか】。
toire no mizu kurai wa amamizu o tsukaenai mono ka
Why can't rainwater be used at least for water in the toilet?

b 安全でおいしい養殖魚はつくれ【ないものか】。
anzen de oishii yōshokugyo wa tsukurenai mono ka
Isn't there some way to breed fish that are safe to eat and taste good?

114.7 QUESTIONS ENDING IN (POSITIVE/NEGATIVE) **de wa/ja nai (ka/no/kashira)**

These are a kind of rhetorical device similar to so-called tag questions ('won't it', 'will you', etc.) in English. These are used after pos. (114.7.1) and negative (114.7.2 and 114.7.3) forms. Of the last two, the 114.7.3 forms have a more formal ring.

114.7.1 Questions ending in **de wa/ja nai (ka/no/kashira)**

a いっそCMをやめても良いの【ではないか】。
isso shīemu o yamete mo yoi no de wa nai ka
We might as well stop advertising it [our product on TV], mightn't we?

114.7.2 Questions ending in -**nai (n) ja nai (ka/no/kashira)**

a けど、やってみないとどんなもんか分かん【ないじゃない】。
(分かんない = 分からない)
kedo yatte minai to donna mon ka wakannai ja nai
But, unless I try, I won't know what it's like, right?

b 劇作だけで食べている人はい【ないんじゃないか】。
gekisaku dake de tabete iru hito wa inai n ja nai ka
There is no one who can make a living just from writing plays, is there?

c 自分はこうなんだ、という価値観が全く確立されてい【ないんじゃないの？】
jibun wa kō nan da to iu kachikan ga mattaku kakuritsu sarete inai n ja nai no
They don't have any values about what they're on about, don't you agree?

d 子孫のための小額な負担を嫌う人はい【ないんじゃないかしら】。
shison no tame no shōgaku na futan o kirau hito wa inai n ja nai kashira
I wouldn't think that there's anyone who'd object to footing a small bill for his descendants.

114.7.3 Questions ending in -**nai de wa nai ka**

a そうすると、株価はかえって下がるかも知れ【ないではないか】。
sō suru to kabuka wa kaette sagaru kamo shirenai de wa nai ka
In that case, the share price might rather drop, mightn't it?

b 日本でもほとんど普及してい【ないではないか】。
nihon de mo hotondo fukyū shite inai de wa nai ka
Even in Japan, it [= high-definition TV] has practically no popular support, has it?

115 NEGATIVE QUESTIONS: HOW TO ANSWER

Neg. Q and how to answer them are an oft-discussed characteristic of the Japanese language (as in example a).

The rule given in textbooks, etc. is that in reply to a negative Q you answer in the neg. (introduced with **hai** = yes!) if the pred. matches the neg. ('yes, what you're suggesting is quite right, I didn't'), whereas if the pred. is pos. (and therefore disagrees with the neg. form used in the question, you begin your reply with no (**iie**) ('no, what you're suggesting is wrong, I did').

a 日本語と英語の表現で「はい」と「いいえ」が逆になる場合がある。日本人に「映画を見ませんでしたか」と否定疑問文で聞いたら、答えは「いいえ、見ました」「はい、見ませんでした」。
nihongo to eigo no hyōgen de hai to iie ga gyaku ni naru baai ga aru. nihonjin ni eiga o mimasen deshita ka to hitei gimonbun de kiitara kotae wa iie mimashita hai mimasen deshita
In Japanese and English expressions, there are cases where 'Yes' and 'No' are reversed. If you ask a Japanese using a negative question 'Didn't you see the movie?', the answer is 'No, I did', 'Yes, I didn't'.

b 「(ミッキーには) 代役はいないんですか。同じ人がやっているわけじゃないんでしょ」という知事の突飛な質問にも、「いいえ、ミッキーは世界でただ一人です」ときっぱり。
(mikkī ni wa) daiyaku wa inai n desu ka. onaji hito ga yatte iru wake ja nai n desho to iu chiji no toppi na shitsumon ni mo iie mikkī wa sekai de tada hitori desu to kippari
In reply to the governor's eccentric question 'Is there no understudy [for Mickey]? It's not always the same person who performs him, is it?', she said firmly, 'No, there's only one Mickey [Mouse] in the world'.

However, reality doesn't always conform to the textbook explanations (examples c and d).

c 中部電力三重支店が六月、主要新聞六紙の三重県版に出した「原子力発電所って、爆発せーへんの!? はい、大丈夫です」との新聞広告について、…
chūbu denryoku mie-shiten ga rokugatsu shuyō shinbun rokushi no mieken-ban ni dashita genshiryoku hatsudensho tte bakuhatsu sēhen no hai daijōbu desu to no shinbun kōkoku ni tsuite
About the newspaper ad that Chūbu Electricity placed in June in the Mie prefecture versions of the six major dailies 'Aren't the atomic power stations gonna explode?' 'No (*lit.* "yes"), it's OK', . . .

d 「よほど遠くでないと、乗り物は使いません」「こんな人込みの開会式に一人で来て、家族の方は心配しませんか」「いいえ、全然」。
yohodo tōku de nai to norimono wa tsukaimasen. konna hitogomi no kaikaishiki ni hitori de kite kazoku no kata wa shinpai shimasen ka. iie zenzen
'I don't use transport unless I have to go really far.' 'Don't your people worry [about you], coming by yourself to an opening ceremony this crowded?' 'No, not a bit.'

Note rhetorical neg. Q such as **no de wa (nai ka)** etc. (see 14.7) are answered like pos. Q (see examples e and f)

e …売上税、消費税に反対の立場だったのでは？「はい、道義的に許せなかったんです」。
uriagezei shōhizei ni hantai no tachiba datta no de wa hai dōgiteki ni yurusenakatta n desu
'. . . weren't you opposed to sales tax and consumption tax?'
'Yes, I couldn't approve of it morally.'

f 「そんなに大事なものなら、生物にあまねく存在するのではないか」「はい、微生物から人間まで、この酵素を持たない生物はありません」。
sonna ni daiji na mono nara seibutsu ni amaneku sonzai suru no de wa nai ka hai biseibutsu kara ningen made kono kōso o motanai seibutsu wa arimasen
'If it's such an important element, wouldn't it exist in all living things?'
'Yes, from micro-organisms to humans, there's no organism that hasn't got this enzyme.'

116 ni [CASE PARTICLE]

ni is a case P that indicates location, direction (see 51), goal, purpose and other indirect objects. In English translation, **ni** often translates as a preposition ('to', 'for', 'over', etc.).

Note 1 – the combination **ni no** N does not exist (see 40).

Note 2 the adverbial form of the cop. also takes the form **ni**; when used after N, this **ni** is commonly seen in the combinations N **ni suru** and N **ni naru** (see 186).

116.1 With three-place verbs
116.2 With two-place verbs
116.2.1 Verbs of motion
116.2.2 Other two-place verbs
116.3 With ellipted predicate
116.4 Stative location
116.4.1 Noun **wa** noun **ni** predicate
116.4.2 Noun **ni** noun **ga** predicate
116.5 Noun **ni** noun **ga/wa aru/iru** (and negative): possession
116.5.1 With **iru**
116.5.2 With **aru**
116.6 . . . Noun **ni aru/nai**
116.7 Noun **ni** noun **ga** verb-potential/noun **ga** noun **ni** verb-potential
116.8 Noun **ni** verb-passive (or pseudo-passive)
116.9 Noun (noun = person) **ni** verb-causative
116.10 Verb-stem noun **ni iku/kuru**
116.11 Verb 1 **ni** verb 1-potential-negative (between repeated identical verbs)

116.12 Verb **ni wa** + adjective/adjectival noun
116.13 Time expression **ni**
116.14 Time/amount **ni** number + counter
116.15 Noun **ni**
116.16 Verb/verbal noun **ni wa**
116.17 Noun (noun = person) **ni wa**
116.18 Noun (+ counter) **ni** noun (+ counter)

116.1 WITH THREE-PLACE VERBS

Many three-place V take the case frame **ga-o-ni**, where **ni** marks the indirect object. The **ga**-phrase, and sometimes the **o**-phrase are ellipted. When the **ni**-phrase is moved to the beginning of the sentence (fronted), it often attaches **wa** (see 236.1.2).

a 契約者【に】は腕時計などを贈る。
keiyakusha ni wa udedokei nado o okuru
To the contractors, [they] send wristwatches and suchlike.

b 官僚【に】任せてはおけない。
kanryō ni makasete wa okenai
We can't leave [things] to the bureaucrats.

c プロジェクト【に】は六百人程度をあてる方針だ。
purojekuto ni wa roppyaku-nin teido o ateru hōshin da
The policy is to assign about 600 people to the project.

116.2 WITH TWO-PLACE VERBS

A number of two-place V construct with the case frame **ga ni** (the **ga**-phrase is often ellipted).

116.2.1 Verbs of motion

ni marks the goal of a V of motion or the part (including also N of time, example e) affected by its action.

a 学校【に】行きたい。
gakkō ni ikitai
I want to go to school.

b 来春、東大【に】移る。
raishun tōdai ni utsuru
Next year, he moves to Tokyo University

c まずふろ【に】入りたい。
mazu furo ni hairitai
First, I want a bath (*lit.* "want to enter a bath").

d 足【に】血が飛び散っていたよ。
ashi ni chi ga tobichitte ita yo
He had blood splashed over his legs (*lit.* "Blood had splashed over his legs").

e 四月【に】入ると一転してコメが売れなくなった。
shigatsu ni hairu to itten shite kome ga urenaku natta
Now we've entered April, rice is suddenly not selling any longer.

116.2.2 Other two-place verbs

These include **oku** 'put', **oyobu** 'reach', **niru** 'resemble' (see 231).

a どこ【に】大画面テレビを置くのか。
doko ni daigamen terebi o oku no ka
Where does one put a large-screen TV [in a small Japanese home]?

b しかし、まだ洪水は全域【に】及んでいない。
shikashi mada kōzui wa zen'iki ni oyonde inai
However, the flood is not affecting the whole region yet.

c 米国【に】似てきた。
beikoku ni nite kita
[The market] is now similar to the US.

Note – the V（要る・いる）'need' takes **ni** to mark what something is needed 'for' (example d).

d ザックの詰め方【に】はコツ【が】いる。
zakku no tsumekata ni wa kotsu ga iru
Packing a rucksack requires skill. (*lit.* "skill is needed for packing a rucksack.")

116.3 WITH ELLIPTED PREDICATE

With ellipted (= omitted) pred., the implication is that the action of the missing V has happened (see 52).

a より高い背に、より小さな足【に】。
yori takai se ni yori chiisa na ashi ni
[women have developed] taller figures and smaller feet.

b 近畿地方、２日続きの肌寒い朝【に】。
kinki chihō futsuka tsuzuki no hadazamui asa ni
The Kinki region [has faced] the second cold morning in succession.

116.4 STATIVE LOCATION

With stative V, **ni** expresses stative location (for dynamic location see 40).

Stative location can be expressed in two ways, using the pattern (**wa-**) **ni** V, or **ni-ga** V.

116.4.1 Noun **wa** noun **ni** predicate

a 経団連【は】東京【に】ある。
keidanren wa tōkyō ni aru
The Keidanren (Federation of Economic Organizations) is in Tokyo.

b 答え【は】このページの右下【に】あります。
kotae wa kono pēji no migishita ni arimasu
The answer is [found] at the bottom right of this page.

116.4.2 Noun **ni** noun **ga** predicate

This indicates existence or location (see 55.10, 9).

a 外【に】女性【が】いる。
soto ni josei ga iru
There is a woman outside.

b 三階【に】は宿泊客共通の浴場【が】ある。
sangai ni wa shukuhaku-kyaku kyōtsū no yokujō ga aru
On the third level is a bath for joint use by lodgers.

116.5 NOUN **ni** NOUN **ga/wa aru/iru** (AND NEGATIVE): POSSESSION

This indicates possession. **iru** is normally used with animate subjects, and **aru** with inanimate ones (but see 9 for exceptions).

116.5.1 With **iru**

a ぼく【に】はどうしてお父さん【が】いないの。
boku ni wa dōshite otōsan ga inai no
Why don't I have a father?

b 夫人との間【に】一男三女【が】いる。
fujin to no aida ni ichinan sanjo ga iru
With his wife, he has one son and three daughters.

116.5.2 With **aru**

Note especially examples c and d, where the relation between N **ni** and N **ga** (both inanimate) is not one of 'having', but 'including'.

a この発言【に】は重み【が】ある。
kono hatsugen ni wa omomi ga aru
This proposal has weight.

b イタリアでは大統領【に】解散権【が】ある。
itaria de wa daitōryō ni kaisanken ga aru
In Italy, the president has the right to dissolve [parliament].

c 地場産業【に】織物【が】ある。
jiba sangyō ni orimono ga aru
Local industry includes textiles.

d 代表作【に】「桜川」「花軍」「雨月物語」など【が】ある。
daihyōsaku ni sakuragawa hanaikusa ugetsumonogatari nado ga aru
Representative works include *Sakuragawa*, *Hanaikusa* and *Ugetsu Monogatari.*

116.6 . . . NOUN ni aru/nai

Attached to a NP indicating a state or tendency, the resulting meaning is ‘be/not be in a state of . . .’, ‘have a tendency to’, etc.

a 例えばWASPは少子化傾向【に】ある。
tatoeba WASP wa shōshika keikō ni aru
For instance, WASPs (= White Anglo-Saxon Protestants) have a tendency to have fewer children.

b 四国への企業進出も足踏み状態【に】ある。
shikoku e no kigyō shinshutsu mo ashibumi jōtai ni aru
The advancement of businesses into Shikoku too is in a state of stagnation.

116.7 NOUN ni NOUN ga VERB-POTENTIAL/NOUN ga NOUN ni VERB-POTENTIAL

With **dekiru** and other pot. V, **ni** indicates the agent (person or personalized entity who can do the action) of the V. Both [**ni-ga** V-pot.] and [**ga-ni** V-pot.] are used (see 161).

a 本当に自分【に】仕事【が】できるのか。
hontō ni jibun ni shigoto ga dekiru no ka
Can I really do work [properly]?

b 自分たち【に】何【が】できるか考えたいのです。
jibun-tachi ni nani ga dekiru ka kangaetai no desu
We want to think about what we can do.

dekiru ‘come into being, acquire’ also constructs the same way:

c 絵を描くことを通じて、二人【に】は多くの友人【が】できた。
e o kaku koto o tsūjite futari ni wa ōku no yūjin ga dekita
The couple have made many friends through their painting.

116.8 NOUN ni VERB-PASSIVE (OR PSEUDO-PASSIVE)

Here, **ni** marks the agent of a pass. sentence 'by'; with spontanous pass. V like **shireru** 'become known' it translates as 'to' (see 156.7).

a 漠とした不安【に】襲われる。
baku to shita fuan ni osowareru
One becomes gripped by a vague feeling of unease.

b 時代の流れ【に】取り残され、滅びのふちに立っている。
jidai no nagare ni torinokosare horobi no fuchi ni tatte iru
They [= kiwis] have been left behind by the passage of time, and are on the verge of extinction.

c マスコミ【に】知れたら大変だ。どの位の価値があるんだ。誠意を見せろ。
masukomi ni shiretara taihen da. dono gurai no kachi ga aru n da. seii o misero
If it [= leaked patient info] becomes known to the media, there will be trouble [for you = hospital]. How much is it worth [to you]? Make me a decent offer!

116.9 NOUN (NOUN = PERSON) ni VERB-CAUSATIVE

In some types of causative sentences, **ni** marks the person who is forced or allowed to do the action of V (see 20.1, 20.2).

a 今は女子【に】も男子と同じように教育【を】受けさ【せる】時代。
ima wa joshi ni mo danshi to onaji yō ni kyōiku o ukesaseru jidai
Now is an age when people give girls an education in the same way as boys.

116.10 VERB-STEM NOUN ni iku/kuru

V-stem N **ni iku/kuru** indicates the purpose of the action of the V 'go/come to do'.

a またぜひ働き【に】行きたい」。
mata zehi hataraki ni ikitai
I very much want to go to work again.

b 今日は息子と娘の分を買い【に】来ました
kyō wa musuko to musume no bun o kai ni kimashita
Today I've come to buy some [pillows] for my daughter and son.

c 念願かなってお礼参り【に】来るかたも多いですよ。
nengan kanatte o-rei mairi ni kuru kata mo ōi desu yo
There are also many who come to worship because they had their prayers answered!

Note the combination **asobi ni kite kudasai** (*lit.* "please come to play") is a commonly used idiom in the sense of 'please visit us' (example d).

d A君もぜひ遊び【に】来て下さい。
A-kun mo zehi asobi ni kite kudasai
You (A-kun) too, please come and visit.

116.11 VERB 1 ni VERB 1-POTENTIAL-NEGATIVE (BETWEEN REPEATED IDENTICAL VERBS)

In this use, **ni** + V2, which is in the potential form of the same verb used in V1, adds emphasis to V1 (see 172).

a [泣く【に】泣けない]よ。
naku ni nakenai yo
It's too sad even to cry (*lit.* "I can't even cry").

b [言う【に】言われない]つらい時間を過ごしたことは事実。
iu ni iwarenai tsurai jikan o sugoshita koto wa jijitsu
It's a fact that I experienced an indescribably hard time.

c バブル期に購入した持ち家は当面は[売る【に】売れない]状態。
baburu-ki ni kōnyū shita mochiie wa tōmen wa uru ni urenai jōtai
The situation is that for the time being people just can't sell the houses they acquired during the bubble period.

116.12 VERB ni wa + ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN

Adj./AN are evaluatory adj./AN like **yoi/ii** 'good', **benri** 'convenient', **fuben** 'inconvenient', etc.; the resulting meaning is 'good/convenient for'.

a 老い、病、死について考える【には】よい時期である。
oi yamai shi ni tsuite kangaeru ni wa yoi jiki de aru
It's a good time to think about old age, sickness and death [= Bon festival].

b 本格的な誘致活動を進める【には】よいタイミングだ。
honkaku-teki na yūchi katsudō o susumeru ni wa yoi taimingu da
It's good timing for promoting full-scale activities for attracting [visitors to the theme park].

c 「すぐに読みたい」という読者【には】不便だ。
sugu ni yomitai to iu dokusha ni wa fuben da
For readers who want to read [a book] straight away it's inconvenient [= mail order of books].

116.13 TIME EXPRESSION ni

With time expressions, **ni** indicates a fixed time 'at', 'on', as opposed to a relative time (see 5.3.2).

a 詳細は一月二日【に】明らかになる見通しだ。
shōsai wa ichigatsu futsuka ni akiraka ni naru mitōshi da
Details are expected to become clear on January 2.

116.14 TIME/AMOUNT ni NUMBER + COUNTER

This indicates 'once per time/amount', '*X* out of *Y*'. When **wa** is attached to number + counter, the implication is one of 'at least' (examples b and c) (see 236.6).

a イチゴの収穫は一年【に】一回。
ichigo no shūkaku wa ichinen ni ikkai
The strawberries are harvested once a year.

b 人は生涯【に】一回は家を建てる。
hito wa shōgai ni ikkai wa ie o tateru
Man builds a house at least once in life.

c ウチのお父さんは、とある映画仲間のサークルに入っている。月【に】一度は会合があって翌日は必ず二日酔いだ。
uchi no otōsan wa to-aru eiga nakama no sākuru ni haitte iru. tsuki ni ichido wa kaigō ga atte yokujitsu wa kanarazu futsukayoi da
My husband is a member of a certain film-buff club. They have a gathering at least once a month, and on the day after he always has a hangover.

d 持ち株会加入者数は約二百四十九万人。これは上場企業従業員の[五人【に】二人]に当たる。
mochikabukai kanyūsha-sū wa yaku nihyaku yonjū kyūman-nin. kore wa jōjō kigyō jūgyōin no gonin ni futari ni ataru
The number of people who have joined shareholding societies is about 2 million four hundred and ninety thousand. This amounts to 2 out of 5 employees of listed enterprises.

116.15 NOUN ni

Certain V, such as the ones in the examples below, take **ni** to mark the cause of their action. This variously translates as 'at', 'due to' 'because of N' (see 231).

a 暑さ【に】音を上げたのは人間だけでない。
atsusa ni ne o ageta no wa ningen dake de nai
It's not only humans who suffered from the heat [= broiler chickens too laid fewer eggs].

b 思わぬハプニング【に】場内が沸いた。
omowanu hapuningu ni jōnai ga waita
The audience got excited at the unexpected happening.

116.16 VERB/VERBAL NOUN **ni wa**

Certain V, including the ones in the examples below, take **ni wa** to mark the purpose or cause of their action, which translates as 'for', 'in order to' (see 231).

a 地図を見る【には】磁石が欠かせない。
chizu o miru ni wa jishaku ga kakasenai
For looking at the map, a compass is a must.
(**kakasenai** = neg. of the caus. of **kaku** 'to be lacking')

b 山口組の東京進出【には】、関東の暴力団も神経をとがらせている。
yamaguchi-gumi no tōkyō shinshutsu ni wa kantō no bōryokudan mo shinkei o togarasete iru
Kanto [area] gangster organizations are getting nervous (*lit.* "making their nerves sharp") because of the advance of the Yamaguchi-gumi into Tokyo.

116.17 NOUN (NOUN = PERSON) **ni wa**

This indicates the idea of 'for' (see also 126).

a 彼【には】カネがすべて。
kare ni wa kane ga subete
For him, money [is] everything.

116.18 NOUN (+ COUNTER) **ni** NOUN (+ COUNTER)

This is used like a conjoining P to enumerate items in the sense of 'plus', 'and' (see 28, 71, 215, 220, 241).

a 所持品はシャツ一枚【に】、スプーン一本と皿一枚だけ。
shojihin wa shatsu ichimai ni supūn ippon to sara ichimai dake
[His] belongings [are] only one shirt, plus one spoon and one plate.

b エメラルドグリーンの海【に】白い砂浜。
emerarudo gurīn no umi ni shiroi sunahama
An emerald-green sea and a white sandy beach.

117 ni atatte [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

This is equivalent to English expressions like ‘on the occasion of’, ‘when’, ‘in’, ‘for’ (see also 159).

117.1 Noun **ni atatte (wa/mo)**
117.2 Noun **ni atatte no** noun
117.3 Verb **ni atatte**
117.4 Verb **ni atari**
117.5 **ni atari** [phrasal particle] and **(ni) atari** (conjunctive form/verb-base of **(ni) ataru**): comparison

---

117.1 NOUN ni atatte (wa/mo)

a 売却【にあたって】建物は除去する。
baikyaku ni atatte tatemono wa jokyo suru
At the time of selling [the land], they will remove the buildings.

b 再開【にあたって】付けられた厳しい条件をクリアしている。
saikai ni atatte tsukerareta kibishii jōken o kuria shite iru
We’ve cleared the strict conditions [= of stock increases] imposed on the reopening.

c 利用【にあたって】は財団の審査がある。
riyō ni atatte wa zaidan no shinsa ga aru
For using [the facility] one has to undergo (*lit.* “there is”) screening by the foundation.

d 最高裁判決【にあたって】も、特別な感慨はないと言う。
saikōsai hanketsu ni atatte mo tokubetsu na kangai wa nai to iu
He says that he has no particular feelings regarding the high court decision.

e その没後百年【にあたって】様々な書物が出版された。
sono botsugo hyakunen ni atatte samazama na shomotsu ga shuppan sareta
On the 100th anniversary of his death a variety of books were published.

117.2 NOUN ni atatte no NOUN

a Ｊリーグ設立【にあたって】の手腕を高く評価されている。
J-rīgu setsuritsu ni atatte no shuwan o takaku hyōka sarete iru
His clout in setting up the J league is highly regarded.

117.3 VERB **ni atatte**

a 彼女はこの本を書く【にあたって】まずこう宣言する。「哲学という言葉を一切用いることなく、哲学を語ることができるのでなければ、それは哲学ではない」と。
kanojo wa kono hon o kaku ni atatte mazu kō sengen suru. tetsugaku to iu kotoba o issai mochiiru koto naku tetsugaku o kataru koto ga dekiru no de nakereba sore wa tetsugaku de wa nai to
Regarding the writing of this book, she proclaims the following. 'If you can't talk about philosophy without using the word philosophy at all, then that's not philosophy'.

117.4 VERB **ni atari**

a 番組供給サービスを展開する【にあたり】会員組織を発足する。
bangumi kyōkyū sābisu o tenkai suru ni atari kaiin soshiki o hossoku suru
For developing the programme supply service, they will set up a membership organization.

117.5 **ni atari** [PHRASAL PARTICLE] AND **(ni) atari** (CONJUNCTIVE FORM/VERB-BASE OF **(ni) ataru**): COMPARISON

The phrasal P **ni atari** is not to be confused with the conjunctive form of the V **(ni) ataru** 'correspond (to)', 'fall (on)':

a 三—六月は産卵期【にあたり】、絶食しながら浅瀬に移動してくる。
san kara rokugatsu wa sanranki ni atari zesshoku shinagara asase ni idō shite kuru
March to June being their spawning time, they stop feeding and move to the shallows.

118 **ni chigai nai** [SENTENCE ENDING]

Attached to S, **ni chigai nai** indicates that the speaker is guessing with conviction, i.e. is convinced that his statement is true 'no doubt is', 'must be'. The forms to which **ni chigai nai** is attached are the forms used before N, except that AN/N are used minus cop.

The difference between this form and **hazu** (see 62) is that whereas **hazu** is used when the speaker bases the guess on some evidence (including common sense), **ni chigai nai** can be used with more subjective guesses that are not necessarily backed up by evidence (see 73, 163).

a 西洋の陶磁器の歴史を多少なりともかじるか、もしくはギリシャの歴史に興味を持っている方なら、聞いたことがある【にちがいない】。アンフォラ(amphora)。

seiyō no tōjiki no rekishi o tashō nari tomo kajiru ka moshiku wa girisha no rekishi ni kyōmi o motte iru kata nara kiita koto ga aru ni chigai nai. Anphora.

Anyone who has read anything about the history of Western ceramics, or has the slightest interest in the history of Greece, will have heard this [word] before: 'amphora'.

b それは関西空港のハブ空港化にとって、ひとつの大きな障害となる【にちがいない】。

sore wa kansai kūkō no habu kūkō-ka ni totte hitotsu no ōki na shōgai to naru ni chigai nai

That [= the expensive landing fees] will without doubt be a big obstacle to Kansai becoming a hub airport.

c 地球からは衝突を直接観測できないといわれても、天文ファンの目は夜空に注がれる【にちがいない】。

chikyū kara wa shōtotsu o chokusetsu kansoku dekinai to iwarete mo tenmon fan no me wa yozora ni sosogareru ni chigai nai

Even if told that the clash cannot directly be observed from the earth, amateur astronomers will no doubt have their eyes fixed on the night sky.

d 世界遺産登録の観光効果は今後じわじわと出てくる【にちがいない】。

sekai isan tōroku no kankō kōka wa kongo jiwajiwa to dete kuru ni chigai nai

The tourism effect of being registered as a World Heritage [site] will no doubt appear gradually from now on.

e「何かあった【にちがいない】」と社内では大騒ぎ。

nani ka atta ni chigai nai to shanai de wa ōsawagi

There was quite an uproar in the company that 'something must have happened'.

119 ni hanshi(te) [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

ni hanshi(te) indicates the idea of 'contrary to', 'inversely to' (see 159, 125).

a 予想【に反して】裁判は長引き、原告のほとんどが今や五十代だ。

yosō ni hanshite saiban wa nagabiki genkoku no hotondo ga ima ya gojūdai da

Contrary to expectations, the trial dragged on, and most of the plaintiffs are now in their fifties

b 今回も気象庁の当初予想【に反して】強い勢力を保ったままになっている。
konkai mo kishōchō no tōsho yosō ni hanshite tsuyoi seiryoku o tamotta mama ni natte iru
This time too, contrary to the initial expectations of the Weather Agency, [the typhoon] has maintained its strength.

c 同社のレンジは機能【に反して】年々ボタン類が少なくなってきた。
dōsha no renji wa kinō ni hanshite nennen botanrui ga sukunaku natte kita
Inversely to the [number of] functions of their microwave ovens, the number of controls have become fewer every year.

120 ni kakete [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

Attached to N of time or place, **ni kakete** indicates that the action or state of the pred. extends over the time or area to which **ni kakete** is attached '(extending) over', 'to' (see 159, 85).

Whereas **made** does not specify that the time or place it is attached to is included in the mention, **ni kakete** does.

Note – when attached to other N, **ni kakete wa/mo** has a different meaning: 'when it comes to', 'concerning'.

120.1 **ni kake(te)**
120.1.1 **ni kaket(te)** predicate
120.1.2 **ni kake(te)** [phrasal particle] and **(ni) kake(te)** [verb-stem]: comparison
120.1.3 **ni kakete no** noun
120.2 **ni kakete wa/mo**

120.1 ni kake(te)

120.1.1 ni kake(te) predicate

a 週末【にかけて】、雨の心配はないという。
shūmatsu ni kakete ame no shinpai wa nai to iu
Over the weekend, there is no chance of rain, they say.

b カラスは春から初夏【にかけて】巣作りをする。
karasu wa haru kara shoka ni kakete suzukuri o suru
Crows build their nests from spring to early summer.

c 台風が接近する夕刻【にかけ】、さらに影響が広がる見込みだ。
taifū ga sekkin suru yūkoku ni kake sara ni eikyō ga hirogaru mikomi da
Over the evening hours, when the typhoon closes in, its influence is expected to spread even wider.

120.1.2 ni kake(te) [phrasal particle] and (ni) kake(te) [verb-stem]: comparison

Note that **ni kake(te)**, when *not* attached to a N of time or place, can also be the stem form of the V **kakeru** 'put before' (a committee etc.), which takes the particle **ni** to mark the committee, etc.

a 九月の都市計画審議会【にかけ】、早ければ来年度にも事業に着手する。
kugatsu no toshi keikaku shingikai ni kake hayakereba rainendo ni mo jigyō ni chakushu suru
They will put it before the Town Planning Committee in September, and may start work as early as next fiscal year.

120.1.3 ni kakete no noun

a 「年末【にかけて】の増加に期待したい」と話す。
nenmatsu ni kakete no zōka ni kitai shitai to hanasu
We hope for (*lit.* "wish to see") an increase over the end-of-year [period].

b 特に関東から静岡県【にかけて】の地域に出店を集中させる。
toku ni kantō kara shizuoka-ken ni kakete no chiiki ni shutten o shūchū saseru
They will especially concentrate outlets in the area from Kanto to Shizuoka prefecture.

c 女性の首から胸【にかけて】のシワ、たるみを防ぐ働きがある。
josei no kubi kara mune ni kakete no shiwa tarumi o fusegu hataraki ga aru
[The cream] has the effect of preventing the wrinkles and sagging extending over the area from women's neck to breasts.

120.2 ni kakete wa/mo

The sense here is 'when it comes to'.

a 正直さ、率直さ【にかけて】は、マレーシアが一番だった。
shōjiki-sa sotchoku-sa ni kakete wa marēshia ga ichiban datta
When it comes to honesty and openness, Malaysia came out on top [of the APEC politicians].

b しかしサービスに【にかけて】は日本の書店はとてもかなわない。最近オープンした比較的大きな書店にはまず、いすがある。
shikashi sābisu ni kakete wa nihon no shoten wa totemo kanawanai. saikin ōpun shita hikaku-teki ōkina shoten ni wa mazu isu ga aru
However, when it comes to service, Japanese bookshops are no match at all [for US ones]. In a relatively large bookshop that opened recently, there are chairs, for starters

121 ni kanshi(te) [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

ni kanshite indicates the idea of 'concerning', 'about', 'with respect to', 'as regards'.

The difference between **ni kanshite, ni tsuite** and **o megutte** is that whereas **ni kanshite** is attached to some topic or problem that is to be dealt with or considered/talked about, **ni tsuite** more narrowly refers to the topic of some communication. **o megutte**, on the other hand, usually refers to something that people argue about (see 159, 127, 150).

121.1 **ni kanshi(te) (wa/mo)**
121.2 **ni kansuru** noun

121.1 ni kanshi(te) (wa/mo)

a 国際協力【に関して】、日本は予想以上に期待されている。
kokusai kyōryoku ni kanshite nihon wa yosō ijō ni kitai sarete iru
As regards international co-operation, expectations toward Japan are greater than expected.

b …景気対策【に関し】「この二、三日中に大枠を示したい」。
keiki taisaku ni kanshi kono nisannichi-chū ni ōwaku o shimeshitai
. . . with respect to measures to revive the economy, [he said], 'I'd like to give an outline within the next two or three days'.

c また農薬の使用など【に関して】も調査する。
mata nōyaku no shiyō nado ni kanshite mo chōsa suru
We will also survey the use of agricultural chemicals.

121.2 ni kansuru NOUN

a カネ【に関する】悩みは尽きない。
kane ni kansuru nayami wa tsukinai
There's always something to worry about where money is concerned.

b フランスで日本【に関する】本は多く出ている。
furansu de nihon ni kansuru hon wa ōku dete iru
In France many books on Japan are published.

122 ni kawatte [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

ni kawatte indicates that some thing (or person) replaces some other thing/person 'in lieu of', 'replacing' (see 159).

122.1 **ni kawatte/ni kawari**
122.2 **ni kawaru** noun

122.1 ni kawatte/ni kawari

a 自家用車【にかわって】バスを市民の足として定着させようと懸命だ。
jikayōsha ni kawatte basu o shimin no ashi to shite teichaku saseyō to kenmei da
They are trying hard to establish the bus to replace the private car as the citizens' means of transport.

b 楽器【に代わり】自動車が盟主の座に——。浜松を中心とする静岡県西部地区で、こんな話をよく耳にする。
gakki ni kawari jidōsha ga meishu no za ni. hamamatsu o chūshin to suru shizuoka-ken seibu chiku de konna hanashi o yoku mimi ni suru
The car has replaced musical instruments as the leading product [of the area]. This is something you hear often in the western region of Shizuoka prefecture centring on Hamamatsu.

122.2 ni kawaru NOUN

When modifying N, the V (**ni**) **kawaru** 'in place of' is used.

a マニュアル【に代わる】ものがいる。
manyuaru ni kawaru mono ga iru
We need something in lieu of a manual.

b ソ連の脅威【に代わる】「新しい脅威」が姿を現している。
soren no kyōi ni kawaru atarashii kyōi ga sugata o arawashite iru
A 'new menace' is manifesting itself in place of the Soviet menace.

123 ni oite [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

ni oite can be regarded as a written or formal equivalent of **de** 'in', 'at', although it is not always replaceable with **de** (see 159, 40).

When modifying a N, both **ni okeru** and **ni oite** can be used (the former is far more common).

123.1 **ni oite (wa/mo)**
123.2 **ni okeru** noun
123.3 **ni oite no** noun

123.1 ni oite (wa/mo)

a 私は、人生と文学【において】渡辺一夫の弟子です。
watashi wa jinsei to bungaku ni oite watanabe kazuo no deshi desu
I am, in life and in literature, a pupil of Watanabe Kazuo.

b 今後も番組製作【において】は著作権を尊重していく。
kongo mo bangumi seisaku ni oite wa chosakuken o sonchō shite iku
In the future too we will respect copyright in producing our programmes.

c やはり恋愛【において】も女性が優位なのではないか。
yahari ren'ai ni oite mo josei ga yūi na no de wa nai ka
As you might expect, women are dominant in love, too, aren't they [= Men wearing wedding rings to show they're faithful to their women]?

123.2 ni okeru NOUN

a トルコ【における】成人識字率は約80%。
toruko ni okeru seijin shikiji-ritsu wa yaku hachijup-pāsento
The adult literacy rate in Turkey is about 80 per cent.

b 問題は中国【における】ハイテクのレベルだ。
mondai wa chūgoku ni okeru haiteku no reberu da
The problem is the level of hi-tech in China.

123.3 ni oite no NOUN

a 必要なことは研究開発【において】の柔軟性だ。
hitsuyō na koto wa kenkyū kaihatsu ni oite no jūnan-sei da
What's necessary is flexibility in research development.

124 ni saishi(te) [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

Although (like other phrasal P) **ni saishi(te)** is attached to N, these are VN (usually two-*kanji* SJ words), i.e. have verbal meaning 'built in'. **ni saishite** indicates the idea of 'at (the time of)', 'in', 'in case of' that action (see 159, 234).

a 従来、選挙【に際して】「党」か「人」かがよく問題になった。
jūrai senkyo ni saishite tō ka hito ka ga yoku mondai ni natta
In the past, 'party' versus 'person' was often a problem in elections.

b 売却【に際し】、地価下落に泣かされたところも少なくない。
baikyaku ni saishi chika geraku ni nakasareta tokoro mo sukunaku nai
At the time of selling, quite a few places suffered from the drop in land prices.

c フランス入国【に際し】、政治亡命の申請などはしていないという。
furansu nyūkoku ni saishi seiji bōmei no shinsei nado wa shite inai to iu
They say that at the time of entering France, he didn't apply for political asylum.

d 入居【に際して】は保証金として十万五千円を町に支払う。
nyūkyo ni saishite wa hoshōkin to shite jūman gosen'en o machi ni shiharau
At the time of occupation, you pay the town ¥105,000 as security.

125 ni taishi(te) [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

ni taishite indicates that some action or state is directed 'against'or 'towards' the N to which **ni taishi(te)** is attached. In meaning, **ni taishite** ranges from 'against' to 'towards', 'for', 'in', 'in contrast to', etc. Before N, both **ni taisuru** and **ni taishite** are used.

Note the difference to **ni hanshite**, which is much narrower in meaning and use 'contrary to' (expectations etc.) or 'in inverse proportion to' (see 159, 119).

a ドルはマルク【に対して】続伸した。
doru wa maruku ni taishite zokushin shita
The dollar continued to gain against the mark.

b 男は調べ【に対し】黙秘を続けているという。
otoko wa shirabe ni taishi mokuhi o tsuzukete iru to iu
The man is said to be keeping silent in the face of the questioning.

c 働くための都会【に対し】、地方は自然がいっぱい。
hataraku tame no tokai ni taishi chihō wa shizen ga ippai
In contrast to the big city, [which is] for work, the regions are full of nature.

d 記者団【に対して】は一切沈黙を通した。
kishadan ni taishite wa issai chinmoku o tōshita
He maintained total silence to the press.

125.1 **ni taisuru** noun
125.2 **ni taishite no** noun

125.1 ni taisuru NOUN

a 子供【に対する】愛情はもちろんある
kodomo ni taisuru aijō wa mochiron aru
Of course I have love for my children

b 通貨【に対する】信認も大切だ。
tsūka ni taisuru shinnin mo taisetsu da
Faith in the currency is important too.

c 公共事業の先行き【に対する】不安も強い。
kokyō jigyō no sakiyuki ni taisuru fuan mo tsuyoi
There is also a strong feeling of unease regarding the future [prospects] for public works.

125.2 ni taishite no NOUN

a 都知事【に対して】の評価はまだ分からない」
tochiji ni taishite no hyōka wa mada wakaranai
The rating of the metropolitan governor is still unknown.

126 ni totte [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

Attached to N and pron. indicating persons (or organizations), **ni totte** indicates that some action or state takes place 'for' the person(s) or organization(s) (see 159).

126.1 **ni totte**
126.2 **ni tori**
126.3 **ni totte no** noun

126.1 ni totte

a 僕【にとって】大学は自由研究の場です。
boku ni totte daigaku wa jiyū kenkyū no ba desu
For me, the university is a place for unfettered research.

b 道路は生き物【にとって】「死のワナ」なのだ。
dōro wa ikimono ni totte shi no wana na no da
Roads are a 'death trap' for living things.

c しかし、旅行者【にとって】は歩きやすい街だ。
shikashi ryokōsha ni totte wa arukiyasui machi da
However, for the traveller it is a town that is easy to walk [around].

d こうした展開は北朝鮮【にとって】も得策ではない。
kō shita tenkai wa kita chōsen ni totte mo tokusaku de wa nai
This development is not good for North Korea either.

126.2 ni tori

a 私【にとり】音楽監督は初めて。
watashi ni tori ongaku kantoku wa hajimete
For me, musical directorship is a first.

126.3 ni totte no NOUN

a 欧州企業にとってアフリカは、いわば日本企業【にとって】のアジアだ。
ōshū kigyō ni totte afurika wa iwaba nihon kigyō ni totte no ajia da
For European business Africa is so to speak [what] Asia [is] for Japanese business.

127 ni tsuite [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

ni tsuite is used with pred. of communicative activity (talking, writing, thinking, etc.), and indicates what that activity is 'about' or 'on'. It is similar in meaning and use to **ni kanshite**, but **ni kanshite** is more widely used in the sense of 'concerning' (see 159, 121, 150, 83.3.14).

As the first example shows, **ni tsuite** (but not **ni kanshite**) can be used for titles of theses and essays etc. (for more about differences between the three phrasal P, see 121).

127.1 **ni tsuite**
127.2 **ni tsuki**
127.3 **ni tsuite no** noun

127.1 ni tsuite

a 「海外における女性の職場環境【について】」という作文を提出した。
kaigai ni okeru josei no shokuba kankyō ni tsuite to iu sakubun o teishutsu shita
She submitted an essay entitled 'On the work environment of women overseas'.

b その件【について】はノーコメントです。
sono ken ni tsuite wa nō komento desu
On that matter, it's no comment.

c 消費税【について】はどうお考えですか。
shōhizei ni tsuite wa dō o-kangae desu ka
What are your thoughts on the consumption tax?

127.2 ni tsuki

This is a bookish variant of **ni tsuite**, and should not be confused with **ni tsuki**, which is a separate phrasal P (see 128).

Note – **ni tsuki** can also be the conjunctive form of the V **tsuku** 'reach', 'arrive', 'take up a position', etc., which also takes the particle **ni**.

a 地球環境問題解決の緊急性【につき】繰り返す必要はない。
chikyū kankyō mondai kaiketsu no kinkyū-sei ni tsuki kurikaesu hitsuyō wa nai
There is no need to reiterate the urgency of solving the earth's environmental problems.

b このような事態となったこと【につき】、大変遺憾に存ずるとともに深くおわびを申し上げる。
kono yō na jitai to natta koto ni tsuki taihen ikan ni zonzuru to tomo ni fukaku owabi o mōshiageru
[= finance company employee indicted for illegal doings:]
We deeply regret that this has happened, and offer our sincerest apologies.

127.3 ni tsuite no NOUN

a コンピューター【について】の会話はスムーズだ。
konpyūtā ni tsuite no kaiwa wa sumūzu da
His conversation about computers is well informed.

128 ni tsuki (PHRASAL PARTICLE]

Used between units or amounts, the phrasal P **ni tsuki** indicates '(unit/amount) per', 'for (unit/amount)'. Attached to other N, it means 'owing to' (see 159).

128.1 Unit/amount **ni tsuki**
128.2 Other noun **ni tsuki**

128.1 UNIT/AMOUNT ni tsuki

In this use, **ni tsuki** means 'unit/amount per', 'for unit/amount'. See also 116.14 for expressions like 'times per period', etc.

a 一回【につき】三百円だ。
ikkai ni tsuki sanbyaku-en da
It's ¥300 a go.

b 一びん六百 cc 【につき】、一キログラムのトマトを使っている。
hitobin roppyaku cc ni tsuki ichi kiroguramu no tomato o tsukatte iru
For one bottle [of] 600cc, they use one kilogram of tomatoes.

128.2 OTHER NOUN **ni tsuki**

Attached to N other than units or amounts, **ni tsuki** indicates a reason 'owing to'.

a 私には「長期間留守【につき】、ゆっくり仕事できます。ゴッソリ持っていって」と聞こえてしまって…
watashi ni wa chō-kikan rusu ni tsuki yukkuri shigóto dekimasu. gossori motte itte to kikoete shimatte
To me, [= the recorded message giving dates of absence from home] sounds like 'Owing to my extended absence from home, you [= the burglar] can work at your leisure. Take plenty' . . .

b 「マリンジャンボ」が大好評【につき】、急きょ導入が決まったもので、デザインは同じだ。
marin janbo ga dai-kōhyō ni tsuki kyūkyo dōnyū ga kimatta mono de dezain wa onaji da
It was suddenly decided to introduce [this aircraft] because of the popularity of the 'Marine jumbo'; the design is the same.

129 **ni yoreba** [PHRASE]

Identical to **ni yoru to**, indicating source of information (see 131).

130 **ni yori** [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

ni yori is a formal and less common variant of **ni yotte** (see 132).

131 **ni yoru to** [PHRASE]

ni yoru to (less commonly **ni yoreba**) is added directly to N to indicate source of information 'according to'. Because such situations, by their nature, express hearsay, it is normal to complete the sentence with **sō** (examples a, d and e) or **rashii** (examples b and c); in English, this use of **sō** and **rashii** is not normally translated.

Synonymous is the combination **de wa** (for restrictions on its use in comparison to **ni yoru to** and **ni yoreba**, see 47).

Rather than **sō** or **rashii**, ordinary V forms are also used (example f), which is similar to English usage.

Note 1 – **-tte** is too informal to be used in source of information sentences.

Note 2 – **ni yoru to** and **ni yotte** are often confused by English speakers because they sound similar, and both are translated as 'according to'. They are *not* interchangeable. **ni yoru to** expresses source of information, while **ni yotte** expresses basis of difference.

a 田村さん【によれば】、「ある流通業者が安売りすると、他の業者もその値段で売りたいと要望してくる」【そう】だ。
tamura-san ni yoreba aru ryūtsū gyōsha ga yasuuri suru to hoka no gyōsha mo sono nedan de uritai to yōbō shite kuru sō da
According to Tamura-san, 'When one distributor sells [something] cheaper, the others also ask to sell it at that price'.

b 伊予署の調べ【では】、双方の安全不確認が原因【らし】い。
iyosho no shirabe de wa, sōhō no anzen fu-kakunin ga gen'in rashii
According to the Iyo Police Station enquiry, the cause appears to be both parties' failure to check that it was safe to proceed.

c 前橋署【によると】、米田さんは一人でアユ釣りに来て川に入って転倒、流された【らし】い。
maebashi-sho ni yoru to, yoneda-san wa hitori de ayutsuri ni kite kawa ni haitte tentō, nagasareta rashii
According to Maebashi Police Station, Mr Yoneda apparently came alone and got into the river to fish for sweetfish; [he then] fell over and got washed away.

d 武田さん【によると】、「よく運動するため、筋繊維がしまって脂肪の質が良く、歯触りもいい」【そう】だ。
takeda-san ni yoru to yoku undō suru tame kinsen'i ga shimatte shibō no shitsu ga yoku hazawari mo ii sō da
According to Takeda-san 'Because they [= pigs] move around a lot, the muscle fibres are tight, the fat's good quality, and the texture's good too'.

e 都教育庁【によると】、今後十年間に進学する生徒数は約三割減り【そう】だ。
to-kyōiku-chō ni yoru to kongo jūnen-kan ni shingaku suru seito-sū wa yaku sanwari herisō da
According the Metropolitan Education Agency, the number of pupils who go on to high school during the coming 10 years is likely to decrease by 30 per cent.

f 愛知県警安城署の調べ【によると】、二人組は小池さんらの前に飛び出し、前を走っていた妻の自転車のカゴから袋をひったくった。
aichi-kenkei anjō-sho no shirabe ni yoru to futari-gumi wa koike-san-ra no mae ni tobidashi mae o hashitte ita tsuma no jitensha no kago kara fukuro o hittakutta
According to the Aki station of the Aichi Prefectural Police, the two jumped in front of the Koikes, and snatched the bag from the bicycle basket of the wife, who was riding in front.

132 ni yotte [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

ni yotte expresses two meanings: the means or cause through which an action or development takes place ('through', 'of', 'in accordance with', 'due to'), and, in S with pred. of change or difference, **ni yotte (wa/mo)** means 'depending on' (see 159, 156.5).

Note – **ni yotte** and **ni yoru to** are often confused by English speakers because they sound similar, and both are translated as 'according to'. They are *not* interchangeable. **ni yoru to** expresses source of information, while **ni yotte** expresses basis of difference.

132.1 **ni yotte**
132.1.1 **ni yotte** (means or cause)
132.1.2 **ni yoru** noun
132.2 **ni yotte (wa/mo)** predicate of change/difference

132.1 ni yotte

This indicates a means or cause 'through', 'with', 'owing to'. After N indicating a wish or request, the meaning is 'in accordance with'.

132.1.1 ni yotte (means or cause)

a イベント【によって】連帯感が生まれる。
ibento ni yotte rentaikan ga umareru
Solidarity is created through [staging] events.

b 湿気【によって】壁にはカビが発生する。
shikke ni yotte kabe ni wa kabi ga hassei suru
Owing to the humidity, mould grows on the walls.

c 透明度を高めること【によって】国民の理解は深まるだろう。
tōmei-do o takameru koto ni yotte kokumin no rikai wa fukamaru darō
Through increasing transparency, the understanding of the people should deepen.

d 告別式は故人の希望【により】行わない。
kokubetsu-shiki wa kojin no kibō ni yori okonawanai
In accordance with the wishes of the deceased, no funeral will be held.

132.1.2 ni yoru noun

a 電話【による】相談も受ける。
denwa ni yoru sōdan mo ukeru
They also accept consultations by telephone

b また、日本刀【による】マキやワラの裁断も実演する。
mata nihontō ni yoru maki ya wara no saidan mo jitsuen suru
They also demonstate the cutting of firewood and straw [sheaves] with Japanese swords.

132.2 ni yotte (wa/mo) predicate of change/difference

With pred. of change/difference, **ni yotte (wa/mo)** means 'depending on'.

a 紫外線の影響の表れ方は生物の種【によって】異なる。
shigaisen no eikyō no araware-kata wa seibutsu no shu ni yotte kotonaru
The way the influence of UV rays appears differs according to the type of organism.

b 高さはコンテナの数【により】変わる。
takasa wa kontena no kazu ni yori kawaru
The height [of the warehouse] differs depending on the number of containers [it holds].

c 内定者数は業種【により】明暗が分かれた。
naitei-sha-sū wa gyōshu ni yori meian ga wakareta
The number of informal [job] offers differed according to business type.

d 商品【によって】はカウボーイより安かった。
shōhin ni yotte wa kaubōi yori yasukatta
Depending on the item, it was cheaper than Cowboy [= a cheap chain store].

133 no [CASE PARTICLE]

no is a case P that can be used either as genitive (or associative) P between N and N-like units, or subject marker in N-mod. clauses (see also 137).

133.1 Genitive or associative particle
133.1.1 Noun 1 **no** noun 2
133.1.2 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 1/noun 2 = time noun)
133.1.3 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 2 = verbal noun)
133.1.4 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 1 = noun of quantity (+ counter))
133.1.5 *X*-**bun no** *Y* (*Y* = number): indicating a fraction
133.1.6 Demonstrative pronoun **no** noun
133.1.7 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 2 = relational noun)
133.1.8 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 2 = nominalized verb or adjective)
133.1.8.1 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 2 = verb-stem-**kata**)
133.1.8.2 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 2 = adjective/adjectival noun-root-**sa**)
133.1.9 Noun 1 **ya** noun 2 **nado no** noun 3

133.1.10 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 1 = noun 2 (apposition))
133.1.11 Noun 1 particle **no** noun 2: 'condensed' noun-modifying phrase
133.1.12 Indirect quotation **to no** noun
133.1.13 Verb-**te no** noun
133.2 Marking subject in a noun-modifying clause

133.1 GENITIVE OR ASSOCIATIVE PARTICLE

133.1.1 Noun 1 **no** noun 2

Used to modify a following N (N2) with a preceding N (N1), N1 **no** describes N2 in a variety of meanings, including location (example a), ownership (example b), authorship (example c), place of production or provenance (example d), material made of, genitive proper (example e), and many more. This is why **no** is sometimes called an 'associative particle', i.e. a P that connects N and N-like units in a wide variety of meanings; most typical is perhaps the meaning shown in 133.1.10 – examples of apposition of the two N. Note that the main (or modified) N is always N2 (for various ways of expressing 'Japanese N', see 34.4).

Note – there are examples where there is more than one N + **no**, i.e. N1 **no** N2 **no** N3 (example i), or even N1 **no** N2 **no** N3 **no** N4 (example j).

a 駅【の】電話
eki no denwa
a/the phone at the station

b 私【の】宝物
watashi no takaramono
my treasure

c 大江健三郎【の】小説
ōe kenzaburō no shōsetsu
a/the novel by Ōe Kenzaburo

d 日本【の】カメラ
nihon no kamera
a Japanese camera

e 日本人【の】主食
nihonjin no shushoku
the staple food of the Japanese

f 女【の】弁護士
onna no bengoshi
a female lawyer

g ユニホーム【の】野茂投手
yunihōmu no nomo tōshu
pitcher Nomo in uniform

h 税金【の】問題
zeikin no mondai
the tax problem(s)

i 日本【の】住宅【の】狭さ
nihon no jūtaku no semasa
the smallness of Japanese homes

j …結婚した後【の】C子さん【の】最近【の】話題は、夫や子供など「家庭ネタ」ばかり。
kekkon shita ato no C-ko-san no saikin no wadai wa otto ya kodomo nado katei-neta bakari
C-ko's recent conversation topics since she got married . . . are all 'domestic' ones about her husband and the children.

133.1.2 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 1/noun 2 = time noun)

Either N1 or N2, or both, can be time N.

a 来年【の】10月ごろ
rainen no jūgatsu goro
around October of next year

b 日曜【の】正午すぎ
nichiyō no shōgo sugi
past noon on Sunday

c 最近【の】若者
saikin no wakamono
the young of recent times

d 現在【の】状態
genzai no jōtai
the present state

133.1.3 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 2 = verbal noun)

Here, N2 is a VN, i.e. implies an action (V-ing).

a この工場ではハム【の】製造を行っている。(cf., 製造する 'make')
kono kōjō de wa hamu no seizō o okonatte iru
In this factory they make (*lit.* "engage in the making of") ham.

b 引っ越したばかりで、部屋【の】整理ができていない。(cf., 整理する 'put in order')
hikkoshita bakari de heya no seiri ga dekite inai
As he has just moved, the room hasn't been put in order (*lit.* "the ordering of the room hasn't been achieved").

133.1.4 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 1 = noun of quantity (+ counter))

Apart from num. and/or C, some adv. of degree can also be used in this way (see 147, 36, 5.2).

a 100円【の】切手 **hyakuen no kitte** a hundred-yen stamp	b 10歳【の】子供 **jussai no kodomo** a 10-year old child
c 一台【の】新車 **ichidai no shinsha** a/one new car	d 60ワット【の】電球 **rokujūwatto no denkyū** a 60W light bulb
e 一つ【の】試み **hitotsu no kokoromi** an/one experiment	f たくさん【の】プレゼント **takusan no purezento** many presents

133.1.5 *X*-bun no *Y* (*Y* = number): indicating a fraction

Literally, the meaning is "*Y* out of *X* parts", and is used to indicate a fraction.

a 三分【の】二
sanbun no ni
two-thirds

b 十分【の】一
jūbun no ichi
one-tenth

c コップ半分【の】水を「半分しかない」と考えるか「半分もある」と思うか。
koppu hanbun no mizu o hanbun shika nai to kangaeru ka hanbun mo aru to omou ka
Whether to think of half a cup of water as 'only half', or to feel that 'there's as much as half'.

133.1.6 Demonstrative pronoun **no** noun

Instead of N1, a demonstrative pron. is used, which in Japanese functions similarly to a N (see 45).

a ここ【の】家の主人 **koko no ie no shujin** the master of this house	b これら【の】問題 **korera no mondai** these problems

133.1.7 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 2 = relational noun)

The meaning of **no** N2 is similar to preposition + N in English (see 171).

a 箱【の】中のりんご
hako no naka no ringo
(the) apples in the box

b テーブル【の】上にコーヒーカップを置く。
tēburu no ue ni kōhī kappu o oku
He puts the coffee cup on the table.

133.1.8 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 2 = nominalized verb or adjective)

133.1.8.1 *Noun 1* ***no*** *noun 2 (noun 2 = verb-stem-****kata****)*

-kata nominalizes a V in the sense of 'way of doing' (see 78, 34.2).

a はし【の】持ち方を練習する。
hashi no mochi-kata o renshū suru
They practise (*lit.* "the way of") holding chopsticks.

b 山口【の】やり方はよくない。
yamaguchi no yari-kata wa yokunai
Yamaguchi's way of doing things is no good.

133.1.8.2 *Noun 1* ***no*** *noun 2 (noun 2 = adjective/adjectival noun-root-****sa****)*

-sa nominalizes A and AN (see 175, 34.1.1).

a 旅行かばん【の】重さを計る。(cf., 重い 'heavy')
ryokō kaban no omo-sa o hakaru
They check the weight of the travel bag.

b 東京の物価【の】高さには驚く。(cf., 高い 'high')
tōkyō no bukka no taka-sa ni wa odoroku
One is amazed at the high level (*lit.* "height") of prices in Tokyo.

c 最後に強調したいのは、市民の声の重要【さ】だ。(cf., 重要な 'important')
saigo ni kyōchō shitai no wa shimin no koe no jūyō-sa da
Lastly, what I'd like to emphasize is the importance of the citizens' voice.

133.1.9 Noun 1 **ya** noun 2 **nado no** noun 3

Here, N3 is modified by a NP consisting of two N linked by **ya** and **nado** in the sense of 'N like . . .', 'N such as' (see 241, 102).

a パステルやフィンガー・ペイントなど【の】新製品
pasuteru ya fingā peinto nado no shin-seihin
new products like pastels and finger paint

b ピカソやゴッホなど【の】絵が飾られている。
pikaso ya gohho nado no e ga kazararete iru
Paintings by Picasso and [Van] Gogh, among others, are displayed.

133.1.10 Noun 1 **no** noun 2 (noun 1 = noun 2 (apposition))

N1 and N2 refer to the same entity; as the main N is N2, [N1 **no**] modifies it, giving further information as to its status, identity, etc. This device, which functions like an apposition, is used when the speaker or writer assumes that the listener or reader doesn't know this information (see 10).

a 弟【の】正夫君
otōto no masao-kun
Masao-kun, the younger brother

b 電子部品メーカー【の】村田製作所独自製品を次々と開発している。
denshi buhin mēkā no murata seisakusho dokuji seihin o tsugitsugi to kaihatsu shite iru
Murata Seisakusho, the electrical parts manufacturer, is rapidly developing products unique to them.

133.1.11 Noun 1 particle **no** noun 2: 'condensed' noun-modifying phrase

Where a statement contains a N + P combination indicating the direction or place of action, or participants, etc. in the action (P = case P other than **ga**/**o**, including also phrasal P such as **to shite** 'as'), this can be 'condensed' to a N-mod. Phrase [N1 P **no**] N2.

a	父から電話があった **chichi kara denwa ga atta** There was a phone call from father	→父から【の】電話 **chichi kara no denwa** →A phone call from father

Note where P in the modifying phrase is **ni**, it gets regularly converted to **e** (see 51.2).

b	友だちへ【の】手紙 **tomodachi e no tegami** A/the letter to a/the friend	(←友だちに手紙を書く) **tomodachi ni tegami o kaku** (←write a letter to a friend)
c	父から【の】電話 **chichi kara no denwa** A phone call from father	(←父から電話があった) **chichi kara denwa ga atta** (there was a phone call from father)
d	海外で【の】ボランティア活動 **kaigai de no borantia katsudō** voluntary activities abroad	(←海外でボランティア活動をする) **kaigai de borantia katsudō o suru** (engage in voluntary activities abroad)

e お父さんへ【の】プレゼントはベルトに決めたの。
otōsan e no purezento wa beruto ni kimeta no
As for the present for father, we decided on a tie.

f 人と【の】親しい付き合いは、五千年程度のウマやネコに比べるとずっと長い。
hito to no shitashii tsukiai wa gosennen teido no uma ya neko ni kuraberu to zutto nagai
[Dogs:] Close relations with man have been much longer compared to horses or cats, which [have been] only about 5000 years.

g 教師として【の】立場からいろいろ注意をしなければならない。
kyōshi to shite no tachiba kara iroiro chūi o shinakereba naranai
From the standpoint of a teacher, one must pay attention to a variety of things.

133.1.12 Indirect quotation **to no** noun

An indirect quotation + quotation P **to** serves to modify a following N by means of **no** in the sense of 'that', 'to the effect that', 'stating that' (see 217, 178.4.2.2).

a 解散すべきと【の】強い意見があった。
kaisan subeki to no tsuyoi iken ga atta
There were strong views, stating that it [= the Diet] should be dissolved.

b 来る必要はないと【の】返事を受け取った。
kuru hitsuyō wa nai to no henji o uketotta
I received an answer to the effect that there was no need to come.

133.1.13 Verb-**te no** noun

The modified N indicates an action that took place as a result of the action of the modifying V-**te** phrase, 'after doing V' (see 31.4.1).

a いろいろ考えて【の】自殺だったのだろう。
iroiro kangaete no jisatsu datta no darō
It probably was a suicide [that took place] after considering a variety of things.

b 親と話し合って【の】決定です。
oya to hanashiatte no kettei desu
It is a decision [made] after consultation with my parents.

133.2 MARKING SUBJECT IN A NOUN-MODIFYING CLAUSE

no commonly marks the subject in a N-mod. clause (shown below in []), which can be a complement clause or relative clause. In this use, **no** can be replaced by **ga** (see 55.13, 26, 143).

a [母【の】作る]料理が一番おいしい。
haha no tsukuru ryōri ga ichiban oishii
The food that mother makes is the tastiest.

b [イワシ【の】おいしい]季節になった。
iwashi no oishii kisetsu ni natta
The season when sardines are tasty has started.

c [フランス語【の】わかる]人は少なくない。
furansugo no wakaru hito wa sukunakunai
There are quite a few people who understand French.

134 no [FINAL PARTICLE]

no is an informal variant of the S ending **n(o) desu** or **no desu ka**, depending on whether the intonation is falling or rising (see 138). The forms preceding **no** are N-mod. forms.

134.1 Indicates a question (rising intonation)
134.2 Shows understanding (falling intonation)
134.3 Gives or requests an explanation (falling/rising intonation)
134.4 Verb/adjective **no** verb/adjective **no**

134.1 INDICATES A QUESTION (RISING INTONATION)

Questions ending in **no** have an intimate or familiar tone (see 164.2).

a どこへ行く【の】。
doko e iku no
Where are you going?

b 怒っていらっしゃる【の】。
okotte irassharu no
Are you angry?

c お父さん、社長になる【の】。
otōsan shachō ni naru no
Daddy, are you going to be company president?

d どうした【の】。
dō shita no
What's the matter?

e パパ、歴史は夜つくられるって言葉知らない【の】。
papa rekishi wa yoru tsukurareru tte kotoba shiranai no
Daddy, don't you know the saying 'History is made at night'?

134.2 SHOWS UNDERSTANDING (FALLING INTONATION)

This indicates the speaker's understanding of some situation, or of something said by someone else.

a 「このリンゴ、一つ100円だって。」「そんなに高い【の】。」
kono ringo hitotsu hyakuen datte sonna ni takai no
'These apples are ¥100 a piece, it seems.' 'That expensive, are they?'

b ああ、そうな【の】。
ā sō na no
Oh, I see.

134.3 GIVES OR REQUESTS AN EXPLANATION (FALLING/RISING INTONATION)

This is used mainly by women, sometimes with **yo** added.

a 痛い【の】!?
itai no
Does it hurt!?

b このケーキ、私が作った【の】よ。
kono kēki watashi ga tsukutta no yo
I've made this cake!

c またA子さん遅刻な【の】。
mata A-ko-san chikoku na no
Is A-ko late again?

d 今夜はお父さん帰ってこない【の】。ウフフ。
kon'ya wa otōsan kaette konai no. ufufu
Tonight, hubby's not coming home. Hee hee.

134.4 VERB/ADJECTIVE **no** VERB/ADJECTIVE **no**

In this use, **no** is attached to pairs of V/A of opposite meaning. The effect of this colloquial use is placing emphasis on the first member of the pair.

a 彼女はいつも死ぬ【の】生きる【の】と、大騒ぎをする。
kanojo wa itsumo shinu no ikiru no to ōsawagi o suru
She's always making a racket, saying she's gonna die.

b 柱に頭をぶつけてしまった。痛い【の】痛くない【の】、すっかり眠気が覚めてしまった。
hashira ni atama o butsukete shimatta. itai no itakunai no sukkari nemuke ga samete shimatta
I hit my head on a pole. It was *so* painful, I am wide awake (*lit.* "my sleepiness is totally gone").

135 **no** [NOMINALIZER]

As a nominalizer, **no** attaches to a S (ending in a N-mod. form, i.e. with AN, AN-**na** is used) and converts it into a grammatical N-equivalent (NP) (see 84). Compare the pairs of sentences (a, b and c, d) for examples of how this works.

a % はじめて彼女に会った
hajimete kanojo ni atta
I met her for the first time

b % はじめて彼女に会った【の】はバスの中だった。
hajimete kanojo ni atta no wa basu no naka datta
It was inside a bus that I met her for the first time.

c % 田中さんが入院した
tanaka-san ga nyūin shita
Tanaka-san was hospitalized

d % 田中さんが入院した【の】を知っていますか。
tanaka-san ga nyūin shita no o shitte imasu ka
Do you know that Tanaka-san was in hospital?

The first type of S containing a NP is called a cleft S, and the second one, a complement S (see 23, 26, 178.4.3).

135.1 Sentence **no wa** . . . copula: nominalizer in a cleft sentence
135.2 Noun **to iu no wa**
135.3 Sentence **no** (nominalizer in a complement clause)
135.3.1 Sentence **no** + verb of perception
135.3.2 Sentence **no** + other predicate

135.1 SENTENCE **no wa** . . . COPULA: NOMINALIZER IN A CLEFT SENTENCE

(See 23.)

a % 彼が来なかった【の】は病気だったからだ。
kare ga konakatta no wa byōki datta kara da
It was because he was ill that he didn't come.

b 確かな【の】は、危機は去っていないということだ。
tashika na no wa kiki wa satte inai to iu koto da
What is certain is that the crisis is not over

c レフェリーに向けられるファンの目が冷ややかな【の】は、どのスポーツでも一緒だ。
referī ni mukerareru fan no me ga hiyayaka na no wa dono supōtsu de mo issho da
That the fans' attitude towards the umpire is frosty applies to any sport.

135.2 NOUN to iu no wa

This is often used for definitions, or definition-like comments (see 218).

a 人生という【の】は面白くて悲しいものだ。
jinsei to iu no wa omoshirokute kanashii mono da
Life (*lit.* "this thing called life") is a fascinating and sad thing.

135.3 SENTENCE no (NOMINALIZER IN A COMPLEMENT CLAUSE)

(See 26, 83.)

135.3.1 Sentence no + verb of perception

Here, the object of the V of perception is made into a complement clause. It indicates that some happening or state is seen/heard/felt.

The P attached to the nominalized clause depends on the valency of the V: **miru** 'see', **kiku** 'hear', etc. take **o**; **mieru** 'be seen', **kikoeru** 'be heard' take **ga**; and **ki ga tsuku** 'notice' takes **ni**.

a % 彼女がレストランに入る【の】を見た。
kanojo ga resutoran ni hairu no o mita
I saw her enter the restaurant.

b % 飛行機が飛んでいる【の】が見える。
hikōki ga tonde iru no ga mieru
One can see the aeroplanes fly.

c % 小鳥が鳴いている【の】が聞こえる。
kotori ga naite iru no ga kikoeru
The singing/song of the birds is/can be heard.

d % 子供の体が少し熱い【の】に気がついた。
kodomo no karada ga sukoshi atsui no ni ki ga tsuita
I noticed that the body of the child was a little hot.

e 打球が右中間を破る【の】が見えた。
dakyū ga uchūkan o yaburu no ga mieta
I could see the [base]ball break through the middle right [defending] space.

f 官僚たちがほくそ笑む【の】が見えるようである。
kanryō-tachi ga hokuso-emu no ga mieru yō de aru
You can almost see the bureaucrats chuckling to themselves [with delight].

g 私には成長した子供たちがこんな話をしている【の】が聞こえます。
watashi ni wa seichō shita kodomo-tachi ga konna hanashi o shite iru no ga kikoemasu
I hear [my] grown-up children talking as follows.

135.3.2 Sentence **no** + other predicate

(For more examples, see 26).

a % 映画を見る【の】が好きだ。
eiga o miru no ga suki da
He likes watching films.

b % 漢字を覚える【の】はちょっと大変だ。
kanji o oboeru no wa chotto taihen da
It is a little hard remembering (the) *kanji.*

c % きのう地震があった【の】を知らなかった。
kinō jishin ga atta no o shiranakatta
I didn't know there was an earthquake yesterday.

d 子供が泣く【の】は仕方のないことだ。
kodomo ga naku no wa shikata no nai koto da
That children cry can't be helped.

136 no [PRONOUN]

no can be a pron. that substitutes for a lexical N, referring to a thing or a person (or animal) in the sense of 'the one(s)'. In this use, **no** is modified like any other N by a N-mod. clause, in the same forms that are used to modify N. **no** itself attaches the same case or focus P that the lexical N would (see 136, 98).

a 大きい【の】は500円、小さい【の】は300円です。
ōkii no wa gohyaku-en chiisai no wa sanbyaku-en desu
The big ones are ¥500, the small ones ¥300.

b きのう買った【の】を見せて下さい。
kinō katta no o misete kudasai
Show me the one you bought yesterday.

c これを書いた【の】は林さんだ。
kore o kaita no wa hayashi-san da
The one who wrote this is Hayashi-san

Note – where **no** replaces the modified N in the sequence N **no** N, **no** is used only once:

d % 山田さん【の】かさ
Yamada-san no kasa
Yamada-san's umbrella

e % このかさは山田さん【の】です。
kono kasa wa yamada-san no desu
This umbrella is Yamada-san's.

137 no-ADJECTIVES

no-adj. comprise a group of words which have adjectival meaning, but grammatically behave like N, i.e. they attach **no** when modifying N and other forms of the cop. (see 35). They include a few NJ words like **nama** 'raw' and **hadaka** 'naked' and also many onomatope words (see 153, 1.6, 2.2.2).

137.1 Noun-modifying: **no**-adjective **no**
137.2 Adverbial use
137.2.1 **no**-adjective **ni**: change of state
137.2.2 **no**-adjective **de**: state
137.3 **no**-adjective copula: predicate use

137.1 NOUN-MODIFYING: no-ADJECTIVE no

a 【生の】キノコもご紹介しておこう。
nama no kinoko mo go-shōkai shite okō
I will also introduce raw mushrooms.

b 蒸し暑い夜、上半身【裸の】男たちが道ばたで名物の「火鍋」をつつく。
mushiatsui yoru jōhanshin hadaka no otoko-tachi ga michibata de meibutsu no hinabe o tsutsuku
On a steamy night, men with bare torsos are eating the local speciality, firepot, by the roadside.

137.2 ADVERBIAL USE

137.2.1 no-adjective ni: change of state

In this use, **no**-adj. attach **suru** or **naru** in their **ni**-form, to indicate a change of state (see 186).

a 【裸に】なれば人間は皆同じ。
hadaka ni nareba ningen wa mina onaji
Without clothes (*lit.* "when they become naked") people are all the same.

b 就職活動とは、これまで生きてきた二十年が丸【裸に】される“成人式”。
shūshoku katsudō to wa kore made ikite kita nijū-nen ga maruhadaka ni sareru seijin-shiki
Looking for work [after university graduation] is a ‘coming of age ceremony’, where you’re stripped of the 20 years you’ve lived so far.

137.2.2 **no**-adjective **de**: state

This indicates a state in which the action of V takes place.

a 加熱料理にも向くが、【生で】食べるとナシに似た甘さと食感がある。
kanetsu ryōri ni mo muku ga nama de taberu to nashi ni nita amasa to shokkan ga aru
It (yacon) is suitable for cooked dishes too, but when you eat it raw it has a sweetness and texture similar to a pear.

b 猛暑のせいか【裸で】寝るのが癖になった。
mōsho no sei ka hadaka de neru no ga kuse ni natta
Possibly because of the heatwave, I’ve developed a habit of sleeping naked.

137.3 **no**-ADJECTIVE COPULA: PREDICATE USE

a 王様は【裸だ】。
ōsama wa hadaka da
The king has no clothes on.

138 **n(o) da** [SENTENCE ENDING]

Added to the end of a S as **no da** (or the colloquial contraction **n da**), this gives the S an explanatory force. In questions, it is typically used for eliciting/confirming information. However, the force of **n(o) da** is rarely captured in translation. (see 138).

The forms preceding **n(o) da** are N-mod. forms, **except** that N insert **na** before **no**, just like AN regularly do.

n(o) da itself changes in the same way as cop., i.e. pol. **n(o) desu**, past **n(o) datta**, pres. **n(o) darō**, etc. (see 35).

138.1 **n(o) da** in statements
138.2 **n(o) desu ka** or **n(o) ka** in questions

138.1 n(o) da IN STATEMENTS

a 酷寒があるからこそ春の到来が待たれる【のだ】。
kokkan ga aru kara koso haru no tōrai ga matareru no da
Precisely because there is severe cold, one waits for the coming of spring (*lit.* "the advent of spring is awaited").

b 連絡がないが、彼女はどうした【のだろう】。
renraku ga nai ga kanojo wa dō shita no darō
There is no contact – I wonder what has happened to her.

c 若い世代はもはや政府の力など信用していない【のだ】。
wakai sedai wa mohaya seifu no chikara nado shin'yō shite inai no da
The young generation no longer believes in the power of the government.

d 新しいオペラ座がテレビで紹介された【んだ】ぜ。
atarashii operaza ga terebi de shōkai sareta n da ze
The new opera house was introduced on TV, you know.

138.2 n(o) desu ka OR n(o) ka IN QUESTIONS

When used in questions, the form is **n(o) desu ka** or the plain form **no ka** (**no da ka** is not a standard form). This is used when asking for an explanation, in either direct or indirect questions (see 134, 164, 166).

a 私たちの生活はどうなる【のですか】。
watashi-tachi no seikatsu wa dō naru no desu ka
What's going to happen to our livelihood?

b インフラとは何を意味する【のか】。
infura to wa nani o imi suru no ka
What does 'infra' mean?

c どうして来なかった【のか】説明してほしい。
dōshite konakatta no ka setsumei shite hoshii
I want you to explain why you didn't come.

d 景気は本当によくなった【んですか】。
keiki wa hontō ni yoku natta n desu ka
Has business really picked up?

e 情報ハイウエーには光ファイバー網が必要な【のですか】。
jōhō haiuē ni wa hikari faibāmō ga hitsuyō na no desu ka
Is an optic fibre network necessary for the information superhighway?

139 **node** [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

In [S1 **node** S2], **node** indicates the reason for the action or state of S2.

The forms preceding **node** are usually plain N-mod. forms, although **desu/-masu** forms can be used in speech.

139.1 Clause 1 **node**, clause 2
139.2 Clause 1 **node** (. . .) in unfinished sentences

139.1 CLAUSE 1 **node**, CLAUSE 2

This indicates a reason 'as', 'because', 'so'. In all examples, **node** can be replaced by **kara** (see 75).

a 飲んでいた【ので】、はっきり覚えていない。
nonde ita node hakkiri oboete inai
As I'd been drinking, I can't remember clearly.

b 彼女に振られた【ので】、女の子の友達がいません。
kanojo ni furareta node onna no ko no tomodachi ga imasen
Because I got dumped by my girlfriend, I have no female friends.

c うちは夫婦仲が悪い【ので】、よくケンカをする。
uchi wa fūfu-naka ga warui node yoku kenka o suru
We often have arguments, because we're not on good terms as a couple.

d 通勤に便利な【ので】ここに引っ越した。
tsūkin ni benri na node koko ni hikkoshita
We've moved here because it's convenient for commuting to work.

e 明日は休みな【ので】、山へでも行こうと思っている。
ashita wa yasumi na node yama e demo ikō to omotte iru
Tomorrow is a holiday, so I'm thinking of making a trip to the mountains or somewhere.

139.2 CLAUSE 1 **node** (. . .) IN UNFINISHED SENTENCES

Where the situation makes clear what the S2 V would be, it can be omitted. **kara** can also be used in the same way.

a 「どうしてもおふろに入りたかった【ので】」と汗をぬぐっていた。
dōshite mo ofuro ni hairi-takatta node to ase o nugutte ita
He was wiping off the sweat [after the bath], saying 'I just *had* to take a bath, you see'.

b 「それ以上はプライバシーにかかわる【ので】……」と言葉を切った。
sore ijō wa puraibashī ni kakawaru node to kotoba o kitta
He cut short his words, saying '[Saying] anything more would infringe on their privacy, so . . .'.

140 noni [FOLLOWS VERB/ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN/NOUN]

This **noni** is a conjunctive P, which is distinct from **noni** [follows V-**ru**], which indicates purpose and is attached to V-**ru** only (see 141).

noni [contrast], on the other hand, can be attached to V/adj./AN/N in the forms that modify N.

As a conjunctive P, **noni** expresses a strong contrast between two clauses, S1 and S2 'despite' (see 56, 79, 103, 33).

noni shows emotional involvement on the part of the speaker, which can range from amazement to disappointment or anger.

140.1 Clause 1 **noni**, clause 2
140.1.1 Followed by a statement
140.1.2 Followed by a question
140.1.3 Joining contrasting noun-modifying clauses
140.2 Clause 1 **noni** (. . .) in unfinished sentences
140.2.1 With non-conditional clause 1
140.2.2 With conditional form + **ii/yokatta noni**

140.1 CLAUSE 1 noni, CLAUSE 2

noni joins S1 and S2 in a variety of ways, in the sense of 'even though', 'despite'.

140.1.1 Followed by a statement

Neither **ga** nor **keredomo** can be used in the same meaning.

a 冬間近だという【のに】、連日、暖かい日が続いている。
fuyu majika da to iu noni renjitsu atatakai hi ga tsuzuite iru
Even though winter is just around the corner, the warm weather continues.

b ウイークデーな【のに】家族連れなどで、かなりにぎわっていた。
uīkudē na noni kazokuzure nado de kanari nigiwatte ita
Despite it being a weekday, it was quite busy, with family customers etc.

c 外は真っ暗な【のに】、サンディはちゃんと起きているんですよ。
soto wa makkura na noni sandi wa chanto okite iru n desu yo
Even though it's pitch-dark outside, Sandy [= the dog] is awake.

140.1.2 Followed by a question

Neither **ga** nor **keredomo** can be used in this way.

a せっかく来た【のに】、今日はおしまいなの。
sekkaku kita noni kyō wa oshimai na no
Are you closing today, even though we've gone to the trouble of coming?

b おれがこんなに働いてる【のに】、なんでお前は遊んでるんだ。
ore ga konna ni hataraite iru noni nande omae wa asonderu n da
How come you're loafing, even though I'm working so hard?

140.1.3 Joining contrasting noun-modifying clauses

Two N-mod. clauses of a contrasting nature are joined by **noni**, forming a unit (indicated in 【】). Neither **ga** nor **keredomo** can be used in this way.

a ［婚約したわけでもない【のに】、あまり高価なものをもらう］のは心配です。
kon'yaku shita wake de mo nai noni amari kōka na mono o morau no wa shinpai desu
It's worrying to be given overly expensive things even though we're not engaged.

b ［外観は二階建てに見える【のに】、実は五階建て」という不思議な造り。
gaikan wa nikai-date ni mieru noni jitsu wa gokai-date to iu fushigi na tsukuri
It's a mysterious structure that actually has five storeys even though it looks like two storeys from the outside.

140.2 CLAUSE 1 **noni** (. . .) IN UNFINISHED SENTENCES

140.2.1 With non-conditional clause 1

This expresses regret or disappointment, although the expression of regret etc. is not mentioned here, but implied in the unfinished part. It is therefore often used when commenting on people who have died or committed suicide (examples a and b). The meaning of **noni** can be reinforced with **nani mo**, as in example c. Again, neither **ga** nor **keredomo** can be used in this way.

a （A君は）友達も多かった【のに】。
A-kun wa tomodachi mo ōkatta noni
What a pity, he (= A-kun) had so many friends, too.

b 良きライバルであり、相談相手でもあった【のに】……。
yoki raibaru de ari sōdan aite de mo atta noni
[It's so sad,] he was a good rival, and also someone I could talk things over with.

c 何も、辞めなくてもいい【のに】。
nani mo yamenakute mo ii noni
What a pity, there was no need to quit.

d 私たちから見れば全然カッコよくない【のに】。
watashi-tachi kara mireba zenzen kakko yokunai noni
From our perspective, they aren't stylish at all.

140.2.2 With conditional form + **ii/yokatta noni**

ii/yokatta noni can be attached to pos. and neg. conditional forms, such as **-ba**. This forms a hypothetical sentence 'would be . . . if', or, where referring to an established fact, 'shouldn't' (see 13.3). Neither **ga** nor **keredomo** can be used in this meaning.

a 会社に託児所があれ【ばいいのに】。
kaisha ni takuji-sho ga areba ii noni
It would be nice if the company had a daycare centre.

b それなら就職しなけれ【ばいいのに】。
sore nara shūshoku shinakereba ii no ni
In that case [= already thinking of quitting] he shouldn't have taken the job.

141 noni [FOLLOWS VERB-ru]

noni has two uses: attaching adj./AN pred. like **ii** and **benri**, it indicates purpose 'good/convenient for doing', and attaching other pred. it means 'for', 'in order to' (see 135, 116.12).

141.1 Verb **no ni ii/benri**
141.2 With other predicates

141.1 VERB **no ni ii/benri**

This means 'good/convenient for doing'.

a カップルがお互いの相性を見る【のにいい】。
kappuru ga o-tagai no aishō o miru no ni ii
It [= rally driving]'s useful for couples to see how compatible they are.

b 生物の遺伝を考える【のにいい】例だ。
seibutsu no iden o kangaeru no ni ii rei da
It [= blood type]'s a good example for considering the genetics of organisms.

c 国立公園で夏のキャンピングを楽しむ【のに便利】。
kokuritsu kōen de natsu no kyanpingu o tanoshimu no ni benri
It's [a] handy [place] for enjoying summer camping in the [nearby] national park.

141.2 WITH OTHER PREDICATES

Here, the meaning is 'for', 'in order to'. Note that with some pred., the valency of the V determines the use of **ni** (viz. example c).

a 缶は持ち運ぶ【のに】軽い方がいい。
kan wa mochihakobu no ni karui hō ga ii
Cans are better light for carrying about.

b この味を見つける【のに】四年かかったそうだ。
kono aji o mitsukeru no ni yo-nen kakatta sō da
Apparently it took four years to discover this taste.

c 若い女性を集める【のに】困らない。(cf., N **ni komaru** 'have a shortage of/problem')
wakai josei o atsumeru no ni komaranai
We have no problem recruiting young women.

142 NON-PAST VERB FORMS

Non-past forms of V/adj., AN/N + cop. can be used as pred., and to attach various S endings.

Unlike adj. and AN + cop. sentences, which have adjectival meaning as pred., and N + cop., which are equational in meaning, V-non-past can express a variety of meanings as pred. (see 178.1).

V-non-past can be used by itself as pred. to complete a sentence in the present, habitual present, future, intention, or narrative present.

142.1 Present
142.1.1 Present
142.1.2 Habitual present
142.2 Future
142.2.1 Future
142.2.2 Intention
142.3 Narrative present

142.1 PRESENT

142.1.1 Present

a 悔しくて涙が【出る】。
kuyashikute namida ga deru
I'm so annoyed that I feel like crying (*lit.* "tears come to my eyes").

b つらい手術が【始まる】。
tsurai shujutsu ga hajimaru.
A painful operation begins.

142.1.2 Habitual present

a 今でも日曜日は近所に住む父といっしょに【過ごす】。
ima demo nichiyōbi wa kinjo ni sumu chichi to issho ni sugosu
Even now, he spends Sundays with his father, who lives nearby.

142.2 FUTURE

142.2.1 Future

a 来年二月末までに会社を【清算する】。
rainen nigatsu-matsu made ni kaisha o seisan suru
They will liquidate the company by the end of next February.

142.2.2 Intention

a 絶対に日本には帰ら【ない】。
zettai ni nihon ni wa kaeranai
No matter what, [I] won't go back to Japan.

142.3 NARRATIVE PRESENT

Non-past forms are often used at key points in a narrative to make them more immediate or dramatic. In English, these are often translated into the past tense.

a 話しているうちに忘れかけていた関西弁がポンポン【飛び出してくる】。不思議ですね。
hanashite iru uchi ni wasurekakete ita kansaiben ga ponpon tobidashite kuru. fushigi desu ne
As I'm talking, the Kansai dialect that I'd almost forgotten pops out, one word after another. Strange, isn't it?

b 30秒とたたないうちに電話が【かかってくる】。
sanjūbyō to tatanai uchi ni denwa ga kakatte kuru
Before 30 seconds had passed, the phone rang.

143 NOUN MODIFICATION AND RELATIVE CLAUSES

Formally, there is no distinction between N modification by V and adj./AN, and relative clauses. In both cases, a V/adj./AN, or a clause ending in V/adj./AN in normal word order (given in [ ]) is simply placed before a following N, i.e. unlike in English there are no relative pron. or changes in word order. V/adj./AN can also attach S endings.

As there are no relative pron. (or any other indication of the case relation between the modifying section and the N it modifies), it is sometimes only from the context (or knowledge of the world) that it can be determined.

In the following example, **tegami ga todoita aru dokusha** could also mean 'A certain reader, who received a letter recently', but in the context of a newspaper column, the interpretation below is the correct one:

a ［最近手紙が届いた］ある読者は「…」と喝破している。
(**aru** N = a certain N)
saikin tegami ga todoita aru dokusha wa . . . to kappa shite iru
A certain reader, from whom I received a letter recently, claims . . .

There is also no formal distinction between restrictive and non-restrictive relative clauses (in English, non-restrictive relative clauses are set off by comma intonation, and written between commas).

For N modification by N, num., counters, adv. and conjunctive forms, see 133, 147, 36, 4, 31.

When the N-mod. clause ends in **-ta**, it has a different meaning depending on whether **-ta** indicates a state, or completion of action. In 143.1 a, **-ta** indicates completion, but in 143.1 b it indicates a state, i.e. describes *what sort of* burglars they are. In a finite (i.e. non-N-mod.) sentence this would be expressed with **-te iru** (**takuhaibin o yosootte iru** 'they are dressed as a delivery service') (see 187.3, 1.7).

Note also that modified N include time N such as **toki** (often translating as 'when', see 222).

A N-mod. clause or relative clause cannot contain the same N as the one it modifies; compare the following, based on 143.1 e below.

b % 主婦が怖くなった。
shufu ga kowaku natta
The housewife got frightened.

c × [主婦が怖くなった]主婦
shufu ga kowaku natta shufu

d 怖くなった主婦
kowaku natta shufu
The housewife, who got frightened.

143.1 Noun modification/relative clauses
143.2 Pseudo-relative clauses
143.3 Noun modification/relative clauses in question form

143.1 NOUN MODIFICATION/RELATIVE CLAUSES

Note example i, where the N **josei** is modified by two modifying sections, **heya kara deyō to shinakatta** and **karui chihōshō no**.

a [東京から来た]井口です。
tōkyō kara kita iguchi desu
I'm Iguchi, [who has come] from Tokyo.

b 最近、[宅配便を装った]強盗が出るそうだ。
saikin takuhaibin o yosootta gōtō ga deru sō da
Recently, there are supposed to be burglars [who are dressed as a home delivery service].

c [勝つ]ゴルフが出来ない。
katsu gorufu ga dekinai
I can't play [winning] golf.

d [眠れぬ]夜が続いている。
nemurenu yoru ga tsuzuite iru
Nights [when one can't sleep] are continuing.

e [怖くなった]主婦は、ほぼ全額を支払った。
kowaku natta shufu wa hobo zengaku o shiharatta
The housewife, [who got frightened], paid more or less the whole amount.

f [ビルの揺れで船酔いを起こす]人もいるそうだ。
biru no yure de funayoi o okosu hito mo iru sō da
There are supposed to be people [who get seasick from the swaying of the building].

g [新幹線の座席で靴を脱いで素足を足台に乗せている]婦人を見ると西欧人はギョッとするそうだ。
shinkansen no zaseki de kutsu o nuide suashi o ashidai ni nosete iru fujin o miru to seiyō-jin wa gyotto suru sō da
People from the West are said to be flabbergasted when they see ladies [who take their shoes off on the bullet train and rest their bare feet up on the footrest].

h [西洋人がベルと言い、日本人が鐘という]時、それぞれの頭の中で鳴る鐘の音は違う。
seiyōjin ga beru to ii nihonjin ga kane to iu toki sorezore no atama no naka de naru kane no oto wa chigau
When [= *toki*] [Western people say 'bell', and Japanese say *kane* ('bell')], the sound of the bell ringing in the respective heads is different.

i [部屋から出ようとしなかった] [軽い痴ほう症の]女性が車いすで食堂に出てきて食事をするようになった。
heya kara deyō to shinakatta karui chihōshō no josei ga kurumaisu de shokudō ni dete kite shokuji o suru yō ni natta
A woman with slight dementia, who had made no attempt to come out of her room, now appeared in the refectory to eat.

143.2 PSEUDO-RELATIVE CLAUSES

Pseudo-relative clauses are sentences that are constructed like relative clauses, but where the modified (or head) N is a relational N, time N or N of amount (see 161.1.2.2).

a だから今度は、[そうじゃなくなる] 始まりではないでしょうか。
da kara kondo wa sō ja naku naru hajimari de wa nai deshō ka
So, I wonder if this mightn't be the start of things no longer being the way they were [= citizens being expected to be passive].

143.3 NOUN MODIFICATION/RELATIVE CLAUSES IN QUESTION FORM

In written language only, it is possible to modify a N/NP by a relative clause etc. that ends with a question mark, in the sense of 'which may be N'.

a [官僚主義が生んだ?] 「現代版ちょんまげ」
kanryō shugi ga unda gendai-ban chonmage
[The male company worker's uniform hairstyle is a] 'Present-day topknot', which may have been produced by the bureaucratic system.

144 NOUNS

N are basically uninflected for num. (but see 145, 58, 188, 168, 49) or gender. Their grammatical function is indicated by case P. In Japanese writing, most N are written in *kanji* (see 235).

144.1 Types of noun
144.1.1 Animate/inanimate nouns
144.1.2 Proper nouns
144.1.2.1 Person nouns
144.1.2.2 Place nouns
144.1.3 Relational nouns
144.1.4 Time nouns
144.1.5 Verbal nouns
144.2 Noun phrases (or 'arguments')
144.3 Noun modification
144.3.1 Nouns modifying other nouns
144.3.2 Nouns being modified
144.4 Noun sentences

144.1 TYPES OF NOUN

By meaning and function, we can distinguish a number of (sometimes overlapping) N subgroups.

144.1.1 Animate/inanimate nouns

This is a distinction between persons and animals on the one hand, and plants and things on the other. In existential S, the V **iru** and **aru** (with some exceptions) distinguish the two types (see 9).

144.1.2 Proper nouns

These are nouns that indicate the name of a person or place. These can be subdivided into person N and place N.

144.1.2.1 *Person nouns*

These are N indicative of a person.

144.1.2.2 *Place nouns*

These indicate a place.

144.1.3 Relational nouns

These are N that indicate a position that is relative in time or space (see 171).

144.1.4 Time nouns

These indicate a time (see 5.3).

144.1.5 Verbal nouns

VN indicate an action, and can attach the V **suru** 'do', and in this form can be used like V (see 234).

144.2 NOUN PHRASES (OR 'ARGUMENTS')

A V (or other pred.) forms a S with one or more obligatory N + P units (NP), the most important of which are subject (N **ga**), direct object (N **o**), and indirect object (N **ni**) (see 178.1, 231).

144.3 NOUN MODIFICATION

144.3.1 Nouns modifying other nouns

N can modify other N by means of **no** [case P], or apposition (see 133, 143, 10).

144.3.2 Nouns being modified

N can in turn be modified by V, adj., AN and N, and some adv. of time and frequency (see 5.3, 143).

N can also be modified by a number of adjectival words and expressions (see 1).

144.4 NOUN SENTENCES

N can attach cop. to act as pred., forming a N S (see 178.1.6).

145 NOUN REDUPLICATION

A few N, such as 人**hito** (人々 **hitobito** 'people'), 国**kuni** (国々 **kuniguni** 'countries'), 山**yama** (山々 **yamayama** 'mountains'), 店**mise** (店々 **misemise** 'establishments') can indicate a kind of plural (indicating an unspecified amount only, i.e. these cannot be counted) by reduplication, but this is limited to a very small number of N, most of which are given here. Note that the repeat *kanji* 々 is used in writing to indicate that the second *kanji* in the *same* word is repeated, i.e. is not applied where the same *kanji* appears in a compound as the first element of another word. Therefore **minshushugi** is written 民主主義, *not* 民主々義, because **minshushugi** 'democracy' is a compound consisting of **minshu** 'people governing' and **shugi** 'principle' or '-ism') (see 144, 172).

Reduplication is not limited to N only; it includes 我々 **wareware** 'we', 次々に **tsugitsugi ni** 'one after another', etc.

「【家々、木々、山々】」と題した作品がある。
ieie, kigi, yamayama to daishita sakuhin ga aru
There is a work entitled 'Houses, Trees, Mountains'.

146 NUMBER AND COUNTER COMBINATIONS

These are given in Table 18, repeated here for convenience (see also 147, 36).

147 NUMBERS

Japanese uses two sets of num., NJ and SJ, although they are not usually used as 'pure' sets (see 154).

Note – num. and num.–C combinations (see 36) behave like N in that they can be modified by N-mod. demonstrative words (example a).

a 戦後は遊郭も消滅、店々は旅館などに姿を変えていく。その夜、泊まった「旅館みよし」も【そんな】【一つ】。
sengo wa yūkaku mo shōmetsu misemise wa ryokan nado ni sugata o kaete iku. sono yoru tomatta ryokan miyoshi mo sonna hitotsu
After the war, the red-light district ceased to exist, and the establishments changed into inns. The Miyoshi Inn, where we stayed that night, is one of these.

147.1 Counting things
147.1.1 Counting things approximately
147.1.1.1 Adjoining numbers
147.1.1.2 By prefixes, adverbs or adverbial particles
147.1.2 Amounts involving **nan-/iku-** 'how much/how many' + **ka/mo/demo**
147.2 Counting in sequence
147.2.1 Counting aloud
147.2.2 Phone and account numbers
147.3 Superstition and numbers

Table 18 Common number and counter combinations

Counter	*Number*									
	ichi hito-	ni futa-	san mit-	shi yo(t)-	go itsu-	roku mut-	shichi nana	hachi yat-	kyū/ku kokono-	jū tō
doru ($)				yondoru						
en (¥)				yoen						
fun (minutes)	ippun		sanpun	yonpun		roppun	nanafuu	happun hachifun	kyūfun	juppun jippon
pondo (lb or £)				yonpondo			uanapondo		kyūpondo	juppondo jippondo
bon (bottles, etc.)	ippon		sanbon	yonhon		roppon	nauahon	happon	kyūhon	juppon jippon
kagetsu (months)	ikkagetsu			yonkagetsu		rokkagetsu				jukkagetsu jikkagetsu
kai (storeys)			sangai sankai			rokkai	nanakai	hachikai		jukkai jikkai
ko (default counter)	ikko			yonko		rokko	nanako	hakko	kyūko	jukko jikko
mai (flat objects)				yonmai					kyūmai kumai	
nichi (days)	ichinichi tsuitachi*	futsuka	mikka	yokka	itsuka	muika	nanoka nanuka	yōka	kokonoka	tōka
nin (humans)				yonin						
nen (years)				yonen						
pāsento ([illegible])	ippāsento			yonpāsento		rokupāsento		hachipāsento		juppāsento jippāsento
pēji (pages)	ippēji			yonpēji		roppēji		happēji hachipēji	kyūpeji	juppēji jippeji

ri (humans) (*default counter*)	**hitori**	**futari**				—	—	—	—	
sai (years of age)	**issai**						**nanasai**	**hassai**		**jussai** **jissai**
satsu (bound objects)	**issatsu**			**yonsatsu**			**nanasatsu**	**hassatsu**	**kyūsatsu**	**jussatsu** **jissatsu**
shū (weeks)	**isshū**			**yonshū**			**nanashū**	**hasshū**	**kyūshū**	**jusshū** **jisshu**
tō (large animals)	**ittō**			**yontō**			**nanatō**	**hattō**	**kyūtō**	**juttō** **jittō**
tsu (default counter: NJ numbers only)	**hitotsu**	**futatsu**	**mittsu**	**yottsu**	**itsutsu**	**muttsu**	**nanatsu**	**yattsu**	**kokouotsu**	—
tsuki (months)	**hitotsuki**	**futatsuki**	**mitsuki**	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
wa (birds)			**sanba**	**yonwa**						**juppa** **jippa**
wari (10% unit)				**yonwari**					**kyūwari**	

Notes * Only used in the meaning of *the first of the month.*

The above chart lists some common counters and the way they combine with numerals. Only those combinations which involve sound change, irregular formation, or involve only one of two regular ways of formation are listed (the remainder is predictable, consisting of the numeral (**ichi**, **ni**, etc.) given at the top plus the form of the counter given in the left-hand column). Note, however, that the pronunciation, especially of the syllabic **n**, varies according to its phonetic environment; for instance, before **b** and **m**, it is pronounced as **m**. Combinations with **nan-** 'how many' are the same as those with **san** 'three'.

With counters expressing time (**fun**, **nen**, etc.), the suffix **-kan** can be added (optionally in the case of **byō**, **fun**, **nen**, **nichi** and **shū**) to indicate *duration of time.* For instance, **goji** on its own means 'five o'clock', whereas **gojikan** means 'five hours'. Note, however, that whereas the months of the year (January–December) are counted **ichigatsu**, **nigatsu**, etc., 'one month' is **ikkagetsu**, to which **-kan** can be added. The days of the month from the 11th onwards are as follows, in so far as they are irregular:

14th	**jūyokka**	20th	**hatsuka**
19th	**jūkunichi**	24th	**nijūyokka**

147.1 COUNTING THINGS

When counting things, the combination num. + C is usual, where the SJ and NJ numbers below (plus some variations) are used to form num.–C combinations (see Table 18).

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
SJ:	**ichi**	**ni**	**san**	**shi**	**go**	**roku**	**shichi**	**hachi**	**kyū/ku**	**jū**
NJ:	**hito-**	**futa-**	**mit-**	**yo(t)-**	**itsu-**	**mut-**	**nana**	**yat-**	**kokono-**	**tō**

Numbers for 10 and above are basically SJ, except for **tō**, which can be used by itself to count things:

10 . . .	**jū, jūichi, ni, san, shi** (**yon**), **go** . . .
20 . . .	**nijūichi**, . . .
30 . . .	**sanjū**, . . .
40 . . .	**yonjū** (**shijū**), . . .
50 . . .	**gojū**, . . .
60 . . .	**rokujū**, . . .
70 . . .	**nanajū**, . . .
. . .	
100 . . .	**hyaku, nihyaku, sanbyaku, yonhyaku**, . . . **roppyaku**, . . . **happyaku** . . .
1000 . . .	**issen, nisen, sanzen** . . .
10000 . . .	**ichiman, niman, sanman** . . .
100000	**jūman, nijūman** . . .
1000000	**hyakuman, nihyakuman** . . .
10000000	**issenman, nisenman** . . .
100000000	**ichioku, nioku** . . .

147.1.1 Counting things approximately

147.1.1.1 *Adjoining numbers*

This can be done by using two adjoining numbers (in writing, these usually have a comma (or occasionally a hyphen) between them, but are pronounced as one unit). They are mostly used with C, excepting **nisan**, which is also used in the form of **nisan no** N in the sense of 'several' (see 36).

a …二、三の疑問点を提示したい。
nisan no gimon-ten o teiji shitai
. . . I wish to raise a couple of queries.

147.1.1.2 *By prefixes, adverbs or adverbial particles*

The SJ prefix **sū-** 'several' and the adv. **yaku** 'approximately', precede the num. (but see below for how **sū-** can be inserted between num. and C), whereas the adverbial P **gurai/kurai** and **hodo** follow num. (+ C) (see 61.1.1, 64.1).

a 「一人または【数】人」とあれば、二人でもいいわけだが、最大値は分からない。
hitori mata wa sūnin to areba, futari de mo ii wake da ga, saidai-chi wa wakaranai
If it [= the advert] states 'one or several people', then two people are OK, but one doesn't know the maximum figure.

Note how 数**sū-** can be inserted between num. (units of ten and above) and C in the sense of 'unit-odd'.

b 2—3年のうちに20【数】巻をそろえる方針だ。
nisan-nen no uchi ni nijūsū-kan o soroeru hōshin da
Their aim is to complete the set of all 20-odd volumes in two or three years.

c 花は二十日間【くらい】咲く。
hana wa hatsuka-kan kurai saku
The flowers bloom for about 20 days.

d 免許は三十万円【ほど】で取得できる。
menkyo wa sanjūman-en hodo de shutoku dekiru
A licence can be obtained for about three hundred thousand yen.

147.1.2 Amounts involving **nan-/iku-** 'how much/how many' + **ka/mo/demo**

The Q words (+ C) **nan-/iku-** combine with the P **ka** (indefinite amount 'a lot', 'lots', etc.), **mo** (+ neg. pred., small amount 'no . . .', 'not many', etc.) and **demo** (/V-**te mo** 'any') (see 167, Table 23, 206.5).

a 電気を止められたことも【何度も】ある。
denki o tomerareta koto mo nan-do mo aru
I've had the electricity cut off many times.

b 【何歳】になって【も】ダイビングを続けていくつもりでいる。
nan-sai ni natte mo daibingu o tsuzukete iku tsumori de iru
He intends to continue diving regardless of age.

147.2 COUNTING IN SEQUENCE

147.2.1 Counting aloud

For counting out aloud, the SJ set is the most common. Note the common NJ alternatives for the near-homophones (in rapid speech at any rate) **shi** and **shichi**.

1 **ichi**, 2 **ni**, 3 **san**, 4 **shi (yon)**, 5 **go**, 6 **roku**, 7 **shichi (nana)**, 8 **hachi**, 9 **kyū/ku**, 10 **jū**.

147.2.2 Phone and account numbers

Phone numbers are read more or less like counting out aloud, but there are some specific rules.

rei rather than **zero** is used; **yon** and **nana** are obligatory instead of **shi** and **shichi**; the single-syllable **ni** and **go** are obligatorily lengthened to **nī** and **gō**, and the longer variant **kyū** is obligatory rather than **ku**.

The (fictional) Tokyo phone numbers below, for instance, are normally read as follows (note the optional/more formal use of -**kyoku** 'exchange [number]' and -**ban** '[customer] number'):

(03) 123-4567: **(tōkyō) reisan ichinīsan(-kyoku) (no) yongōrokunana(-ban)**

(03) 987-6543: **(tōkyō) reisan kyūhachinana(-kyoku) (no) rokugōyonsan(-ban)**

Phone numbers for businesses etc. are often given with *kana* attached that combine imaginative 'readings' of the number for mnemonic and/or advertising purposes. Such 'readings' use not only NJ and SJ readings (with additional *kana* often thrown in), but 'English' pronunciation of the numbers too.

6 7 9 -3 6 2
ムリナク スリムニ
murinaku surimu ni
'getting slim without effort'

To explain: **mu** (NJ 6 + **ri** thrown in), **na** (NJ 7), **ku** (SJ 9) **suri**

('English' 'three') **mu** (NJ 6), **ni** (SJ 2)

Or, the number of a hair-transplant clinic:

10 -2 3 2 3
い〜わ ふさふさ
ii wa fusafusa
That's nice! tufty

Here we have **i** (SJ **i(chi)** lengthened to **ii** 'nice' (〜indicates a long sound), **wa** for 0 (**wa** is a NJ word for 'circle', used here for **wa** [fin. P], and **fu** for NJ 2, **sa** for SJ 3).

147.3 SUPERSTITION AND NUMBERS

Many hotels in Japan lack a 13th storey, which is a Western import. More traditionally, because of the homophony between 死 **shi** ('four'/'death') and 苦 **ku** ('nine'/'suffering'), hospitals have no wards 4 and 9, and hotels, etc. usually lack a fourth storey.

148 o [CASE PARTICLE]

The basic function of **o** is marking the object (see 155.2), but there are also some uses where it is interchangeable with **ga** (148.2 and 148.3), and uses with V of Motion (148.4 and 148.5).

148.1 Marking the object
148.1.1 In complete sentences
148.1.2 With ellipted **o**
148.1.3 With ellipted predicate
148.2 In potential sentences
148.3 In desiderative sentences
148.4 Marking the object of a verb of motion
148.5 Marking departure point of a verb of motion

148.1 MARKING THE OBJECT

The basic function of the case P **o** is to mark the object of V, and certain AN. Note that AN like **suki da/kirai da**, which usually require [NP **ga**] can take [NP **o**] instead (see 55.11).

148.1.1 In complete sentences

a 腕時計【を】見せてくれ」。
udedokei o misete kure
Show me [some] wristwatches.

b ドラフトで三人の投手【を】獲得した。
dorafuto de san-nin no tōshu o kakutoku shita
In the draft they acquired three pitchers.

c 音楽の偉大さ【を】感じた」。
ongaku no idaisa o kanjita
I felt the power of music.

d きっかけは「人【を】好きになって、恋をしたから」。
kikkake wa hito o suki ni natte koi o shita kara
It all began ‘because I grew fond of someone, and fell in love’.

148.1.2 With ellipted **o**

Colloquially, **o** can be ellipted (omitted). In writing, sometimes a comma is used to indicate this, but in speech there is usually no pause.

a 何【、】話しましょうか……。
nani hanashimashō ka
What shall I talk about? . . .

b あなた、ドレス【】買ってもいい？
anata doresu katte mo ii
Darling, is it OK if I buy a dress?

148.1.3 With ellipted predicate

With ellipted (omitted) pred., the implication is one of request or wish for realization.

a 国際化と「アメリカ化」との差別化【を】。
kokusai-ka to amerika-ka to no sabetsu-ka o
A distinction [should be] made between internationalization and 'Americanization'.

b 教師にこそ、もっと自由【を】と言いたい。
kyōshi ni koso, motto jiyū o to iitai
Especially to the teachers I'd like to say that they should give themselves more freedom.

148.2 IN POTENTIAL SENTENCES

The object of V-pot. can be marked with **o** instead of the more usual **ga** (see 55.4, 161).

a なぜ調和【を】保てるのか。
naze chōwa o tamoteru no ka
Why can they [= body cells] maintain the balance?

148.3 IN DESIDERATIVE SENTENCES

The object of a desiderative S can be marked with **o** instead of the more common **ga** (see 55.5, 46, 189, 68).

In the following examples, **ga** could be used instead of **o** in example a without any change in meaning, but not in b–e, where the V is one of 'wishing', which is more strongly transitive in nature.

a ピアノ【を】習いたい。
piano o naraitai
I want to learn the piano.

b …この地の利【を】生かしたい
kono chi no ri o ikashitai
. . . we want to make the best use of the benefits of the area.

c テレビでも研究が紹介され、「出演者の一人がこのシステム【を】ほしいと話していた」。
terebi de mo kenkyū ga shōkai sare shutsuen-sha no hitori ga kono shisutemu o hoshii to hanashite ita
The research was taken up on TV too, and ‘one of the people on the programme said he wanted this system’.

d 平和が続くこと【を】祈りたい。
heiwa ga tsuzuku koto o inoritai
I hope that the peace will last.

e 意欲的な試みが続くこと【を】期待したい。
iyoku-teki na kokoromi ga tsuzuku koto o kitai shitai
I’d like to hope that this enterprising experiment will continue.

148.4 MARKING THE OBJECT OF A VERB OF MOTION

o here indicates by which route the action of the V takes place. In English, this often translates as a preposition ‘through’, ‘across’, ‘along’, etc.

Compare this to **de** [case P], which indicates the place where the action happens without any implication that it involves passing through or following a route (see 40.1.1).

a 夜道【を】歩くのは不安だが、…
yomichi o aruku no wa fuan da ga
Walking the street at night makes me feel uneasy, but . . .

b 一日平均七百台の車がここ【を】通る見込み。
ichinichi heikin nanahyaku-dai no kuruma ga koko o tōru mikomi
It is expected that an average 700 cars per day will pass through here.

148.5 MARKING DEPARTURE POINT OF A VERB OF MOTION

o can also mark the departure point (‘out of’, ‘from’) of the action of a V of motion (see 74.4, 149).

a 部長に頭を下げて、部屋【を】出た。
buchō ni atama o sagete heya o data
I bowed to the department head and left the room.

b 起きてから家【を】出るまでの所要時間は女性の方が長い。
okite kara ie o deru made no shoyō jikan wa josei no hō ga nagai
As for the time [required] from getting up to leaving the house, women take longer.

149 **o** AND **kara** [CASE PARTICLES] WITH VERBS OF MOTION: COMPARISON

With **o**, the implication is 'to leave/alight from', whereas **kara** implies motion away from/out of, often by making an effort.

While many N can attach either **o** or **kara**, very few can attach only one of the two. An example of an exclusively **o**-marked NP is **kaidan o oriru** 'walk/come down the stairs'; an exclusively **kara**-marked NP is **taijūkei kara oriru** 'step off the scales'.

a しばらく部屋【から】出てこなかった。
shibaraku heya kara dete konakatta
He didn't come out of the room for some time.

b やがて海岸も姿を変え、漁師も一人二人と船【を】降りていった。
yagata kaigan mo sugata o kae ryōshi mo hitori futari to fune o orite itta
Soon, the coast changed [in] appearance, and the fishermen left the boat in ones and twos.

c タクシー【を】降り集落を歩いていると女の人に出会った。
takushī o ori shūraku o aruite iru to onna no hito ni deatta
When I got out of the taxi and walked through the village, I came across a woman.

d 部屋【から】出ようとしなかった軽い痴ほう症の女性が車いすで食堂に出てきて食事をするようになった。
heya kara deyō to shinakatta karui chihōshō no josei ga kurumaisu de shokudō ni dete kite shokuji o suru yō ni natta
A woman with slight dementia, who had made no attempt to come out of her room, now appeared in the refectory to eat.

150 **o megutte** [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

o megutte means 'surrounding', 'concerning', 'about', usually marking the object of some dispute (for differences between **ni kanshite**, **ni tsuite** and **o megutte**, see 121).

Note that in the N-mod. form **o meguru** it can also mean 'surrounding' in a physical sense.

150.1 **o megutte/meguri**
150.2 **o meguru** noun

150.1 o megutte/meguri

a 一人の娘【をめぐって】産みの母と育ての母が壮絶な争いを展開する。
hitori no musume o megutte umi no haha to sodate no haha ga sōzetsu na arasoi o tenkai suru
Over their only daughter, the real mother and the foster mother are fighting a bitter battle.

b 来年の春闘【をめぐり】、鉄鋼労連が揺れている。
rainen no shuntō o meguri tekkō rōren ga yurete iru
Concerning next year's spring offensive, the steel workers' association is wavering.

150.2 o meguru NOUN

a 水俣病【をめぐる】紛争は、袋小路に陥っている。
minamata-byō o meguru funsō wa fukuro kōji ni ochiitte iru
The dispute concerning Minamata disease has reached a dead end [*lit.* "entered a dead-end alley"].

b 日米の金融政策【をめぐる】環境は全く違う。
nichibei no kinyū seisaku o meguru kankyō wa mattaku chigau
The environments surrounding monetary policy in Japan and the US are totally different.

151 o motte [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

o motte is a combination of the case P **o** and the conjunctive form of the V **motsu** 'have', 'hold', but it can be regarded as a written or formal equivalent of the case P **o** (marking an object) or **de** (marking a means). There are also some idiomatic uses (see 40, 148).

151.1 Marking an object
151.2 Marking a means
151.3 Idiomatic uses

151.1 MARKING AN OBJECT

Here, **o motte** can be replaced by **o**.

a 今の議論は何【をもって】空洞化というのかあいまいだ。
ima no giron wa nani o motte kūdō-ka to iu no ka aimai da
In the current debate it is unclear what is meant by hollowing out.

151.2 MARKING A MEANS

Here, **o motte** can usually be replaced by **de**. Note the combination **o motte shite** in example b, which is a written-style equivalent of **de mo**.

a ハイテクの裏をかいた知能犯罪。ハイテク【をもって】制するべきだ。
haiteku no ura o kaita chinō hanzai. haiteku o motte seisuru-beki da
It's a crime that's outsmarted hi-tech. It should be controlled by means of hi-tech.

b 美しいステンドグラスは現代の技術【をもって】しても複製できない。
utsukushii sutendo gurasu wa gendai no gijutsu o motte shite mo fukusei dekinai
The beautiful stained glass cannot be replicated even by modern technology.

151.3 IDIOMATIC USES

Here, **o motte** means 'with', 'with effect from'.

a 愛情【をもって】育てて欲しい。
aijō o motte sodatete hoshii
We'd like people to raise them [= the plants] with love.

b 本日【をもって】総辞職することとしました。
honjitsu o motte sō-jishoku suru koto to shimashita
I have decided that we resign en masse with effect from today.

152 o tōshite [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

o tōshite is a combination of the case P **o** and the conjunctive form of the V **tōsu** 'let or make pass through'; it indicates the medium (object, activity, organization) 'through' which an action or state takes place.

After an expression of time (examples e and f), the meaning is 'throughout'.

a 日本人学校の中には、スポーツ【を通して】現地との交流を図っている学校もある。
nihonjin gakkō no naka ni wa supōtsu o tōshite genchi to no kōryū o hakatte iru gakkō mo aru
Among overseas Japanese schools, there are some which attempt exchange with the locals through sports.

b ただ、モノ【を通して】のつながりは表層的なつきあいでしかない。
tada mono o tōshite no tsunagari wa hyōsō-teki na tsukiai de shika nai
However, a connection through [material] things is merely a surface relationship.

c 同署では、「教室【を通して】防犯意識を高めてほしい」と話している。
dōsho de wa kyōshitsu o tōshite bōhan ishiki o takamete hoshii to hanashite iru

The said police station is saying, ‘We want [schools] to raise crime prevention awareness in (*lit.* “through”) the classroom’.

d 最大のコンピューター通信網「インターネット」【を通して】、世界のどこからでも特許の全文を参照できる。
saidai no konpyūtā tsūshinmō intānetto o tōshite sekai no doko kara demo tokkyo no zenbun o sanshō dekiru
Through the Internet, the largest computer communications network, one can refer to the whole text of the patent from anywhere in the world.

e ビールの種類は年間【を通して】飲めるタイプとシーズンごとに出すタイプの二つ。
bīru no shurui wa nenkan o tōshite nomeru taipu to shīzun-goto ni dasu taipu no futatsu
There are two kinds of beer: the type you can drink throughout the year, and the type that’s brought out seasonally.

f ここ数年、クジラは日本の近海でほとんど一年【を通して】見られるようになった。
koko sūnen kujira wa nihon no kinkai de hotondo ichinen o tōshite mirareru yō ni natta
For the past few years, one has been able to see whales in the seas near Japan almost all year round.

153 ONOMATOPE (SOUND SYMBOLISM)

Onomatope refers to words whose pronunciation (sound) suggests the nature of their action or state (in English, apart from animal such sounds as ‘bow-wow’, sound symbolism includes, for example, words beginning with ‘sl-’ suggesting something unpleasant, as in ‘slime’, ‘slink’, ‘slither’, ‘slovenly’, ‘slug’).

In Japanese, a number of typical patterns can be distinguished; the most common ones are given in the following list.

(C1-)V-C2-V × 2*	**kasa-kasa** ‘rustle’, **gata-gata** ‘clatter’ **goro-goro** (sound of thunder/stomach/purring cat etc.) **pika-pika** (glitter of light), **kucha-kucha** ‘wrinkled’, **yobo-yobo** ‘tottering’, **zuki-zuki** ‘throbbing (with pain)’, **atsu-atsu** ‘piping hot’, **ira-ira** ‘jittery’
(C-)Vn-to	**chan-to** ‘properly’, **un-to** ‘lots’
(C-)Vt-to	**sat-to** ‘suddenly’, **jit-to** ‘still’, **at-to** ‘instantly’
(C-)V-CC-ri	**yukkuri** ‘slowly’, **shikkari** ‘firm’, **uttori** ‘vacantly’
C-Vn-C-V-ri	**nonbiri** ‘leisurely’, **bon'yari** ‘vacant’, **hin'yari** ‘chilly’

Note * In this column, C stands for consonant and V for vowel; C1 and C2 being first and second consonant, respectively. V**n** indicates vowel followed by **n**, and so on.

Japanese onomatope can act grammatically as outlined in the following sections.

153.1 As adverbs
153.2 As noun-modifiers
153.3 As nouns
153.4 As predicates

153.1 AS ADVERBS

Depending on the item, onomatope can be used as adv. without P, or with the addition of **to** [adverbial P] or **ni** (the adverbial form of cop.).

Those ending in **to** already have **to** 'built in' (see 4.4).

a 成績表は【ちゃんと】提出していただきます。
seiseki-hyō wa chanto teishutsu shite itadakimasu
We get them to submit their transcripts properly.

153.2 AS NOUN-MODIFIERS

This requires the addition of **no**, **na**, or **to shita** (see 137, 1.7.2).

a 大学は…工学科を出た。【ばりばりの】技術者でもあった。
daigaku wa . . . kōgakka wo deta. baribari no gijutsusha de mo atta
At university, he graduated from the . . . engineering department. He was also a first-rate technician.

153.3 AS NOUNS

Unusually, some onomatope can be used as N, with case P attached, in cases where the onomatope is understood to indicate some object (in example a, **iraira** stands for something like **iraira no kimochi** 'feeling of being irate', and in example b, **atsuatsu** stands for something like **atsuatsu no tabemono** 'a dish that is piping hot'.

a 【いらいら】が高じて虐待に走るケースすら出ている。
iraira ga kōjite gyakutai ni hashiru kēsu sura dete iru
There are even cases emerging in which irritation is aggravated and turns into abuse.

b 【アツアツ】を頂く。
atsuatsu o itadaku
I dig into the piping hot [dish]

153.4 AS PREDICATES

This requires the addition of cop., or forms of **suru/shite iru**.

a 電話の声の調子も【しっかり】していた。
denwa no koe no chōshi mo shikkari shite ita
The tone of his voice on the phone was steady, too.

154 ORDINAL NUMBERS

Ordinal num. are formed by adding the suffix **-me** (め・目) to the combinations num. + C, including the 'default' C **tsu**-(つ) (see 147, 36).

一つ目	**hitotsu-me**	'the first'
二人目	**futari-me**	'the second person'
三人目	**sannin-me**	'the third person'
二台目	**nidai-me**	'the second (car, TV, etc.)'
三日目	**mikka-me**	'the third day'
五枚目	**gomai-me**	'the fifth (page, photo, etc.)'
十代目	**jūdai-me**	'the tenth (generation)'
一回目	**ikkai-me**	'the first time'

To SJ num. + C combinations, the prefix **dai-** (第) can also be attached, which gives it a more formal ring that cannot be captured in translation:

第一回目	**dai-ikkai-me**	'the first time'

To SJ numbers without C the suf. **-ban** is attached, often in combination with the prefix **dai-** (第), again for a more formal/written-style ring. **dai-ichi** forms many other SJ and WJ nouns by attaching noun elements such as **-i** 位 (第一位 'first rank'), **-bu** (部) (第一部 'the first part'), **-shū** (週) (第一週 'the first week'), **dankai** (段階) (第一段階 'the first stage'), **raundo** (ラウンド) (第一ラウンド 'the first round'), etc.

第一	**dai-ichi**	'the first'
第一番	**dai-ichi-ban**	'the first', 'No. 1'
一番	**ichi-ban**	'the first'
一番目	**ichi-ban-me**	'the first one'
第一番目	**dai-ichi-ban-me**	'the first one'

a 毎月【第一、三、五月曜日】が定休。
maitsuki dai-ichi, -san, -go getsuyōbi ga teikyū
They're closed on the first, third and fifth Monday of each month.

b ベートーベン「交響曲【第一番】」などを演奏する。
bētōben kōkyōkyoku dai-ichi-ban nado o ensō suru
They perform Beethoven's First Symphony and other [works].

Note – **(mazu) dai-ichi ni, dai-ni ni, dai-san ni**, etc. are also used in the sense of 'firstly', 'secondly', 'thirdly' when lining up arguments, etc. (example c, see also 30.7).

c まずリベラルと片仮名英語を使うのはなぜか。三つの理由が想像できる。【第一に】、何となくイメージがいい。【第二に】、日本語訳の自由主義は…長い間、マルクス主義との関係を清算できなかった社会党にとっては抵抗があったのだろう。【第三に】、…
mazu riberaru to katakana eigo o tsukau no wa naze ka. mittsu no riyū ga sōzō dekiru. dai-ichi ni nan to naku imēji ga ii. Dai-ni ni nihongo-yaku no jiyū shugi wa . . . nagai aida marukusu shugi to no kankei o seisan dekinakatta shakai-tō ni totte wa teikō ga atta no darō. dai-san ni . . .
To begin, why do they use *riberaru* [liberal] in *katakana* English? One can imagine three reasons. Firstly, the image is somehow good. Secondly, the Japanese translation **jiyūshugi** was not acceptable to the Social Party, which for a long time was unable to get rid of its association with Marxism. . . . Thirdly, . . .

Dai-ichi is also used to introduce a statement that qualifies (often with a neg. form) what has been said before 'to begin with', 'for a start'.

d 【第一】、すぐれた人材が政界を目指さなくなる。
dai-ichi, sugureta jinzai ga seikai o mezasanaku naru
To begin with, able people will not aspire to politics anymore.

e 愛知県内では【三十一番目】の「市」。
aichi-ken-nai de wa sanjū ichi-ban-me no shi
It's the 31st 'city' in Aichi prefecture.

f 【一番目】の仮説は、…
ichi-ban-me no kasetsu wa
The first hypothesis is . . .

g 一台目のテレビはブランドものを買うが、【二台目】からは韓国製でも台湾製でもよくなる。
ichi-dai-me no terebi wa burando-mono o kau ga ni-dai-me kara wa kankoku-sei de mo taiwan-sei de mo yoku naru
For the first TV they [= the customers] buy a well-known brand, but from the second one onwards Korean- or Taiwanese-made ones become acceptable.

155 PARTICLES

Particles indicate grammatical relations between parts of a sentence, but in case of fin. P and Q P also the way the speaker appeals to the listener. They can be divided into the following subgroups

155.1 Adverbial particles
155.2 Case particles
155.3 Conjoining particles
155.4 Conjunctive particles and forms
155.5 Final particles
155.6 Focus particles
155.7 Phrasal particles
155.8 Question particles
155.9 Quotation particles

155.1 ADVERBIAL PARTICLES

The basic function of adverbial P is to indicate that the clause or word they are attached to modifies pred., in various shades of meaning. Some adverbial P can also be used sentence-finally (with cop. attached) and to modify N. They include the following: **bakari** (see 17), **dake** (37) **demo** (see 42), **gurai/kurai** (see 61), **hodo** (see 64), **koso** (see 82), **nado** (see 102), **nanka** (see 106), **nante** (see 107), **shika** (see 180), **to** (see 213).

155.2 CASE PARTICLES

Case P are used to mark the relationship between a pred. and NP that are required by its valency, plus some other, more peripheral relations ('where', 'where to' 'from where', 'who with', etc.). They include the following: **de** (see 40), **e** (see 51), **ga** (see 55), **kara** (see 74), **made** (see 85), **made-ni** (see 87), **ni** (see 116), **no** (see 133), **o** (see 148), **to** (see 214), **yori** (see 251) (see also 231).

155.3 CONJOINING PARTICLES

As their name indicates, the function of conjoining P is to link or enumerate items (N) as members of a set. Besides the conjoining P (see 71, 215, 220, 241; see also 116.18), the idea of 'and' can also be expressed (in writing) by a comma. Note that in speech, no comma intonation is normally used (see 29).

155.4 CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLES AND FORMS

Conjunctive particles and forms join two clauses in a variety of meanings, such as contrast 'but', reason 'because', etc. (see 31, 32, 6, 13, 56, 79, 90.3, 103, 108, 139, 140, 178.5, 191, 206, 216, 221, 225, 229).

155.5 FINAL PARTICLES

Final P are also sometimes called ‘interactional’ because they indicate that the speaker is appealing to the listener in various ways. In English, this is done by such means as intonation. Final P include the following: **koto, mono/mon, ne/nē/nā, na (yo)** (after V-stem), **na (yo)** (after V-**ru**), **no, sa, wa, yo, ze, zo**.

155.6 FOCUS PARTICLES

The focus P **wa** focuses on what follows, rather than the N(+ P) to which it is attached (see 236).

The remaining focus P focus on, or emphasize, the N(+ P) they attach to. They include the following: **mo** (see 94), **made** (see 86), **sae** (see 176), **sura** (see 185).

155.7 PHRASAL PARTICLES

Phrasal P are so called because they often correspond in meaning to the case P they contain, such as **ni** and **o**, but they are like a V phrase in form. They correspond to prepositions in English and include the following: **ni atatte, ni hanshite, ni kakete, ni kanshite, ni kawatte, ni oite, ni saishite, ni taishite, ni totte, ni tsuite, ni tsuki, ni yotte, o megutte, o motte, o tōshite** (see also 159).

155.8 QUESTION PARTICLES

The Q P **ka** and **kke** are used to indicate a formal Q. However, there are other ways of indicating a Q, too (see 164, 114).

155.9 QUOTATION PARTICLES

As their name indicates, quotation P and equivalents (see 217, 228.1) are used to indicate a direct or indirect quotation (see 178.4.2).

156 PASSIVE SENTENCES

Pass. S can be explained as S conversions from active S, although often only one of the two (the active or the pass. sentence) is idiomatic (see also 160.2).

Note the change in valency in the pair below, based on 156.1a.

a % 試験官が／は私を　　笑った。 ACTIVE
shikenkan ga/wa watashi o waratta
The invigilator laughed at me

b 私が／は　試験官に　笑われた。 PASSIVE
watashi ga/wa shikenkan ni warawareta
I was laughed at by the invigilator.

In the S *X* **ga/wa** *Y* **ni/kara/ni yotte** V-pass., *Y* is the agent (i.e. the person carrying out the action of V) and *X* is the person or thing influenced by the action. A pass. (rather than an active) S is used when the interest focuses on what happens to *X* (rather than what *Y* does). The V can be V-tr., V-intr. or V-caus.

Note that the agent (and/or other NP) is frequently omitted.

Passive V formation is as shown below.

Group I V attach **-reru** to neg.-base
tora-nai → **tora-reru**
tanoma-nai → **tanoma-reru**

Group II V attach **-rareru** to neg.-base
tabe-nai → **tabe-rareru**
mi-nai → **mi-rareru**

However, there is also a Group II alternative form that is increasingly being used, especially by the younger generations. Please note, though, that this formation cannot be applied to all Group II V.

Group II V (alternative form) attach **-reru** to V-stem

tabe-nai → **tabe-reru**
mi-nai → **mi-reru**

Group III V:

suru → **sareru**
kuru → **korareru**

Note that the resulting forms (ending in **-(ra)reru**) attach *other* endings (such as past/perfective **-ta**, or polite **-masu**, etc.) just like any other Group II Verb:

-(ra)re-ru → **-(ra)re-ta**
-(ra)re-ru → **-(ra)re-masu**

Passive sentence types are shown below. Uses 156.1 to 156.4 concern how persons, and 156.5 how things are affected by the action of V-pass.

In 156.6, V-pass. is used in place of V-intr., and 156.7 shows the so-called 'spontaneous' form. In 156.8, pass. forms are used, not in pass. meaning, but as hon (see 65)

156.1 *X* **ga** *Y* (person) **ni/kara** verb-transitive-passive
156.2 *X* **ga** *Y* (thing) **ni** verb-transitive-passive
156.3 Passives with an object present or implied
156.3.1 *X* **ga** *Y* **ni** *Z* **o** verb-transitive-passive: indirect passive
156.3.2 *X* **ga** *Y* **ni** *Z* **o** verb-transitive-passive: direct passive
156.4 *X* **ga** *Y* **ni** verb-intransitive-passive
156.5 *X* **ga** *Y* **ni (yotte)** verb-transitive-passive
156.6 *X* **ga** verb-transitive-passive
156.7 Spontaneous passive (with verbs of feeling, expectation, etc.)
156.8 *X* **wa/ga** verb-passive (*X* = person): passive honorific

156.1 *X* ga *Y* (PERSON) ni/kara VERB-TRANSITIVE-PASSIVE

(cf., active: *Y* **ga** *X* **o** V-tr.-active)

Note that both **ni** and **kara** can mark the agent.

a 最終の口述試験では試験官に笑わ【れ】た。
saishū no kōjutsu shiken de wa shiken-kan ni warawareta
I was laughed at by the invigilator in the final interview test.

b 男は暴れることもなく、その場で逮捕さ【れ】た。
otoko wa abareru koto mo naku sono ba de taiho sareta
The man was arrested on the spot, without a struggle.

c 明るいA君がいじめ【られ】ていたなんて知らなかった。
akarui A-kun ga ijimerarete ita nante shiranakatta
I had no idea that 'A', who was such a cheerful boy, was being bullied.

d 学生時代に一度だけ好きな男の子に告白したが、ふら【れ】てしまった。
gakusei jidai ni ichi-do dake suki na otoko no ko ni kokuhaku shita ga furarete shimatta
When I was a student, I once declared my love to a boy, but I was rejected.

e お母さんかわいくないから飽き【られ】ちゃったのか。
okāsan kawaikunai kara akirarechatta no ka
Has [your father/my husband] lost interest in me because I'm not cute?

156.2 *X* ga *Y* (THING) ni VERB-TRANSITIVE-PASSIVE

(cf., active: *Y* **ga** *X* **o** V-tr.-active)

Here, only **ni** can mark the agent

a 台風に見舞わ【れ】て、交通機関がまひしてしまった。
taifū ni mimawarete kōtsū kikan ga mahi shite shimatta
Struck by a typhoon, the transport system was paralysed.

b K町の会社員Aさんが乗用車にはねら【れ】、頭を強く打って即死した。
K-chō no kaisha-in A-san ga jōyō-sha ni hanerare atama o tsuyoku utte sokushi shita
The company employee A of town K was hit by a car and died instantly from the heavy blow to his head.

156.3 PASSIVES WITH AN OBJECT PRESENT OR IMPLIED

156.3.1 *X* ga *Y* ni *Z* o verb-transitive-passive: indirect passive

(cf., active: *Y* **ga** *X* **no** *Z* **o** verb-transitive-active)

Here, *Z* (some entity belonging to *X*, such as a thing, part of body, family member, etc., which is expressed by *Z*-**no** in the active counterpart) is affected by the action of *Y*, and as a result, *X* is affected indirectly. Therefore this type of pass. is often called indirect pass. or suffering pass. The implication is usually one of adversity, i.e. something unfortunate happening to *X*.

a 泥棒に財布をとら【れ】た。
dorobō ni saifu o torareta
(I) had my wallet taken by a thief.

b 電気を止められたことも【何度も】ある。
denki o tomerareta koto mo nando mo aru
I've had the electricity cut off many times.

156.3.2 *X* ga *Y* ni *Z* o verb-transitive-passive: direct passive

(cf., Active: *Y* **ga** *X* **ni** *Z* **o** V-tr.-active)

The difference to 156.3.1 is that this is a direct pass., with an object present or implied in the sentence.

a その猫はガソリンか灯油をかけら【れ】ていた。
sono neko wa gasorin ka tōyu o kakerarete ita
That cat had petrol or kerosene poured over it.

b 今の仕事はきついけれど店を任せら【れ】ているという充実感がある。
ima no shigoto wa kitsui keredo mise o makaserarete iru to iu jūjitsu-kan ga aru
My current work is tough, but there is the satisfaction of being entrusted with the shop

156.4 *X* ga *Y* ni VERB-INTRANSITIVE-PASSIVE

(cf., active: *Y* **ga** *X* **ni** V-intr.-active)

Here, *X* is directly affected (not just in part, as in 156.3.1) by the action of *Y*, usually adversely.

a 妻に先立だた【れ】た。
tsuma ni sakidatareta
[His] wife died before [him].

156.5 *X* ga *Y* ni (yotte) VERB-TRANSITIVE-PASSIVE

(cf., active: *Y* **ga** *X* **o** V-tr.-active)

This type of pass. is similar to English pass., with inanimate *Y*.

a 7ヵ国の代表によって話し合いが再開さ【れ】る。
nanakakoku no daihyō ni yotte hanashiai ga saikai sareru
Talks will be resumed by the delegates from the seven countries.

b 消防隊が駆けつけ火は約一時間後に消し止めら【れ】た。
shōbō-tai ga kaketsuke hi wa yaku ichiji-kan-go ni keshi-tomerareta
The fire brigade rushed to the scene and the fire was extinguished after about an hour.

c 夏休みには子供たちを対象とした科学教室が各地で開催さ【れ】た。
natsuyasumi ni wa kodomo-tachi o taishō to shita kagaku kyōshitsu ga kakuchi de kaisai sareta
In the summer vacation science classes aimed at children were held in many places.

d 手帳には、鉛筆で故郷の家の絵が書か【れ】ていた。
techō ni wa enpitsu de furusato no ie no e ga kakarete ita
In the diary, a picture of his birthplace was drawn in pencil.

156.6 *X* ga VERB-TRANSITIVE-PASSIVE

This type of pass., which lacks an agent and has no active counterpart, is typically used in the media, academic papers, etc.

a 誠実な人柄で知ら【れ】る。
seijitsu na hitogara de shirareru
He is known for his sincere personality.

b 最近、公共の場での禁煙の問題がクローズアップさ【れ】ている。
saikin kōkyō no ba de no kin'en no mondai ga kurōzu appu sarete iru
Recently, the problem of outlawing smoking in public places is receiving attention.

c 地球温暖化の穀物生産への影響はまだ解明さ【れ】ていない。
chikyū ondanka no kokumotsu seisan e no eikyō wa mada kaimei sarete inai
The effects of global warming on grain production have not yet been clarified.

d 心の安らぎを得るものとして宗教音楽も注目さ【れ】ている。
kokoro no yasuragi o eru mono to shite shūkyō ongaku mo chūmoku sarete iru
As a means of achieving peace of mind religious music too is attracting attention.

e 将来、化粧品の価格は下落することが予想さ【れ】る。
shōrai keshōhin no kakaku wa geraku suru koto ga yosō sareru
In the future, it is expected that the price of cosmetics will drop.

156.7 SPONTANEOUS PASSIVE (WITH VERBS OF FEELING, EXPECTATION, ETC.)

This indicates a feeling that occurs spontaneously or naturally, which the subject can't help 'seems to me', 'is felt', 'be attracted to', etc. (see 183).

a これまでは政治改革の意義を無視しているとしか思わ【れ】ない。
kore made wa seiji kaikaku no igi o mushi shite iru to shika omowarenai
I can only think that until now they have been ignoring the meaning of political reform.

b 幼いころから乗馬の優雅なイメージにひか【れ】ていた。
osanai koro kara jōba no yūga na imēji ni hikarete ita
From an early age, she was attracted to the elegant image of horseriding.

c その言葉にはかつてない切実さが感じら【れ】る。
sono kotoba ni wa katsute nai setsujitsu-sa ga kanjirareru
In his words one feels an urgency that wasn't there before.

156.8 *X* **wa/ga** VERB-PASSIVE (*X* = PERSON): PASSIVE HONORIFIC

Pass. hon. are less polite than other hon. forms, but are popular with the younger generation and in professional situations (see 65.1.3).

a 負傷さ【れ】た方々には心からのお見舞いを申しあげたい。
fushō sareta katagata ni wa kokoro kara no o-mimai o mōshi-agetai
I wish to express my heartfelt sympathy to those who got injured.

b 自然を壊すなと、反対派の方は主張さ【れ】ているようです。
shizen o kowasu na to hantaiha no kata wa shuchō sarete iru yō desu
Those against [the project] appear to advocate that nature should not be destroyed.

157 PEJORATIVE VERBS

Just as there are verbs that show respect to the subject of the action, Japanese also has pejorative verbs that express disrespect (see 65 and also 60.4).

The basic construction is V-stem-**yagaru**, a Group I verb. When used to someone's face, it often results in a fight, which is why most of the time it is used when talking to oneself. It is often encountered in Japanese comics (*manga*), from which the examples below are taken.

a へえーあのやろうけっこうしぶとくなり【やがっ】たな。
hē ano yarō kekkō shibutoku nari-yagatta na
Well, that guy's got quite tough!

b ち…畜生あとでおぼえて【やがれ】。
chi . . . chikushō ato de oboete yagare
D . . . damn, you just remember for later!

158 PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND SUFFIXES

Japanese personal pron. are more like N than pron. in that they can be modified by demonstrative pron. (for an example, see 45.2.1).

Japanese personal pron. do not usually distinguish number (singular/plural) in the first and second person, although the suff. **-gata** (formal) and **-domo**, **-ra** and **-tachi** can optionally be used for plural (see 144, also 170). Table 19 gives the more common personal pron. and suff.

As is evident from Table 19, there are some differences in use depending on the sex of the speaker, and more pronounced differences according to the formality of the relationship with the addressee (and to some degree the speech situation). Females generally use more formal forms than men.

Japanese pron. are intimately tied up with hierarchy and levels of respect. For this reason, the use of personal pron. is generally avoided in formal relationships and situations; instead name (family name + suf. of personal address) is preferred.

158.1 Personal pronouns
158.1.1 First-person pronouns
158.1.1.1 **wata(ku)shi, boku, ore**
158.1.1.2 **jibun** as a personal pronoun
158.1.2 Second-person pronouns
158.1.2.1 **kimi, omae, kisama**
158.1.2.2 **anata**
158.1.3 Third-person pronouns
158.1.3.1 **kare(-ra/-tachi)** and **kanojo(-ra/-tachi)**
158.1.3.2 **koitsu**, etc

158.1.4 Plural forms
158.2 Personal suffixes
158.2.1 **-san** and **-sama**
158.2.2 **-kun**
158.2.3 **-chan**
158.2.4 Within the family

Table 19 Personal pronouns and suffixes

speaker	*referent*	*formal*	←		→		*intimate*
	First person ‘I’ (personal pron.)						
male		私（わたくし）	こちら	私（わたし）	僕	俺	わし
		watakushi	**kochira**	**watashi**	**boku**	**ore**	**washi**
female		私（わたくし）	こちら	私（わたし）	あたし	うち	
		watakushi	**kochira**	**watashi**	**atashi**	**uchi**	
	Second person ‘you’ (personal pron.)						
male		（あなた）	（そちら）	君（きみ）	おまえ	あんた	きさま
		(anata)	**sochira**	**kimi**	**omae**	**anta**	**kisama**
female		あなた	（そちら）				
		anata	**sochira**				
	Second person ‘you’ (name + personal-address-suf.)						
male/female		-様（さま）	-さん	-君（くん）	-ちゃん		
		-sama	**-san**	**-kun**	**-chan**		
	Third person ‘he/she’ (demonstrative pron. + N/personal pron.)						
male/female		こ/そ/あの方	こ/そ/あの人	彼/彼女			
		ko/so/ano kata	**ko/so/ano hito**	**kare/kanojo**			
		こ/そ/あいつ					
		ko/so/aitsu					
	Third person ‘he/she’ (name + personal-address-suf.)						
male/female		-様（さま）	-さん	-君（くん）	-ちゃん		
		-sama	**-san**	**-kun**	**-chan**		
	Third person ‘they’ (demonstrative pron. + N/personal pron.)						
male/female		こ/そ/あの方-々	こ/そ/あの人-たち				
		ko/so/ano kata-gata	**ko/so/ano hito-tachi**				
		彼/彼女-等	こ/そ/あいつ-等				
		kare-ra/kanojo-ra, ko/so/aitsu-ra					
	Third person ‘they’ (name + personal-address-suf.)						
male/female		-様（さま）	さん	君（くん）	-ちゃん		
		-sama	**san**	**kun**	**-chan**		

158.1 PERSONAL PRONOUNS

158.1.1 First-person pronouns

158.1.1.1 *wata(ku)shi, boku, ore*

The *kanji* 私 is usually used for both **watakushi** and the less formal **watashi**, so in writing it is often difficult to decide which reading is intended. Apart from the level of formality, both can be said to be neutral, i.e. they can be used with strangers and acquaintances alike. However, when contrasted with male-only pron. such as **boku**, which is used towards male or females and sounds more intimate than **watashi**, the implication is usually that the user of **watashi** is female (example b).

ore is the most informal first-person pron., used by males only.

a 夫の留守を喜ぶ妻は【私】だけじゃないらしい。
otto no rusu o yorokobu tsuma wa watashi dake ja nai rashii
It appears that I'm not the only wife to take delight in her husband's absence.

b【私】作る人、【僕】食べる人、という時代はもう終わった。
watashi tsukuru hito boku taberu hito to iu jidai wa mō owatta
The age where people could say, 'I [female] do the cooking, I [male] do the eating' is already over.

c【おれ】にも撮らせろよ。
ore ni mo torasero yo
[PM to cameraman:] Let me take one [= a picture] too.

158.1.1.2 *jibun as a personal pronoun*

The reflexive pron. **jibun** 'self' can also be used like a personal pron., in the sense of 'I' or, with **-tachi**, as 'we' (see 170).

a【自分】が同性愛者とわかっても構わない。
jibun ga dōseiai-sha to wakatte mo kamawanai
I don't mind if people realize that I'm gay.

b 日本初の契約制スチュワーデス。「【自分たち】はパイオニア。」
nihon-hatsu no keiyaku-sei suchuwādesu. jibun-tachi wa paionia
Japan's first stewardesses on contract. 'We are pioneers' [they say].

158.1.2 Second-person pronouns

158.1.2.1 *kimi, omae, kisama*

kimi is an intimate-sounding form of address for male or females by older men, or by boyfriends towards girlfriends. **omae** is quite informal, used between men who grew up or went to school together. It is also used by parents to their sons. **kisama**, also common in comics, is used in such male bastions as the army, sports teams etc., to subordinates or equals; in ordinary life, if you address someone with **kisama**, it signals that you're trying to pick a fight!

a ところが面接官は「【君】、処女なの？」。
tokoro ga mensetsu-kan wa kimi shojo na no
However, the interviewer [asked] 'Are you a virgin?'

b 【おまえ】に託したい。
omae ni takushitai
I want to entrust [the running of the company] to you [= my son].

c 「ほら、【お前】ももっと足を高くあげろよ」「【オレ】は腹が出てるから、【お前】みたいなわけにはいかないよ」。
hora omae mo motto ashi o takaku agero yo ore wa hara ga deteru kara omae mitai na wake ni wa ikanai yo
'Hey, raise your leg a bit higher!' 'I've got a big belly, so you can't expect me to do things in the same way as you!' [baseball training]

d 【貴様ア】、こりゃ、何だ! 戦場に野球をやりに行くつもりかア。
kisamā korya nan da senjō ni yakyū o yari ni iku tsumori kā
Hey you, what is this [= practising baseball]! You going to war to play baseball?

e 俺、【貴様】の昔に返ってゆっくり話し合いたい。
ore kisama no mukashi ni kaette yukkuri hanashiai-tai
I'd like a leisurely chat [among us men], back on the old terms of *ore* and *kisama*.

158.1.2.2 *anata*

This is taught to foreigners as equivalent to 'you', simply because it is the most neutral of the lot. However, Westerners are renowned in Japan for overusing **anata**, which still has strong connotations, namely:

(i) Impersonal use: **anata** is used when the speaker/writer does not know what the social level of the person/s addressed is; this is especially common in adverts (appealing to people of all levels).

a もう黙っちゃいられない!【あなた】のダイエット方法は大丈夫？
mō damatcha irarenai anata no daietto hōhō wa daijōbu
I can't keep silent any longer! Is your [= the reader's] method of losing weight safe?

b 「【あなた】のお子さんなの」と突然、聞かれた。
anata no o-ko-san na no to totsuzen kikareta
She was suddenly asked [by a stranger], 'Is that your child?'

c 日本では【あなた】の絵が好きな人が多い。なぜだと思いますか。
nihon de wa anata no e ga suki na hito ga ōi. naze da to omoimasu ka
[Interview with painter:] In Japan, there are many who like your paintings. Why is that, do you think?

(ii) Woman to husband: **anata** is also typically used by a woman to her husband or lover (although less so by the younger generation).

a 【あなた】、ドレス買ってもいい？
anata doresu katte mo ii
Darling, is it OK if I buy a dress?

b かたや、「【あなた】、ご飯よ」のように、「妻が夫を指す代表的な代名詞」でもある。
kataya anata gohan yo no yō ni tsuma ga otto o sasu daihyōteki na daimeishi de mo aru
On the other hand, it [= **anata**] is also a typical pronoun by which the wife calls the husband, as in 'Darling, dinner's ready!'

(iii) Overuse by foreigners: **anata** is also a word used by foreigners in situation where Japanese would normally avoid the use of a personal pronoun. This misuse was pointed out in grammars of Japanese by people like Aston and Chamberlain over a hundred years ago.

158.1.3 Third-person pronouns

158.1.3.1 ***kare(-ra/-tachi)* and *kanojo(-ra/-tachi)***

These are originally translation terms for rendering 'he' and 'she' into Japanese from works of Western fiction. They are very common now, and are less unwieldy than **sono/ano hito**, etc. However, there are some restrictions on their use: they are more commonly used by men and younger Japanese, and are considered rude if used of social superiors. They are also commonly used to refer to boyfriends (**kare** or **kareshi**) and girlfriends (**kanojo**).

a 【彼女】に振られたので、女の子の友達がいません。
kanojo ni furareta no de onna no ko no tomodachi ga imasen
I got dumped by my girlfriend, so I haven't got any female friends.

158.1.3.2 ***koitsu*, *etc.***

koitsu/soitsu/aitsu are used pejoratively or to refer informally to close friends, colleagues etc., or when no politeness is required, as when one talks about the content of one's thoughts, as in example a

The difference between **ko-/so-/a-** follows the usual pattern (see Table 9, 45).

a 【こいつ】には話せる、そんな雰囲気を持っている人間だったらいいな。
  koitsu ni wa hanaseru sonna fun'iki o motte iru ningen dattara ii na
  I'd like the kind of person who feels like someone I can talk to.

b 「【あいつ】もいいばあさんだ」と写真を見せてくれた。
  aitsu mo ii bāsan da to shashin o misete kureta
  'She's quite a granny', he said and showed me a photo.

158.1.4 Plural forms

Some plural forms are given in Table 19 for third persons, but first- and second-person pronouns can also be made plural by attaching plural suf. (see 188, 168, 49, 58).

A special case is **wareware** (我々), which is normally used to define a group and often prefixes a noun (regardless of any comma in writing, it is pronounced as one unit in speech).

a 【我々】、監査役はあなたがた取締役を訴える権限があるのですよ。
  wareware kansa-yaku wa anata-gata torishimari-yaku o uttaeru kengen ga aru no desu yo
  We auditors have the power to take you [company] chairmen to court!

158.2 PERSONAL SUFFIXES

158.2.1 -san and -sama

Attaching the suffix **-san** (and its very formal equivalent **-sama**) to family names or given names (especially those of Westerners) is the most common form of addressing people.

-sama is also used as a more formal equivalent of **mina-san (mina-sama)** 'everyone' and **o-kyaku-sama (o-kyaku-san)** 'guest(s)'.

a それでは白石【さん】、支払いをお願いします。
  sore de wa shiraishi-san shiharai o onegai shimasu
  Well then, Mrs Shiraishi, please pay up.

b リンダ【さん】は週に二回学校に行っているので、代わりにマイク【さん】が哺乳瓶で赤ちゃんに母乳をあげる。
  rinda-san wa shū ni ni-kai gakkō ni itte iru no de, kawari ni maiku-san ga ho'nyū-bin de akachan ni bo'nyū o ageru
  As Linda goes to school twice a week, Mike gives the baby a bottle feed instead.

c 温かく見守り、応援してくださった皆【様】に感謝の気持ちでいっぱいです。
atatakuku mimamori ōen shite kudasatta mina-sama ni kansha no kimochi de ippai desu
I'm full of gratitude to all the people who have followed [my career] with interest and have urged me on.

Note on the use of **-sama** for addresses: **-sama** (never **-san**) is attached to the name of the addressee on envelopes. In this case, it's attached to company names as well as people's names (other suf. include the more formal **-dono** (殿), and **onchū** (御中); the latter can be used only for companies, not individuals).

158.2.2 -kun

-kun is generally used for boys only (for both address and reference), by close male friends, especially if they've been friends since schooldays, and by senior males (or females) for more junior males, e.g. by teachers in school or university, and even by the speaker in the Diet for MPs (example b).

a 小学校から帰った春樹【君】（11）はコンピューターの画面をのぞいた。
shōgakkō kara kaetta haruki-kun (11) wa konpyūtā no gamen o nozoita
Haruki-kun (11), who had come back from primary school, looked at the computer screen.

b 河村【君】、君はねぇ、一年間謹慎するくらいの反省が必要だろう。
kawamura-kun kimi wa nē ichinen-kan kinshin suru kurai no hansei ga hitsuyō darō
[At the Diet:] Kawamura, you should repent and be on your best behaviour for a year or so.

158.2.3 -chan

-chan is to address and refer to younger siblings, also by friends of the family. In the media, **-chan** is used to refer to children of up to 6 years of age. Women and young children also commonly attach it to cute animals, e.g. **panda-chan**.

a 彩子【ちゃん】は移植手術を受けることなく、この世を去った。
ayako-chan wa ishoku shujutsu o ukeru koto naku kono yo o satta
Ayako-chan left this world without receiving a transplant operation.

b まったく、お兄【ちゃん】の影響力の大きさにはまいるぜ。
mattaku onii-chan no eikyō-ryoku no ōkisa ni wa mairu ze
It really amazes you how strong the older brother's influence is!

158.2.4 Within the family

In the family, too, personal name + suf. is also used (especially towards children), and **(o-)tō-san/chan** 'daddy' and **(o-)kā-san/chan** 'mummy', as well as 'papa' and 'mama', are used by children towards their parents (and between parents) like first-person pron.

a どんなことがあっても、【お父さん】と【お母さん】は守ってやる。
donna koto ga atte mo o-tōsan to o-kāsan wa mamotte yaru
No matter what happens, [daddy and mummy] will protect you.

b 【ママ】、もう現場に戻りなよ。
mama mō genba ni modori na yo
Mummy, go back to [your] construction site now.

159 PHRASAL PARTICLES

Phrasal particles are combinations of case P and verbal elements in the conjunctive form (or V-base in more formal or bookish style). They are often used after N in the form as [N **ni/o** V-**te**] in adverbial use, but some can also be attached to V. Some phrasal P are also used to modify N, as indicated in Table 20.

In very formal writing, particularly business letters, some phrasal P have polite versions ending in **-mashite**; **ni tsukimashite**, in particular, may be encountered for **ni tsuite**.

160 POINT OF VIEW

Compared to languages like English, Japanese is said to have certain characteristics that can be said to give it a more speaker-centred point of view. The most typical of these characteristics are briefly described in this section.

160.1 Subjective adjectives
160.2 Use of passive where English uses active
160.3 Use of transitive and intransitive verbs
160.4 Performative verbs
160.4.1 **ageru (yaru, sashiageru)**
160.4.1.1 All noun phrases present
160.4.1.2 Noun phrases 2 and 3 present
160.4.1.3 Noun phrase 2 present
160.4.1.4 Noun phrase 3 present
160.4.1.5 **ageru** in relative clauses
160.4.1.6 Verb-**te ageru** (-**te yaru**, -**te sashiageru**)

160.4.2 **kureru (kudasaru)**
160.4.2.1 **kureru**
160.4.2.2 **kureru** in relative clauses
160.4.2.3 **-te kureru**
160.4.3 **morau/itadaku (moraeru/itadakeru** = potential)
160.4.3.1 **morau**
160.4.3.2 **morau** in relative clauses
160.4.3.3 Verb-**te morau** (verb-**te moraeru** = potential)

Table 20 Major phrasal particles

Meaning	*Adverbial*	*Adv.-bookish*	*N-modifying*
‘on the occasion of’, ‘when it comes to’, ‘in’, ‘for’	**ni atatte (wa/mo)**	**ni atari**	**ni atatte no**
‘contrary to’	**ni hanshite**	**ni hanshi**	—
‘(extending) over’	**ni kakete (wa/mo)**	**ni kake**	**ni kakete no**
‘when it comes to’	**ni kakete (wa/mo)**	—	—
‘with respect to’, ‘about’, ‘as regards’	**ni kanshite (wa/mo)**	**ni kanshi**	**ni kansuru**
‘in lieu of’	**ni kawatte**	**ni kawari**	**ni kawaru**
‘in’	**ni oite (wa/mo)**	—	**ni okeru/** **ni oite no**
‘at (the time of)’, ‘in’	**ni saishite (wa/mo)**	**ni saishi**	**ni saishite no**
‘against’, ‘for’, ‘in’	**ni taishite (wa/mo)**	**ni taishi**	**ni taisuru/** **ni taishite no**
‘for’	**ni totte (wa/mo)**	**ni tori**	**ni totte no**
‘about’	**ni tsuite**	**ni tsuki**	**ni tsuite no**
‘per’	—	**ni tsuki**	—
‘depending on’	**ni yotte (wa/mo)**	**ni yori**	—
‘by’, ‘through’	**ni yotte**	**ni yori**	**ni yoru**
‘surrounding’, ‘concerning’	**o megutte**	**o meguri**	**o meguru**
‘by’, ‘through’, or marking object	**o motte**	—	—
‘through’	**o tōshite**	—	**o tōshite no**
‘as’	**to shite**	—	**to shite no**

160.1 SUBJECTIVE ADJECTIVES

These are adj. that are typically used to refer to the feelings of the speaker (or subject) rather than some objective state **samui** ‘I’m cold’, **hazukashii** ‘I feel ashamed’, etc.

a …隊員らは「【寒い】、【寒い】」を連発。
taiin-ra wa samui samui o renpatsu
. . . the corps members kept saying '[I am/feel] cold'.

b 悠揚迫らぬ富士の威容に、人間の浅知恵が【恥ずかしい】。
yūyō semaranu fuji no iyō ni ningen no asajie ga hazukashii
Before the serene dignity of Mt Fuji, one feels ashamed of mankind's insensitivity [= lots of chimneys spoiling the view].

160.2 USE OF PASSIVE WHERE ENGLISH USES ACTIVE

Cases where Japanese uses a passive construction whereas English would use the active voice include the so-called 'adversative passive' (where the patient (subject) is adversely affected by the action of the V), as in example a.

In other instances, as in example b, the speaker does not see things from the barber's point of view (i.e. 'the barber told me . . .' in the active voice), but focuses on himself (i.e. 'I was told by the barber . . .' in the passive voice).

a お金を無造作に置いていたが、まさか、【取られる】とは思っていなかった。
okane o muzōsa ni oite ita ga, masaka torareru to wa omowanakatta
I put the money down casually, but it never occurred to me that someone would steal it (*lit.* "I would get it stolen").

b 今年５月に理容師と相談したら、縛ってみてはと【勧められ】てやってみた。
kotoshi gogatsu ni riyō-shi to sōdan shitara shibatte mite wa to susumerarete yatte mita
When I consulted with my barber in May this year, he suggested (*lit.* "I was suggested by him") that I might tie up [my hair], so I gave it a try.

160.3 USE OF TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Japanese uses a large number of transitive and intransitive V pairs (see 223). When a transitive V is used, the implication is that the subject is responsible for the action of V; but the corresponding intransitive V implies that something happens for which nobody is overtly responsible or to be blamed.

a 厚さはわずかに0.5ミリ。手に取ると【壊れ】てしまいそうだ。
atsusa wa wazuka ni rei-ten gomiri. te ni toru to kowarete shimai-sō da
They [the earthenware teacups] are only 0.5 mm thick. They look as if they'll break when you take them in your hand.

b 三年前の作品をみると、【壊し】てしまいたい気持ちになる。
sannen-mae no sakuhin o miru to kowashite shimai-tai kimochi ni naru
When I look at things [= pottery I made] three years ago, I feel I want to break them.

The above distinction is not a problem in itself, but differences in point of view are seen in the way things are expressed; for instance, where English uses expressions such as 'they catch the offender' or 'the offender gets caught', Japanese uses neither the active/transitive, nor the passive, but the intransitive.

In example d, an ageing player refers to his diminishing performance by using the intransitive **bōru ga tobanaku natta** 'the ball doesn't fly as it used to', where English would use a transitive or causative expression.

c 犯人は無差別に発砲したのでしょうか。早く【捕まっ】てくれないと不安です。
hannin wa mu-sabetsu ni happō shita no deshō ka. hayaku tsukamatte kurenai to fuan desu
The culprit presumably fired the gun indiscriminately. If he doesn't get caught soon, I'll be worried.

d ボールが【飛ば】なくなったわけではない。体力より気力が落ちている。
bōru ga tobanaku natta wake de wa nai. tairyoku yori kiryoku ga ochite iru
It's not that [I can't get the golf] ball to fly [the distance] any more. It's my mental rather than physical strength that's diminished.

160.4 PERFORMATIVE VERBS

Performative V are mainly V of giving and receiving (**ageru/yaru/sashiageru, kureru/kudasaru, morau/itadaku**, etc.), which can be used by themselves, or attached to the conjunctive form of other V (**V-te ageru, V-te kureru, V-te morau**, etc.) to indicate for whose benefit the action of the V is performed. In English, the difference is often left to the context.

a 働くということは、雇っ【てもらっ】ているとか、働い【てやっ】ていると考えるのではなく、会社とどこまでイーブンな関係になれるかだ。
hataraku to iu koto wa yatotte moratte iru to ka hataraite yatte iru to kangaeru no de wa naku kaisha to doko made ībun na kankei ni nareru ka da
Working is not about feeling that someone is [doing you a favour by] employing you, or you are [doing someone the favour of] working for them, but to what degree you can get on an even footing with your company.

The choice of performative V depends on who gives to whom. Additionally, the notion of ingroup/outgroup comes into play. This requires that persons with whom the speaker identifies (the speaker's family or members of his company, etc.) are treated on a par with the speaker when addressing listeners belonging to other groups.

Table 21 Performatives and noun phrase marking

	Noun phrase 1	*Noun phrase 2*	*Noun phrase 3*	*Verb*
ageru 'give'	Giver-**ga/wa**	Recipient-**ni**	Thing-**o/wa**	**ageru**
kureru 'give'	Giver-**ga/wa**	Recipient-**ni**	Thing-**o/wa**	**kureru**
morau 'receive'	Recipient-**ga/wa**	Giver-**ni/kara**	Thing-**o/wa**	**morau**

The difference in use between the three types of performatives makes it quite clear who gives what to whom; for this reason, some, or even all, of the NPs below can be ellipted or omitted (they can also appear in a different order).

yaru and **sashiageru** work in same way as **ageru**, **kudasaru** as **kureru**, and **itadaku** as **morau**.

160.4.1 ageru (yaru, sashiageru)

The examples that follow use **ageru** only, but **sashiageru** can be used in the same way (superpolite equivalent, see Table 13).

yaru is a V that is mostly used in the sense of **suru** by itself (example a). It can also be used to 'give' to people of lower status than the speaker, but in fact **ageru** is often used in such cases (see 160.4.1.3 b, where a mother gives money to her high-school-student son). However, **yaru** is used for giving (water, feed, etc.) to plants, animals, etc. (examples b and c, but see 160.4.1.5 a, where **ageru** is used for giving to a cat!).

a 来年も一生懸命【やる】だけだ。
rainen mo isshōkenmei yaru dake da
Next year too all we'll work as hard as we can, that's all.

b 五—七日に一回を目安にたっぷり水を【やる】。
itsuka kara nanoka ni ik-kai o meyasu ni tappuri mizu o yaru
You water it (*lit.* "give it water") once every five to seven days or so.

c 「鶏に餌を【やる】少年」
niwatori ni esa o yaru shōnen
'Boy feeding chickens' [= Title of a photograph]

160.4.1.1 *All noun phrases present*

a リンダさんは週に二回学校に行っているので、代わりにマイクさん【が】哺乳瓶で赤ちゃん【に】母乳【を】【あげ】る。
rinda-san wa shū ni ni-kai gakkō ni itte iru no de, kawari ni maiku-san ga honyū-bin de aka-chan ni bonyū o ageru
As Linda goes to school twice a week, Mike gives the baby a bottle feed instead.

160.4.1.2 *Noun phrases 2 and 3 present*

a 虫歯になるので、娘【に】はアメ【を】【あげ】ないでください。
mushiba ni naru no de musume ni ame o agenai de kudasai
Please don't give my daughter any bonbons as she'll get bad teeth.

b もし拾った人がいたら、その人【に】幸せ【を】【あげ】たと思えばいいよ。
moshi hirotta hito ga itara sono hito ni shiawase o ageta to omoeba ii yo
If someone picked up [your wallet], you should just think that you've given happiness to that person.

160.4.1.3 *Noun phrase 2 present*

a 保育園では、たまに戸外へ出て、菓子【を】【あげ】ることはよくある。
hoiku-en de wa tama ni kogai e dete kashi o ageru koto wa yoku aru
In the kindergarden, we occasionally go out and often give [the children] sweets.

b その際、高校生の二男に「残った分【は】あげる」と留守中の生活費として二万円を渡したところ…
sono sai kōkō-sei no jinan ni nokotta bun wa ageru to rusuchū no seikatsu-hi to shite niman-en o watashita tokoro
On that occasion, when she gave her second son, a high-school student, 20,000 yen as living expenses during their absence with the words 'You can keep any that's left over . . .'

160.4.1.4 *Noun phrase 3 present*

a 三千六百円になるから、お母さん【に】あげる。
sanzen roppyaku-en ni naru kara, okāsan ni ageru
[The prize] will come to 3,600 yen, so I'll give it to you [= mum].

160.4.1.5 *ageru in relative clauses*

In a relative clause, the number of required NP is fewer. In the example below, NP3 cannot be mentioned inside the relative clause (shown by []) as it is identical with the modified N **neko** (see 143).

a 魚屋は時田の家に顔を出したが、[いつも魚【を】【あげ】ていた]ネコがいない。
sakana-ya wa tokita no ie ni kao o dashita ga itsumo sakana o agete ita neko ga inai
The fishmonger visited Tokita's place, but the cat he always used to give fish wasn't there.

160.4.1.6 *Verb-te ageru (-te yaru, -te sashiageru)*

Here, the number of required NPs depends on the valency of the V to which **-te ageru** is attached. **-te yaru** can be used to those of lower status, and **-te sashiageru** of higher status (see 231, 195, 211, 65.3, Table 13).

a お菓子【を】買っ【てあげ】る。
okashi o katte ageru
I'll buy you sweets.

b 今度、一緒に連れていっ【てあげ】るからね。
kondo issho ni tsurete itte ageru kara ne
[Grown-up grandson to grandfather:] I'll take you [back to your birthplace] one of these days, OK?

c 日本でもボランティア活動が増えてきましたが、まだまだ“し【てあげ】る”という恩に着せたような意識が強いようです。
nihon de mo borantia katsudō ga fuete kimashita ga madamada shite ageru to iu on ni kiseta yō na ishiki ga tsuyoi yō desu
Voluntary work has increased in Japan too, but the feeling of doing others a favour in the sense of 'I'm doing it *for* you' still seems to be strong.

d テーブルでお母さんやお父さん【が】子供たち【に】絵本【を】読ん【てあげ】る姿も目立つ。
tēburu de o-kāsan ya o-tōsan ga kodomo-tachi ni ehon o yonde ageru sugata mo medatsu
At the table you see mothers and fathers reading picture books to their children.

e 「外国人に道を聞かれたらどうする」「場所が分かれば教え【てあげ】る」
gaikoku-jin ni michi o kikaretara do suru. basho ga wakareba oshiete ageru
'What do you do if a foreigner asks you the way?' 'If I know the location, I'll tell him.'

f 同居し【てあげ】る、と恩着せがましく言われてありがたがる親が多いからだろう。
dōkyo shite ageru to onkise-gamashiku iwarete ariga-tagaru oya ga ōi kara darō
This is probably because there are many parents who feel gratified when told patronizingly [by their children], 'We'll live with you'.

160.4.2 kureru (kudasaru)

kudasaru is used in the same way, for subjects + **ga/wa** who are of higher status.

160.4.2.1 *kureru*

a 同情するなら金【を】【くれ】。
dōjō suru nara kane o kure
If you feel sorry for me give me some money.

b 父親【は】一日に一ドル小遣い【を】【くれ】る。
chichioya wa ichinichi ni ichi-doru kozukai o kureru.
The father gives them one dollar pocket money a day [in story about children spending time with divorced parents].

c 愚痴を繰り返していても、だれもあなた【を】救い出しては【くれ】ない。
guchi o kurikaeshite ite mo dare mo anata o sukui-dashite wa kurenai
If you just keep complaining, no one is going to help you.

d 上位にいると、「すぐ手紙【を】【くれ】る」という。
jōi ni iru to sugu tegami o kureru to iu
When he is among the leaders [in a tournament], '[Grandma] sends me a letter right away', he says.

e チョコレート【でも】【くれ】るのかな」。(**demo** here replaces **o**)
chokorēto demo kureru no ka na
Maybe [my daughters] will give me chocolates or something.

160.4.2.2 *kureru in relative clauses*

The NP (NP1) that is identical to the modified N (**hito**) cannot be mentioned inside the relative clause (shown by []) (see 143).

a 一日も早く病気を克服し、[メッセージ【を】【くれ】た]人に会いに行きたい。
ichinichi mo hayaku byōki o kokufuku shi messēji o kureta hito ni ai ni ikitai
I want to defeat my illness as quickly as possible, and go and meet the people who've sent me messages.

160.4.2.3 *-te kureru*

When attached to V-te, **kureru** indicates that the action of V is performed for the benefit of first or third persons; in the case of third persons, the implication is that the speaker sympathizes or 'takes side' with them (see 203).

Example a needs some explanation. Here, **-te kureru** is used by the father of an Olympic gold medallist, who won in front of a largely local audience in an area where he used to go and practise and which was like a second home to the athlete.

a みんなが応援し【てくれ】ました。
minna ga ōen shite kuremashita
Everyone cheered him on.

b 今の会社は女性に仕事を任せ【てくれ】ない。
ima no kaisha wa josei ni shigoto o makasete kurenai
The company I am with now doesn't let women take responsibility for the work.

c 祖父は何も財産を残し【てくれ】ませんでした。
sofu wa nani mo zaisan o nokoshite kuremasen deshita
My grandfather didn't leave me any money.

160.4.3 morau/itadaku (moraeru/itadakeru = potential)

With **morau** (**itadaku** is used with givers of higher status), either **ni** or **kara** can be used to mark NP2.

160.4.3.1 *morau*

a「複数のボーイフレンド【から】プレゼント【を】【もらっ】た若い女性が、要らない品を持ち込んでいる例も多い。
fukusū no bōi furendo kara purezento o moratta wakai josei ga iranai shina o mochikonde iru rei mo ōi
There are also many cases where young women, who received presents from several boyfrieds, bring in things they don't need [= to pawn].

160.4.3.2 *morau in relative clauses*

The NP that is identical with the modified N (**mono**) cannot be mentioned inside the relative clause (shown by []).

a [皆様（記者団）【から】何か【もらえ】る] ものがあったら、喜んでいただきます。
mina-sama (kisha-dan) kara nani ka moraeru mono ga attara yorokonde itadakimasu
If there's anything I can get from you [press corps], I'll accept it gladly.

160.4.3.3 *Verb-te morau (Verb-te moraeru = potential)*

-te itadaku is used with givers who are higher in status (see 207, 200).

In example a, a husband tells his new wife, who wishes to retain her maiden name, to change it, i.e. his interests are indicated by the verb **kaeru** + **-te morau**, 'have things changed for his benefit'.

Example b shows the words of a father about a suspect accused of having killed his young daughter and who is currently being tried in court. **tsugunau** 'make up for the crime' is used with **-te morau**, for the speaker's (and his group/family's) benefit.

a 僕の名字にちゃんと変え【てもらわ】ないと、田舎の両親に何て言われるか……」。
boku no myōji ni chanto kaete morawanai to inaka no ryōshin ni nan te iwareru ka
Unless you change your surname to mine, God knows what my backward parents will say to me . . .

b 犯人は憎んでも憎んでも憎みきれない。極刑をもって償っ【てもらう】以外ない。
hannin wa nikunde mo nikunde mo nikumi-kirenai. kyokkei o motte tsugunatte morau igai nai
I hate the culprit more than words can express. This [crime] can be atoned for only by the maximum penalty.

c 安さだけでは顧客【に】満足し【てもらえ】ない時代になった。
yasu-sa dake de wa kokyaku ni manzoku shite moraenai jidai ni natta
It's (*lit.* "it's become") an age where cheapness isn't enough to satisfy customers.

161 POTENTIAL SENTENCES

Potential S basically express the idea of 'can', 'be able to' do something.

Potential V forms are derived from V-**ru** as shown below.

Note – the *forms (and note that apart from the Group III **koreru**, only selected Group II verbs have such formations) are as yet regarded as 'incorrect', but are in fact widely used in the spoken language.

Table 22 Potential verb formation

Verb type	*Replacement Pattern*		
Group I	***-u***	→	***-eru***
	ik-u	→	**ik-eru**
	nom-u	→	**nom-eru**
	ka(w)-u	→	**ka(w)-eru**
Group II	***-ru***	→	***-rareru/reru***
	tabe-ru	→	**tabe-rareru/*tabe-reru**
	mi-ru	→	**mi-rareru/*mireru**
Group III	**suru**	→	**dekiru**
	kuru	→	**korareru/*koreru**

The **-ru** ending of these pot. forms (all groups) itself works like a Group II ending, i.e. **ik-e-ru** → **ik-e-masu**, **ik-e-nai**, **mi-rare-ru**, etc. → **mi-rare-masu**, **mi-rare-nai**, etc., **korare-ru** → **korare-masu**, **korare-nai**, etc.

There are several types of pot. S, which can be broadly divided into those where an agent (a person etc. who 'can') is mentioned (or implied), and those without a mentioned or implied agent. The former can be subdivided according to whether the pot. V is transitive or intransitive, and which case P are used to mark the person (or other entity) who 'can' and, where applicable, the object of that ability.

161.1 Agent (person, etc.) mentioned or implied
161.1.1 Intransitive verb-potential
161.1.1.1 (Person **ga/wa/mo**) verb-intransitive-potential
161.1.2 Transitive verb-potential
161.1.2.1 (Person **wa**) (object **ga/o**) verb-transitive-potential
161.1.2.2 Noun-modifying
161.1.3 Person (etc.) **ni** (object **ga/wa**) verb potential
161.1.4 Sentence **koto ga dekiru**
161.2 No agent (person, etc.) mentioned or implied
161.2.1 (0 **ga/wa**) verb-potential
161.2.2 (0 **ga/wa**) verb-potential: with verbs of seeing
161.2.3 Intransitive use of transitive verb-potential

161.1 AGENT (PERSON, ETC.) MENTIONED OR IMPLIED

161.1.1 Intransitive verb-potential

161.1.1.1 *(Person **ga/wa/mo**) verb-intransitive-potential*

Where V-pot. is intransitive, there can of course be no object. This construction indicates (in)ability to perform the action of V, but the agent or person NP is often omitted (understood from the context).

a 【働けなくなる】まで働きたい。
hatarakenaku naru made hatarakitai
[I] want to work until I can't manage any more.

b 声も出ないし、【動けないし】、大変だった。
koe mo denai shi ugokenai shi taihen datta
[I] couldn't project my voice, and couldn't move well, so it [= my first time on stage] was hard.

c 主婦やOL【も】気軽に【来れ】るような雰囲気づくりに努めたい。
shufu ya ōeru mo kigaru ni koreru yō na fun'iki-zukuri ni tsutometai
We'd like to try and create an atmosphere where housewives and female office workers can come readily.

161.1.2 Transitive verb-potential

161.1.2.1 *(Person **wa**) (object **ga/o**) verb-transitive-potential*

The object of V-pot. can be marked by either **o** or **ga**, or by focus P such as **wa** replacing these (see 148.2, 55.4). Person **wa**, and/or object **ga/o**, are often omitted (understood from the context).

a 渡辺氏【は】政権へのラストチャンスの芽【を】【見いだせ】ないでいる。
watanabe-shi wa seiken e no rasuto chansu no me o miidasenai de iru
Mr Watanabe is unable to find his last chance to be PM.

b もう暑いところでは研究【が】【でき】ない。
mō atsui tokoro de wa kenkyū ga dekinai
I can't do research in hot climates (*lit.* "places") any more.

c コメント【は】【出せ】ない。
komento wa dasenai
We can't make any comments.

d みんなを助けたかったけれどどうにも【できなかった】。
minna o tasuke-takatta keredo dō ni mo dekinakatta
I wanted to rescue them all, but just couldn't.

e「特別な例では」と、いまだに驚き【を】【隠せ】ないでいた。
tokubetsu na rei de wa to imada ni odoroki o kakusenai de ita
'Isn't it a special case?' he said, even now unable to conceal his surprise.

f 賃上げ【が】【でき】ても単純に【喜べ】ない事情がある。
chin'age ga dekite mo tanjun ni yorokobenai jijō ga aru
Even if [the company] can raise wages, there are reasons why [the union] cannot simply rejoice.

g ウエートトレーニングなど練習方法も研究して自分に自信【が】【持てる】ようになりました。
uēto torēningu nado renshū hōhō mo kenkyū shite jibun ni jishin ga moteru yō ni narimashita
He has worked out ways of practising such as weight training, and is now able to have confidence in himself.

h 海洋調査について一人でも多くの人に理解、協力【を】【いただけ】るよう努力を続けたい。
kaiyō chōsa ni tsuite hitori demo ōku no hito ni rikai kyōryoku o itadakeru yō doryoku o tsuzuketai
We'd like to keep making efforts to have as many people as possible understand and co-operate in the ocean survey.

i 登山経験は皆無に近かったが、食虫植物や自然のラン【を】【見れ】ると聞いて参加した。
tozan keiken wa kaimu ni chikakatta ga shokuchū shokubutsu ya shizen no ran o mireru to kiite sanka shita
I've had practically no experience of mountaineering, but took part because I heard that one can see insectivores and wild orchids.

161.1.2.2 *Noun-modifying*

In relative clauses and cleft S, the object is not mentioned, as it is identical with the modified N (relative clauses), or the N in S2 in cleft S:

(i) Relative clauses and cleft sentences:

a 只で【見れ】るものに金と時間を費す者はない。
tada de mireru mono ni kane to jikan o tsuiyasu mono wa nai
There's nobody who'll spend money and time on something one can see for free.

b【頼れ】るのは自分だけだ。
tayoreru no wa jibun dake da
It's only myself I can rely on.

(ii) Other Noun-modification: pseudo-RCs are sentences that are constructed like RCs, except that the modified (or head) N is a relational N, time N or N of amount (see 143.2).

a とても全部【は】【食べれ】ない量だ。
totemo zenbu wa taberenai ryō da
It's far too much to eat.

b 考えてみれば、家族一緒に【過ごせ】る日などそうはない。
kangaete mireba kazoku issho ni sugoseru hi nado sō wa nai
When you think about it, there aren't that many days that one can spend with the family.

161.1.3 Person (etc.) **ni** (object **ga/wa**) verb-potential

This also indicates what the person (or other entity that can control its actions) can or cannot do. Where present, the object of V-pot. can be marked by **ga** or **wa**, but not by **o**. The order of N **ni** and N **ga/wa** can be reversed (see 116.7).

a 本当に自分【に】仕事【が】できるのか。
hontō ni jibun ni shigoto ga dekiru no ka
Can I really do work [properly]?

b 自分たち【に】何【が】できるか考えたいのです。
jibun-tachi ni nani ga dekiru ka kangae-tai no desu
We want to think about what we can do.

c それ【が】なぜ京都【に】は【でき】ないのか。
sore ga naze kyōto ni wa dekinai no ka
Why can't Kyoto do this [= control the height of buildings]?

d 祖国から追い立てるようなこと【は】、私【に】は受け入【られ】れない。
sokoku kara oitateru yō na koto wa watashi ni wa ukeirerarenai
I can't accept an action that amounts to expelling people from their country.

e …私【に】は片道二時間以上かかる通勤【は】耐え【られ】ない。
watashi ni wa katamichi niji-kan ijō kakaru tsūkin wa taerarenai
I can't put up with a commuting [time] that takes over two hours one way.

With omitted person **ni** the form is as follows:

f なるほど、その方【が】自然に【思え】た。
naruhodo sono hō ga shizen ni omoeta
Fair enough, that [= posing with a towel rather than nude] seemed more natural.

161.1.4 Sentence **koto ga dekiru**

The phrase **koto ga dekiru** can be attached to clauses ending in V-**ru** only. Where an object is present, it can be marked by **o** (or focus P like **wa/mo/datte** etc.) only (see 83.3.1).

a 一度株を植えておけば毎年花【を】楽しむ【ことができ】る。
ichi-do kabu o uete okeba mai-toshi hana o tanoshimu koto ga dekiru
Once [you] plant the stump, [you] can enjoy the flowers every year.

b 男性がスカートをはくわけにはいかないが、女性は三つぞろいのビジネススーツ【だって】着る【ことができ】る。
dansei ga sukāto o haku wake ni wa ikanai ga, josei wa mitsu-zoroi no bijinesu sūtsu datte kiru koto ga dekiru
A man can't wear a skirt, but a woman can wear a three-piece business suit.

161.2 NO AGENT (PERSON, ETC.) MENTIONED OR IMPLIED

161.2.1 (0 **ga/wa**) verb-potential

Here, no human agent (person-**ga/wa**) can be mentioned (or implied). In other words, this construction is concerned with the ability or inability of the object of V, and in English it often translates as a pass.

a 官僚に【任せてはおけ】ない。
kanryō ni makasete wa okenai
[It] can't be left to the bureaucrats.

b 軽いうえ、家庭の洗濯機で【洗え】る。
karui ue katei no sentaku-ki de araeru
[They = clothes] are light, and moreover can be machine washed at home.

c 毎日の掃除【は】【欠かせ】ない。
mainichi no sōji wa kakasenai
Daily hoovering is a must (*lit.* "cannot be done without").

161.2.2 (0 **ga/wa**) verb-potential: with verbs of seeing

Here, no person can be mentioned (or implied). Only **ga** is used to mark the object in these sentences, which typically use V of seeing.

a 窓からは草原【が】【見渡せ】る。
mado kara wa sōgen ga miwataseru
The window affords a view of the prairie.

b 事態の深刻さ【が】【うかがえ】る。
jitai no shinkoku-sa ga ukagaeru
One can see the seriousness of the situation.

c 最近、社長交代をにおわせるような行動【が】【見受けられ】る。
saikin shachō kōtai o niowaseru yō na kōdō ga miukerareru
Recently, one can see actions that hint at a change of company president.

161.2.3 Intransitive use of transitive verb-potential

There are some verbs that look like pot. V but function more like intransitive V, such as **ureru** 'sell well', **kireru** 'cut well' and **kakeru** 'write well'.

Note, however, that some of these V, such as **kakeru** (which otherwise appear identical), can also be transitives in their pot. form, in which use an agent or person *can* be mentioned (example c) (see also 183).

a エアコン、夏物飲料など【が】爆発的に【売れ】ている。
eakon natsumono inryō nado ga bakuhatsu-teki ni urete iru
Things like air conditioners and summer drinks are selling really fast.

b インクの粘度を下げ、滑らかに【書け】るようにした。
inku no nendo o sage yawaraka ni kakeru yō ni shita
We've made the ink less sticky and smooth[er] to write with.

c 社員は全員原稿を【書け】ることが採用条件。
shain wa zen'in genkō o kakeru koto ga saiyō jōken
The condition for being given a job at the company is that everyone must be able to write [creatively].

162 -ppoi [ADJECTIVE-FORMING SUFFIX]

-ppoi is a suf. that is attached to N and N-equivalents such as V-base. It converts the N into an adj. which indicates a tendency, i.e. what things or people tend to be like (see 34.4). Some combinations are better dealt with as lexical items.

162.1 Noun-**ppoi**
162.2 Lexical items

162.1 NOUN-ppoi

Note the somewhat unusual example d, where a following N such as **mono** needs to be assumed as omitted.

a 彼、どうもほれ【っぽい】みたい。
kare dōmo hore-ppoi mitai
He falls in love easily, it seems.

b 迫力はあるけど、うそ【っぽい】。
hakuryoku wa aru kedo, usoppoi.
It [= the depiction of hell] is powerful, but looks a bit fake.

c 内装は黒と黄土色、ステンレス【っぽい】銀色を基調に、おとなしくまとめている。
naisō wa kuro to ōdoiro sutenresu-ppoi gin'iro o kichō ni otonashiku matomete iru
The interior is finished soberly with black and ochre and silvery stainless steel as the main colours.

d そのバッグ、アメ横とかで売っている安物【っぽい】ですね。
sono baggu ameyoko toka de utte iru yasumono-ppoi desu ne
That bag is one of those cheap [ones] they sell in places like Ameyoko, right?

e ステージも、ジャズというよりはソウルミュージック【っぽい】力強いもの。
sutēji mo jazu to iu yori wa souru myūjikku-ppoi chikara-zuyoi mono
The performance is powerful, more like soul music than jazz.

162.2 LEXICAL ITEMS

a 日本人は【忘れっぽい】。
nihonjin wa wasure-ppoi
The Japanese people forget easily.

b 上下とも【黒っぽい】服を着て、髪はオールバックだった。
jōge tomo kuro-ppoi fuku o kite kami wa ōru bakku datta
He wore a black top and trousers, and his hair was combed back.

c 「【怒りっぽい】、【飽きっぽい】、【骨っぽい】」の「三ぽい」で知られる水戸っぽ気質。
okori-ppoi aki-ppoi hone-ppoi no san-ppoi de shirareru mitoppo katagi
The Mitoite character is known for three qualities: ‘irritable’, ‘fickle’ and ‘tough’.

163 PRESUMPTIVE FORMS

Pres. forms of V/adj. and AN/N + cop. indicate a guess or presumption on the part of the speaker. They can be attached to pos. pred. in the sense of ‘should be’, or neg. ones in the sense of ‘shouldn’t’.

Note that the -(y)ō form has a hortative (‘let’s’) and a presumptive (‘should’) use (see 163.1.2 and 163.3).

Note – pres., including **darō**, *cannot* be used in relative clauses (except by intermediating forms such as **to iu**).

163.1 -(y)ō
163.1.1 Verb/adjective-(y)ō: equivalent of verb/adjective **darō**
163.1.2 Verb-(y)ō: hortative use
163.2 Clause **darō/deshō/de arō**
163.3 Other uses of presumptive forms
163.3.1 Noun 1-presumptive **to** noun 2-presumptive **to (mo)**
163.3.2 Question word + presumptive **to (mo)**
163.3.3 Clause 1-presumptive **ga** . . . clause 2-presumptive **ga**
163.3.4 In a negative question
163.4 **-mai**
163.4.1 Negative presumptive
163.4.2 Negative desiderative

163.1 -(y)ō

See hortative V-(y)ō (67) for how V-(y)ō forms are derived. Besides hortative 'let's', V/adj.-(y)ō can also be used as a written-style equivalent to V/adj. **darō**.

Adj.-(y)ō (the pres. form of adj., including the neg. ending **-nai**, which can be used instead of adj.-i/adj.**-ta darō** in both writing and speech, as in examples 163.1.1 b–d, 163.3.2 a, 163.3.4 a) is derived by replacing the final -i with **-karō**

Non-past	**yasu-i**	→	**yasu-karō**
Past	**yasukat-ta**	→	**yasukatta-rō**

163.1.1 Verb/adjective-(y)ō: equivalent of verb/adjective **darō**

Note also the past-tense form **-tarō**, which is the equivalent to **-ta darō**.

a 史料として一級の価値が【あろう】。(= 価値が【あるだろう】)
shiryō to shite ikkyū no kachi ga arō
As a historical document, it should have first-rate importance.

b パチンコをしたことのないサラリーマンは【少なかろう】。
(= 【少ないだろう】)
pachinko o shita koto no nai sararīman wa sukunakarō
There can't be many office workers who've never played pachinko.

c 米景気への過大な悪影響も【なかろう】。(= 【ないだろう】)
bei-keiki e no kadai na aku-eikyō mo nakarō
There shouldn't be an excessive negative influence on the US market.

d 「会社のためという理屈は、もう通らない」との思いを新たにした経営者は、少なくなかった【ろう】。
kaisha no tame to iu rikutsu wa mō tōranai to no omoi o arata ni shita keiei-sha wa sukunakunakattarō
There must have been quite a few managers who realized that the argument 'it's for the good of the company' is no longer acceptable.

163.1.2 Verb-(y)ō: hortative use

This indicates the idea of 'let's' (see 246 for further examples).

a どんないじめも【なくそう】。
donna ijime mo nakusō
Let's get rid of any form of bullying.

b 秋の夜長をどう【過ごそう】か
aki no yonaga o dō sugosō ka
How shall we spend the long autumn nights?

This form also attaches **to omou** (と思う), **to suru** (とする) and others involving the P **to** and **ga** (see 247–250).

163.2 CLAUSE **darō/deshō/de arō**

darō, **deshō**, and **de arō** are the plain, polite and learned (or bookish) -(y)ō forms of the cop., but unlike the -(y)ō form itself, **darō**, **deshō** and **de arō** indicate only pres. 'should', 'ought to', and not hortative. Colloquially, **deshō** can be shortened to **desho** (example f).

Note that **darō**, etc. is attached directly to V/adj.-fin. (incl. (-)**nai**), even though **da** cannot be attached in the same way. **darō**, etc. is usually attached to pln. forms, but in speech it is also occasionally found after **-masu** forms (see 230 e for an example). After pln. past **-ta**, both **darō** and **-rō** can be used.

darō, etc. adds the meaning of 'should', 'ought to' to a sentence.

a 価格はどんどん下がる【だろう】。
kakaku wa dondon sagaru darō
The price should come down rapidly.

b それで十分なの【だろう】。
sore de jūbun na no darō
That ought to be sufficient.

c この内閣は二年くらい大丈夫【だろう】。
kono naikaku wa ninen kurai daijōbu darō
This government should last for two years or so.

d 第九偏重とはいえ、「文化貧国」は言い過ぎ【だろう】。
daiku henchō to wa ie bunka hinkoku wa iisugi darō
Even though we have this fondness for [Beethoven's] Ninth, to call [us] a 'cultural desert' is an exaggeration.

e 人と話すときも目を見ないと通じ合わない【でしょう】」。
hito to hanasu toki mo me o minai to tsūji-awanai deshō
When you talk with someone, too, surely you don't understand each other unless you look at the eyes.

f 「あなたが本当のサンタさんならできる【でしょ】」とねだるシーン…
anata ga hontō no santa-san nara dekiru desho to nedaru shīn
The scene where [the girl] asks [to be given a brother and father] with the words 'If you're the real Santa, you should be able to do it' . . .

163.3 OTHER USES OF PRESUMPTIVE FORMS

163.3.1 Noun 1-presumptive **to** noun 2-presumptive **to (mo)**

With neg. pred. indicating a difference or relation, this construction means 'whether . . . or', 'there is no difference/relation, whether N1 or N2'.

a 地元【だろうと】本土【だろうと】客に違いはない。
jimoto darō to hondo darō to kyaku ni chigai wa nai
Whether they are local or from the mainland, customers are customers.

b【親のコネであろうと】【何であろうと】、使える手段はすべて利用しない手はない。
oya no kone de arō to nan de arō to tsukaeru shudan wa subete riyō shinai te wa nai
All possible means should be employed, be it parents' connections or whatever.

163.3.2 Question word + presumptive **to (mo)**

This combination indicates the idea of 'no matter what/how'.

a いえ、【どんなに速かろうと】、ちゃんと歌詞が聞こえなきゃいけません。
ie donna ni hayakarō to chanto kashi ga kikoenakya ikemasen
No, you must be able to hear the words of the song, no matter how fast the tempo is.

b【だれであろうと】内部に入れないのが特色だ。
dare de arō to naibu ni hairenai no ga tokushoku da
The distinctive feature of [the protection system] is that absolutely no-one can gain access to the inner part.

c【何が起きようとも】、香港の主権回復に向けた政府の努力を支持する。
nani ga okiyō to mo honkon no shuken kaifuku ni muketa seifu no doryoku o shiji suru
No matter what might happen, we support the efforts of the government towards restoring Hong Kong's autonomy.

163.3.3 Clause 1-presumptive **ga** . . . clause 2-presumptive **ga**

Joining clauses with opposite or contrastive meaning, the combination expresses the idea of 'whether . . . or not', 'regardless of whether . . . or' (see 56).

a すこし前までビールはどこの店でも、【大量に買おうが少量だろうが】価格はメーカー希望価格だった。
sukoshi mae made bīru wa doko no mise de mo tairyō ni kaō ga shōryō darō ga kakaku wa mēkā kibō kakaku datta
Until a short time ago, in every shop the price of beer was the price requested by the manufacturers, regardless of whether one bought lots or a little.

163.3.4 In a negative question

This is used in the sense of 'might it not be that?' (see 114.7)

a どうも男性より女性の方が外国に強いの【ではなかろうか】。
(=【ではないだろうか】)
dōmo dansei yori josei no hō ga gaikoku ni tsuyoi no de wa nakarō ka
Isn't it perhaps that women are better at [dealing with being in] foreign countries than men?

163.4 -mai

-mai expresses neg. pres. or neg. desiderative. With the exception of V-**mai shi**, both have a formal/written language flavour (for details, see 89).

163.4.1 Negative presumptive

(See 89.1.)

163.4.2 Negative desiderative

(See 89.2.)

164 QUESTIONS: DIRECT QUESTIONS

Unlike English, Japanese Q use the same word order as statements.

Any statement (including equational S (see 178) can therefore be made into a Q by changing the intonation and/or attaching the Q P **ka**, and/or inserting a Q word (see 167). These three elements can be called Q markers.

In this section, Q are grouped mainly by the presence or absence of such Q markers.

164.1 Questions by intonation only
164.2 Questions without question words, ending in (finite-form verb) **no**
164.3 Questions without question words, ending in **ka/no ka**
164.4 Questions with question words
164.5 Questions with question words and the question particle **ka/no ka**
164.6 Questions with question words, ending in **ka tte**
164.7 Ellipted questions
164.7.1 Ellipted questions: with ellipted question word and/or predicate
164.7.1.1 Noun/noun phrase **wa**
164.7.1.2 Question word noun/noun phrase **ga**
164.7.1.3 Sentence **da ga**
164.7.2 Ellipted questions ending in **-te wa**
164.7.3 Ellipted negative questions ending in **no de wa**
164.8 Inverted questions
164.9 Questions in cleft-sentence form
164.10 Equational questions (**wa** – copula) using **tte** instead of **wa**
164.11 Alternative questions

164.1 QUESTIONS BY INTONATION ONLY

Usually, the formal mark of a Q is the presence of a Q word and/or the Q P **ka**, but intonation alone (indicated in writing by '?') can be sufficient.

a 上がります【?】ビールでいいですか。
agarimasu bīru de ii desu ka
Will you have something [to drink]? Is beer OK?

b あなた、ドレス買ってもいい【?】
anata doresu katte mo ii
Darling, is it OK if I buy a dress?

c やっぱり夫婦そろってが一番【?】
yappari fūfu sorotte ga ichiban
After all, husband and wife [going to the movies] together is best?

164.2 QUESTIONS WITHOUT QUESTION WORDS, ENDING IN (FINITE-FORM VERB) no

This form of Q belongs to the informal or intimate style, and is used by both women and men. Note that the fin P **no** used here cannot attach **da** (i.e. **no da ka** is not possible), whereas it can attach the pol. form of cop., **desu**, i.e. **no desu ka** is OK (see 134)

a 自由に出歩ける【の】?
jiyū ni dearukeru no
Can you walk around freely?

b「ねえ、どんな所に住んでる【の】?」と彼。
nē donna tokoro ni sunderu no to kare
'Say, what sort of place do you live in?' [said] he.

c 日ごろ、ちゃんと悩みを聞いてやってる【の】?
higoro chanto nayami o kiite yatteru no
Do you regularly listen to his problems?

164.3 QUESTIONS WITHOUT QUESTION WORDS, ENDING IN **ka/no ka**

a ビールでいいです【か】。
bīru de ii desu ka
Is beer OK?

b 高くないです【か】。
takakunai desu ka
Isn't it expensive?

c 空洞化は進んでいる【か】。
kūdō-ka wa susunde iru ka
Is deindustrialization [= hollowing out] progressing?

d 飽きちゃった【のか】。
akichatta no ka
Has he lost interest in me?

e 日本の素材はほんとうに高い【のか】。
nihon no sozai wa hontō ni takai no ka
Are Japanese ingredients really expensive?

f 若者にとって恋愛とは何な【のか】。
wakamono ni totte ren'ai to wa nan na no ka
What does love mean to the young?

g 冷戦後の米国とアジアの関係はどうなっていく【のか】。
reisen-go no beikoku to ajia no kankei wa dō natte iku no ka
How will relations between the US and Asia be after the end of the Cold War?

164.4 QUESTIONS WITH QUESTION WORDS

(See 167.)

a あれは【何】だい。[だい = だ + male intimate Q P かい]
are wa nan dai
What's that?

b 「ねえ、【どんな】所に住んでる【の？】」と彼。
nē donna tokoro ni sunderu no to kare
'Say, what sort of place do you live in?' [says] he.

c 「ではいったい、【どう】すればいいんだ?」と思う人が少なくないかもしれない。
dewa ittai dō sureba ii n da to omou hito ga sukunakunai ka mo shirenai
There may be quite a few people who think 'What is it I need to do?'

164.5 QUESTIONS WITH QUESTION WORDS AND THE QUESTION PARTICLE **ka/no ka**

(See 167, 134.)

a いま【いくつ】です【か】。
ima ikutsu desu ka
How old are you [now]?

b 【何】が問題な【のか】。
nani ga mondai na no ka
What's the problem?

c 【どう】痛む【のか】。
dō itamu no ka
In what way does it hurt?

d 【なぜ】、女たちは子供を産まなくなった【のか】。
naze onna-tachi wa kodomo o umanaku natta no ka
Why are women not giving birth any more?

e 【どこ】に大画面テレビを置く【のか】。
doko ni dai-gamen terebi o oku no ka
Where does one put a large-screen TV [in a Japanese home]?

f カネは【だれ】が出す【のか】。
kane wa dare ga dasu no ka
Who's going to put up the money?

g 住宅購入時には、【なぜ】“頭金”が必要な【のですか】。
jūtaku kōnyū-ji ni wa naze atamakin ga hitsuyō na no desu ka
Why is a deposit needed when buying a home?

164.6 QUESTIONS WITH QUESTION WORDS, ENDING IN **ka tte**

(See 217, 228.)

The meaning is 'you ask why

a 【なぜ】入った【かって】?弟が銃で殺されてね。
naze haitta ka tte. otōto ga jū de korosarete ne
Why did I join [Hell's Angels], you ask? My brother was shot dead (*lit.* "killed with a gun"), you see.

164.7 ELLIPTED QUESTIONS

164.7.1 Ellipted questions: with ellipted question word and/or predicate

This can take the form [N/NP/nominalized clause **wa**.], with omitted Q word + cop., or [Q word N/NP **ga**.] with omitted pred. (see 236.4.2.2, 55.3).

The media also uses a form of Q to invite a comment, in the form [S **da ga**.]

164.7.1.1 *Noun/noun phrase wa*

a 今の気持ちは。[= 何ですか、etc.]
ima no kimochi wa
[What are your] feelings now?

b 経済活性化の条件は。[= 何ですか、etc.]
keizai kassei-ka no jōken wa
[What are] the conditions for revitalizing the economy?

164.7.1.2 *Question word noun/noun phrase **ga***

a 天国のベートーベンも【なぜ】日本人が、と首をかしげているに違いない。
tengoku no bētōben mo naze nihonjin ga to kubi o kashigete iru ni chigai nai
Beethoven in heaven is no doubt wondering why the Japanese [do this]. [= Re the popularity of the Ninth Symphony in Japan at the end of the year]

164.7.1.3 *Sentence **da ga***

This is often used in the media, when asking people to make a comment.

a 問　当日は担当部長と会っているはずだが。
toi: tōjitsu wa tantō buchō to atte iru hazu da ga
Q: On the day, you're supposed to have met with the department head in charge [please comment].

164.7.2 Ellipted questions ending in -**te wa**

Here, expressions like **dō/ikaga desu ka** 'how about' are omitted. The resulting meaning is one of suggesting a course of action (see 210.5, 191.4).

a あなたの会社も試してみ【ては】。
anata no kaisha mo tameshite mite wa
How about your company giving [it] a try too?

164.7.3 Ellipted negative questions ending in **no de wa**

Here, expressions like **nai darō ka, nai deshō ka** 'might not?' are omitted (see 114, 163).

a ますます雇用は減る【のでは】。
masumasu koyō wa heru no de wa
Might employment not decrease even further?

b ドイツ国内の生産、雇用が空洞化する【のでは】。
doitsu kokunai no seisan koyō ga kūdō-ka suru no de wa
Might not Germany's internal production and employment be hollowed out? (= deindustrialization process)

164.8 INVERTED QUESTIONS

These are Q with reversed word order (and usually omitted **wa**), which tend to be used when being emotional (angry, excited, etc.).

a きゃー、何なのこれ。
kyā nan na no kore
Eek, what is [it] this?

b 何、これ？
nani kore
What's this?

c 日本になじんだ？外国たばこ。
nihon ni najinda gaikoku tabako
Foreign cigarettes – have they acclimatized to [= been accepted in] Japan?

164.9 QUESTIONS IN CLEFT-SENTENCE FORM

(See 23.)

a ブームが起きるのは【なぜ】な【のか】ね。
būmu ga okiru no wa naze na no ka ne
Why is it that booms arise?

164.10 EQUATIONAL QUESTIONS (**wa** – COPULA) USING **tte** INSTEAD OF **wa**

tte gives the Q a more colloquial/informal ring than **wa** (see 228, 236.7).

a 大分市【って】どんなまち？
ōita-shi tte donna machi
What sort of town is Oita?

164.11 ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

These consist of repeated Q with different content, i.e. Q which present a choice of alternatives 'is it *A*, or *B*?'. They can be joined by conjunctions such as **arui wa** or **sore tomo** 'or', and they generally follow the pattern [S1 **ka**, S2 **ka**.]

a 果たしてこれは一時的なものか、あるいは定着するのか。
hatashite kore wa ichiji-teki na mono ka arui wa teichaku suru no ka
Is this [rented accommodation without 'key money'] a temporary thing or is it going to be permanent?

b うれしさなのか、寂しさなのか。感慨が胸に込み上げた。
ureshi-sa na no ka sabishi-sa na no ka kangai ga mune ni komiageta
Was it happiness, or sadness? I was overcome with emotion.

165 QUESTIONS: FORMAL QUESTIONS WITH NON-QUESTION MEANINGS

These are Q in form, but not in meaning.

165.1 Rhetorical questions
165.1.1 Sentence **mon(o) ka**
165.1.2 Sentence **no ka**
165.1.3 Sentence **ka yo/yō**
165.1.4 Question word verb-**te(i)ru n da**
165.1.5 In inverted question form
165.1.6 In the form **dō ka to omou, ikaga na mono ka (to omou)**
165.2 Questions ending in **ka na/nā**
165.3 Questions ending in **darō ka/deshō ka**
165.4 Questions ending in **ka dō ka/ka ina ka**

165.1 RHETORICAL QUESTIONS

Rhetorical Q can be expressed with the ending **mono/mon ka**, and in some other ways as shown below.

165.1.1 Sentence **mon(o) ka**

The meaning of this type of rhetorical Q is 'definitely not!' A similar effect is conveyed by English 'Me lose? (You must be joking!)' (see 96.1.7).

a 負ける【もんか】。
makeru mon ka
I'm *not* going to lose!

b 負けてなる【ものか】。
makete naru mono ka
I'm *not* going to lose!

c 特例が二度もある【ものか】。
tokurei ga nido mo aru mono ka
A special case can't possibly take place twice [*lit.* "How could a special case take place twice?"]

165.1.2 Sentence **no ka**

a 中古部品をだれが買うのか。
chūko buhin o dare ga kau no ka
Who is going to buy second-hand parts!

165.1.3 Sentence **ka yo/yō**

This is a rather colloquial way of forming a rhetorical Q, used by men only.

a おいおい、美少女っていう年【かよぉ】。
oioi bishōjo tte iu toshi ka yō
Hey, you're hardly the age of [being called] a beautiful maiden!

165.1.4 Question word verb-**te(i)ru n da**

Apart from rhetorical questions (example a), this is used to scold someone for doing things wrong: 'What (the hell) are you doing!' (example b).

a 一体だれがカネを払ってると思ってるんだ——。
ittai dare ga kane o haratteru to omotteru n da
Who the hell do they think is paying! [= we are!]

b 何をやってるんだ。
nai o yatteru n da
What [do you think you] are doing!

165.1.5 In inverted question form

This is used when the speaker is angry: 'What's this supposed to be!' (see 164.8).

a 何だその言い方は。
nan da sono iikata wa
Mind your words! (*lit.* "This way of speaking — what is it?")

165.1.6 In the form **dō ka to omou, ikaga na mono ka (to omou)**

This is a kind of rhetorical Q, but used with **omou** (although this can be omitted) in the literal sense of "I wonder if this is a good idea", i.e. 'I don't think it's right/wise'. It is used to voice criticism diplomatically.

a 行政庁の人事に政党が介入するのは【いかがなものか】。
gyōsei-chō no jinji ni seitō ga kainyū suru no wa ikaga na mono ka
I don't think it's right for a political party to intervene in a staffing matter of the Administrative Management Agency.

b 勝つために四年生を外すのも【どうか】と思うんですよ」。
katsu tame ni yonen-sei o hazusu no mo dō ka to omou n desu yo
I don't think it's right to leave out the fourth graders in order to win.

165.2 QUESTIONS ENDING IN **ka na/nā**

This form is used to indicate the speaker's wondering about something or making a guess when (or as if) talking to self 'I wonder', 'may have'. After **-ta**, it indicates that the speaker is trying to recall something (see 110, 166.1.2.4).

a 人生、こんなもん【かなあ】。
jinsei konna mon ka nā
That's [*lit.* this is] life, I suppose.

b うーん、どの色がいい【かなあ】。
ūn dono iro ga ii ka nā
Hm, I wonder which colour is best . . .

c 四月からこれまでに四、五回飲んだ【かな】。
shigatsu kara kore made ni shigo-kai nonda ka na
Since April I've been drinking maybe four or five times so far.

d 君はダービーに勝ったことがあった【かな】。
kimi wa dābī ni katta koto ga atta ka na
Have you really won the derby before?

e 今、大阪弁を代表しているのは、お笑いと食べ物【かな】。
ima ōsaka-ben o daihyō shite iru no wa o-warai to tabemono ka na
[Advertising executives:] What people think of in connection with the Osaka dialect right now is comedy and food, I suppose.

165.3 QUESTIONS ENDING IN **darō ka/deshō ka**

Like 165.2, this also indicates that the speaker is wondering or guessing 'I wonder', but in this case he or she is addressing the Q to a listener.

a 「これで十分【でしょうか」と逆に問い返した。
kore de jūbun deshō ka to gyaku ni toikaeshita
'Do you think this is sufficient?' He turned the tables, answering the question with a question.

165.4 QUESTIONS ENDING IN **ka dō ka/ka ina ka**

This means '(The question is) if/whether'. **ka ina ka** is a written-style equivalent of **ka dō ka**.

a だが、空洞化の歯止め効果を発揮する【かどうか】。
daga kūdōka no hadome kōka o hakki suru ka dō ka
However, the question is whether it will have a curbing effect on deindustrialization.

b メキシコは先進国【か否か】。
mekishiko wa senshinkoku ka ina ka
Is Mexico an advanced country or not?

166 QUESTIONS: INDIRECT QUESTIONS

An indirect Q S is a S that contains another S, which is a Q. The Q ends in **ka** or **ka dō ka** (after AN/N and **no**, cop.-non-past is deleted before **ka**) and is followed by pred. The Q part functions like a N or NP in that case/focus/phrasal P can be attached to it (see 177, 164).

Two types of indirect Q can be distinguished by the presence or absence of a Q word.

In the examples, indirect Q and their translation equivalents are shown in [].

166.1 Indirect positive questions
166.1.1 With a question word: question word . . . **(no) ka** (+ case/focus particle) predicate
166.1.2 Without a question word
166.1.2.1 **ka to** + predicate
166.1.2.2 **ka dō ka** + predicate
166.1.2.3 **ka ina ka** + predicate
166.1.2.4 **ka na** + predicate
166.1.2.5 **ka . . . ka**: alternative questions
166.2 Indirect negative questions
166.2.1 **(no) de wa nai ka** + predicate
166.2.2 Potential-**nai mono ka** + predicate
166.3 **nanto . . . mono ka** + predicate

166.1 INDIRECT POSITIVE QUESTIONS

166.1.1 With a question word: question word . . . (no) ka (+ case/focus particle) predicate

With a Q word, the sentence takes the form [Q word . . . **(no) ka**] (+ case/focus particle)] + predicate.

a 「[【なぜ】自殺したの【か】]分からない」と話した。
naze jisatsu shita no ka wakaranai to hanashita
'I don't know [why he killed himself]', he said.

b 【どんな】もの【か】一度食べておきたい。
donna mono ka ichi-do tabete oki-tai
I'd like to eat it once [to see what it's like].

c [【どこ】に行った【か】]も思い出せない。ただ練習がきつかったということははっきり覚えている。
doko ni itta ka mo omoidasenai. tada renshū ga kitsukatta to iu koto wa hakkiri oboete iru
I can't recall [where we went], either. I just remember clearly that practising was tough.

d 写った天体の中で、[【どれ】が銀河で【どれ】が恒星【か】]も自動的に識別できる。
utsutta tentai no naka de dore ga ginga de dore ga kōsei ka mo jidō-teki ni shikibetsu dekiru
It can also automatically discriminate [which among the heavenly bodies on screen are galactic and which are fixed stars].

e [これ【何】だ【か】]わかりますか。
kore nan da ka wakarimasu ka
Do you know [what this is]?

f [【何】のこと【か】]お分かりだろうか。
nan no koto ka o-wakari darō ka
Do you [= the reader] understand [what these words refer to], I wonder.

166.1.2 Without a question word

Without a Q word, the S usually takes the form of [. . . **ka (dō ka)**] (+ case/focus/phrasal P) + pred. **ka** alone translates as 'might', whereas **ka dō ka** becomes 'if/whether . . . (or not)'.

166.1.2.1 *ka to + predicate*

This translates as 'might'

a 銃を見て[本物【か】]と思った。
jū o mite honmono ka to omotta
Seeing the gun, I thought [it might be real].

b [「これが幸せというもの【か】」]と思う。
kore ga shiawase to iu mono ka to omou
I feel that [this might be what’s called happiness].

166.1.2.2 *ka dō ka + predicate*

This combination indicates the meaning of ‘if’, ‘whether’.

a [作戦が成功した【かどうか】]はまだ不明だ。
sakusen ga seikō shita ka dō ka wa mada fumei da
It’s still unclear [whether the strategy worked (*lit.* “or not”)].

b [日本で有名【かどうか】]は関係ない。
nihon de yūmei ka dō ka wa kankei nai
[Whether they [fashion labels] are famous in Japan] doesn’t matter.

c [死者の中に外国人がいる【かどうか】]は確認されていない。
shisha no naka ni gaikoku-jin ga iru ka dō ka wa kakunin sarete inai
It hasn’t been confirmed [whether there are any foreigners among the dead].

d [いじめがあった【かどうか】]はもう考えたくない。
ijime ga atta ka dō ka wa mō kangaetakunai
I don’t want to think any more about [whether bullying took place].

e [部長や係長という役職が本当に必要【かどうか】]考えさせられた。
buchō ya kakarichō to iu yakushoku ga hontō ni hitsuyō ka dō ka kangaesaserareta
One was made to reconsider [whether managerial posts such as department chief and section head are really necessary].

f 現在、[この遺伝子が体内時計遺伝子そのもの【かどうか】]を調べている。
genzai kono idenshi ga tainai dokei idenshi sono mono ka dō ka o shirabete iru
Currently, we are investigating [whether these genes are the body clock genes themselves].

g [いじめがあった【かどうか】]については、「今のところ思い当たる事は全くない」。
ijime ga atta ka dō ka ni tsuite wa ima no tokoro omoiataru koto wa mattaku nai
About [whether bullying took place], ‘At this stage, nothing at all comes to mind’.

166.1.2.3 *ka ina ka + predicate*

This is a written-style equivalent of **ka dō ka** + pred.

a [参加する【か否か】]を判断する。
sanka suru ka ina ka o handan suru
They will decide [whether to participate].

b 映画は[ヒットする【か否か】]がカケのようなビジネス。
eiga wa hitto suru ka ina ka ga kake no yō na bijinesu
[Deciding] Whether a film [will be a hit] is a business like betting.

c リストラも、結局は[この天下りに手を着けることができる【か否か】]にかかっている。
risutora mo kekkyoku wa kono amakudari ni te o tsukeru koto ga dekiru ka ina ka ni kakatte iru
Restructuring in the end depends on [whether something can be done about this (system of) 'descending from heaven'] [= employing former government officials].

166.1.2.4 *ka na + predicate*

This indicates wondering or supposing 'I guess', 'might be', etc. (see 165.2).

a こう言われてしまうと、[そういうもの【かな】]、と一瞬、納得してしまう。
kō iwarete shimau to sō iu mono ka na to isshun nattoku shite shimau
When told this [= why not use dirty money for a clean purpose], you are persuaded for a moment, thinking [it might be right].

166.1.2.5 *ka . . . ka: alternative questions*

These are indirect alternative Q (see 164.11).

a 要は[ヤル気があるかないか]だ。
yō wa yaru ki ga aru ka nai ka da
The question is, [do they have the willingness (*lit.* "or not")].

b 従来、選挙に際して[「党」か「人」か]がよく問題になった。
jūrai senkyo ni saishite tō ka hito ka ga yoku mondai ni natta
In the past, a problem in elections has often been [whether (to choose) 'party' or 'person'].

c [【誰（だれ）】が犯人な【のか】【誰】が正しい【のか】]、はっきりしない。
dare ga hannin na no ka dare ga tadashii no ka hakkiri shinai
It is unclear [who the culprit is [and] who is in the right].

166.2 INDIRECT NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

(See also 114.)

166.2.1 **(no) de wa nai ka** + predicate

The combination indicates the meaning of ‘might’ (see also 114.7).

a [中央アジアから輸入された馬【ではないか】]との説もある。
chūō ajia kara yu'nyū sareta uma de wa nai ka to no setsu mo aru
There is also a theory that [it may be a horse that was brought in from Central Asia].

b くさりにつながれたままでは[ストレスがたまるの【ではないか】]と心配だ。
kusari ni tsunagareta mama de wa sutoresu ga tamaru no de wa nai ka to shinpai da
If one leaves it [= the dog] chained up, the worry is [that it might get stressed].

166.2.2 Potential-**nai mono ka** + predicate

This asks ‘whether it mightn’t be possible’.

a その一方で、[この大雪をなんとか村おこしに【利用できないものか】]と、思案してきた。
sono ippō de kono ōyuki o nantoka muraokoshi ni riyō dekinai mono ka to shian shite kita
On the other hand, we wracked our brains as to [whether we mightn’t be able to use this heavy snow to revitalize the village].

166.3 **nanto . . . mono ka** PREDICATE

Although formally a Q, this is way of making an emphatic statement, **nanto** being an emphatic adv. ‘how very . . .’, which is reinforced by the fin. P **mono ka** (see 96.1.7).

a そう思った瞬間、Ｙ子さんは[自分の悩みが【なんと】ちっぽけな【ものか】]と思った。
sō omotta shunkan Y-ko-san wa jibun no nayami ga nanto chippoke na mono ka to omotta
The moment she realized this [= how large the universe is], Y-ko felt [how ridiculously insignificant her problems were].

167 QUESTION WORDS

Some Q words (those beginning with the syllable **do-**) form part of the **ko-/so-/a-/do-** system (see 44). These, along with other Q words (beginning in **i-** or **na-**), are listed in Table 23.

Table 23 Question words + **ka/mo/demo** combinations

Q word	*meaning*	*+ ka*	*Meaning*	*+ mo*	*Meaning* (pos.)	*Meaning* (neg.)	*+ demo*	*Meaning* (pos.)	*Meaning* (neg.)
dare*	'who'	**dare ka** [P]	'somebody'	**dare** [P] **mo*****	'everybody'	'nobody'	**dare** [P] **demo**	'anybody'	'nobody'
dochira/ izure	'which (of two)'	**dochira ka** [P]	'either one'	**dochira** [P] **mo**	'both'	'neither'	**dochira** [P] **demo**	'either'	'neither'
doko	'where'	**doko ka** [P]	'somewhere'	**doko** [P] **mo**	'everywhere'	'nowhere'	**doko** [P] **demo**	'anywhere'	
dore	'which'	**dore ka** [P]	'one'	**dore** [P] **mo**	'everyone'	'none'	**dore** [P] **demo**	'anyone'	
ikura	'how much'	**ikura ka**	'somewhat'	**ikura mo**	'plenty'	'not much'	**ikura demo**	'any amount'	
ikutsu	'how many'	**ikutsu ka**	'some'	**ikutsu mo**	'many'	'not many'	**ikutsu demo**	'any number'	
itsu	'when'	**itsu ka**	'sometime'	**itsu mo**	'always'	'never'	**itsu demo**	'any time'	
nani	'what'	**nani ka** [P]	'something'	—		'nothing'	**nan demo**	'anything'	
nando**	'how many times'	**nando ka**	'a few times'	**nando mo**	'many times'	'not . . . many times'	**nando demo**	'any number of times'	'not any number of times'
dō	'how'	**dō** [P] **ka**	'somehow'	**dō** [P] **mo**	'somehow'	'somehow'	**dō** [P] **demo**	'any way'	
dōshite	'why'								
naze	'why'	**naze ka**	'for some reason'	—			—		

When particles are present:

dare ni mo	not . . . anybody	**dare ka ni**	somebody				
dare kara mo	not . . . anybody	**dare ka no**	someone's	**dare ka kara**	from someone		
doko ni mo	nowhere	**doko ka e**	somewhere	**doko ka de**	somewhere	**doko ka kara**	from somewhere
itsu made mo	always	**dō (ni) ka**	somehow				
nan no . . . mo	no . . . at all	**nani ka no**	some				

Notes * For polite equivalent, replace **dare** with **donata**

** Also **nankai** 'how many times', and any other **nan(i)** + C combination can be used in the same way (see note to Table 8)

*** except **dare mo ga**

On the left, Q words are given, followed by combinations (where applicable) with the P **ka** (= indefinite pron.), **mo** (with pos. V 'every'/'many', etc.), **mo** (with neg. V, 'no' etc.), and **demo** ('any'). Note how **nani** usually changes to **nan** before the sounds b, d, g, k (usually with the exception of the Q P **ka**), n, m, p (see also 36 (counters), where similar sound changes take place).

167.1 Question word + **ka**
167.1.1 Question word + **ka**
167.1.2 **dochira ka to ieba/iu to**
167.2 Question word + **mo**
167.2.1 With positive predicate
167.2.1.1 Question word (particle) **mo** (particle)
167.2.1.2 Question word verb/adjective-**te mo**/[noun] **mo**
167.2.2 With negative predicates
167.2.2.1 Question word/number + counter (particle) **mo** (particle)
167.2.2.2 Question word verb/adverb-**(y)ō to**
167.3 Question word (+ counter) + **demo**
167.3.1 With positive predicate
167.3.2 With negative predicate
167.3.2.1 Question word **demo** negative
167.3.2.2 Question word verb/adjective-**te demo**/noun **mo**
167.3.2.3 Question word **demo** positive predicate (in negative sentence)
167.4 Idiomatic uses
167.4.1 Noun **demo nan de mo nai**
167.4.2 **nani ga nan demo**
167.4.3 **nan demo** . . . **sō**

167.1 QUESTION WORD + ka

167.1.1 Question word + ka

Adding **ka** to Q words (including Q word + C) gives the combination an indeterminate meaning 'some~' (with **dochira** and **dore**, 'one of'). Note that **dochira** can also be a pol. equivalent of **doko** (see example 65.1.3c).

a 私生活も【どこか】で仕事に結び付く。
shi-seikatsu mo doko ka de shigoto ni musubitsuku
One's private life is also connected to work somewhere.

b 【どっか】行こうよ。(**dokka** = contraction of **doko ka**)
dokka ikō yo
Let's go somewhere.

c 【何か】、刺激がほしい。
nani ka shigeki ga hoshii
I want some stimulation

d 【いくらか】改善はされた。
ikura ka kaizen wa sareta
[Things] have been improved somewhat.

e …食後、庭園でモリアオガエルの白い泡状の卵を見つけた。【どこ】か【か】鳴き声も聞こえたが、姿は見えない。
shokugo teien de moriao-gaeru no shiroi awajō no tamago o mitsuketa. doko kara ka nakigoe mo kikoeta ga sugata wa mienai
After the meal, I found the white foamy eggs of the green frog. From somewhere I could hear its croaking, but couldn’t see it.

f 【何度か】この欄でも述べてきたが、大人の男性のシンプルな服が少ない。
nando ka kono ran de mo nobete kita ga otona no dansei no shinpuru na fuku ga sukunai
I have said this a number of times in this column, too, but there aren’t many simple clothes for grown men.

g 左右【どちらか】に偏った凝りは要注意だ。
sayū dochira ka ni katayotta kori wa yō-chūi da
Stiffness in the shoulders that is limited to one side needs to be watched carefully.

h 行員同士が結婚しても、【どちらか】が退職する慣行はない。
kōin dōshi ga kekkon shite mo dochira ka ga taishoku suru kankō wa nai
When bank employees get married, there is no custom that [requires that] one of them quit.

i 結婚すると二人の【どちらか】が生活保護の対象から外される。
kekkon suru to futari no dochira ka ga seikatsu hogo no taishō kara hazusareru
If they get married, one of them becomes ineligible for support.

167.1.2 dochira ka to ieba/iu to

This indicates a tendency ‘more or less’, ‘rather’, ‘if anything’.

a 話し方は【どちらかといえば】とつ弁である。
hanashi-kata wa dochira ka to ieba totsuben de aru
His way of speaking is on the slow side.

b また、「男は仕事、女は家庭」という考え方に「賛成」または「【どちらかといえば】賛成」と答えたのは、夫が53％、妻が23％。
mata otoko wa shigoto onna wa katei to iu kangae-kata ni sansei mata wa dochira ka to ieba sansei to kotaeta no wa otto ga gojūsan-pāsento tsuma ga nijūsan-pāsento
Also, 53 per cent of husbands and 23 per cent of wives replied ‘agree’ or ‘more or less agree’ to the proposition ‘Men should work, and women stay at home’

c 「【どちらかといえば】……」という条件節を付ければ、世の中は大抵ネアカとネクラに分けられる。
dochira ka to ieba to iu jōkensetsu o tsukereba yo no naka wa taitei neaka to nekura ni wakerareru
If you attach the conditional clause 'if anything', the world can more or less be divided into cheerful and gloomy people.

167.2 QUESTION WORD + **mo**

167.2.1 With positive predicate

This is used with two types of S: those where **mo** is attached to the Q word (or an intervening P), and S where **mo** is attached to the conjunctive form of V/adj. and N directly.

167.2.1.1 *Question word (particle)* ***mo*** *(particle)*

The combination means 'every~', 'any~'.

a 【だれも】が一度は抱きそうな夢だ。
dare mo ga ichido wa idakisō na yume da
This is a dream that everyone is likely to entertain once.

b 大手スーパーは、【どこも】似たような状況だ。
ōte sūpā wa doko mo nita yō na jōkyō da
The large supermarkets are all (*lit.* "everywhere") in the same situation.

c 【どこ】まで【も】、仕事に徹した人生である。
doko made mo shigoto ni tesshita jinsei de aru
It's a life that's devoted to work all the way.

d 男の集まりは【いくらも】あるが、女性はいつも疎外されがちだ。
otoko no atsumari wa ikura mo aru ga josei wa itsumo sogai sare-gachi da
There are plenty of men's get-togethers, but the women always tend to be excluded.

e 【いつも】と変わらない夕方だった。
itsumo to kawaranai yūgata datta
It was an evening no different from usual.

f 電気を止められたことも【何度も】ある。
denki o tomerareta koto mo nan-do mo aru
I've had the electricity cut off many times.

g 代わりのメーカーは【いくらも】ある
kawari no mēkā wa ikura mo aru
There's no shortage of alternative manufacturers

167.2.1.2 *Question word verb/adjective-**te mo**/[noun] **mo***

This indicates the meaning of ‘no matter who/what/where’ etc. (see 206.5).

a 世界の【どこ】にいて【も】仕事は出来ます。
sekai no doko ni ite mo shigoto wa dekimasu
You can work, wherever in the world you are.

b【どんな】いじめ【も】なくそう。
donna ijime mo nakusō
Let’s get rid of any form of bullying.

c 経済は【だれ】がやって【も】同じでしょ。
keizai wa dare ga yatte mo onaji desho
As regards the economy, it should be the same no matter who does [the job of PM].

d【どんなに】値段が高くて【も】かまわないから純国産米を分けて欲しい。
donna ni nedan ga takakute mo kamawanai kara jun-kokusan-mai o wakete hoshii
We want you to supply proper homegrown rice, no matter how expensive it may be.

167.2.2 With negative predicates

167.2.2.1 *Question word/number + counter (particle) **mo** (particle)*

This has the meaning of ‘no-one’, ‘nowhere’, etc.

a「私は芝居のうまい役者じゃありません」。「だれ【も】そう思いませんよ」。
watashi wa shibai no umai yakusha ja arimasen. dare mo sō omoimasen yo
‘I’m not an actor who’s good on stage.’ ‘Nobody thinks so.’

b 将来は【だれ】に【も】わからない。
shōrai wa dare ni mo wakaranai
The future is known to no-one.

c 死亡した五人は【いずれも】外傷などはなかった。
shibō shita go-nin wa izure mo gaishō nado wa nakatta
None of the five persons who died had any external injuries.

d 連休中は天気が悪くて【どこ】に【も】行けなかった。
renkyū-chū wa tenki ga warukute doko ni mo ikenakatta
The weather being [so] bad, we couldn’t go anywhere during the holiday weekend

e 品質では【どこ】に【も】負けない。
hinshitsu de wa doko ni mo makenai
On quality, we won't be beaten by anyone [= any company].

f 残された時間は【いくらも】ない。
nokosareta jikan wa ikura mo nai.
There isn't much time left.

g 今は【一人も】残っていない」。
ima wa hitori mo nokotte inai
There isn't even a single person left now.

167.2.2.2 *Question word verb/adverb-(y)ō **to***

The meaning of this is 'no matter how' (see 163.3.2).

a いえ、【どんなに】【速かろうと】、ちゃんと歌詞が聞こえなきゃいけません。
ie donna ni hayakarō to chanto kashi ga kikoenakya ikemasen
No, you must be able to hear the words of the song, no matter how fast the tempo is.

167.3 QUESTION WORD (+ COUNTER) + **demo**

167.3.1 With positive predicate

Attached to a Q word (+ C) (+ intervening case P), and followed by a pos. pred., **demo** means 'every~', 'any~' (or, in the case of **dochira demo**, 'either').

a 仕事は【いくらでも】あった。
shigoto wa ikura demo atta
There was any number of jobs.

b 不平等を探せば【どこ】に【でも】ある。
fu-byōdō o sagaseba doko ni demo aru
If one looks for inequalities, they are everywhere.

c 往復とも JR、航空機の【どちらでも】選択できる。
ōfuku tomo JR kōkū-ki no dochira demo sentaku dekiru
For both the outward and inward journeys, you can select either Japan Rail or aeroplane.

d 「【どこ】へ【でも】行くし、【何でも】撮る」と謙虚に答える。
doko e demo iku shi nan demo toru to kenkyo ni kotaeru
'I'll go anywhere, and photograph anything,' he answers modestly.

e 買ってくれるところがあれば、【いつでも】供給する。
katte kureru tokoro ga areba, itsu demo kyōkyū suru
If there's a place that'll buy, we'll supply any time.

f 日本を訪問した外国人が驚くのは街角の自動販売機の多さである。【いつでも】、【どこでも】、【だれでも】、酒やたばこなどを買うことができる。
nihon o hōmon shita gaikoku-jin ga odoroku no wa machikado no jidō hanbai-ki no ōsa de aru. itsu demo doko demo dare demo sake ya tabako nado o kau koto ga dekiru
What amazes foreigners who have visited Japan is the large number of vending machines on street corners. Anyone can buy alcohol and tobacco any time, any place.

g 【何度でも】訪れたくなる美術館に育てたい。
nan-do demo otozure-taku naru bijutsu-kan ni sodatetai
I want to make it an art gallery that people will want to visit any number of times.

167.3.2 With negative predicate

167.3.2.1 *Question word **demo** negative*

Attached to a Q word, and followed directly by a neg. pred., **demo** means 'not any' (or 'neither', in the case of **dochira demo**) (see 42.4, Table 9).

a 一見、【何でも】なさそうな封筒
ikken nan demo nasasō na futō
An envelope that at first sight seems nothing special

b 政治力は未知数だけに、【どちらでも】構わない。
seiji-ryoku wa michisū dake ni dochira demo kamawanai
As their political prowess is unknown, I don't mind either one [of the two candidates].

167.3.2.2 *Question word verb/adjective-**te demo**/noun **mo***

The resulting meaning is 'no matter', 'any'.

a 全国【どこ】の大学【でも】構わない。
zenkoku doko no daigaku demo kamawanai
I don't mind any university anywhere in the country (*lit.* "in the whole country").

167.3.2.3 *Question word **demo** positive predicate (in negative sentence)*

Here, Q-word **demo** + pos. pred. modifies a N that is followed by a neg. pred.

a 確かに、周りには【何でも相談できる】人ってあまりいない。
tashika ni mawari ni wa nan demo sōdan dekiru hito tte amari inai
It's true, there aren't many people around me with whom I can talk over anything.

b 欧州各国の進める政策を英国が【何でも受け入れる】わけではない。
ōshū kakkoku no susumeru seisaku o eikoku ga nan demo ukeireru wake de wa nai
It's not the case that the UK adopts all the policies that EU countries promote.

167.4 IDIOMATIC USES

167.4.1 Noun **demo nan de mo nai**

This is a way of emphasizing negation of N 'by no means', 'definitely not!'.

a 一番困るのは民族主義でも何でもない。
ichiban komaru no wa minzokushugi demo nan demo nai
The biggest problem [in Russia] is by no means nationalism.

167.4.2 nani ga nan demo

nani ga nan demo works like an adverbial phrase in the sense of 'by any means', 'no matter what'.

a 【何が何でも】就職しなければという危機感は薄い。
nani ga nan demo shūshoku shinakereba to iu kikikan wa usui
There isn't much feeling of desperation of having to get a job no matter what.

167.4.3 nan demo . . . sō

nan demo serves to reinforce the meaning of the S ending **sō**, which indicates hearsay, in the sense of 'apparently' (see 181, 5.4.1).

a 【何でも】お小姓が鍵を開けて、将軍吉宗様自ら書状の封を切る【そうだ】な。
nan demo o-koshō ga kagi o akete shōgun yoshimune-sama mizukara shojō no fū o kiru sō da na
I understand that his assistant opens the lock [of the box], and the Shogun Yoshimune himself breaks the seal of the letter.

168 -ra [PLURAL SUFFIX]

Attached to N and demonstrative pron. **-ra** indicates plural; attached to N only **-ra** can also indicate the leading member of a group.

168.1 Plural
168.2 Noun-**ra**

168.1 PLURAL

(See 49, 58, 188.)

a 泰の息子【ら】はまだ大学生だ。
yasushi no musuko-ra wa mada daigakusei da
Yasushi's sons are still university students.

b 関連企業の社長【ら】はまだ若い。
kankei kigyō no shachō-ra wa mada wakai
The presidents of [the] affiliated businesses are still young [so they can't be promoted to main firm president].

c 彼【ら】、彼女【たち】の声を拾った。
kare-ra kanojo-tachi no koe o hirotta
We've gathered their [= male and female] opinions (*lit.* "voices").

d …地元の竜馬ファン【ら】約四十人が参加。
jimoto no ryōma fan-ra yaku yonjū-nin ga sanka
. . . about 40 local Ryōma fans took part.

e 学生時代にリュック一つ担いで旅行したフィリピンやメキシコで出会ったのは、貧しくとも家族みんなで助け合って生きる人々の底抜けに明るい笑顔。…彼【ら】の生活には、日本人が失った何かがある。
gakusei jidai ni ryukku hitotsu katsuide ryokō shita firipin ya mekishiko de deatta no wa mazushiku tomo kazoku minna de tasukeatte ikiru hitobito no sokonuke ni akarui egao. karera no seikatsu ni wa nihon-jin ga ushinatta nani ka ga aru
What I saw in the Philippines and in Mexico, where I travelled in my student days with just a rucksack on my shoulders, were the radiantly smiling faces of the people, who were poor but lived in families where everybody helped each other. . . . Their lives have something that the Japanese have lost.

168.2 NOUN-ra

Like **-tachi**, **-ra** can also indicate the idea of 'N and those associated with N' (see 188.2).

a 男はそのまま逃走したが、経営者の「泥棒」という声を聞いた…中学校二年、川端直樹君（14）【ら】中学生五人が自転車や駆け足で男を追跡、西へ約二百メートル離れた路上で取り押さえた。…経営者や川端君【ら】にけがはなかった。
otoko wa sono mama tōsō shita ga keiei-sha no dorobō to iu koe o kiita . . . chūgakkō ni-nen kawabata naoki-kun (14)-ra chūgakusei go-nin ga jitensha ya kakeashi de otoko o tsuiseki nishi e yaku nihyaku-mētoru hanareta rojō de toriosaeta . . . keiei-sha ya kawabata-kun-ra ni kega wa nakatta
The man took flight, but five middle-school pupils, [including] the second-year Kawabata Naoki (14), who heard the proprietor's shout of 'Thief!' pursued him by bicycle and on foot, and overpowered him on the road about 200 metres to the west. . . . The proprietor and Kawabata and his group were not hurt.

169 rashii [SENTENCE ENDING]

rashii expresses two basic meanings: appearance, on the basis of hearsay, or visual information (see 93, 181, 227, 218, 246), and typicality, i.e., that something/somebody is or isn't typical of its kind.

rashii attaches to the end of a sentence. The forms it is attached to are pln. forms (after non-past AN and N, it is attached without cop., except for **N de aru rashii**). **rashii** itself changes its endings like an adj. The past ending **-ta** usually precedes **rashii**, but occasionally also follows it. **rashikatta** is mostly used when the 'appearance' itself is considered to be in the past and no longer relevant to the present. In practice, **rashikatta** is mostly found in narrative fiction, **-ta rashii** being normal elsewhere. Compare examples 169.1.1 h and i for the use of **-ta rashii** and **rashikatta**.

Note – there are many lexical adj. that end in **-rashii** (see 169.3 below) but have no hearsay or typicality meaning.

169.1 Clause/noun **rashii**
169.1.1 Clause **rashii**
169.1.2 Noun/clause **rashii** noun
169.1.3 Noun **rashii**
169.2 Joining two nouns
169.2.1 Noun 1 **rashii/rashikunai** noun 2 (noun 1 = noun 2)
169.2.2 Noun 1 **rashii/rashikunai** noun 2
169.3 Lexical adjectives in **-rashii**
169.3.1 Adjectives without the meaning of **rashii**
169.3.2 Adjectives which can have the meaning of **rashii**

169.1 CLAUSE/NOUN **rashii**

169.1.1 Clause **rashii**

rashii indicates appearance in two ways.

Firstly, ‘seems to’, ‘apparently’. **mitai** and **yō** could also be used in the same way (see 93, 246).

With **rashii**, the appearance is based on hearsay. This is similar to **sō** and **-tte**, but **rashii** is vaguer. Whereas **sō** and **-tte** express explicitly that what precedes is something you have heard, said or seen written, **rashii** simply suggests that what precedes is *based* on hearsay. It is possible to indicate the source of information (see 131, 47, 181).

Secondly, based on observation, **mitai** and **yō** could also be used in a similar way. However, there is a difference. **mitai** and **yō** imply that ‘S seems to be the case but definitely isn’t’ or ‘S seems to be the case but I don’t actually know whether it is or not’. **rashii** implies that ‘S seems to be the case and definitely is’ or ‘to the best of my knowledge it is’. This explains the use of N1 **rashii** N2 in 169.2 (compare examples a and b below).

a % 日本人らしい男
nihonjin rashii otoko
A man who appears Japanese/A typical Japanese man

b % 日本人みたいな男
nihonjin mitai na otoko
A man who is like a Japanese

c 同容疑者はかなり酒を飲んでいた【らしい】。
dō yōgisha wa kanari sake o nonde ita rashii
It seems that the suspect had been drinking quite a lot.

d 言葉は分からないが、金をせびっている【らしい】。
kotoba wa wakaranai ga, kane o sebitte iru rashii
I can’t understand the words, but he seems to be pestering for money.

e 女性が価格に敏感なのは、洋の東西を問わない【らしい】。
josei ga kakaku ni binkan na no wa, yō no tōzai o towanai rashii
Women’s sensitivity to prices seems to be the same, East or West.

f 日本では、どうも若い女性がお金持ちで旅行好き【らしい】。
nihon de wa dōmo wakai josei ga o-kanemochi de ryokō-zuki rashii
In Japan, it appears that young women are well off and like travelling.

g サルの世界も頼りは“女性”【らしい】。
saru no sekai mo tayori wa “josei” rashii
It seems that in the monkey world, too, ‘females’ are the ones to be relied on.

h 彼の家族は最初、この結婚に反対だった【らしい】。
kare no kazoku wa saisho, kono kekkon ni hantai datta rashii
His family was apparently opposed to this marriage at first.

i なぜなのか調べたところ、節約ムードが広がり、それまで捨てていた食べ残しを包装材に包んで冷蔵庫に保存し、翌日に食べる家庭が多くなったのが原因【らし】かった。
naze na no ka shirabeta tokoro, setsuyaku mūdo ga hirogari, sore made sutete ita tabenokoshi o hōsō-zai ni tsutsunde reizōko ni hozon shi, yokujitsu ni taberu kazoku ga ōku natta no ga gen'in rashikatta
When they checked on why this happened, the cause was apparently that in the prevailing mood of frugality more (*lit.* there was in increase in the number of) families [who] wrapped up the leftover food, which they used to throw away, [in wrapping material,] kept it in the fridge and ate it the following day.

169.1.2 Noun/clause **rashii** noun

When modifying N, the meaning of **rashii** is the same as in 169.1.1 'N who/which apparently', 'seems to'. N2 is given in 【 】 where not immediately following **rashii**.

a カザフスタンではペスト【らしい】患者が出ている。
kazafusutan de wa pesuto rashii kanja ga dete iru
In Kazakhstan patients have emerged who apparently have bubonic plague.

b そばに遺書【らしい】メモが残されていた。
soba ni isho rashii memo ga nokosarete ita
Next to [the body] a memo had been left which appears to be a suicide note.

c 遠くの方で看護婦さん【らしい】、懸命に励ます【声】が聞こえる。
tōku no hō de kangofu-san rashii, kenmei ni hagemasu koe ga kikoeru
In the distance, a voice urging on strongly (*lit.* hard) was heard, which apparently belonged to a nurse.

d 大学から流出した【らしい】お産の【フィルム】まで映していました。
daigaku kara ryūshutsu shita rashii osan no firumu made utsushite imashita
They were even showing a film of a birth, which apparently had come out of a university.

169.1.3 Noun **rashii**

This is used when a thing, place or person is typical of its kind or reputation: 'in keeping with', 'just like'

a フグの本場【らし】くフグが泳ぐ水槽も設ける。
fugu no honba rashiku fugu ga oyogu suisō mo mōkeru
In keeping with a place famous for its *fugu* (blowfish), there are going to be tanks where *fugu* swim about.

b フランス趣味のこの人【らし】く、酒はワインを好む。
furansu shumi no kono hito rashiku, sake wa wain o konomu
In keeping with this man's taste for things French, his favourite drink is wine.

c 梨の渋みも消え、昨年よりワイン【らし】くなった。
nashi no shibu-mi mo kie, sakunen yori wain rashiku natta
The astringent taste of [Japanese] pear has disappeared, and compared to last year it has become more like wine.

169.2 JOINING TWO NOUNS

169.2.1 Noun 1 **rashii/rashikunai** noun 2 (noun 1 = noun 2)

When joining identical N, the meaning is 'a N typical of its kind', 'a real/proper N', 'a N worthy of that name'.

a 夏【らしい】夏がなかった。
natsu rashii natsu ga nakatta
There was no real summer.

b テレビなど刺激的文化の影響で、本【らしい】本の衰弱が目立つ。
terebi nado shigeki-teki bunka no eikyō de hon rashii hon no suijaku ga medatsu
Under the influence of the stimulus culture such as TV, the decline of proper books is conspicuous.

c この半年、注意【らしい】注意を受けたことがない。
kono hantoshi chūi rashii chūi o uketa koto ga nai
For these six months, I haven't received anything approaching a caution.

169.2.2 Noun 1 **rashii/rashikunai** noun 2

Here, the implication is that the first N is not something that is worthy of its name, or that it is different from what you might expect of a typical example of its kind 'a typical/atypical N1', 'like/unlike N1' (N2 in 【 】 where not immediately following **rashii**).

a ゴルフをはじめ、運動【らしい】ことは一切やらない。
gorufu o hajime, undō rashii koto wa issai yaranai
Golf or otherwise, he does not take any real exercise

b 墨田は、古い家屋が残る下町【らしい】街である。
sumida wa furui kaoku ga nokoru shitamachi rashii machi de aru
Sumida is a typical *shitamachi* [= old part of Tokyo] area, where old houses are still found.

c 官僚出身【らし】くない柔軟な【発想】の持ち主と定評がある。
kanryō shusshin rashikunai jūnan na hassō no mochinushi to teihyō ga aru
Quite unlike a former administrator, he is renowned as a flexible thinker (*lit.* "the owner of flexible thinking").

169.3 LEXICAL ADJECTIVES IN -rashii

These adjectives, which do not now have any meaning of **rashii** left (but see 169.3.2) are given below.

169.3.1 Adjectives without the meaning of rashii

airashii 'charming', **bakarashii** 'ridiculous', **hokorashii** 'proud', **ijirashii** 'sweet', 'touching', **iyarashii** 'disgusting', **kawairashii** 'cute', **kegawarashii** 'repulsive', **mezurashii** 'unusual', **misuborashii** 'shabby', **mottomorashii** 'plausible', **nikurashii** 'odious', **otokorashii** 'masculine', **onnarashii** 'feminine', **shiorashii** 'gentle', **wazatorashii** 'affected'.

169.3.2 Adjectives which can have the meaning of rashii

Depending on the context, **bakarashii**, **otokorashii**, **onnarashii** and **iyarashii** *could* also be N/AN + **rashii** (in speech these would however be pronounced with a different pitch accent).

170 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Like other Japanese personal pron., reflexive pron. are like N in that they attach case P. Like N, they can also affix hon. pref. (for an example, see 66.1.2 c).

jibun can also be modified by demonstrative pron. such as **sonna** (example a).

a 同性愛への強い欲求をもちながら、【そんな自分】を責め、聖者のような禁欲生活を送るが、一方で推理小説と西部劇が大好き、といった人なのである。
dōseiai e no tsuyoi yokkyū o mochi-nagara sonna jibun o seme seija no yō na kin'yoku seikatsu o okuru ga ippō de suiri shōsetsu to seibugeki ga daisuki to itta hito na no de aru
He is the sort of person who, while having strong leanings towards homosexuality, blames himself for being like that and leads a saint-like life of celibacy, but on the other hand loves detective stories and westerns.

Reflexive pron. refer back to a person/persons that were mentioned earlier, either in the same sentence, or previously. The major reflexive pron. are **jibun** and **jishin**, both of which literally mean "self" and, depending on which person they refer back to, translate into English as 'myself', 'yourself', 'himself', 'herself'.

jibun also has a plural form **jibun-tachi** as 'ourselves', 'yourselves' and 'themselves'. As with personal pron., when using **jibun**, plural must be indicated by the plural suf. (see 188, 158), although in some generalizing cases this is not applied (see 170.1).

170.1	**jibun**
170.1.1	Reflexive use
170.1.2	Used like a personal pronoun
170.1.2.1	Like an indefinite personal pronoun
170.1.2.2	Like a first-person pronoun
170.2	**jishin**
170.2.1	Reflexive pronoun
170.2.2	Attached to personal pronoun
170.2.3	Attached to **jibun**
170.2.4	Attached to noun

170.1 jibun

170.1.1 Reflexive use

Here, **jibun** refers back to a N (in []) previously mentioned in the same sentence. Note that in some instances (examples c–d) no plural suffix is used even though the N is plural (or generic).

a [人々]は【自分たち】の生活を見つめ始めた。
hitobito wa jibun-tachi no seikatsu o mitsume-hajimeta
The people have begun to look hard at their daily lives.

b [英国人]にとって家は【自分】の城。
eikoku-jin ni totte ie wa jibun no shiro
For the Englishman, his home is his castle.

c [親]が子供にやさしすぎるのは、【自分】に自信がないからである。
oya ga kodomo ni yasashi-sugiru no wa jibun ni jishin ga nai kara de aru
The reason why parents are overly kind to their children is because they have no confidence in themselves

d ［みなさん］よくカラオケバーとかゴルフに行くけれども、そのほとんどは【自分】の会社関係の人と行くでしょう。
minasan yoku karaoke-bā to ka gorufu ni iku keredomo sono hotondo wa jibun no kaisha kankei no hito to iku deshō
People often do things like going to karaoke bars or playing golf, but almost always they go with people associated with their company, right?

170.1.2 Used like a personal pronoun

170.1.2.1 *Like an indefinite personal pronoun*

In this use, **jibun** is used in the sense of 'one', 'their', etc.

a まず【自分】の必要カロリーを知ること。
mazu jibun no hitsuyō karorī o shiru koto
First, one needs to find out one's calorie requirements.

b 面白い本に、子供が【自分】から出合うことが大切。
omoshiroi hon ni kodomo ga jibun kara deau koto ga taisetsu
It's important that the children find interesting books on their own initiative.

170.1.2.2 *Like a first-person pronoun*

This can be either singular or plural.

a 会社は【自分】をどう評価するのか。
kaisha wa jibun o dō hyōka suru no ka
How will the company evaluate me?

b【自分】が同性愛者とわかっても構わない。
jibun ga dōseiai-sha to wakatte mo kamawanai
I don't mind if people realize that I'm gay.

c 日本初の契約制スチュワーデス。「【自分たち】はパイオニア。」
nihon-hatsu no keiyaku-sei suchuwādesu. jibun-tachi wa paionia.
Japan's first stewardesses on contract. 'We are pioneers.'

d なぜ、清輝君の心の叫びがわかってあげられなかったのか。【自分】が情けない。【自分】がくやしい。
naze kiyoteru-kun no kokoro no sakebi ga wakatte agerarenakatta no ka. jibun ga nasakenai. jibun ga kuyashii
[suicide caused by bullying:] Why was I unable to recognize Kiyoteru's silent cries? I'm ashamed of myself. I'm disappointed with myself.

170.2 jishin

170.2.1 Reflexive pronoun

jishin can be used as a reflexive pron. ‘him/herself’, ‘themselves’, etc. in the same way as **jibun**, but this is limited to the written language.

a 女優の宮沢りえさんがテレビのコマーシャルで、【自身】の波乱に富んだ人生をもじって使った言葉。
joyū no miyazawa rie-san ga terebi no komāsharu de jishin no haran ni tonda jinsei o mojitte tsukatta kotoba
It’s an expression that the actress Miyazawa Rie used in a TV advert as a joke about her own eventful life.

b 【自身】を評して「何でもしてみたがる好奇心の固まりのような性格」とか。
jishin o hyōshite nan demo shite mitagaru kōkishin no katamari no yō na seikaku to ka
Assessing himself, he says things like, ‘My nature is curiosity personified, wanting to try everything’.

170.2.2 Attached to personal pronoun

The combination of personal pron. + **jishin**, depending on the pronoun, means ‘I myself’, ‘he himself’, ‘they themselves’, etc. Note that after a plural suf. such as **-ra, jishin** is attached after the suf. (example c).

a 私【自身】は監督になろうとは思わない。
watashi jishin wa kantoku ni narō to wa omowanai
I myself have no intentions of becoming a coach.

b 【彼自身】、天才と狂気のはざまに生きたような人なのである。
kare jishin tensai to kyōki no hazama ni ikita yō na hito na no de aru
He himself [Wittgenstein] is a person who was born on the borderline between genius and madness.

c 若手・中堅が真の大指揮者に育つか否かは、【彼ら自身】の能力の問題ばかりではない。
wakate chūken ga shin no dai-shikisha ni sodatsu ka ina ka wa kare-ra jishin no nōryoku no mondai bakari de wa nai
Whether young and established conductors will develop into really great ones isn’t just a matter of their own ability.

170.2.3 Attached to **jibun**

jishin is attached to **jibun** used like a personal pronoun, with the combination meaning ‘I myself’, ‘he himself’, etc

a 【自分自身】はパソコンが苦手だが、「子供にいろいろな刺激を与えてやろうと思って」と購入することにしたという。
jibun jishin wa pasokon ga nigate da ga kodomo ni iroiro na shigeki o ataete yarō to omotte to kōnyū suru koto ni shita to iu
He himself is no good with personal computers, but says he decided to buy one thinking he would like to provide his children with a variety of stimuli.

b 二十八日の報道各社とのインタビューでは半年間を振り返って、首相は「【自分自身】でも良くやってきたという気持ちがある」と自画自賛。
nijūhachi-nichi no hōdō kakusha to no intabyū de wa hantoshikan o furikaette shushō wa jibun jishin de mo yoku yatte kita to iu kimochi ga aru to jiga jisan
Looking back on the [first] six months in the interview with the assembled media companies, the PM sang his own praises, saying, 'I myself feel that I've done pretty well'.

170.2.4 Attached to noun

N can be personal N (examples a and b), or N referring to an entity or group made up of persons, such as universities (example c) or a country (example d).

a 子供を産む、産まないを含め、女性の体に関する判断は【女性自身】が行うこと。
kodomo o umu umanai o fukume josei no karada ni kansuru handan wa josei jishin ga okonau koto
Decisions regarding their own bodies, including whether to have a baby or not, should be made by women themselves.

b 【容疑者自身】も事件で負傷しており、収容先の病院で逮捕された。
yōgisha jishin mo jiken de fushō shite ori shūyōsaki no byō in de taiho sareta
The suspect himself was injured, too, and arrested in the hospital where he was interned.

c 真の改革に向けて何よりも必要なのは、大学評価を積極的に受け、自らを改革していこうという【大学自身】の姿勢といえそうだ。
shin no kaikaku ni mukete nani yori mo hitsuyō na no wa daigaku hyōka o sekkyoku-teki ni uke mizukara o kaikaku shite ikō to iu daigaku jishin no shisei to iesō da
For real reform the most necessary thing is that the universities themselves take the attitude of having [outside] assessment and reforming themselves.

d まず【日本自身】が「居心地の良さ」と決別しなくてはならない。
mazu nihon jishin ga igokochi no yosa to ketsubetsu shinakute wa naranai
First of all, Japan herself must say goodbye to 'feeling comfortable'.

171 RELATIONAL NOUNS

Relational N are N that indicate a position that is relative in time or space. They are often preceded by other N + **no**, or N-mod. forms of V/adj./AN, and in turn can modify other N with **no** attached, or pred. by means of other case or Focus P, etc.

Relational N often translate as a preposition in English and include the following: **aida** 'between', **ato** 'after', **hidari** 'left', **mae** 'in front', **migi** 'right', **naka** 'inside', **shita** 'below', **tonari** 'next to', **ue** 'above', 'on top', **ushiro** 'behind', etc. (see **aida**, **ato**, **mae**).

Note – **mae** and **ato** are also used as time N 'before' and 'after' (for examples, see 11, 88).

a 山の【上】の静かな寺だ。
yama no ue no shizuka na tera da
It is a quiet temple on the top of the mountain.

b ちょっと【上】の会議室まで来てくれませんか。
chotto ue no kaigi-shitsu made kite kuremasen ka
Could you come to the conference room upstairs for a moment?

c テーブルの【上】にコーヒーカップを置く。
tēburu no ue ni kōhī kappu o oku
They put coffee cups on the table.

d あらしの【後】の静かな朝。
arashi no ato no shizuka na asa
A quiet morning after the storm.

e もう少し【後】にしていただきたい。
mō sukoshi ato ni shite itadaki-tai
I'd like to request you to put it off a little longer.

f 頭の【中】がぴかぴかと光った。
atama no naka ga pikapika to hikatta
There was a flash of light inside my head.

172 REPETITION

Repetition is used quite extensively in Japanese. It is used either for emphasis, or in a number of grammatical structures that also indicate some form of emphasis.

172.1 Emphasis by simple repetition
172.1.1 Repetition of noun
172.1.2 Repetition of [noun + case particle]
172.1.3 Repetition of verb/adjective/adjectival noun forms
172.2 Emphasis through grammatical structures

172.1 EMPHASIS BY SIMPLE REPETITION

172.1.1 Repetition of noun

a 【不況、不況】と言われているが、企業にとっては今がチャンス。
fukyō fukyō to iwarete iru ga kigyō ni totte wa ima ga chansu
It's said that it's a bad recession, but for business now is a time of opportunity.

b 企業も「【リストラ、リストラ】」とキズの入ったレコードのように繰り返す。
kigyō mo risutora risutora to kizu no haitta rekōdo no yō ni kurikaesu
Industry too repeats 'restructuring' like a broken record.

172.1.2 Repetition of [noun + case particle]

These are idiomatic expressions, such as **hi ni hi ni** 'by the day'.

a 技術は【日に日に】進歩している。
gijutsu wa hi ni hi ni shinpo shite iru
The technology is progressing by the day.

170.1.3 Repetition of verb/adjective/adjectival noun forms

a 【知ってる知ってる】。
shitteru shitteru
I know!

b 夫「平均支払額は四百十万円。結構、高い代償だ」妻「いや、【安い、安い】。四件に一件は百万円以下です」
otto heikin shiharai-gaku wa yonhyaku jūman-en. kekkō takai daishō da. tsuma iya yasui yasui. yonken ni ikken wa hyakuman-en ika desu
Husband: 'The average amount paid is 4 million one hundred thousand yen. That's quite an expensive [divorce] compensation.' Wife: 'No, it's quite cheap. One in four settlements is 1 million or less.'

c 【ダメだ、ダメだ】と、いつも思ってますけれどね
dame da dame da to itsumo omotte imasu keredo ne
I always think I'm no good, you see

d 【行けども行けども】、景色は一向に変わらない。
ikedomo ikedomo keshiki wa ikkō ni kawaranai
No matter how long you go on, the scenery doesn't change at all.

172.2 EMPHASIS THROUGH GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURES

This is expressed by structures like [V1-pos. **ka** V1-neg. **uchi**] 'barely has . . . happened' and [V/adj. 1-**ba** V/adj. 1 **hodo**] 'the more . . ., the -er' (see 13, 229, 64; see also 163.3.1).

a 12月の声を【聞くか聞かないうち】に街は早くもクリスマス一色だ。
jūni-gatsu no koe o kiku ka kikanai uchi ni machi wa hayaku mo kurisumasu isshoku da
December has barely arrived, and the town is already decorated for Christmas all over.

b 組織が【大きければ大きいほど】決定は遅い。
soshiki ga ōkikereba ōkii hodo kettei wa osoi
The larger an organization is, the longer it takes to make decisions.

c 犯人は【憎んでも憎んでも憎みきれない】。極刑をもって償ってもらう以外ない。
hannin wa nikunde mo nikunde mo nikumi-kirenai. kyokkei o motte tsugunatte morau igai nai
There's no limit to my hatred for the culprit [who killed my little daughter]. This [crime] can be atoned for only by the maximum penalty.

d 野球の審判には逆らえない。スーパープレーヤー【だろうと】、常勝の名監督【だろうと】関係ない。
yakyū no shinpan ni wa sakaraenai. sūpā pureyā darō to jōshō no mei-kantoku darō to kankei nai
You can't contradict a baseball umpire. It doesn't matter whether you're a superplayer or a famous coach who always wins.

173 REQUESTS

There are two basic types of request, one requesting an item and the other requesting an action (or service) to be performed.

For the former, **onegai shimasu** is used, whereas for the latter, **itadakitai/ moraitai** and **hoshii** are attached to V-**te**, while **yō (ni) onegai shimasu** is attached to V or V-pot.

Requests can also be made in Q form.

Requesting an action can be pos. or neg. (i.e. requesting the listener to do, or *not* to do, something)

173.1 Noun/verbal noun (o) **onegai shimasu**
173.2 Verb-**te** (+ performative verb/adjective)
173.2.1 Verb-**te itadakitai/moraitai**
173.2.2 Verb-**te hoshii**
173.3 Sentence **yō (ni) onegai shimasu**
173.4 Requests in negative/positive/potential question form
173.4.1 Verb-**te kure-nai/-masen ka**
173.4.2 Verb-**te moraenai ka (na)**
173.4.3 Verb-**te itadake-ru/masu ka/-nai/-masen ka**

173.1 NOUN/VERBAL NOUN (o) **onegai shimasu**

This is used to request items (things or persons) and also actions (in the case of NV). It usually translates as 'please', but note that the polite command (**-te**) **kudasai** also translates as 'please' (see 24).

Note – This can only be used with pos. requests 'May I/we please have a/your N/VN', 'please'.

a 弁護士を【お願いします】。
bengoshi o onegai shimasu
May I have a lawyer, please.

b ご協力【お願いします】。
go-kyōryoku onegai shimasu
May I have your co-operation, please.

c それでは白石さん、支払いを【お願いします】。
sore de wa shiraishi-san shiharai o onegai shimasu
Well then, Mrs Shiraishi, please pay up.

173.2 VERB-**te** (+ PERFORMATIVE VERB/ADJECTIVE)

173.2.1 Verb-**te itadakitai/moraitai**

This can be attached to pos. or neg. verbs, in the meaning of 'I/we want you to (do/not do something for my/our benefit)' (see 200.1.2, 207.4, 189).

a もう少し後にし【ていただきた】い。
mō sukoshi ato ni shite itadakitai
I'd like to request you to put it off a little longer.

b 慎重に検討し【てもらいた】い
shinchō ni kentō shite moraitai
We'd like you to review it carefully

c 決して腰くだけにならない【でもらいた】い。
kesshite koshikudake ni naranai de moraitai
We'd want them [= securities firms] to carry it [= restructuring] out decisively (*lit.* "want them not to give way").

d 首都圏の農地には手をつけない【でいただきた】い。
shuto-ken no nōchi ni wa te o tsukenai de itadakitai
We want you not to touch the farmland in the metropolitan area [= for land development].

173.2.2 Verb-**te hoshii**

This means 'I want you to (do/not do something for my/others' benefit)'. For neg. requests, -**nai de hoshii** is used (see 197).

a ビデオを分け【てほし】い。
bideo o wakete hoshii
Would you spare me the videotape.

b 元気なので心配し【ないでほし】い。
genki na no de shinpai shinai de hoshii
I'm OK, so don't worry.

173.3 SENTENCE **yō** (**ni**) **onegai shimasu**

yō is formally a N, and is therefore preceded by forms that modify N, i.e. plain forms of V (see 243).

a [誤解のない]【ようにお願いします】。
gokai no nai yō ni onegai shimasu
Please do not misunderstand.

b 今後とも道徳教育の推進のため、特段の努力を図られる【ようお願いします】。
kongo tomo dōtoku kyōiku no suishin no tame tokudan no doryoku o hakarareru yō onegai shimasu
Please make a special effort to further moral education from now on, too.

173.4 REQUESTS IN NEGATIVE/POSITIVE/POTENTIAL QUESTION FORM

173.4.1 Verb-**te kure-nai**/**-masen ka**

Requests in neg. Q form 'will you' (plain form), 'would you' (-**masu** form) are more polite than V **te kure** commands (see 203.3.1).

a 今度会っ【てくれませんか】。
kondo atte kuremasen ka
Would you meet me sometime?

173.4.2 Verb-**te moraenai ka (na)**

In pot. neg. Q form, **-te moraeru** is used to make a polite request 'can we ask you to', 'could we get you to', 'would you'. With **ka na** rather than **ka**, the meaning is 'I wonder' (see 207.32).

a 一緒に応援し【てもらえないか】。
issho ni ōen shite moraenai ka
Would you join in supporting us?

b あの人に地元の建設会社を紹介し【てもらえないかな】。
ano hito ni jimoto no kensetsu-gaisha o shōkai shite moraenai ka na
Could I get this man to introduce me to a local construction company, I wonder.

173.4.3 Verb-**te itadake-ru/masu ka/-nai/-masen ka**

In pos. or neg. Q pot. form, this indicates a very polite request 'could you please' (**itadaku** being more polite than **morau**) (see 200.2.1).

a 返事はちょっと待っ【ていただけますか】。
henji wa chotto matte itadakemasu ka
Could I ask you to wait a little while for my answer?

174 **sa** [FINAL PARTICLE]

sa attaches to N-mod. forms of V/adj. but replaces cop. after AN/N. It can also attach to other forms (such as unfinished S and appear in non-final position in the S, marking the end of a clause, as in example g) and particles. **sa** has a ring of assertion, pointing out the obvious to the listener. It is not usually translated, but the implication is often one of 'don't you see?', 'that should be obvious', etc. For this reason it is also often attached to **kara**, which means 'because', but can also be used simply to indicate the obvious.

a 小学校はずっと休み【さ】。
shōgakkō wa zutto yasumi sa
The primary school will be closed for a long time.

b 払わなくても違法ではなかったから【さ】
harawanakute mo ihō de wa nakatta kara sa
It wasn't against the law if one didn't pay [alimony], you see.

c 確かに日本は核兵器を持つ能力はある【さ】。
tashika ni nihon wa kakuheiki o motsu nōryoku wa aru sa
Japan has the ability to have atomic weapons all right.

d 師は「俳諧師」、俳人【さ】。
shi wa haikai-shi haijin sa
Shi (“teacher”) means ‘Haiku teacher’, a Haiku poet, you know.

e 適当なゴールを探していたら、体育館の物置にピーチ（桃）の籠があったのでそれを利用したの【さ】。
tekitō na gōru o sagashite itara taiiku-kan no monooki ni pīchi momo no kago ga atta no de sore o riyō shita no sa
When we were looking for something to use as a goal, there was a peach box in the storeroom of the gym, and so we used that, you see.

f「ご隠居、ビールなんてものは、余計なうんちくを傾けず、ぐーっと飲みほすもんだ」「まあ、そう言わずに【さ】」。
go-inkyo bīru nante mono wa yokei na unchiku o katamukezu gūtto nomihosu mon da. mā sō iwazu ni sa
‘Old man, beer is not something you lecture about, you just drink up in one draft.’ ‘Come on, don’t say that.’

g 四、五人で取り巻いて、寂しいところへ連れてって【さ】、でかいシャベルを持たして、テメエでテメエの穴を掘れっつうわけ。（掘れっつうわけ＝掘れというわけ）
shigo-nin de torimaite sabishii tokoro e tsuretette sa dekai shaberu o motashite temē de temē no haka o hore ttsū wake
You see, four or five [of us] surround him, take him to a deserted spot, hand him a big shovel and tell him to dig his own grave.

175 -sa [NOMINALIZING SUFFIX]

Adj.-root + **sa**/AN + **sa** converts adj. or AN into a N. **-sa** nominalizations are used in sentences that require a N as pred., i.e. equational S, cleft S and N sentences (see 23, 34, 178.1.7), but instead of other N, as in examples d–e.

a 六十九歳とは思えない若々し【さ】だ。(cf., 若々しい ‘youthful’)
rokujūkyū-sai to wa omoenai wakawakashi-sa da
He’s so youthful that it’s hard to think he’s 69 (*lit.* “it’s a youthfulness which makes it hard . . .”).

b 日本では考えられない速【さ】だ。(cf., 速い ‘speedy’)
nihon de wa kangaerarenai haya-sa da
The speed [of establishing a shareholding company] is unthinkable in Japan.

c ただし、大画面テレビはもう一つの問題を浮かび上がらせる。日本の住宅の狭【さ】だ。(cf., 狭い ‘small’)
tadashi dai-gamen terebi wa mō hitotsu no mondai o ukabiagaraseru. nihon no jūtaku no sema-sa da
However, there’s another problem with large-screen TVs. It’s the smallness of Japanese homes.

d 安【さ】だけでは顧客に満足してもらえない時代になった。
(cf., 安い’cheap’)
yasu-sa dake de wa kokyaku ni manzoku shite moraenai jidai ni natta
It’s (*lit.* “become”) an age where cheapness isn’t enough to satisfy customers.

e サッカーの陽気【さ】は、祈ったあとの迷いのない陽気【さ】だ。
(cf., 陽気な ‘exuberant’)
sakkā no yōki-sa wa inotta ato no mayoi no nai yōki-sa da
The exuberance of soccer is an exuberance that knows no wavering, like after praying.

176 sae [FOCUS PARTICLE]

sae is attached to N, V-stem and VN, and S (direct or indirect quotations, usually ending in the quotation P **to**), adding emphasis in the sense of ‘even’ and, in combination with V/A-**ba**, ‘as long as’. In use 176.1 (but with neg. pred. only), it may be regarded as a more emphatic equivalent of **mo**.

176.1 Noun/verb-stem **sae**
176.1.1 Noun (particle) **sae**
176.1.2 (Noun **mo**) noun **sae mo**
176.1.3 Noun (particle) **de sae**
176.1.4 Verb-stem/verbal noun **sae suru**
176.2 Noun/verb-stem **sae** . . . verb/adjective-**ba**

176.1 NOUN/VERB-STEM sae

The sense here is ‘even’.

176.1.1 Noun (particle) sae

sae replaces the case P **ga/o**, but attaches to others such as **ni**, **kara** and **to**.

a 憤り【さえ】覚える。
ikidōri sae oboeru
One even feels rage.

b 資料に名【さえ】残っていない。
shiryō ni na sae nokotte inai
Not even his name appears in the [historical] documents.

c 最低限必要な施設【さえ】なかった。
saiteigen hitsuyō na shisetsu sae nakatta
They didn't even have the minimum of facilities required.

d 日本では、今年度の予算【さえ】、まだ成立していない。
nihon de wa konnen-do no yosan sae mada seiritsu shite inai
In Japan, even the budget for this fiscal year hasn't been approved yet.

e 農畜産物は北海道の顔と【さえ】言っていいだろう。
nōchikusan-butsu wa hokkaidō no kao to sae itte ii darō
It would probably even be all right to say that Hokkaido is best known for its farm (*lit.* "crops and livestock") products.

f 犬はテレパシーを持っているのかと【さえ】感じるそうだ。
inu wa terepashī o motte iru no ka to sae kanjiru sō da
He is even said to feel that dogs may have telepathic powers.

176.1.2 (Noun **mo**) noun **sae mo**

In both pos. and neg. S, N **sae mo** is often used after other N + **mo**, with emphasis on the N to which **sae mo** is attached.

a 農作業の分担【も】、水の配分【さえも】村単位で行われた。
nōsagyō no buntan mo mizu no bunpai sae mo mura tan'i de okonawareta
The allotment of farm work and even the distribution of water were carried out at the village unit level.

b その家には窓ガラス【も】ドア【も】床【さえも】ないがらんどうだ。
sono ie ni wa mado-garasu mo doa mo yuka sae mo nai garandō da
That house is completely bare, with no windowpanes, no doors, and not even any floor.

c 驚くべきことに、腸内細菌の多寡【さえも】ヒトの睡眠量を左右するのだ。
odoroku-beki koto ni chōnai saikin no taka sae mo hito no suimin-ryō o sayū suru no da
Believe it or not, even the quantity of bacteria in the intestine affects the amount of sleep a person gets.

176.1.3 Noun (particle) **de sae**

This is a more emphatic equivalent of N **demo** (see 42.1).

a 一国の中【でさえ】その文化圏は異なる。
ikkoku no naka de sae sono bunka-ken wa kotonaru
Even within one country, the cultural area [= where garlic is eaten] differs.

b 動物園にいる熱帯産の動物【でさえ】むし暑さには参るらしい。
dōbutsu-en ni iru nettai-san no dōbutsu de sae mushiatsu-sa ni wa mairu rashii
Even the zoo animals from the tropics seem unable to stand the humidity.

c 今や子供【でさえ】、絵が動くだけでは喜ばない。
ima ya kodomo de sae e ga ugoku dake de wa yorokobanai
Nowadays even children aren't impressed with pictures that do nothing but move.

176.1.4 Verb-stem/verbal noun **sae suru**

In this use, **sae** can be attached to V-stem (example a) or sandwiched between the VN and a form of **suru** (example b) (see 234).

a 自分らしいバランスに気をつければ、モデルより素敵に見え【さえ】する。
jibun rashii baransu ni ki o tsukereba moderu yori suteki ni mie sae suru
If you're careful to maintain a balance that suits you, you can look even more attractive than a model.

b それどころか、積極的に相談に乗ってくれ、バックアップ【さえ】してくれた。
sore dokoro ka sekkyoku-teki ni sōdan ni notte kure bakku appu sae shite kureta
Not only that, they [= the government] even actively gave us advice, and even backed us up.

176.2 NOUN/VERB-STEM **sae** . . . VERB/ADJECTIVE-**ba**

As part of a conjunctional clause ending in -**ba**, the resulting meaning is 'as long as', 'provided that' (see 13).

a 実力【さえ】あれ【ば】必ずチャンスがある。
jitsuryoku sae areba kanarazu chansu ga aru
As long as you have ability, your chance will come without fail.

b 品質【さえ】良けれ【ば】タイヤは売れる
hinshitsu sae yokereba taiya wa ureru
Tyres will sell as long as they're of good quality

c 二ミリのすき間【さえ】あれ【ば】ゴキブリは入り込むという。
ni-miri no sukima sae areba gokiburi wa hairikomu to iu
As long as there is an opening of 2 mm, cockroaches will enter, they say.

d 早期発見【さえ】できれ【ば】肺がんは怖くない。
sōki hakken sae dekireba haigan wa kowakunai
As long as it can be detected in the early stages, lung cancer isn't [a] frightening [thing].

e 地震【さえ】なけれ【ば】二人そろって学校に通っていたはずだった。
jishin sae nakereba futari sorotte gakkō ni kayotte ita hazu datta
Had it not been for the earthquake, the two of them would have gone to school together.

177 SENTENCE ENDINGS

S endings can be attached to all types of basic S, i.e. S with verbal, adjectival or AN/N pred. They add a variety of meanings to the logical content of the S.

S endings have a variety of functions, which can also include nominalizing and adverbial uses. Where a representative translation exists, it is given below, but for more detailed information see the individual entries.

-beki (obligation, 'must') (see 19)
darō/deshō (presumptive, 'may') (see 163)
hazu (conviction, 'ought to') (see 62)
ho ga ii (recommendation, 'should') (see 63.2)
kamoshirenai (presumptive, 'might') (see 73)
koto da (advice, etc., 'should') (see 83.3.11)
-mai (neg. pres./neg. desiderative, 'oughtn't', 'have no intention of') (see 89)
-masu (polite) (see 91)
mitai (appearance, 'is like') (see 93)
-nai (negative) (see 104; see also 111)
ni chigai nai (guessing with conviction, 'no doubt') (see 118)
n(o) da (explanatory) (see 138)
rashii (appearance, 'seems') (see 169)
sō (hearsay, 'understand that') (see 181)
-sō (likelihood, 'likely to') (see 182)
-tai (desiderative, 'want to') (see 189)
-te ageru (performative, 'do for others') (see 195)
-te aru (aspectual) (see 196)
-te hoshii (performative, 'want others to') (see 197)
-te iku (aspectual) (see 198)

-te iru (aspectual: progressive, resultative) (see 199)
-te itadaku (performative, 'have something done for one's benefit') (see 200)
-te kudasaru (performative, 'kindly does for me') (see 202)
-te kureru (performative, 'does for me') (see 203)
-te kuru (aspectual) (see 204)
-te miru (aspectual) (see 205)
-te morau (performative, 'have something done for one's benefit') (see 207)
-te oku (aspectual) (see 208)
-te shimau (aspectual) (see 209)
-te yaru (performative, 'do for others') (see 211)
tsumori (intentional, 'intend to') (see 224)
-tsutsu aru (progressive 'be in the process of') (see 226)
-tte (hearsay, 'I hear') (see 227)
wake (explanatory) (see 239)
yō (appearance/simile 'looks like') (see 243)
-(y)ō (hortative/presumptive 'let's', 'may') and its derivations (see 67, 246)

178 SENTENCE TYPES

The types of S described in this section do not include neg., for which (see 111, 112). Also not included here are hortative ('let's') S (see 67).

178.1 Minimal simple sentences
178.1.1 Predicates without 'obligatory' noun phrase
178.1.2 Simple verb sentences
178.1.3 Converted verb sentences
178.1.4 Simple adjective sentences
178.1.5 Simple adjectival noun sentences
178.1.6 Simple noun sentences
178.1.7 Equational sentences
178.1.8 Double-subject sentences
178.1.9 Existential/locational sentences
178.1.10 Adjective/adjectival noun/noun → verb conversions (**suru/naru**)
178.2 Expanded simple sentences
178.2.1 Predicate expansions
178.2.2 Noun phrase expansions
178.3 Extended simple sentences (predicate extensions)
178.3.1 Sentence endings
178.3.2 Extensions through final particles
178.4 Complex sentences
178.4.1 With subordinate clauses
178.4.2 With embedded subordinate clauses or sentences
178.4.2.1 Direct quotations and commands

178.4.2.2 Indirect quotations and commands
178.4.2.3 Direct questions
178.4.2.4 Indirect questions
178.4.3 With noun-modifying (dependent) clauses
178.4.3.1 **to iu** noun-modifying clauses
178.4.3.2 Complement clauses
178.4.3.3 Cleft sentences
178.4.3.4 Relative clauses
178.5 Compound sentences
178.5.1 With conjunctive forms
178.5.2 With conjunctive particles

178.1 MINIMAL SIMPLE SENTENCES

A simple S minimally consists of one pred. and one or more NP, as required by the valency of pred., except where the NP is ellipted/omitted (see 231).

A pred. can be an infinitive form of V/A or AN/N + cop., or the imperative form of V (see 232, 69). It can be plain or polite.

A NP consists of noun + case and/or focus P. No NP is required with imperatives (see 69) nor with a small number of V and adj./AN (in some uses only; see 178.1.1).

178.1.1 Predicates without 'obligatory' noun phrase

Items like the V **nomu** 'drink (alcohol)', the adj. **samui** 'cold' and the AN **shizuka** 'quiet' can be used as pred. without any NP. A minimal S like **Shizuka da**. can be a complete S with the meaning of 'It's quiet'; when 'it' refers to something specific (i.e. a hotel), in which case, the S would have an ellipted (or omitted) NP (one can tell the difference only from the context). Below are examples of pred. without NP.

a 四月からこれまでに四、五回【飲んだ】かな。
shigatsu kara kore made shigo-kai nonda ka na
Since April, I may have drunk [alcohol] four or five times so far.

b 隊員らは「【寒い】、【寒い】」を連発。
taiin-ra wa samui samui o renpatsu
The corps members kept saying, '(I'm) cold'.

c 蝉がしきりと鳴いている。音はそれだけだ。【静かだ】。
semi ga shikiri to naite iru. oto wa sore dake da. shizuka da
The cicadas are chirring incessantly. That's the only sound.
[It's] quiet.

178.1.2 Simple verb sentences

In their simplest form, a V S consists of a V pred. and one NP.

a 涙が出た。
namida ga deta
Tears came [to my eyes].

178.1.3 Converted verb sentences

V S can be 'converted' into pot., caus. and pass. S, which often involves a change in valency (see 20, 156, 161).

178.1.4 Simple adjective sentences

Below are examples, one with NP and the other with an ellipted (or omitted) NP.

a サービスが良い。
sābisu ga yoi
The service is good.

b 安い。
yasui
[It's] cheap.

178.1.5 Simple adjectival noun sentences

The AN pred. requires a form of cop. to complete the sentence; the NP is marked by the focus P **wa**.

a スクワティ村は静かだった。
sukuwati-mura wa shizuka datta
Sukuwati village was quiet.

178.1.6 Simple noun sentences

The pred. of the N requires a form of cop. to complete the sentence.

a それが序曲だった。
sore ga jokyoku datta
That was [only] the overture [= the beginning].

178.1.7 Equational sentences

Equational S are a kind of N S, of the type [N/pron. **wa** . . . N cop.] 'N is', where N cop. serves to identify or equate N/pron. (see 236.7).

a これ【は】誤解だ。
kore wa gokai da
That's a misunderstanding

178.1.8 Double-subject sentences

Double-subject sentences are thus called because they contain two NP that could both be subjects, typically marked NP1 **wa** NP2 **ga**.

Meaningwise, NP1 is the more comprehensive (topic-like) part, with NP being a more specific (pred.-like) comment on it (see 236.8).

a % 酒【は】ワイン【が】いい。
sake wa wain ga ii
Of alcoholic drinks, I prefer wine.

178.1.9 Existential/locational sentences

Existential or locational S consist of a NP **ni** indicating a place, a NP **ga** indicating who or what 'is there' and an existential V such as **aru** or **iru** (see 9).

a 外【に】女性【が】いる。
soto ni josei ga iru
There's a woman outside.

178.1.10 Adjective/adjectival noun/noun → verb conversions (**suru/naru**)

Adj. and AN/N + cop. can be converted into V by adding **suru** 'do' or **naru** 'become' to adj.-stem (incl. the neg. ending **-naku**) and the adverbial form of AN/N + cop. (see 186, 35).

a 空が【暗くなっ】た。(cf., 暗い)
sora ga kuraku natta
The sky darkened.

b タクシーが【きれいになっ】た。(cf., きれいだ)
takushī ga kirei ni natta
Taxis have become smart.

c 一万人を【目標にする】。(cf., 目標だ)
ichiman-nin o mokuhyō ni suru
They aim for 10,000 people.

178.2 EXPANDED SIMPLE SENTENCES

Simple S can be expanded. This can be effected by expanding pred. (i.e. adding V-mod. phrases), by expanding the NP (by adding N-mod. phrases) or both. (A further addition can be an exclamation such as **ara** 'oh', but these can of course also be used by themselves.)

178.2.1 Predicate expansions

Pred. can be expanded (to the left of pred.) by V-mod. phrases (one or several), which can be a modifying adv. or adverbial phrase (see 4).

a 海は【まだ】静かだ。
umi wa mada shizuka da
The sea is still calm.

b 頭の中が【ぴかぴかと】光った。
atama no naka ga pikapika to hikatta
There was a flash of light inside my head.

178.2.2 Noun phrase expansions

The NP (one or more) can also be expanded by N-mod. phrases. For instance, the verb **iru** 'be there' requires two NP: 'where' (marked by **ni**) and 'who' (marked by **ga**). For an example see 178.1.9.

In the following examples, both NP are expanded by N-mod. phrases ([num. + C + **no**] and [num. + **no**]).

a【一グラムの】空気には【百万の】微生物がいる。
ichiguramu no kūki ni wa hyakuman no bi-seibutsu ga iru
In one gram of air there are a million micro-organisms.

In the following S the intransitive V **hajimaru** requires only NP **ga** (see 231), but the S is expanded with a time phrase + suf. (-**sugi** 'just after'), followed by a location NP + case P **de**.

b【午前三時過ぎ】【機内で】結婚式が始まった。
gozen sanji sugi kinai de kekkon-shiki ga hajimatta
Just after 3 a.m., the wedding ceremony began in the aeroplane.

178.3 EXTENDED SIMPLE SENTENCES (PREDICATE EXTENSIONS)

Pred. are typically extended, adding the speaker's opinion, intention, feelings, etc. regarding the content of the S after pred. Pred. extensions can be fin. P or S endings (see 177).

178.3.1 Sentence endings

The S ending **yō** indicates appearance, adding here to **jikan ga tomatta** the sense that this was the speaker/writer's impression of what happened (see 177, 243).

a 時間が止まった【よう】だった
jikan ga tomatta yō datta
It was as if time had stopped

178.3.2 Extensions through final particles

Fin. P indicate various forms of the speaker's appeal to the listener. In the following, **wa** indicates emphasis, but also that the speaker is a woman (see 155.5, 237).

a あら、ミーティングが始まる【わ】。
ara mītingu ga hajimaru wa
Oh, a meeting is about to begin!

178.4 COMPLEX SENTENCES

A complex sentence contains one (or more) subordinate clauses (in 【】). In Japanese, a subordinate clause always precedes the main clause it modifies, but in English translation this order is often reversed.

178.4.1 With subordinate clauses

a 【水を打ったように】静かだった。
mizu o utta yō ni shizuka datta
[The meeting] was 【dead】silent. (*lit.* "was silent 【as if water had been poured over】")

b …今じゃ【いても気付かないほど】静かだ。
ima ja ite mo kizukanai hodo shizuka da
. . . now, they [= the nephews] are 【so quiet that even if they are there you don't notice [them]】.

c 私には「【長期間留守につき】、ゆっくり仕事できます。ゴッソリ持っていって」と聞こえてしまって…
watashi ni wa chō-kikan rusu ni tsuki yukkuri shigoto dekimasu. gossori motte itte to kikoete shimatte
To me, [= the recorded message giving dates of absence from home] sounds like '【Owing to my extended absence from home】, you [= the burglar] can work at your leisure. Take plenty'. . .

d 【襲われたら】どうしよう……。
osowaretara dō shiyō
What am I going to do 【if I get attacked . . .】?

178.4.2 With embedded subordinate clauses or sentences

An embedded S contains another S, such as a Q, quotation, etc.

178.4.2.1 *Direct quotations and commands*

The main difference between direct and indirect quotations is the presence or absence of the Japanese quotation marks ( ). Also, in direct quotations pol. forms (-**masu**, **desu**, etc.) can be used before the quotation P **to**, whereas in indirect quotations plain forms are the rule.

a 「三日までゆっくり過ごそうと思います」と話していた。
mikka made yukkuri sugosō to omoimasu to hanashite ita
He was saying, 'I'm thinking of taking it easy until the 3rd'.

b 「一日二、三万円の収入が得られます」という広告が何枚も置かれている。
ichinichi nisanman-en no shūnyū ga eraremasu to iu kōkoku ga nanmai mo okarete iru
There are quite a few leaflets lying about saying 'You can earn 20 to 30 thousand yen a month'.

c 訓一は文子に「日本中で一番幸せな妻にしてやる」といった。
kun'ichi wa fumiko ni nihonjū de ichiban shiawase na tsuma ni shite yaru to itta
Kun'ichi said to Fumiko, 'I'll make you the happiest wife in Japan'.

d 「あの時、好きにさせてもらったのだから、妻にも思うように仕事をさせよう」と考えたという。
ano toki suki ni sasete moratta no da kara tsuma ni mo omou yō ni shigoto o saseyō to kangaeta to iu
He says that he thought, 'At that time, I was allowed to do as I liked, so I'll let my wife too work as she likes'.

178.4.2.2 *Indirect quotations and commands*

Below, quotations/commands are given in 【】. Note that imp. and command forms like **kudasai** and **tsukuri-nasai** are 'reduced' to plain-form equivalents such as **kure** and **tsukure** (see examples a–c below, 24, 69, 203).

a 全国から【講演してくれ】という要請がたくさんきている。
zenkoku kara kōen shite kure to iu yōsei ga takusan kite iru
There are many requests from all over the country to come and give a lecture.

b 【社長になってくれ】と言われたのは今朝のこと。
shachō ni natte kure to iwareta no wa kesa no koto
It was [only] this morning that I was asked to be company president.

c 住民に聴けば【道路をつくれ】という。
jūmin ni kikeba dōro o tsukure to iu
When I ask the residents, they tell me to build roads.

d 教師にこそ、【もっと自由を】と言いたい
kyōshi ni koso, motto jiyū o to iitai
Especially to the teachers I'd like to say that they should give themselves more freedom

178.4.2.3 *Direct questions*

Depending on the presence or absence of Q words, the Q P **ka** and other factors, various kinds of direct Q can be distinguished (see 164, Table 23).

178.4.2.4 *Indirect questions*

Depending on the presence or absence of Q words and other factors, various kinds of indirect Q can be distinguished (see 166, Table 23).

178.4.3 With noun-modifying (dependent) clauses

N-mod. clauses include **to iu** clauses, complement clauses, cleft S and relative clauses (see 218, 26, 23, 143).

178.4.3.1 *to iu noun-modifying clauses*

(See 218.) The pattern [N1 **to iu** N2] means ‘the N2 (“called”) N1’.

a 【家庭という】言葉は家と庭からなっている。
katei to iu kotoba wa ie to niwa kara natte iru
The word *katei* (home) consists of *ka/ie* (house) amd *tei/niwa* (garden).

178.4.3.2 *Complement clauses*

Here, a whole clause acts like a NP, marked by a case P (see 26).

a ［体を動かすの］が好き。
karada o ugokasu no ga suki
I like moving my body.

178.4.3.3 *Cleft sentences*

In a cleft sentence, the regular order of clauses is reversed for emphasis (see 23).

a 【自宅でのんびりするのは】正月三が日だけ。
jitaku de nonbiri suru no wa shōgatsu sanganichi dake
The only time I relax at home is the first three days of the new year.

178.4.3.4 *Relative clauses*

In Japanese, relative clauses are one form of noun-mod. (see 143).

a 【いつもと変わらない】夕方だった
itsumo to kawaranai yūgata datta
[It] was an evening [that was] no different from usual.

178.5 COMPOUND SENTENCES

Compound sentences are sentences that consist of two or more clauses, joined by conjunctive forms of V/adj. and AN/N + cop. and their written-style variants (i.e. stem forms of V/adj. and AN/N + cop., etc.) or conjunctive P like **ga** 'and', 'but' (see 31, 155.4). In compound S, the English word order is usually the same as in Japanese.

178.5.1 With conjunctive forms

a 部長に頭を下げ【て】、部屋を出た。
buchō ni atama o sagete heya o deta
I bowed to the department head [and] left the room.

178.5.2 With conjunctive particles

a 女性が多い【が】、ほとんど髪は肩ぐらいまでに短くしている。
josei ga ōi ga hotondo kami wa kata gurai made ni mijikaku shite iru
There are many women, [but] most keep their hair short to about shoulder length.

179 shi [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

Attached to clauses (after fin. forms of V/adj. and AN/N + cop.), **shi** signals an addition 'and (moreover)'. It can be used more than once in a sentence.

a 自分の家は狭い【し】汚いなどといわず、…
jibun no ie wa semai shi kitanai nado to iwazu
Don't say that your house is small and messy and so on . . . [as an excuse for not inviting foreigners]

b 娘さんと結婚します。しかし養子にはならない【し】、会社も継ぎません。
musume-san to kekkon shimasu shikashi yōshi ni wa naranai shi kaisha mo tsugimasen
I'll marry your daughter. But I won't be an adopted son, and I won't succeed to the company.

c 若いんだ【し】、別にカタにはまることはない【し】、カッコつけて生きたっていいと思う。
wakai n da shi betsu ni kata ni hamaru koto wa nai shi kakko tsukete ikitatte ii to omou
I think it's OK to make themselves look smart they are young, and there's no need for them to conform

d この事件はほぼ終息した【し】、二度と起こることはない。
kono jiken wa hobo shūsoku shita shi nido to okoru koto wa nai
This incident has more or less ended, and will never happen again.

180 shika [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

shika is always used with neg. pred., the combination being equivalent in meaning to English 'only'. **shika** is more exclusive in meaning than **dake** and **bakari** (which also mean 'only' in some of their uses), having the implication of 'nothing but', 'only . . . and nothing else' (see 37, 17).

180.1 Noun (+ particle)/number (+ counter) **shika**
180.1.1 Noun **shika**
180.1.2 Noun + particle **shika**
180.1.3 Number + counter **shika**
180.2 Adjective/adverb **shika**
180.3 Verb/verbal noun **shika**
180.4 Noun copula-**de shika**

180.1 NOUN (+ PARTICLE)/NUMBER (+ COUNTER) shika

180.1.1 Noun shika

shika replaces the case P **ga** and **o**, imparting the meaning of 'only', 'no more than'.

a 必要なもの【しか】買わなくなった。
hitsuyō na mono shika kawanaku natta
These days [people] buy no more than the necessities.

b 最近の若い者は決まりきった発想【しか】できない。
saikin no wakai mono wa kimarikitta hassō shika dekinai
Young people these days can only come up with ideas that are trite and conventional.

c 当時の人々は、自分の目でみたもの【しか】描かなかった。
tōji no hitobito wa jibun no me de mita mono shita egakanakatta
People of that time drew only things which they had seen with their own eyes.

d 絶頂を極めた後は下降【しか】ない
zetchō o kiwameta ato wa kakō shika nai
After you've reached the peak, it's downhill all the way.

180.1.2 Noun + particle **shika**

The P used depends on the valency of the V, i.e. in example a **omou** 'think' requires **to**.

a 拷問、脅迫【としか】思えない取り調べを受けた。
gōmon kyōhaku to shika omoenai torishirabe o uketa
I underwent an investigation which was no less than torture and intimidation.

b ロッカーは住人が個別に携帯するIDカード【でしか】開けられない。
rokkā wa jūnin ga kobetsu ni keitai suru aidī kādo de shika akerarenai
The lockers can only be opened with ID cards that are carried by the individual residents.

c 幸枝さんを父の「新しい奥さん」【としか】見ることはできなかった。
yukie-san o chichi no atarashii okusan to shika miru koto wa dekinakatta
I could see Yukie-san as nothing more than my father's 'new wife'.

d だが、この道路、歩道が途中【までしか】ない。
da ga kono dōro hodō ga tochū made shika nai
However, this road is only paved part of the way.

180.1.3 Number + counter **shika**

a 二つの棟は四メートル【しか】離れていない。
futatsu no tō wa yon-mētoru shika hanarete inai
The two houses are only 4m apart.

180.2 ADJECTIVE/ADVERB **shika**

This also means 'only', 'nothing but'.

a オルガンのコンサートはまれに【しか】開かれない。
orugan no konsāto wa mare ni shika hirakarenai
Organ concerts are held only very rarely.

b 第三者にはこっけいに【しか】映らない省益の衝突である。
daisansha ni wa kokkei ni shika utsuranai shōeki no shōtotsu de aru
It was a collision of ministerial interests which, to an outside observer, looked nothing but comical.

180.3 VERB/VERBAL NOUN **shika**

After V and VN, the meaning is 'all one can do is', 'there's no choice but'.

a できるものなら、やる【しか】ない。
dekiru mono nara yaru shika nai
The only thing is to get on with it, if we can.

b 当面は事態を静観する【しか】ない。
tōmen wa jitai o seikan suru shika nai
For the time being, all we can do is sit back and watch how the situation develops.

c 内閣総辞職【しか】ない。
naikaku sōjishoku shika nai
The only [option] is resignation of the Cabinet en masse.

180.4 NOUN COPULA-**de shika**

In this use (meaning 'is merely'), **shika** is sandwiched between the conjunctive form of the cop. (**de**), and the neg. form **nai** (or **arimasen**). Alternatively, one can analyse this form as **shika** replacing **wa** in the neg. form of the cop. **de wa nai**. (see 35)

a「塾が問題生徒のたまり場」という言い方はおごり【でしかありません】。
juku ga mondai seito no tamariba to iu iikata wa ogori de shika arimasen
To say 'Crammers are just a haunt for problem children' is mere arrogance.

b たしかに庭といっても、広さわずか七、八平方メートル、横浜の下町の家と家に挟まれた「すき間」のような空間【でしかない】。
tashika ni niwa to itte mo hirosa wazuka shichihachi heihō mētoru yokohama no shitamachi no ie to ie ni hasamareta sukima no yō na kūkan de shika nai
It's true, the garden is just 7 or 8 sq. m in size, and is no more than a space that's like a gap between downtown Yokohama houses.

181 sō [SENTENCE ENDING]

Attached to S (the forms preceding **sō** are pln. fin. forms of V/adj./AN/N, but **no da**, etc. can be inserted between the V and **sō**), the S ending **sō** indicates that the S it is attached to is not the speaker's own opinion, but something which he or she has heard or read 'apparently', 'I hear that . . .'.

Note the difference from -**sō** [likelihood], which is attached to V/adj.-stem, AN/N ^cop.] (see 182).

As with **rashii** and **to iu**, the source of information can be indicated at the beginning of the sentence with **ni yoru to/ni yoreba** ('according to . . .') or similar expressions

sō itself is usually followed by a form of cop. (**da**, **de**, **desu**, **de aru**, etc.), but informally can also be followed directly by the fin. P **yo** (181.2.4 a). Followed by **ne**, it is used to ask for another person's reaction/comment, in interviews, etc. (181.1.1 d).

181.1 Clause-non-past **sō da** (and other forms of copula)
181.1.1 Verb **sō da**
181.1.2 Adjective **sō da**
181.1.3 Adjectival noun **sō da**
181.1.4 Noun **sō da**
181.1.5 Verb **sō na**
181.2 Clause-past **sō da** (**sō na**)
181.2.1 Verb **sō da**
181.2.2 Adjective **sō da**
181.2.3 Adjectival noun **sō da**
181.2.4 Noun **sō da**
181.2.5 **sō na**
181.3 Source of information **sō da**

181.1 CLAUSE-NON-PAST **sō da** (AND OTHER FORMS OF COPULA)

181.1.1 Verb **sō da**

a エクササイズは、散歩と家事だけで足りる【そう】だ。
ekusasaizu wa sanpo to kaji dake de tariru sō da
As far as exercise goes, just going for walks and doing the housework are supposed to be enough.

b 猛暑の年は、冬の寒さが厳しくなる【そう】だ。
mōsho no toshi wa fuyu no samusa ga kibishiku naru sō da
In years with very hot summers, the winters are said to get very cold.

c イタチやタヌキがよく顔を出す【そう】だ。
itachi ya tanuki ga yoku kao o dasu sō da
Apparently, weasels and badgers often show up.

d ネクタイを150本も持っている【そう】ですね。
nekutai o hyaku gojuppon mo motte iru sō desu ne
One hears that you own as many as 150 ties.

e その販売店では外国製乗用車を一台売ると、なんと約五十万円もうかる【そう】だ。
sono hanbaiten de wa gaikokusei jōyōsha o ichidai uru to nanto yaku gojūman-en mōkaru sō da
In that sales office they're said to earn a whopping 500,000 yen or so when they sell one foreign car

181.1.2 Adjective **sō da**

a 寿命はボルドーが圧倒的に長い【そう】だ。
jumyō wa borudō ga attōteki ni nagai sō da
As for the [wines'] life, Bordeaux [wines] are supposed to last a great deal longer.

b 大学を卒業しても、すぐには就職できない人が少なくない【そう】だ。
daigaku o sotsugyō shite mo sugu ni wa shūshoku dekinai hito ga sukunakunai sō da
There are supposed to be quite a few people who can't find a job straight away, even if they're university graduates.

c ことしは天候不順で山にはなお雪が多い【そう】だ。
kotoshi wa tenkō fujun de yama ni wa nao yuki ga ōi sō da
This year, owing to bad weather, they say that there is still a lot of snow in the mountains.

d 今年は例年に比べて雪の降る日が多いのだ【そう】だ。
kotoshi wa reinen ni kurabete yuki no furu hi ga ōi no da sō da
This year, apparently there were more days than in average years when it snowed.

181.1.3 Adjectival noun **sō da**

a 彼は小学校から皆勤だ【そう】です。
kare wa shōgakkō kara kaikin da sō desu
Apparently he hasn't missed a day since primary school.

b 保存上、長期の展示は困難だ【そう】だ。
hozon-jō chōki no tenji wa konnan da sō da
Owing to their [poor] state of preservation, prolonged showing of [the prints] is said to be difficult.

c 鴨川などを散歩するのが好きだ【そう】ですね。
kamogawa nado o sanpo suru no ga suki da sō desu ne
I understand that you like walking along the Kamo river and such places.

181.1.4 Noun **sō da**

a 趣味は旅と山登りだ【そう】だ。
shumi wa yamanobori da sō da
Apparently his hobby is mountaineering.

b 諸外国と比べても、日本は女性が働きやすい国だ【そう】だ。
sho-gaikoku to kurabete mo nihon wa josei ga hataraki-yasui kuni da sō da
Compared to most foreign countries, Japan is supposed to be a country where women find it easy to work

181.1.5 Verb **sō na**

sō na is no different in meaning to **sō da**, but it presents some event as if told by a storyteller.

a 二十三歳の若さで店を切り盛りしている【そう】な。
nijūsan-sai no wakasa de mise o kirimori shite iru sō na
Apparently, she is running the shop at the tender age of 23.

181.2 CLAUSE-PAST **sō da (sō na)**

This indicates hearsay about an event in the past.

181.2.1 Verb **sō da**

a この味を見つけるのに四年かかった【そう】だ。
kono aji o mitsukeru no ni yonen kakatta sō da
Apparently it took four years to discover this taste.

b 京都に住み始めた【そう】ですね。
kyoto ni sumi-hajimeta sō desu ne
I understand that you have started living in Kyoto.

181.2.2 Adjective **sō da**

a 社風に合わなかった【そう】だ。
shafū ni awanakatta sō da
Apparently, you didn't fit the style of that company.

181.2.3 Adjectival noun **sō da**

a 歩道橋もなかったんで、東側の住民はずいぶん不便だった【そう】だよ。
(んで＝ので)
hodōkyō mo nakatta n de higashigawa no jūmin wa zuibun fuben datta sō da yo
As there wasn't even a footbridge; the people living on the east side were quite inconvenienced, I understand.

Note - for an explanation of the use of **sō**, see text at the beginning of this section, p. 451.

181.2.4 Noun **sō da**

a 昔、相撲はその年の稲作を占う神事だった【そう】よ。
mukashi sumō wa sono toshi no inasaku o uranau shinji datta sō yo
In the old days, sumo was apparently a Shinto ceremony to divine the rice harvest for that year.

Note – for an explanation of the use of **sō**, see text at the beginning of this section, p. 451.

b 当時は女性に名前を聞くのは求婚の意を表すことだった【そう】だ。
tōji wa josei ni namae o kiku no wa kyūkon no i o arawasu koto datta sō da
At the time, asking a woman's name had the meaning of asking for her hand, I understand.

181.2.5 sō na

For an explanation of the effect of **na** rather than **da**, see 181.1.5.

a そりゃあ百人から聴衆が集まって盛況だった【そう】な。
soryā hyakunin kara chōshū ga atsumatte seikyō datta sō na
I understand that it [= the concert] was a great success, with more than a hundred people in attendance.

181.3 SOURCE OF INFORMATION sō da

The source of information is indicated by **N de wa**, **N ni yoru to**, or **N ni yoreba** 'according to'. (See also 169, 227.)

Note – sentences with source of information can also end in forms other than **sō da** (see **ni yoru to**).

a ノンベーの友人【によると】、駅前の飲み屋で繁盛する三条件は（1）安い（2）うまい（3）話を聞いてくれるおじさん、おばさんがいる——ことだ【そう】だ。
nonbē no yūjin ni yoru to ekimae no nomiya de hanjō suru san-jōken wa (1) yasui (2) umai (3) hanashi o kiite kureru ojisan obasan ga iru koto da sō da
According to a drinker friend, the three conditions for a drinking joint in front of the station to be popular are 1, to be cheap, 2, [food] to be good, and the presence of a man or woman who can listen.

b 藤田氏【によれば】定信などは最初は神様のように、あがめられた【そう】だ。
fujita-shi ni yoreba sadanobu nado wa saisho wa kamisama no yō ni agamerareta sō da
According to Mr Fujita, people like Sadanobu were at first adored like a god.

c イギリスの現行法【では】、「たとえ、それが慈悲心から生じたものであっても、殺意はやはり殺意」なのだ【そう】だ。
igirisu no genkōhō de wa tatoe sore ga jihishin kara shōjita mono de atte mo satsui wa yahari satsui na no da sō da
According to existing English law, 'The intention to kill is still intention to kill, even if it comes from a feeling of mercy'.

182 -sō [SENTENCE, ENDING]

The S ending **-sō** 'likely to' is distinguished from **sō** [hearsay] (attached to V/adj./AN/N-fin.) by the forms that precede it: V-stem, adj.-**ku**, and AN without cop. (it is not attached to N). V-stem includes the stem-form of the pot. V **dekiru**, and also of pot. endings. Note especially the negative form **-sō ni nai**.

-sō (itself inflecting like an AN) is usually followed by forms of cop. (**da/na/ni**), but colloquially and in newspaper style it can complete a sentence by itself, as in example 182.1.1 a (see 93, 169, 218, 243).

182.1 Verb-stem-**sō da** (and other forms of copula)
182.1.1 Verb-stem-**sō da**
182.1.2 Verb-potential-stem-**sō da**
182.2 Adjective-stem-**sō da**
182.3 Adjectival noun ^copula-**sō da**

182.1 VERB-STEM-sō da (AND OTHER FORMS OF COPULA)

182.1.1 Verb-stem-sō da

a 混雑は十六日午後まで続き【そう】。
konzatsu wa jūroku-nichi gogo made tsuzukisō
The congestion is likely to continue until the 16th.

b ミネラルウオーターは今後、身近な存在になっていき【そう】だ。
mireraru uōtā wa kongo mijika na sonzai ni natte ikisō da
Mineral water is likely to become a familiar presence from now on.

c 木枯らしはまだ吹き【そう】にない。
kogarashi wa mada fukisō ni nai.
The winter winds are not likely to blow yet.

d 今後の環境教育に反映でき【そう】なデータだ。
kongo no kankyō kyōiku ni han'ei dekisō na dēta da
They are data that we should be able to use for environmental education in the future.

182.1.2 Verb-potential-stem-sō da

Note potential can also be expressed by **dekisō da**, as in 182.1.1 d.

a 十月下旬までぶどう狩りが楽しめ【そう】
jūgatsu gejun made budōgari ga tanoshimesō
It should be possible to enjoy picking grapes until late October.

b 今夜はおいしい酒が飲め【そう】です。
kon'ya wa oishii sake ga nomesō desu
Tonight, I should be able to enjoy my sake.

c 下期も需要回復は見込め【そう】にない。
shimoki mo juyō kaifuku wa mikomesō ni nai
Recovery of demand cannot be expected for the second half, either.

d 中国産品で今後注目を集め【そう】なのが牛肉。
chūgoku sanpin de kongo chūmoku o atsumesō na no ga gyūniku
Among Chinese products, it is beef that is likely to attract attention in the future.

182.2 ADJECTIVE-STEM-**sō da**

Note that **yoi** and **nai** (including the negative ending **-nai**) are irregular, taking the form **yosasō** and **nasasō** (see 167.3.2.1a for an example).

a うま【そう】だね。
umasō da ne
Looks delicious.

b 「みんなマイナス三十歳」と楽し【そう】だった。
minna mainasu sanjus-sai to tanoshisō datta
They seemed to enjoy themselves, saying, ‘We’re all in our fifties’ (80–30).

c 訪れた子供たちは皆、珍し【そう】に石うすをのぞき込んでいた。
otozureta kodomo-tachi wa mina, mezurashisō ni ishiusu o nozoki-konde ita
The visiting children all looked into the stone mortar with [apparent] curiosity.

182.3 ADJECTIVAL NOUN ^COPULA-**sō da**

After AN, **-sō da** is attached directly to the N form of AN, i.e. the form without cop. (**da**, **na**, **ni**, etc.).

a 思ったより元気【そう】。
omotta yori genkisō
You look better than expected.

b 雪像を作るために近くから雪を運んできたが、雪合戦は大丈夫【そう】だ。
setsuzō o tsukuru tame ni chikaku kara yuki o hakonde kita ga, yukigassen wa daijōbusō da
The snow for making the snow sculptures was brought in from nearby, but [snow for] snowballing seems to be OK

c 小さな体だが元気【そう】で安心しました。
chiisa na karada da ga genkisō de anshin shimashita
[Father of quintuplets:] They're small ('bodies') but looked healthy, so I'm relieved.

183 SPONTANEOUS SENTENCES

'Spontaneous' refers to a number of constructions which indicate that the person having the experience is overcome by a mental state involuntarily or without being able to control it. With spontaneous potentials (examples b–d), the meaning is that some object sells, writes, etc. 'by itself' (see 156.7, 161.2.3; see also 31.3.5.1, 50.3).

a これでは政治改革の意義を無視しているとしか思わ【れ】ない。
kore de wa seiji kaikaku no igi o mushi shite iru to shika omowarenai
I can only think that they are ignoring the meaning of political reform.

b【泣け】てきそうなほど、感激した。
nakete kisō na hodo kangeki shita
I was moved so deeply that I almost cried.

c インクの粘度を下げ、滑らかに【書け】るようにした。
inku no nendo o sage nameraka ni kakeru yō ni shita
We've made the ink less sticky and smooth[er] to write with.

d エアコン、夏物飲料などが爆発的に【売れ】ている。
eakon natsumono inryō nado ga bakuhatsu-teki ni urete iru
Things like air conditioners and summer drinks are selling really fast.

e 二位に甘んじているうちに、モラールが落ちてしまった。そんな感じがし【てならな】い。
nii ni amanjite iru uchi ni morāru ga ochite shimatta. sonna kanji ga shite naranai
While [Japan] was content to be no. 2 in the world, her morale hit rock bottom. I can't help feeling that.

184 STEM FORMS

Stem forms of V and adj. (V-stem/adj.-stem) are used as a written-style conjunctive form (colloquially, V-**te**/adj.-**te** are used).

184.1 Uses of verb-stem
184.1.1 Written-style conjunctive form
184.1.2 Forming the noun-form of verbs
184.1.3 Items attaching to verb stem
184.2 Uses of adjective stem

184.2.1 Written-style conjunctive form
184.2.2 Adjective-stem attaches **suru** and **naru**
184.2.3 Forming the noun-form of certain adjectives

184.1 USES OF VERB-STEM

184.1.1 Written-style conjunctive form

This is used in compound S only (see 31.1.1).

a ふたを【し】、赤くなるまで蒸す。
futa o shi, akaku naru made musu
You put on the lid, and steam [the crab] until it turns red.

b 二人組は車で【逃走し】、夫婦にけがはなかった。
futari-gumi wa kuruma de tōsō shi fūfu ni kega wa nakatta
The gang of two took flight, and the couple were not injured.

184.1.2 Forming the noun-form of verbs

V-stem is also used as the N form of many V. In particular, this is used in the pattern V-stem **ni iku/kuru** (see 116.10).

a またぜひ働き【に】行きたい。
mata zehi hataraki ni ikitai
I very much want to go to work again.

184.1.3 Items attaching to verb-stem

V-stem attaches to the S endings **-masu** (pol.) (see 91), **-sō** (likelihood) (see 182), **-tai** (desiderative) (see 189) and **-nagara** (see 103), the fin. P **na/na yo** (familiar imperative) (see 100), the pol. imperative ending **-nasai** and **o/go** V-stem **kudasai** (see 69.5), the nominalizing suf. **-yō** and **-kata** ('way of -ing') (see 245 and 78), etc.

Note – **nasaru** and **kudasaru** have irregular stem forms, **nasai** and **kudasai**, which attach the pol. ending **-masu** directly (see 202, 65).

184.2 USES OF ADJECTIVE-STEM

184.2.1 Written-style conjunctive form

(See 31.1.1.)

a 札幌は日の出は【早く】、日没【は】遅い。
sapporo wa hinode wa hayaku, nichibotsu wa osoi
In Sapporo, the sunrise is early, and the sunset is late.

184.2.2 Adjective-stem attaches **suru** and **naru**

(See 186.)

a 【暗くな】ると照明がともる。
kuraku naru to shōmei ga tomoru
When [it] gets dark, the lights come on.

b …想像すると背筋が【寒くな】る。
sōzō suru to sesuji ga samuku naru
. . . when one imagines [a large vessel, disabled by pirates, drifting in the narrow waters of the South China Sea], a chill runs up one's spine (*lit.* "one's spine goes cold").

184.2.3 Forming the noun-form of certain adjectives

A small number of adj. in their stem-form can be used as N, attaching case P. These include **chikaku** 'vicinity' and a few others (see 1.3.4, 34.1.3).

a 「私はこの土地が好き。【遠く】へ出かけるなんて大嫌い」と言う。
watashi wa kono tochi ga suki. tōku e dekakeru nante daikirai to iu
'I like this land. I hate going away to faraway places', she says.

185 **sura** [FOCUS PARTICLE]

The focus P **sura** 'even' is like **sae** in meaning and, also like **sae**, it replaces the case P **ga/o**, but attaches to others, such as **ni** and **de**. With the exception of the use explained in 185.2 (neg. pred. only), **sura** can always be replaced by **sae**.

185.1 Noun (particle) **sura**
185.1.1 Noun **sura**
185.1.1.1 Positive predicate
185.1.1.2 Negative predicate
185.1.2 Noun + particle **sura**
185.1.3 Noun **sura mo**
185.2 **de sura aru/nai**: sandwiched between parts of the copula
185.3 Clause **sura**: attached to indirect quotations

185.1 NOUN (PARTICLE) **sura**

185.1.1 Noun **sura**

In this use, **sura** 'even' cannot usually be replaced by **mo** in the same sense, except with neg. pred

185.1.1.1 *Positive predicate*

a 著者の語りの旨さに感動【すら】覚える。
chosha no katari no umasa ni kandō sura oboeru
One even feels moved by the deftness of the author's narration.

b しかっても、殴っても言うことを聞かない娘に憎しみ【すら】覚えた。
shikatte mo nagutte mo iu koto o kikanai musume ni nikushimi sura oboeta
I even felt hatred towards my daughter, who wouldn't listen to me even if I scolded her or hit her.

c 演奏には円熟味が増し、余裕【すら】感じられる。
ensō ni wa enjukumi ga mashi yoyū sura kanjirareru
There is an increased mellowness in her [musical] performance, and one even feels that she still has things in reserve.

d ネットワークは企業自体のあり方【すら】変えようとしている。
nettowāku wa kigyō jitai no arikata sura kaeyō to shite iru
[Computer] networks are about to change even the very nature of business.

185.1.1.2 *Negative predicate*

Here, **mo** can be used in the same sense, but with less emphasis.

a 都心では一等星【すら】見られない。
toshin de wa ittōsei sura mirarenai
In the heart of the city, one can't even see stars of the first magnitude.

b 住宅が密集し、子供が遊ぶ空き地【すら】なかった。
jūtaku ga misshū shi kodomo ga asobu akichi sura nakatta
The houses were close together and there wasn't even any open space for the children to play.

c 世界の飢えの問題解決に、薄明かり【すら】見えない。
sekai no ue no mondai kaiketsu ni usuakari sura mienai
We don't see even a glimmer [of hope] for solution to the problem of world hunger.

185.1.2 Noun + particle **sura**

Here, **sura** can be replaced by **mo** in a similar sense, but **sura** is more emphatic.

a 税制をあずかる主税局に【すら】伝えていない構想だった。
zeisei o azukaru shuzeikyoku ni sura tsutaete inai kōsō datta
It [= lowering taxes backdated by 15 months] was an idea that they hadn't even communicated to the revenue department, which is in charge of the taxation system

b 最も安いロビンソンR22（二人乗り）という機種で【すら】二千万円。
mottomo yasui robinson R22 (futari-nori) to iu kishu de sura nisenman-en
Even the cheapest type of aeroplane, the Robinson R22 (a two-seater), is 20 million yen.

c 本社で【すら】つくっていないので、現地でもつくらせない。
honsha de sura tsukutte inai no de genchi de mo tsukurasenai
We're not even making [that product] at our headquarters, so we aren't going to let them make it overseas either.

185.1.3 Noun **sura mo**

Combining **sura** and **mo** makes for an even more emphatic effect.

a 一極集中は東京【すらも】苦しめている。
ikkyoku shūchū wa tōkyō sura mo kurushimete iru
Unipolar centralization is even hurting Tokyo, too.

185.2 **de sura aru/nai**: SANDWICHED BETWEEN PARTS OF THE COPULA

This means 'is (not) even'. If **mo** is used instead of **sura**, the translations 'not either' in neg. S (example a), and 'also' in pos. ones (example b) are more appropriate. In example b only, **sura** can be replaced by **sae**.

a 鬼頭さんは役職者でもなく、正社員で【すら】ない。
kitō-san wa yakushokusha de mo naku seishain de sura nai
Kitō-san isn't in a managerial position; he's not even a full-time employee.

b 現在の課題に挑戦し続ける今村の姿勢は、ある種感動的で【すら】ある。
genzai no kadai ni chōsen shi-tsuzukeru imamura no shisei wa aru shu kandō-teki de sura aru
The stance taken by Imamura, who continues to face the challenge of the tasks at hand, is even, in a way, touching.

185.3 CLAUSE **sura**: ATTACHED TO INDIRECT QUOTATIONS

In this use, **sura** can be replaced by the weaker **mo**.

a 本当にいくらお金がかかるか【すら】発表されない。
hontō ni ikura okane ga kakaru ka sura happyō sarenai
How much money it will actually cost is not even being made public.

b これでは、規制が撤廃の方向に向かうのかどうか【すら】明確でない。
kore de wa kisei ga teppai no hōkō ni mukau no ka dō ka sura meikaku de nai
With this, it is not even clear whether restrictions will move in the direction of being abolished or not.

186 suru/naru SENTENCES

Attached to adj.-stem (including (-)**nai**), and AN/N + adverbial form of cop., the V **suru** 'do' and **naru** 'become' indicate a change of state. **suru** indicates that the change is brought about intentionally, whereas with **naru** it takes place naturally. Note the pot. form of **suru**, **dekiru** (see 178, 161).

For the combinations **koto ni suru/naru** and **yō ni suru/naru** see 83.3.6, 83.3.7, 243.3.7, 243.3.4.

a 空が【暗くなっ】た。
sora ga kuraku natta
The sky darkened.

b 賃下げは労使関係を【悪くす】るだけ。
chinsage wa rōshi kankei o waruku suru dake
Lowering wages just worsens industrial relations.

c 日本【は】豊かになった。
nihon wa yutaka ni natta
Japan has become affluent.

d 趣味は仕事【になっ】てはならない。
shumi wa shigoto ni natte wa naranai
[One's] hobby must not turn into one's job.

e 日本人にはルーツ【になる】音楽がない。
nihonjin ni wa rūtsu ni naru ongaku ga nai
The Japanese have no music that can be their [equivalent of] 'roots' music.

f 来年十二月までに一万人を目標【にする】。
rainen jūnigatsu made ni ichiman-nin o mokuhyō ni suru
They [= travel agents] are aiming to [run package tours for] 10,000 people by December next year.

g 二十年後に会社をやめるか続けるかは社員の自由【にする】。
nijū-nen-go ni kaisha o yameru ka tsuzukeru ka wa shain no jiyū ni suru
We'll let the employees decide whether in 20 years' time they'll quit or stay with the company.

ni suru can be used for making a choice (when offered something, ordering in a restaurant, etc.).

h 牛【にし】ますか、豚【にし】ますか、あるいはニワトリ……。
ushi ni shimasu ka buta ni shimasu ka arui wa niwatori . . .
Would you like cows, [or] pigs, chickens? . . . [= Animal lottery]

i いくら【にし】ますか。
ikura ni shimasu ka
How much shall we make it [= the wage rise]?

187 -ta [PAST/PERFECTIVE ENDING]

The past ending **-ta**, which can also indicate completion of action (= perfect), can be attached to V/adj. (see 232, 3) and AN/N + cop. (see 35), plus the V-conversion endings caus., pass., pot. and the pol. ending **-masu** (see 91).

See also 11.2, 63.2, 221.2.3 for entries attaching always or mostly to **-ta**.

187.1 Past tense, or completion of action
187.2 Realization of a present state
187.3 Before nouns: state or completion of action
187.3.1 State
187.3.2 Completion of action

187.1 PAST TENSE, OR COMPLETION OF ACTION

a 同僚たちがそろって「ハッピー・バースデー」を歌ってくれ【た】。
dōryō-tachi ga sorotte happī bāsudē o utatte kureta
My co-workers got together and sang ‘Happy Birthday’ to me.

b 日本は豊かになっ【た】。
nihon wa yutaka ni natta
Japan has become affluent.

187.2 REALIZATION OF A PRESENT STATE

Here, there is no meaning of past; instead, **-ta** is used when the speaker realizes something.

a えっ、イギリスにもいじめはあっ【た】のか、日本だけのものかなと漠然と考えていたのは甘かった。
e' igirisu ni mo ijime ga atta no ka nihon dake no mono ka na to bakuzen to kangaete ita no wa amakatta
Eh? Bullying exists in England too? It was silly of me to think that it's unique to Japan

b そういえばFさんは別姓夫婦だっ【た】ね。
sō ieba F-san wa bessei fūfū datta ne
Come to think of it, you [= Mr & Mrs F] are a married couple with different surnames, right?

c ああ今日も外に出ずじまいだっ【た】。
aa kyō mo soto ni dezu-jimai datta
Ah well, today again I've ended up not going out of the house.

d だが、一年もたたぬうちに歯車が狂い始めた。「夫は一人では何もできない人【だった】」。
da ga ichinen mo tatanu uchi ni haguruma ga kuruihajimeta. otto wa hitori de wa nani mo dekinai hito datta
However, before a year had passed [since marriage], the cogs began to slip. 'My husband turns out to be a person who can't do anything by himself.'

187.3 BEFORE NOUNS: STATE OR COMPLETION OF ACTION

187.3.1 State

Note the use of V-**ta** or VN-**shita** before N (in relative clauses etc.). Usually, **-ta** is used rather than **-te iru** if the meaning indicates a state (see 1.7, 143).

a 安定し【た】生活 (cf., 生活が安定している)
antei shita seikatsu
a secure life

b 左右どちらかに偏っ【た】凝りは要注意だ。(cf., 凝りが偏っている)
sayū dochira ka ni katayotta kori wa yōchūi da
[Shoulder] stiffness that is confined to either the left or right side requires care.

187.3.2 Completion of action

When the same combination has no adjectival meaning, however, **(shi)-ta** indicates completion.

a 沸騰し【た】熱湯
futtō shita nettō
hot water that has come to the boil

188 -tachi [PLURAL SUFFIX]

The suf. **-tachi** is attached to N and pron. to indicate plural, mainly for humans. It can also indicate the idea of 'person *X* and those associated with *X*' (see 49, 58, 168)

188.1 Plural
188.1.1 Human
188.1.2 Non-human
188.1.3 With personal and reflexive pronouns
188.2 Noun-**tachi**: '*X* and those associated with him/her'

188.1 PLURAL

Like other plural suf., **-tachi** is optional, i.e. 188.1.1 and 188.1.2 could equally be formed without **-tachi**. The exception to this are personal and reflexive pron., which *must* attach a plural suf. if referring to more than one person (see also 145).

The fact that **ōku no hito** is still much more common than **ōku no hito-tachi** seems to indicate that this type of plural is still an optional, perhaps even a stylistic device.

a 【多くの人】が祖国のために命をささげた。
ōku no hito ga sokoku no tame ni inochi o sasageta
Many people gave their lives for their country.

b 【多くの人々】が賛成していることも聞いた。
ōku no hitobito ga sansei shite iru koto mo kiita
I also heard that many people approve [= of moving the capital].

188.1.1 Human

a 価格破壊の主役はやはり【女性たち】だ。
kakaku hakai no shuyaku wa yahari josei-tachi da
The protagonists of [fixed] price destruction are after all women.

b 世界の【"鉄人"たち】が集まり、体力の限界に挑戦する。
sekai no tetsujin-tachi ga atsumari tairyoku no genkai ni chōsen suru
The world's 'men of iron' gather and test the limits of their strength.

188.1.2 Non-human

-tachi is also these days being attached to animals (the film/book *Silence of the Lambs* became **hitsuji-tachi no chinmoku** 【羊たち】の沈黙 in Japan) and even plants. In magazine headlines even nouns like **mise** 'shop', 'restaurant' and **kēki** 'cake' appear with **-tachi** attached, but this new convention does not extend to running text.

a 中でも、ひときわ目を引くのは【フラミンゴたち】だ。
naka de mo, hitokiwa me o hiku no wa furamingo-tachi da
What particularly attracts attention amongst these are the flamingoes.

b 島大陸マダガスカルの奇妙な【植物たち】
shima tairiku madagasukaru no kimyō na shokubutsu-tachi
The strange plants of the island continent Madagascar
[Title of an article in サイエンス, a Japanese edition of *Scientific American*]

188.1.3 With personal and reflexive pronouns

One area where **-tachi** is not optional is with personal and reflexive pron. (see 158, 170).

a【僕たち】は四年生です。
boku-tachi wa yonensei desu
We are fourth-year pupils.

b【私たち】大人は考え直したい。
watashi-tachi otona wa kangae-naoshitai
We adults wish to reconsider.

c …心のどこかでいつも思っていた。"私は【あなたたち】とは違う。いつか女優になるんだ" って。
kokoro no doko ka de itsu mo omotte ita. watashi wa anata-tachi to wa chigau. itsu ka joyū ni naru n da tte
. . . always felt somewhere in my heart: 'I'm different from you people [= teachers and fellow pupils]. One day I'll be an actress'.

d 人々は【自分たち】の生活を見つめ始めた。
hitobito wa jibun-tachi no seikatsu o mitsumehajimeta
People have begun to reconsider their lives.

188.2 NOUN-**tachi**: '*X* AND THOSE ASSOCIATED WITH HIM/HER'

This used to be regarded as the typical use of **-tachi**, but is increasingly becoming rare compared to the plural-type usage (see 168).

a しかし【天心たち】はすぐ立ち直った。
shikashi tenshin-tachi wa sugu tachinaotta
But Tenshin and those around him [= his pupils] recovered immediately.

189 -tai [SENTENCE ENDING]

-tai indicates what the speaker (subject) wishes to do, 'want to', and is therefore used in the first person. The object of V-**tai** (where present) can be marked by either **ga** or **o** (see 46, 55.5, 148.3).

For indicating what second and third persons wish to do, **tai** (stem-form) usually attaches the suf **garu** (see 57.2)

The past tense **-takatta** indicates what the subject wanted to do, for both realized or unrealized wishes.

189.1 **-tai**
189.2 **-takatta**
189.2.1 Unrealized wish
189.2.2 Realized wish

189.1 -tai

a ピアノ【を】習い【たい】。
piano o naraitai
I want to learn the piano.

b 早く飛行機【が】見【たい】。
hayaku hikōki ga mitai
I want to see the aeroplane soon.

c 親しい仲間との囲碁やゴルフ、趣味の庭いじりなど悠々自適に暮らし【たい】気持ちもある。
shitashii nakama to no igo ya gorufu shumi no niwaijiri nado yūyū jiteki ni kurashitai kimochi mo aru
I also feel that I'd like to live a life of leisure, playing go and golf with close friends, and pursuing my hobby of gardening.

189.2 -takatta

189.2.1 Unrealized wish

a もっと生き【たかった】。
motto ikitakatta
I wanted to live longer [= suicide note].

b 大声で叫び【たかった】が、出来なかった。
ōgoe de sakebitakatta ga dekinakatta
I wanted to shout at the top of my voice, but couldn't.

c 本当はハワイに行き【たかった】けど、休みが短いのでグアムで買い物と泳ぎを楽しんできます。
hontō wa hawai ni ikitakatta kedo yasumi ga mijikai no de guamu de kaimono to oyogi o tanoshinde kimasu
Actually, I wanted to go to Hawaii, but because the holidays are short I'm going to Guam to enjoy shopping and swimming.

189.2.2 Realized wish

a 「子供たちにはのびのびと教育を受けさせ【たかった】」ので外国の大学に進学させた…
kodomo-tachi ni wa nobinobi to kyōiku o ukesasetakatta no de gaikoku no daigaku ni shingaku saseta
I enrolled them at a foreign university, because 'I wanted to give my children an unfettered education'.

b スキンヘッドにしたのは、「とにかく目立ち【たかった】」から。
sukinheddo ni shita no wa tonikaku medachitakatta kara
The reason why he became a skinhead was because he 'just wanted to attract attention'.

190 tame [STRUCTURAL NOUN]

tame expresses two basic meanings: purpose and cause or reason.

When used adverbially as [**tame ni** V], or to modify a N as [**tame no** N], it usually expresses purpose.

When used to connect two clauses, S1 and S2, i.e. in the form S1 **tame** S2, when **tame (ni)** is attached to plain V-past, and when completing a cleft sentence in the form **tame da**, it can express either a cause or reason.

tame is formally a N, and therefore preceded by N-mod. forms and followed by forms of the cop.: when used adverbially, by **ni**, when modifying N, by **no**, and as pred., by **da**, etc.

190.1 Reason or cause
190.1.1 Clause 1 **tame** clause 2 (+ copula)
190.1.2 Verb/adjective-**ta tame (ni)**
190.1.3 Cleft sentence **tame da**
190.2 Verb-**ru**/adjective-**i**/adjectival noun-**na**/noun **no tame ni/no**

190.1 REASON OR CAUSE

190.1.1 Clause 1 **tame** clause 2 (+ copula)

This indicates a reason or cause 'because', 'due to', 'of'. When used in the sense of 'because' (examples a–c), **tame** can be replaced by **kara** or **node**, but not in the meaning of 'due to', 'of' (example d).

a カメは昼行性である【ため】コツコツ進む。
kame wa chūkōsei de aru tame kotsukotsu susumu
Because the tortoise is diurnal, it moves slowly but steadily.

b 平地が少ない【ため】、建設コストは割高だ。
heichi ga sukunai tame kensetsu kosuto wa waridaka da
As there is not much flat ground, the construction costs are comparatively high.

c 東京—北京間は遠回り飛行の【ため】、四時間かかっている。
tōkyō pekin-kan wa tōmawari hikō no tame yojikan kakatte iru
The sector Tokyo–Beijing is a circuitous flying route, and so it takes four hours.

d 長女の結ちゃん（4）は、約一時間後に病院で一酸化中毒の【ため】死亡した。
chōjo no yū-chan (4) wa yaku ichijikan-go ni byōin de issanka chūdoku no tame shibō shita
Yū-chan (4), their eldest daughter, died about one hour later in hospital of monoxide poisoning.

190.1.2 Verb/adjective-ta **tame (ni)**

In this use, **tame (ni)** can be replaced by **kara** or **node**.

a 人間は脳を持ってしまった【ため】に社会というものを作った。
ningen wa nō o motte shimatta tame ni shakai to iu mono o tsukutta
Because humans acquired a brain, they created what's known as society.

b 気温の高い日が多かった【ため】、家庭用の需要が落ち込んだ。
kion no takai hi ga ōkatta tame ni kateiyō no juyō ga ochikonda
Because there were many warm days, domestic demand fell.

190.1.3 Cleft sentence **tame da**

This means 'the reason why . . . is because'. **kara** (but not **node**) can be used in the same way (see 75.3).

a 「ペットショップがはやるのは、新年を身ぎれいにして迎えさせたいという飼い主が増えている【ためでしょう】。
petto shoppu ga hayaru no wa shinnen o migirei ni shite mukaesasetai to iu kainushi ga fuete iru tame deshō
The reason why grooming parlours (*lit.* pet shops) are popular is probably because there are more and more owners who want to have [their pet] enter the New Year neat and tidy.

b 実が腐らなかったのは、土質が乾燥していた【ためだ】
mi ga kusaranakatta no wa doshitsu ga kansō shite ita tame da
The reason why the seed didn't rot was because the soil was dry

190.2 VERB-**ru**/ADJECTIVE-**i**/ADJECTIVAL NOUN-**na**/ NOUN **no tame ni/no**

When used adverbially in the form **tame ni** pred., or to modify N in the form of **tame no** N, **tame** usually indicates purpose. In the sentences below, **tame** is not interchangeable with **noni** [purpose] (see 141).

a 元気なうちは人の【ため】に働きたい。
genki na uchi wa hito no tame ni hatarakitai
While I'm healthy I want to work for [the benefit of] others.

b まさに相撲をやる【ため】に生まれてきたような力士。
masa ni sumō no tame ni umarete kita yō na rikishi
He's a wrestler who just seems to have been born to do sumo.

c けがをしない【ため】のトレーニング法とは何か。
kega o shinai tame no torēningu-hō to wa nani ka
[He teaches them things like] [What are the] ways of training in order to prevent injury.

191 -tara [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

-tara links two clauses (S1-**tara** S2) in the sense of 'when' or 'if'. The basic meaning of **-tara** is temporal, i.e. it is concerned with a sequence of time.

-tara forms of V, adj., AN and N + cop. are formed by attaching **-ra** to their plain past form, **-ta**.

S1-**tara** S2 indicates a condition that is used in the spoken language rather than in the formal written style. S2 can use non-factual forms such as request or hortative (**-te kudasai**, **-y(ō)**, etc.). The condition indicated by **-tara** tends to be a specific or individual condition rather than a general one (see 14).

191.1 Clause 1-**tara** clause 2 (clause 2 = non-past)
191.1.1 Clause 1-**tara** clause 2 'when'
191.1.2 Clause 1-**tara** clause 2 'if'
191.2 Clause 1-**tara** clause 2 (clause 2 = past)
191.2.1 Clause 1-**tara** clause 2: 'when'
191.2.2 Clause 1-**tara/dattara** clause 2: 'if had' (hypothetical condition)
191.3 Clause 1 **dattara** clause 2
191.3.1 **(n) dattara**
191.3.2 Clause 1 **dattara** clause 2 (clause 2 = past)
191.3.3 Noun **dattara**
191.4 **-tara** for making recommendations/suggestions
191.4.1 **-tara ii**, etc.
191.4.2 **-tara/dattara (dō)**, etc
191.5 Verb-**tara** verb **ta de**
191.6 Idiomatic expressions

191.1 CLAUSE 1-**tara** CLAUSE 2 (CLAUSE 2 = NON-PAST)

191.1.1 Clause 1-**tara** clause 2 'when'

This means 'when . . . , then' in the sense that when S1 happens (which is a matter of certainty), then S2 will happen. The implication is that S1 will occur inevitably.

a 花が終わっ【たら】、こまめに摘み取る。
hana ga owattara komame ni tsumitoru
When the flowers are finished, you pick them carefully.

b 大きくなっ【たら】、絵かきさんになりたい。
ōkiku nattara ekaki-san ni naritai
When I grow up, I want to be a painter.

c 中学に入っ【たら】、ヨッちゃんともナックんとも別々の学校になっちゃうんだよ。さびしいよ。
chūgaku ni haittara yot-chan to mo nak-kun to mo betsubetsu no gakkō ni natchau n da yo. sabishii yo
When we enter middle school, both Yot-chan and Nak-kun will be going to different schools. I'll be lonely.

191.1.2 Clause 1-**tara** clause 2 'if'

In this case, there is nothing inevitable about S1. Instead, the implication is that if the action of S1 is carried out, then the action or state of S2 will happen or apply. In this use, **-tara** has the same sense as **-ba** 'if . . . , then', but with a more colloquial ring.

a こんな領収書を税務署に出し【たら】、すぐに突っ返される。
konna ryōshusho o zeimusho ni dashitara sugu ni tsukkaesareru
If you show this sort of receipt to the tax office, they'll throw it right back at you.

b この機会を逃し【たら】、永遠にチャンスは来ないのではないか。
kono kikai o nogashitara eien ni chansu wa konai no de wa nai ka
If we miss this opportunity, we'll never get another chance!

c 漁師の仕事は好きじゃなかっ【たら】、できないからね。
ryōshi no shigoto wa suki ja nakattara dekinai kara ne
If you don't like the work of a fisherman, you can't do it, you see.

191.2 CLAUSE 1-**tara** CLAUSE 2 (CLAUSE 2 = PAST)

191.2.1 Clause 1-**tara** clause 2: 'when'

Here, S2 cannot be controlled by the speaker, being a realization or discovery on the part of the speaker, in the sense of 'when . . . , then'.

a 電話で話し【たら】、息子が泣いて困ったよ。
denwa de hanashitara musuko ga naite komatta yo
When we spoke on the phone, my son was crying, and I didn't know what to do.

b 困って即興でソロ演奏し【たら】、これが意外に受けた。
komatte sokkyō de soro ensō shitara kore ga igai ni uketa
Not knowing what to do, I improvised a solo number, and unexpectedly that was a success.

c 人間ドックに入っ【たら】、肝臓に問題ありと注意された。
ningen dokku ni haittara kanzō ni mondai ari to chūi sareta
When I had a medical check-up, I was warned that I had a liver problem.

d ４月になっ【たら】、とたんに売り注文がこなくなった。
shigatsu ni nattara totan ni urichūmon ga konaku natta
Once April came, requests for selling [shares] suddenly stopped.

191.2.2 Clause 1-**tara/dattara** clause 2: 'if had' (hypothetical condition)

Here, S2 uses an expression of conjecture or guessing in combinations with the past/perfect ending **-ta** (often in the form **-te ita**). The combination indicates a hypothetical (i.e. unrealized) condition 'if . . . , would have'.

a 操業停止がなかっ【たら】、営業利益は増えたはずだった。
sōgyō teishi ga nakattara eigyō rieki wa fueta hazu datta
Had there not been a halt in operations, the operational profit was expected to have increased.

b 湿度の高い気候だっ【たら】、金属器はさび，木製品は腐っていただろう。
shitsudo no takai kikō dattara kinzokuki wa sabi mokuseihin wa kusatte ita darō
Had it been a climate with high humidity, the iron vessels would have rusted, and the wooden items rotted.

c 留学先が米国だっ【たら】、父はうんといわなかったでしょうね。
ryūgakusaki ga beikoku dattara chichi wa un to iwanakatta deshō ne
Had I wanted to study in the US, father would probably not have allowed it.

191.3 CLAUSE 1 **dattara** CLAUSE 2

Like **nara**, its somewhat less colloquial variant, **dattara** is attached to V/adj. and AN/N as follows (see 108):

V-ru/A-i (**n(o)**) **dattara**
AN/N **dattara**

191.3.1 (n) dattara

(n) dattara is used in the same way as **(n) nara**.

a やるん【だったら】情熱をもってやりたい。
yaru n dattara jōnetsu o motte yaritai
If I do it [= voluntary work], I want to do it with dedication.

b 結婚を控えているのに申し訳ない。嫌【だったら】そう言ってくれ。
kekkon o hikaete iru no ni mōshiwake nai. iya dattara sō itte kure
I'm sorry [to transfer you] even though you're about to get married. If you don't want to go, say so.

c 永住者が自分の生活に不満があるん【だったら】、日本よりも豪州の選挙権を取得するのが筋ではないですか。
eijūsha ga jibun no seikatsu ni fuman ga aru n dattara nihon yori gōshū no senkyoken o shutoku suru no ga suji de wa nai desu ka
If the permanent residents are unhappy with their lot, surely what they should be doing is acquiring the right to vote in Australia rather than Japan.

d もし二〇度以下【だったら】死んでいたかもしれない。
moshi nijū-do ika dattara shinde ita kamoshirenai
If the water temperature had been below 20, I could have died.

e ホリデー【だったら】、フェリーがやっぱりお薦めだね。
horidē dattara ferī ga yappari o-susume da ne
If you're going on holiday (*lit.* "if it's a holiday"), then I recommend using the ferry.

f 日本【だったら】大学に行けない。
nihon dattara daigaku ni ikenai
In Japan, you wouldn't be able to get into university [= with these qualifications].

191.3.2 Clause1 **dattara** clause 2 (clause 2 = past)

This indicates a hypothetical condition (see 108.5, 191.2.2).

a あのまま【だったら】、コンパックはどこにでもある会社になっていたでしょう。
ano mama dattara konpaku wa doko ni demo aru kaisha ni natte ita deshō
Had things remained that way, Compaq would have ended up a company like any other.

191.3.3 Noun **dattara**

In this use, **dattara** functions like **wa** [focus P] (see 108.7).

a 昔【だったら】自宅から最寄り駅まで車で十五分だったが今は倍以上かかる。
mukashi dattara jitaku kara moyori eki made kuruma de jūgofun datta ga ima wa bai ijō kakaru
In the old days, it took about 15 minutes by car from home to the nearest station, but now it takes twice that time.

191.4 **-tara** FOR MAKING RECOMMENDATIONS/SUGGESTIONS

Recommendations use the form V-**tara** + an evaluatory adj., most typically **ii** 'good'. The combination literally means "is good if", i.e. 'would be nice if', or 'you should' in statements, and 'should I?' in questions.

Suggestions use the form **-tara dō** cop. **ka**.

191.4.1 **-tara ii**, etc.

The non-past **-tara ii** means 'should', whereas in the past **-ta** form, the meaning becomes hypothetical, 'should have' (with or without **noni** attached). However, attaching form like **noni** to **-tara ii** also makes a non-past sentence hypothetical (see 140).

For similar uses of conditional P (see 13.3.1, 216.6 and also 200.2.2).

a 「遊びと勉強の両方がやれ【たらいい】」とパソコン効果に期待している。
asobi to benkyō no ryōhō ga yaretara ii to pasokon kōka o kitai shite iru
He expresses his expectations for [the children's] use of personal computers with the words 'It would be nice if they could use it for both play and study'.

b スーツケースには何を詰め【たらいい】だろうか。朝はちゃんと起きられるだろうか……。
sūtsukēsu ni wa nani o tsumetara ii darō ka. asa wa chanto okirareru darō ka
What should I pack in the suitcase? Will I be able to get up in the mornings? [= stewardess training].

c こんなコンピューターがあっ【たらいい】のに。
konna konpyūtā ga attara ii no ni
It would be nice to have this kind of computer [= brainstorming].

d 「男【だったらよかった】のに」と言われて落とされたといったケースも報告され、…
otoko dattara yokatta no ni to iwarete otosareta to itta kēsu mo hōkoku sare
There were even reports of cases where [female applicants] were turned down with the words 'It would have been OK had you been male . . .' [= tight job market]

191.4.2 -tara/dattara (dō), etc.

Note that **dō (desu) ka** etc. can be omitted, as in example c (see also 210.5).

a 静岡県に引っ越し【たらどうですか】。
shizuoka-ken ni hikkoshitara dō desu ka
How about moving to Shizuoka prefecture?

b もっと頻繁に来られ【たらどうですか】。
motto hinpan ni koraretara dō desu ka
How about coming more often?

c それほど興味があった訳ではないが、「やっ【てみたら】」と誘われ、参加を決めた。
sore hodo kyōmi ga atta wake de wa nai ga yatte mitara to sasoware sanka o kimeta
I wasn't that interested in the debate, but someone asked me to give it a try, so I decided to join in.

191.5 VERB-tara VERB-ta de

Here, the same V is repeated, once with **-tara** and the second time with **-ta de**. The combination indicates that 'once the action of V is completed, some new perspective or problem appears'.

a 知名度はすでに高いため、「いっそCMをやめても良いのではないか」との指摘もあるが、「やめ【たら】 やめ【たで】『会社が危ないのか』と疑われかねません」。
chimeido wa sude ni takai tame isso shīemu o yamete mo yoi no de wa nai ka to no shiteki mo aru ga yametara yameta de kaisha ga abunai no ka to utagaware-kanemasen
As it [our product] is already well known, some point out that we could stop advertising it [on TV], but 'once we stop it, people might think the company is in danger of going bust'

b そういえば散歩に出る時は何となく浮き浮きした気分になるし、出【たら】出【たで】あっちの路地こっちの路地と“探検”したくなる。
sō ieba sanpo ni deru toki wa nantonaku ukiuki shita kibun ni naru shi detara deta de atchi no roji kotchi no roji to tanken shitaku naru
Come to think of it, when you go out for a walk you somehow feel cheerful, and once you've gone out, you feel like exploring this or that side street.

191.6 IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

Idiomatic expressions include **to shitara** 'if one assumes', **moshi ka shitara** 'perchance', **dattara** 'in that case', **dō yattara** 'how', **-ttara** (an equivalent of **to ittara** or **wa** [focus P]).

a 日本のメディアがご飯だ【としたら】、我々はしょうゆ。つまり風味づけが仕事なのです。
nihon no media ga gohan da to shitara wareware wa shōyu. tsumari fūmizuke ga shigoto na no desu
If one compares the Japanese media to rice, then we [foreign TV] are the soy sauce. In other words, our job is [to provide] the seasoning.

b【もしかしたら】努力が一生報われないかもしれない。
moshi ka shitara doryoku ga isshō mukuwarenai ka mo shirenai
My efforts may not be rewarded in my lifetime [in this job].

c アクセサリーや小物だと、趣味に合うかどうかわからないし、予算が五、六千円だから中途半端なものしか買えない。【だったら】一ランク上の日用品がいいかな。
akusesarī ya komono da to shumi ni au ka dō ka wakaranai shi yosan ga gorokusen-en da kara chūto hanpa na mono shika kaenai. dattara ichiranku ue no nichiyōhin ga ii ka na
With accessories and trinkets, you don't know whether they'll suit [the recipient's] taste, and with a budget of five or six thousand yen you can't buy anything decent. In that case, an everyday item of better quality is preferable [as a present], I guess.

d【どうやったら】もっと売り上げを伸ばせるか、固定客を増やせるか。
dō yattara motto uriage o nobaseru ka koteikyaku o fuyaseru ka
How can we increase sales and our regular customers?

e A子【ったら】、彼氏ができたとたんに、つきあいが悪くなって。
A-ko-ttara kareshi ga dekita totan ni tsukiai ga waruku natte
The moment A-ko got herself a boyfriend she became less chummy.

192 -tari [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

The conjunctive P **-tari** is attached to the **-ta** base, i.e. the form of V/adj. and AN/N that **-ta** attaches to. It indicates a range of actions or activities that are performed by the same agent (subject). After words indicating a state, **-tari suru** means 'often', 'tend to'.

Although **-tari** is mostly used in the pattern *A*-**tari** *B*-**tari suru** 'do things/things are like *A* and/or *B*', **-tari suru** can be used by itself (with the implication of 'things like'), and examples without **suru** are found too.

192.1 Clause-verb (action)-**tari**
192.2 Clause-adjective/adjectival noun/noun (state)-**tari**

192.1 CLAUSE-VERB (ACTION)-tari

This indicates a range of activities (not all are mentioned, i.e. others are usually implied), in the sense of 'do things such as'. In textbooks, etc. this use of **-tari** is often characterized as 'alternative', but examples such as b and d should make it clear that the actions are *not* alternate (and at any rate there are many examples with only one **-tari**!).

a たまの休日には本を読ん【だり】ゴルフに興じ【たりする】。
tama no kyūjitsu ni wa hon o yondari gorufu ni kyōjitari suru
On his rare days off he does things like reading books and enjoying golf.

b 例えば、盲導犬は人にほえ【たり】、かみつい【たりする】ことがない。
tatoeba, mōdōken wa hito ni hoetari, kamitsuitari suru koto ga nai
For instance, guide dogs don't do things like barking at people or biting them.

c 特に慌て【たりする】同僚はいなかった。
toku ni awatetari suru dōryō wa inakatta
There weren't any colleagues who were particularly flustered.

d 産業の本来の役割は、物やサービスを作っ【たり】、販売することである。
sangyō no honrai no yakuwari wa mono ya sābisu o tsukuttari hanbai suru koto de aru
The original role of industry is to make things and services, and sell [them].

e 二十八日は音楽を聞い【たり】、読書をして過ごされた。
nijūhachi-nichi wa ongaku o kiitari dokusho o shite sugosareta
The 28th she [= member of imperial family] spent doing things like listening to music and reading

192.2 CLAUSE-ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN/NOUN (STATE)-**tari**

In this use, **-tari** indicates a tendency.

a 都会にいれば田舎が贅沢だっ【たり】する。
tokai ni ireba inaka ga zeitaku dattari suru
If you're in the city, the countryside tends to be a luxury.

b 何とか職を見つけたいが、いい職は倍率が五百倍だっ【たり】する。
nantoka shoku o mitsuke-tai ga ii shoku wa bairitsu ga gohyaku-bai dattari suru
I'd like to find a job somehow, but the application ratio for good jobs is often 500 to one.

c 「運輸省所管の予算でも何が重要かを決める必要がある。それは時代によって港湾だっ【たり】空港、新幹線だっ【たり】する。
un'yushō shokan no yosan demo nani ga jūyō ka o kimeru hitsuyō ga aru. sore wa jidai ni yotte kōwan dattari kūkō shinkansen dattari suru
For the budget controlled by the Ministry of Transport too it is necessary to decide what's important. Depending on the times, that can be the ports, or an airport or the Shinkansen.

193 **-tatte** [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

(See 193.)

194 **-tarō** [PRESUMPTIVE ENDING]

This is an old-fashioned or written-style equivalent to **-ta darō** (see 163.1.1, 163.2)

195 **-te ageru** [PERFORMATIVE SENTENCE ENDING]

When the performative verb **ageru** (see 160.4.1) 'give to someone else' is attached to V-**te**, the implication is that someone does the action of the V for someone else's benefit. V-**te ageru** is used when the receiver of the action is of equal or lower social status than the giver; there is an object-honorific equivalent, **sashiageru**, that is used for receivers of higher status (see 65.3 e).

-te ageru needs to be used with care, as it explicitly indicates that something is done as a favour, so depending on the situation it may be more appropriate to use the V without **-te ageru**

195.1 Verb-**te ageru**
195.1.1 Second person
195.1.2 Third person
195.1.3 First person
195.2 Verb-**te agete kudasai/hoshii**
195.3 Verb-**te age-rare-ru** (potential)
195.4 Verb-causative-**te ageru**
195.5 Verb-**te ageru** in subordinate clauses

195.1 VERB-te ageru

In principle **-te ageru** indicates that the action of V is performed for the benefit of second or third persons (or animals) ‘do for someone else’, but it is possible to perform the action of V for one’s own benefit (first person), by making it look as if it’s done for someone else, as in 195.1.3.

195.1.1 Second person

a 「困った時にはいつでも相談に乗っ【てあげ】るから」と言って下さったのです。
komatta toki ni wa itsu demo sōdan ni notte ageru kara to itte kudasatta no desu
He was kind enough to say to me, ‘If you run into trouble, I’d be happy to help you out any time’.

b 盛川容疑者はAちゃんに対し、「お菓子を買っ【てあげ】る」などと言って近付き、…
morikawa-yōgisha wa A-chan ni taishi okashi o katte ageru nado to itte chikazuki
Morikawa, the suspect, said things like, ‘I’ll buy you some sweets’ to A-chan and approached her . . .

c マフィアはまず「あなたの企業を守っ【てあげ】よう」と申し出てくる。
mafia wa mazu anata no kigyō o mamotte ageyō to mōshidete kuru
At first, the Mafia come to suggest, ‘We’ll protect your business for you’.

d 「おうちまで乗せてっ【てあげ】ようか」などと声をかけて誘拐。
(てって = ていって)
o-uchi made nosetette ageyō ka nado to koe o kakete yūkai
He said things like, ‘Shall I give you a ride home?’ and then kidnapped her.

195.1.2 Third person

a 皆さんにこの地球を見せ【てあげ】たいなと思います。
mina-san ni kono chikyū o misete agetai na to omoimasu
I really want to show everyone this earth [= astronaut].

b 子供たちに自然と触れ合う機会をたくさん作っ【てあげ】たい。
kodomo-tachi ni shizen to fureau kikai o takusan tsukutte agetai
We want to provide our children with many opportunities to come into contact with nature.

c 事件でお手柄の警察犬には、ご褒美として夕食に卵をつけ【てあげ】る。
jiken de o-tegara no keisatsu-ken ni wa go-hōbi to shite yūshoku ni tamago o tsukete ageru
To reward police dogs who perform well in incidents, we give them an egg with their supper.

d 来日したものの、日本での生活に戸惑う外国人に何かし【てあげ】たかった。
rainichi shita mono no nihon de no seikatsu ni tomadou gaikokujin ni nani ka shite agetakatta
I wanted to do something for foreigners who had come to Japan [to live] but were experiencing difficulties with their lifestyle here.

e 相手の食事代を出し【てあげること】が愛している証（あかし）になるとは思わない。
aite no shokujidai o dashite ageru koto ga aishite iru akashi ni naru to wa omowanai
I don't think that paying for the other person's meal serves as proof that you love her.

f 学生時代に何をしたか、社会に出て何をしたいのかを気づかせ【てあげるの】が講師の仕事。
gakusei jidai ni nani o shita ka shakai ni dete nani o shitai no ka o kizukasete ageru no ga kōshi no shigoto
The instructor's task is to help them become aware of what they did when they were students and what they want to do when they get out into the world.

195.1.3 First person

a だれも評価してくれないから、せめて自分で自分をほめ【てあげ】たい。
dare mo hyōka shite kurenai kara semete jibun de jibun o homete agetai
Since no one else values what I've done, I'd like at least to give myself a pat on the back

195.2 VERB-**te agete kudasai/hoshii**

In this combination the meaning is 'please do (for others)', 'I/we want you to do (for others)'.

This is a combination of two performatives, **-te ageru** indicating that the action of the V is performed by the listener (or a third person) for someone else, and **-te kudasai/hoshii** indicating that this is done at the command or request of the speaker (see 24, 173).

a でもねえ、たまにはおじいちゃんとおばあちゃんの話し相手もし【てあげてほし】い。
demo nē tama ni wa ojii-chan to obā-chan no hanashi aite mo shite agete hoshii
But I'd like him to talk to Grandpa and Grandma once in a while.

b「自分の家は狭いし汚いなどといわず、ケーキ一つで構わないから隣の外国人を自宅に招い【てあげて下さ】い」と語る。
jibun no ie wa semai shi kitanai nado to iwazu kēki hitotsu de kamawanai kara tonari no gaikokujin o jitaku ni maneite agete kudasai to kataru
'Don't say that your house is small and messy and so on; invite the foreigner next door into your home, even if it's only for a piece of cake,' he says.

195.3 VERB-**te age-rare-ru** (POTENTIAL)

This combination means 'able to do for someone else'. It is used in the sense of a pot. and not as a pass. (see 161).

a 自分には、途上国とよばれるこの国の人たちに、教え【てあげられ】ることがたくさんあるだろう。
jibun ni wa tojōkoku to yobareru kono kuni no hito-tachi ni oshiete agerareru koto ga takusan aru darō
'There are probably a lot of things that I could teach the people of this country, which is referred to as a developing nation [, and thereby help them].'

b 中国語や手話などができたら、もっと相手のことを分かっ【てあげられ】たと思うと、ちょっぴり残念。
chūgokugo ya shuwa nado ga dekitara motto aite no koto o wakatte agerareta to omou to choppiri zannen
When I think that I could have understood more about them [and thereby benefited them] if I'd been able to speak Chinese and do sign language, I am a little bit disappointed.

195.4 VERB-CAUSATIVE-**te ageru**

Using a caus. V, this means '(doing someone a favour by) letting someone do something'

In line with the meaning of **-te ageru** 'doing someone a favour', caus. V usually have the permissive reading 'let' in this combination (see 20).

a こんな山の楽しさをほかの人にも体験さ【せてあげ】たい。
konna yama no tanoshisa o hoka no hito ni mo taiken sasete agetai
I would like to have other people experience this kind of enjoyment of the mountains too.

b なるべく多くの選手に試合を経験さ【せてあげ】よう。
narubeku ōku no senshu ni shiai o keiken sasete ageyō
We want to have as many of the players as possible experience matchplay.

c 宇宙での生活の様子を日本の人たちに、今すぐにでも話して聞か【せてあげ】たい。
uchū de no seikatsu no yōsu o nihon no hitotachi ni imasugu ni demo hanashite kikasete agetai
I'd like to let people in Japan know, right now, what life in space is like.

d 帰ってきたら、夫が好きなスシを食べ【させてあげ】たい」。
kaette kitara otto ga sukina sushi o tabesasete agetai
When he gets home, I want to give my husband his favourite [food] sushi to eat.

195.5 VERB-te ageru IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

(Re subordinate clauses, see 178.4.1).

a お客さんの県の石を探し【てあげれば】きっと喜ばれます。
o-kyaku-san no ken no ishi o sagashite agereba kitto yorokobaremasu
I'm sure your client would be happy if you found a prefectural stone for him.

b 外国のトッププレーヤーと話をしたり、家に泊め【てあげたりするうちに】、友人の輪もずいぶん広がりました。
gaikoku no toppu purēyā to hanashi o shitari ie ni tomete agetari suru uchi ni yūjin no wa mo zuibun hirogarimashita
In the course of talking with the top foreign players and letting them stay at my house, my circle of friends also expanded greatly.

c 男子の中には、雑用をすぐいいつけたり、何かをやっ【てあげても】感謝の気持ちを表さない人がいる。
danshi no naka ni wa zatsuyō o sugu iitsuketari nani ka o yatte agete mo kansha no kimochi o arawasanai hito ga iru
Among the boys, there are some who don't hesitate to order you [= the girls] to do odd jobs, and some who don't show any appreciation even if you do something for them

196 -te aru [SENTENCE ENDING]

V-**te aru** consists of V-**te** + **aru** (as a lexical V, **aru** means 'be there, have'). The combination indicates the state resulting from the action of V (V = volitional V-tr.). No actor can be mentioned in a **-te aru** S, although clearly one is implied in the sense that someone must have performed the action of V (except for metaphorical uses such as **kao ni kaite aru yo** 'it's written in your face'); but phrasing something in a **-te aru** sentence in effect means that no responsibility is assigned to anyone for the action of V (see 223, 233).

The fact that no actor can be mentioned in a **-te aru** S contrasts sharply with **-te iru**, where an actor is typically present (see 199).

The object of V-**te aru** is marked by either **ga** or **o** (which in turn can be replaced by **wa**).

196.1 Object marked with **ga**
196.2 Object marked with **o**
196.3 Object marked with **wa**
196.4 Noun-modifying

196.1 OBJECT MARKED WITH ga

a 工場内には三つのスローガン【が】掲げ【てある】。
kōjō-nai ni wa mittsu no surōgan ga kakagete aru
Inside the factory, three slogans are displayed.

b トラックには計5,350キロのコメ【が】積ん【であっ】た。
torakku ni wa kei gosen sanbyaku gojuk-kiro no kome ga tsunde atta
On the truck, a total of 5,350kg of rice was piled up.

196.2 OBJECT MARKED WITH o

a テントの天井からはシャンデリア【を】つり下げ【てある】。
tento no tenjō kara wa shanderia o tsurisagete aru
From the tent's ceiling a chandelier is hung.

196.3 OBJECT MARKED WITH wa

a 糸の表面【は】滑らかに加工し【てある】。
ito no hyōmen wa nameraka ni kakō shite aru
The surface of the thread is processed to make it smooth.

b 朝食【は】食堂に用意し【てあり】ます
chōshoku wa shokudō ni yōi shite arimasu
Breakfast is laid out in the dining room

c この件【は】弁護士に任せ【てあり】ます。
kono ken wa bengoshi ni makasete arimasu
This matter is left to the lawyer.

196.4 Noun-modifying

a 三人は止め【てあっ】た黒い乗用車で逃走した。
san-nin wa tomete atta kuroi jōyōsha de tōsō shita
The three fled in a black car that had been parked.

197 -te hoshii [SENTENCE ENDING]

Whereas the adj. of desire **hoshii** indicates what things or persons etc. the speaker wants (see 68), **-te hoshii** indicates what the speaker(s) wish(es) second or third persons *to do* (or not to do). These second/third persons are often omitted, but can be marked in the same S by **ni**, or other P (see 46, 57).

197.1 Without mention of second/third person
197.1.1 Present
197.1.2 Past
197.2 With mention of second/third person
197.2.1 Marked by **ni**
197.2.2 Marked by particles other than **ni**

197.1 WITHOUT MENTION OF SECOND/THIRD PERSON

197.1.1 Present

a ビデオを分け【てほし】い。
bideo o wakete hoshii
Would you spare me [a copy of] the videotape.

b 最後に、今後の望ましい企業像について考えを聞かせ【てほし】い。
saigo ni kongo no nozomashii kigyōzō ni tsuite kangae o kikasete hoshii
Finally, I'd like you [= the panellists] to give us your thoughts on the desirable company image of the future.

c 地元の酒をもっと愛し【てほし】い。
jimoto no sake o motto aishite hoshii
We want [people] to love the local rice wine more.

d 私と父とを混同し【ないでほし】い
watashi to chichi o kondō shinai de hoshii
I don't want you to confuse me with my father.

e 中日関係を簡単に壊さ【ないでほし】い。
chūnichi kankei o kantan ni kowasanai de hoshii
I don't want you to destroy China–Japan relations at one stroke.

f 子供の本だと軽く見【ないでほし】い。
kodomo no hon da to karuku minai de hoshii
I don't want people to take it lightly, thinking it's a children's book.

197.1.2 Past

In the past tense, **-te hoshikatta** indicates what the speaker(s) wanted people to do (or things to happen), both for actions that were realized and those that weren't.

a もう少し長く生き【てほしかっ】た」
mō sukoshi nagaku ikite hoshikatta
I wanted [him] to have lived a little longer.

b もっと売れ【てほしかっ】た。
motto urete hoshikatta
We wanted it [= our beer] to sell more.

c 輸入米をもっと安くし【てほしかっ】た。
yu'nyūmai o motto yasuku shite hoshikatta
I wanted them [= the government] to sell imported rice more cheaply.

197.2 WITH MENTION OF SECOND/THIRD PERSON

197.2.1 Marked by **ni**

ni (often in the form **ni wa**) specifically marks the person who the speaker wants to perform the V to which **-te hoshii** is attached.

a 米国人自身【に】銃を持つことの誤りに気づい【てほし】い。
beikokujin jishin ni jū o motsu koto no ayamari ni kizuite hoshii
We want the Americans themselves to realize the wrongness of carrying guns.

b 地元の人【に】は自分たちの住む地域の良さを認識し【てほし】い。
jimoto no hito ni wa jibun-tachi no sumu chiiki no yosa o ninshiki shite hoshii
We want the local people to be aware of the merits of the area they live in.

c 裁判所【に】は真実を理解し【てほし】い
saibansho ni wa shinjitsu o rikai shite hoshii
I want the court to understand the truth

197.2.2 Marked by particles other than **ni**

a 消費者【も】、水田が環境を守っていることを理解し【てほし】い。
shōhisha mo suiden ga kankyō o mamotte iru koto o rikai shite hoshii
We want the consumers, too, to understand that wet fields protect the environment.

b 女性【は】運動によってではなく、研究実績で地位を上げ【てほし】い。
josei wa undō ni yotte de wa naku kenkyū jisseki de chii o agete hoshii
We want women to raise their position not through movements but through the results of their research.

c 聖夜のひととき、家族連れやカップルでプラネタリウムを楽しん【でほし】い。
seiya no hitotoki kazoku-zure ya kappuru de puranetariumu o tanoshinde hoshii
During the short period of Christmas Eve, we want [people] to enjoy the planetarium in groups such as families and couples.

198 -te iku/-teku [SENTENCE ENDING]

V-**te iku** consists of V-**te** + **iku** (as a lexical V, **iku** (行く) means 'go'). The combination has several uses related to movement of the action of the V (in place or time) *away* from the speaker, although in translation this is often not captured. This contrasts with V-**te kuru**, which indicates movement (in place or time) *towards* the speaker (see 204).

Note the contracted (colloquial) forms **-teku** for **-te iku**, **-tette** for **-te itte**, **tetta** for **-te itta**, etc.

198.1 Doing verb and then going
198.2 Action away from speaker
198.3 Gradual action/development over time and space
198.4 Lexical expressions
198.5 Honorific equivalents

198.1 DOING VERB AND THEN GOING

a 川床に座ると、ひんやりした風が頬をなで【ていく】。
kawadoko ni suwaru to hin'yari shita kaze ga hoho o nadete iku
When one sits down on the riverbed, a cool wind caresses one's cheeks.

198.2 ACTION AWAY FROM SPEAKER

a 所長が事務所を勇んで出【ていっ】た。
shochō ga jimusho o isande dete itta
The director left the office in high spirits.

b 今逃げ【ていき】ました。
ima nigete ikimashita
They ran away just this moment.

198.3 GRADUAL ACTION/DEVELOPMENT OVER TIME AND SPACE

a この関係はぜひ維持し【ていき】たい。
kono kankei wa zehi iji shite ikitai
I very much want to keep up this relationship.

b 紫外線は、虫たちの生態にも影響を及ぼし【ていく】。
shigaisen wa mushi-tachi no seitai ni mo eikyō o oyoboshite iku
UV rays also have an influence on the ecology of insects.

c「自分は仕事の能力を買われたのではない」。そんな疑いが日増しに強くなっ【ていっ】た。
jibun wa shigoto no nōryoku o kawareta no de wa nai. sonna utagai ga himashi ni tsuyoku natte itta
'I wasn't employed because they valued my ability to do the job.' That doubt grew stronger by the day.

d さらに歩くと、森はどんどん深まっ【ていく】。
sara ni aruku to mori wa dondon fukamatte iku
When you walk further, the forest soon grows denser.

e 世界の果てに連れ【てっ】て。
sekai no hate ni tsuretette
Take me to the end of the world.

f だんだん当り前のおかずに魚が食べられるようになっ【てっ】た。
dandan atarimae no okazu ni sakana ga taberareru yō ni nattetta.
I gradually became able to eat fish as an ordinary dish.

g これからも浅草独特のにおいを残し【てっ】てほしいね。
kore kara mo asakusa dokutoku no nioi o nokoshitette hoshii ne
In future too I want [people] to leave intact the smells peculiar to Asakusa.

198.4 LEXICAL EXPRESSIONS

Some combinations have become lexical expressions: **yatte iku** 'get along', **motte iku** 'take something', **tsurete iku** 'take someone', **tsuite iku** 'accompany someone'.

a 里帰りのたびに故郷の両親を温泉に連れ【ていく】。
satogaeri no tabi ni kokyō no ryōshin o onsen ni tsurete iku
Whenever he goes back home he takes his parents to a hot spring.

198.5 HONORIFIC EQUIVALENTS

The forms that are used in place of the lexical V **iku** are also used in place of **iku** in **-te iku** (see 65.3).

In humble usage (see 65), **-te iku** is replaced by **-te mairimasu**, and in honorific use, by **-te irassharu**.

a その推移を見守っ【てまいり】たい。
sono suii o mimamotte mairitai
I'd like to watch these changes.

199 -te iru/teru [SENTENCE ENDING]

V-**te iru** consists of V-**te** + **iru** (as a lexical V, **iru** means 'be there'). The combination indicates action in progress (with action V), or the state resulting from the action of V (with state V). In either use the actor (the person responsible for the action of V) is usually mentioned (unless understood from the context), which contrasts sharply with **-te aru**, where no actor can be mentioned in the same sentence (see 196).

Colloquially, **-te iru/-te inai/-te imasu**, etc. are often contracted to **-teru/-tenai/-temasu**.

Note that certain verbs are used mostly in the **-te iru** form (**sunde iru** 'live', **motte iru** 'have', **shitte iru** 'know') except when there is clear future reference, when the **-te iru** form is almost never found (unless with special nuance of non-change of the present situation), hence **sumitai, sumu tsumori** rather than **sunde itai, sunde iru tsumori**, etc. (see also 196, 226).

199.1 Action in progress
199.2 Resulting state
199.3 Both interpretations possible: verbs of motion/change
199.4 In compound sentences (clause 1-**te ite**, clause 2): implying a reason

199.1 ACTION IN PROGRESS

a 大きなメイポールの下で人々が踊っ【ている】。
ōkina meipōru no shita de hitobito ga odotte iru
Under a big maypole people are dancing.

b 最近、写真集が売れ【てい】る。
saikin shashinshū ga urete iru
At the moment, collections of photographs are selling well.

199.2 RESULTING STATE

a お、メールが来【てる】ぞ。
o mēru ga kiteru zo
Oh, an (e-)mail has come!

b 知っ【てる】知っ【てる】。
shitteru shitteru
I know, I know.

c 遺書は見つかっ【てい】ない。
isho wa mitsukatte inai
A will hasn't been found.

d 生徒のほとんどは教科書を持っ【てい】ない。
seito no hotondo wa kyōkasho o motte inai
Most of the pupils don't have textbooks.

e 出版社の名も翻訳者の名も覚え【て】ない。
shuppansha no na mo hon'yakusha no na mo oboetenai
I don't remember the name of the publisher or the translator.

f このところ自分の中で緊張感が欠け【てる】な、と感じ【て】ました。
kono tokoro jibun no naka de kinchōkan ga kaketeru na to kanjitemashita
I was feeling that recently I was lacking internal motivation.

199.3 BOTH INTERPRETATIONS POSSIBLE: VERBS OF MOTION/CHANGE

In isolation, both interpretations are possible, but the translation given has taken the context into account (see also 226).

a 人件費は年々上がっ【ている】。
jinkenhi wa nennen agatte iru
Personnel costs are rising every year.

b 時代は変化し【ている】。
jidai wa henka shite iru
Times have changed.

c 競争が激しくなっ【ている】。
kyōsō ga hageshiku natte iru
Competition has become fierce

199.4 IN COMPOUND SENTENCES (CLAUSE 1-**te ite**, CLAUSE 2): IMPLYING A REASON

In compound S, the conjunctive form S1-**te ite** S2, the conjunctive form of **-te iru**, is used to imply that S1 is a reason for S2. To indicate an explicit reason, P like **kara** or **node** are used (see 75, 139).

Note – in the written/formal spoken style, **-te ori** is used as the conjunctive form rather than **-te i** (which is not normally used) or **-te ite** (which is considered too colloquial for the written style). Compare:

a 「ちょっと変わっ【ていて】面白そう」と迷わずこのゼミを選んだ。
chotto kawatte ite omoshirosō to mayowazu kono zemi o eranda
I chose this seminar without hesitation, thinking 'This looks interesting, being a little unusual'.

b いじめは潜在化し【ており】、まさに氷山の一角」と指摘している。
ijime wa senzai-ka shite ori masa ni hyōzan no ikkaku to shiteki shite iru
He points out that 'bullying has become deeply entrenched, and is just the tip of the iceberg'.

200 -te itadaku [PERFORMATIVE SENTENCE ENDING]

When the performative V **itadaku** (a formal equivalent of **morau**, see 160.4.3) is attached to V-**te**, the implication is that the subject has the action of the V performed by someone else for his/her benefit. V-**te itadaku** is used when the subject (= recipient of the favour) is of lower social status than the giver. **-te itadaku** often implies that the subject (who is often the speaker) is getting the performer to do a favour by asking or persuading him/her (see 207, 65).

200.1 Verb-**te itadaku**
200.1.1 Verb-**te itadaku**
200.1.2 Verb-**te itadakitai**
200.1.3 Clause 1 verb-**te itadai-te/itadaki** clause 2 (**arigatō**, etc.)
200.2 Verb-**te itadaku** (potential form)
200.2.1 Verb-**te itadake-ru ka/-nai ka**
200.2.2 Verb-**te itadakeru** + conjunctive particle **to/-ba/-tara** + evaluatory predicate
200.3 Verb-causative-**te itadaku**
200.3.1 Verb-causative-**te itadaku**
200.3.2 Verb-causative-**te itadakitai**

200.1 VERB-te itadaku

200.1.1 Verb-te itadaku

Usually, V-**te itadaku** implies that you get others to do something for you 'I/we get you/others to do something for me/us', but as in example c, **-te itadaku** can be used as if it were the pass. form (**kudasareru** does not exist) of **-te kudasaru**, 'kindly do(es) for me/us'.

a 成績表はちゃんと提出し【ていただき】ます。
seisekihyō wa chanto teishutsu shite itadakimasu
We get them to submit their transcripts properly.

b 委員会ができればそこで具体的な作業をやっ【ていただく】。
iinkai ga dekireba soko de gutai-teki na sagyō o yatte itadaku
After the committee is formed, we'll have it do the actual work.

c その時かけ【ていただい】た言葉は、今でも私の宝物のようになっている。
sono toki kakete itadaita kotoba wa ima demo watashi no takaramono no yō ni natte iru
The words they [= the people who helped me] spoke to me at that time are like a treasure to me even now.

200.1.2 Verb-te itadakitai

In line with the meaning of **-tai**, this means 'I/we'd like you to do (for me/us) . . .' (see 189).

a 理解し【ていただきた】い。
rikai shite itadakitai
I'd like you to understand.

b 今後も協力し【ていただきた】い。
kongo mo kyōryoku shite itadakitai
We hope to have your continued co-operation in the future.

c 最終日は確定していませんから。もう少し後にし【ていただきた】い。
saishūbi wa kakutei shite imasen kara. mō sukoshi ato ni shite itadakitai
[My] last day [in office] hasn't been set yet. I'd like you to put [that question about how I look back on my time in the Cabinet] off a little longer.

d グラフをみ【ていただきた】い
gurafu o mite itadakitai
Please look at the graph (*lit.* "I'd like you to look at the graph").

200.1.3 Clause 1 verb-**te itadai-te/itadaki** clause 2 (**arigatō**, etc.)

Compound S where S1 ends in the conjunctive form, or conjunctive form equivalent, of **-te itadaku**, followed in S2 by an expression of thanks, express the meaning ‘thank you for doing’ (see 31.3.4).

a こんなに暑い中に来【ていただいて】みなさんありがとう。
konna ni atsui naka ni kite itadaite mina-san arigatō
Thank you all for taking the trouble to come at such a hot time.

b 私だけでなく光を温かく迎え【ていただき】感謝している。
watashi dake de naku hikaru o atatakaku mukaete itadaki kansha shite iru
Thank you for giving a warm welcome not only to me but also to Hikaru.

200.2 VERB-**te itadaku** (POTENTIAL FORM)

200.2.1 Verb-**te itadake-ru ka/-nai ka**

This signals a polite request in Q form, pos. or neg., in the sense of ‘could you please’.

a 返事はちょっと待っ【ていただけ】ますか。
henji wa chotto matte itadakemasu ka
Could I ask you to wait a little while for my answer?

b ほかにはない目玉商品として扱っ【ていただけ】ませんか。
hoka ni wa nai medama shōhin to shite atsukatte itadakemasen ka
Can’t we get you to handle it as a loss leader that nobody else has?

200.2.2 Verb-**te itadakeru** + conjunctive particle **to/-ba/-tara** + evaluatory predicate

-te itadakeru in subordinate clauses ending in **to/-ba/-tara** followed by an evaluatory pred. such as **ii** ‘good’, **ureshii** ‘happy’, etc. indicates the idea of ‘it would be nice if’, ‘I/we’d be happy if’.

Note – the evaluatory pred. can be omitted (example c).

a 気に入っ【ていただけたらいい】のですが。
ki ni itte itadaketara ii no desu ga
I hope you’ll like it.

b 鈴木さんは「同世代に聴い【ていただけるとうれしい】」とニッコリ。
suzuki-san wa dōsedai ni kiite itadakeru to ureshii to nikkori
Suzuki-san, with a smile, said, ‘I’ll be happy if my generation listens to it’.

c 本人は固辞しているそうだが、やっ【ていただければ】と思う。
honnin wa koji shite iru sō da ga yatte itadakereba to omou
I hear that he himself has firmly declined, but I hope he'll take it [= the chairmanship] on.

200.3 VERB-CAUSATIVE-te itadaku

The causative here is used in the permissive meaning 'allow', 'let' (see 20), with the combination literally meaning "I receive the favour of being allowed to do something".

200.3.1 Verb-causative-te itadaku

This means 'allow me to do', or 'have the pleasure of doing'.

a はい、やら【せていただき】ます。
hai yarasete itadakimasu
OK, I'll do it (= allow me to do it).

b 大変興味深く読ま【せていただき】ました。
taihen kyōmi-bukaku yomasete itadakimashita
I had the privilege of reading it with great interest.

c 祝い金十万円を贈らせ【せていただき】ます。
iwaikin jūman-en o okurasete itadakimasu
I take the liberty of sending you a congratulatory gift of one hundred thousand yen.

d 公私にわたり親しくお付き合いさ【せていただ】いた。
kōshi ni watari shitashiku o-tsukiai sasete itadaita
I had the pleasure of close association with him in both official and private life.

200.3.2 Verb-causative-te itadakitai

This combination means 'please let/allow me to'.

a 考え【せていただきたい】。
kangaesasete itadakitai
Please let me think it over.

b 二人で合意書に署名さ【せていただきたい】。
futari de gōisho ni shomei sasete itadakitai
Please let both of us sign the letter of agreement.

c そういう状況が生まれれば、喜んで【やらせていただきたい】。
sō iu jōkyō ga umarereba yorokonde yarasete itadakitai
If it came to that situation [= having a top level talk], I'd be happy to do so.

201 -te kara [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

V-**te kara** is a conjunctive P that basically joins two clauses in the sense of 'after', but has some other uses too.

The structural N **ato** can also be used in the sense of 'after' (see 11.2, 12).

201.1 Clause 1-**te kara** clause 2
201.2 Clause 1-**te kara** clause 2 **made** (**ni**) clause 3
201.3 Noun phrase **wa** clause-**te kara** (+ copula)
201.4 Cleft sentence-**te kara** (+ copula)

201.1 CLAUSE 1-te kara CLAUSE 2

In this use, -**te kara** means 'after'.

Note – With time expressions the suf. **-go** 'after (amount of time)' can be added, resulting in the idea of 'after' being expressed twice (examples c and f).

a きちんと調べ【てから】にしてほしい。
kichinto shirabete kara ni shite hoshii
We want them to [put things on the market] after they've checked them out properly.

b ポケベルも規制緩和などで低価格になっ【てから】中高校生などに普及した。
pokeberu mo kisei kanwa nado de teikakaku ni natte kara chūkōkō-sei nado ni fukyū shita
Beepers became widespread among people like middle- and high-school pupils after they became cheap due to relaxing of regulations.

c 最初の死亡例が日本商事に報告され【てから】二十二日【後】だった。
saisho no shibōrei ga nihon shōji ni hōkoku sarete kara nijū ninichi-go datta
It was (*lit.* "after") 22 days after the first death [case] was reported to Nippon Shōji.

d ミッション系の学校で学んだ人でも、卒業し【てから】教会へ何度足を運んだか。
misshon-kei no gakkō de mananda hito demo sotsugyō shite kara kyōkai e nando ashi o hakonda ka
One wonders how often even those who went to a mission school have been to church after graduating

e 旧聖堂はフランシスコ・ザビエルが日本初のキリスト教会を山口に建て【てから】四百年を記念し、一九五二年に造られた。
kyūseidō wa furanshisuko zabieru ga nihon-hatsu no kirisuto kyōkai o yamaguchi ni tatete kara yonhyaku-nen o kinen shi sen kyūhyaku gojūni-nen ni tsukurareta
The old church had been built in 1952 in commemoration of the 400th anniversary of Francis Xavier's building of Japan's first Christian church in Yamaguchi.

f 地震が起き【てから】約十分【後】に駆けつけた本田彰駅長は「これまでに経験したこともない大きな地震で立っていられなかった」。
jishin ga okite kara yaku juppun-go ni kaketsuketa honda akira ekichō wa kore made ni keiken shita koto mo nai ōki na jishin de tatte irarenakatta
Honda Akira, the stationmaster, who rushed to the scene (*lit.* "after") 10 mins after the earthquake struck, [said], 'It was a quake of a magnitude I haven't experienced before; I was unable to remain standing'.

201.2 CLAUSE 1-**te kara** CLAUSE 2 **made (ni)** CLAUSE 3

This expresses a range of actions in time, 'from . . . to/until', with S3 indicating a time (see also 74, 85, 87).

a 一瞬の出来事で異常を感じ【てから】転覆する【まで】一分間ぐらいだったという。
isshun no dekigoto de ijō o kanjite kara tenpuku suru made ippun-kan gurai datta to iu
He says that it happened very quickly, taking only about one minute from the time they felt something amiss to the boat's capsizing.

b 初めは一日あたり百人台だった。それが三百人になり、五百人になり、千人を超え【てから】三千人を突破する【までに】はわずか三日しかかからなかった。
hajime wa ichinichi atari hyakunin-dai datta. sore ga sanbyakunin ni nari gohyakunin ni nari sennin o koete kara sanzennin o toppa suru made ni wa wazuka mikka shika kakaranakatta
At first [the number of refugees] was in the range of 100 per day. That became 300, 500, and from the time it exceeded 1000 till it reached the 3000 mark took only 3 days.

201.3 NOUN PHRASE **wa** CLAUSE-**te kara** (+ COPULA)

a 「私たちの正月休みは三が日が過ぎ【てから】です」という。
watashi-tachi no shōgatsu yasumi wa sanganichi ga sugite kara desu to iu
'Our New Year vacation begins after the three official holidays', he says

201.4 CLEFT SENTENCE-**te kara** (+ COPULA)

a しかし、その笠智衆でも、味が本当に出せるようになったのは、『八十すぎ【てから】ですよ』と、自ら語っていたそうだ。
shikashi sono ryū chishu demo aji ga hontō ni daseru yō ni natta no wa hachijū sugite kara desu yo to mizukara katatte ita sō da
But even that [formidable actor] Ryu Chishu apparently said himself that it was 'from his eighties' that he could really give meaning [to a part].

202 -te kudasaru [PERFORMATIVE SENTENCE ENDING]

When the performative V **kudasaru** (a formal equivalent of **kureru**, see 160.4.2) is attached to V-**te**, the implication is that someone does the action of V for the benefit of the speaker or a member of the speaker's group (such as his family members, colleagues, etc.). V-**te kudasaru** is used when the subject (or performer) of the action of V is of higher social status than the receiver (see 203, 65).

The Group II V **kudasaru** is somewhat irregular in that the imp. form (used for polite requests) is **kudasai**, which is also the (irregular) -**masu**-stem (see 184.1.3).

202.1 Verb-**te kudasaru**
202.1.1 Verb-**te kudasaru**, etc.
202.1.2 Verb-**te kudasai**
202.2 Verb-causative-**te kudasai**

202.1 VERB-te kudasaru

202.1.1 Verb-**te kudasaru**, etc.

This is used of the second or third person.

a 今決め【てくだされば】××をサービスします。
ima kimete kudasareba xx o sābisu shimasu
If you would oblige us by deciding now, we will throw in such-and-such free of charge.

b みなさん一生懸命にし【てくださっ】てますよ。(てます = ています)
minasan isshōkenmei ni shite kudasattemasu yo
They [assistant staff] are all helping as much as they can, you know.

c まだ無名だった私の表装に合わせて、自分の作品を塗り直し【てくださっ】た。
mada mumei datta watashi no hyōsō ni awasete jibun no sakuhin o nuri-naoshite kudasatta
He was kind enough to re-paint one of his own pieces to go with the mount that I, who was still an unknown, had made.

d 温かく見守り、応援し【てくださっ】た皆様に感謝の気持ちでいっぱいです。
atatakaku mimamori ōen shite kudasatta mina-sama ni kansha no kimochi de ippai desu
I am filled with thanks for all the people who so kindly watched over and supported me.

202.1.2 Verb-te kudasai

Being the imp. form of **kudasaru, kudasai** expresses a command to someone else to do (or not to do) something 'please do'. In tone, it is less blunt than **kure** (see 203).

The addition of the fin. P **ne** (example h) to **kudasai** makes the command more intimate (see also 24.2).

a メニューを見せ【てください】。
menyū o misete kudasai
Please show me a menu.

b 待っ【てください】。
matte kudasai
Please wait.

c わかって【てください】。
wakatte kudasai
Please understand.

d 落ち着い【てください】。
ochitsuite kudasai
Please calm down.

e もちろん、飲み過ぎには注意し【てください】。
mochiron nomisugi ni wa chūi shite kudasai
Of course, be careful not to drink too much, please.

f 早く元気になっ【てください】.
hayaku genki ni natte kudasai
Please get well soon.

g 虫歯になるので、娘にはアメをあげない【でください】。
mushiba ni naru no de musume ni ame o agenai de kudasai
Please don't give my daughter any bonbons as she'll get bad teeth.

h じゃ、しばらく我慢し【てくださいね】。
ja shibaraku gaman shite kudasai ne
All right, please put up with [this = medical examination] for a bit.

202.2 VERB-CAUSATIVE-**te kudasai**

The caus. expressing the permissive here, this means 'please let/allow me to' (see 20).

a もっと聞か【せてください】。
motto kikasete kudasai
Please let me hear more.

b 一日だけ考え【させてください】。
ichinichi dake kangaesasete kudasai
Please let me think it over for just one day.

c 家族と相談さ【せてください】。
kazoku to sōdan sasete kudasai
Please let me discuss it with my family.

d 発売するワックスの宣伝に、あなたの車を使わ【せてください】。
hatsubai suru wakkusu no senden ni anata no kuruma o tsukawasete kudasai
Please let us use your car for an advertisement for a wax we're putting on the market.

203 -te kureru [PERFORMATIVE SENTENCE ENDING]

When the performative V **kureru** (a less formal equivalent of **kudasaru**, see 160.4.2) is attached to V-**te**, the implication is that someone does the action of the V for the benefit of the speaker, or a member of the speaker's group (such as his family members, colleague, etc.).

When third persons are concerned, the choice between **-te kureru** and **-te ageru** depends on which side the speaker (or writer) sympathizes or identifies with: if he takes the third person(s)' side, **-te kureru** is used, otherwise **-te ageru** (see 195).

In a story about a 'career woman', the reporter goes home to have dinner with her and her husband, and therefore he identifies with the woman:

a 自宅近くの駅には夫が車で迎えにき【てくれ】ていた。
jitaku chikaku no eki ni wa otto ga kuruma de mukae ni kite kurete ita
Her husband had come by car to pick her up at the station near[est] to their home.

V-te **kureru** is used when the performer of the action of V is of equal or lower social status than the receiver (see 202).

203.1 Verb-**te kureru**
203.1.1 Subject = human
203.1.2 Subject = non-human
203.2 Verb-**te kurete** + evaluatory predicate
203.3 Verb-**te kure** (direct and indirect commands)
203.3.1 Direct commands
203.3.2 Indirect commands
203.3.3 Verb-**te kureru na**: negative commands
203.3.4 Verb-**nai de kure**: negative commands
203.3.5 Verb-**te kure-nai/-masen ka**: requests in negative-question form
203.4 [Verb-causative]-**te kureru**

203.1 VERB-te kureru

V-**te kureru** can be used for second or third persons, or personified non-human entities 'you/someone else/it gives me/us'.

203.1.1 Subject = human

Note – the effect of **-te kureru** is often difficult to capture in translation; as in example c, there are even cases where a pass. is the most appropriate translation.

a よく来【てくれ】ました。
yoku kite kuremashita
Thank you for coming.

b みんなが応援し【てくれ】ました。
minna ga ōen shite kuremashita
[Father of Olympic gold medallist:] Everyone cheered him on.

c 館内では解説のため係の人が案内し【てくれ】る。
kannai de wa kaisetsu no tame kakari no hito ga annai shite kureru
Inside the building, one is shown around by the clerk in charge to explain things.

d 食事は母親が毎日作っ【てくれ】るし、平日は洗濯もし【てくれ】る。
shokuji wa hahaoya ga mainichi tsukutte kureru shi heijitsu wa sentaku mo shite kureru
The mother makes the meals for them [= children] every day, and on weekdays she also does the laundry.

e 大人は分かっ【てくれ】ない。
otona wa wakatte kurenai
Adults don't understand me.

f 中学生から吸っている。どうして、もっと早く教え【てくれ】なかったろう。
chūgakusei kara sutte iru. dōshite motto hayaku oshiete kurenakattarō
I've been smoking from the time I was in junior high. Why didn't [people] tell me sooner [about the dangers of smoking], I wonder.

g 同僚たちがそろって「ハッピー・バースデー」を歌っ【てくれ】た。
dōryō-tachi ga sorotte happī bāsudē o utatte kureta
My co-workers sang 'Happy Birthday' to me together.

h 二千万出し【てくれれば】一億にはなる。
nisenman dashite kurereba ichioku ni wa naru
If you give us twenty million, we'll turn it (*lit.* "it'll turn") into a hundred million at least.

203.1.2 Subject = non-human

These non-human subjects are treated linguistically as if they were human, e.g. the lottery tickets in example b (if they win), are seen to do the speaker a favour!

a 答えは時間が出し【てくれ】る…
kotae wa jikan ga dashite kureru
Time will give us the answer . . .

b 当たっ【てくれたら】、仕事はやめちゃうよ。
atatte kuretara shigoto wa yamechau yo
If [the lottery tickets] win, I'm going to quit my job, you know.

c とにかく雨さえ降っ【てくれれば】。
tonikaku ame sae futte kurereba
Anyway, if it would only rain.

d 会話だけでは伝えられない事を文章は伝え【てくれ】る。
kaiwa dake de wa tsutaerarenai koto o bunsho wa tsutaete kureru
The written word conveys to us things which cannot be communicated by conversation alone.

e 女性を大切にし【てくれ】る会社がいい。
josei o taisetsu ni shite kureru kaisha ga ii
I'd prefer a company that values women.

f 植物も愛情を与えれば与えるほど報い【てくれ】る。
shokubutsu mo aijō o ataereba ataeru hodo mukuite kureru
With plants too, the more affection you give them, the more they reward you

203.2 VERB-te **kurete** + EVALUATORY PREDICATE

Depending on the meaning of pred., this combination means 'it's good that you/he, etc. are/were . . .' 'I/we are happy that you/he/she do/did something (for me/us) . . .'.

a あなたがい【てくれて助かっ】たわ。
anata ga ite kurete tasukatta wa
It really helped that you were here [for me].

b あなたのような日本人がい【てくれてうれし】い。
anata no yō na nihonjin ga ite kurete ureshii
[Apology for war atrocities to Korean school, reply:] We're glad there are Japanese people like you.

c 最初はビビったが、今では来【てくれて良かっ】たと思う。
saisho wa bibitta ga ima de wa kite kurete yokatta to omou
At first we were afraid, but now we're happy that it [= new computing magazine] entered the fray.

203.3 VERB-te **kure** (DIRECT AND INDIRECT COMMANDS)

(See also 24, 178.4.2.1, 178.4.2.2.)

203.3.1 Direct commands

a ドアを開け【てくれ】。
doa o akete kure
Open the door [for me].

b わかっ【てくれ】。
wakatte kure
Do understand.

c これを見【てくれ】。
kore o mite kure
Look at this.

d 今日は寝ないで起きてい【てくれ】。
kyō wa nenai de okite ite kure
Today, don't go to sleep; stay awake.

e さっさと出て行っ【てくれえっ】。
sassa to dete itte kure'
Just get out!

f ちょっと待っ【てくれ】。
chotto matte kure
Wait a minute.

203.3.2 Indirect commands

Indirect commands are a kind of embedded S (see 178.4.2), and follow the same rule, i.e. that the form of the actual command is reduced to its simplest form, that is, without any polite endings such as **-masu**, and using the least honorific of the relevant set of performative V (where the original command may have ended in **-te kudasai**, the indirect command uses **-te kure**, for example).

a 全国から講演し【てくれ】という要請がたくさんきている。
zenkoku kara kōen shite kure to iu yōsē ga takusan kite iru
There are lots of requests from all over the country asking me to give a lecture.

203.3.3 Verb-**te kureru na**: negative commands

This is used to tell someone off for doing something out of line (see 101).

a 余計なことをし【てくれるな】と、文句を言われた。
yokei na koto o shite kureru na to monku o iwareta
He complained that I shouldn't give him help he didn't ask for.

203.3.4 Verb-**nai de kure**: negative commands

This is a less polite version of **-nai de kudasai**, and compared to 203.3.3, the more usual way of making a neg. command (see also 112.4.4).

a 待ってくれ。置いていか【ないでくれ】。
matte kure. oite ikanai de kure
Wait! Don't leave me here!

b これ以上出費の機会を増やさ【ないでくれー】。
kore ijō shuppi no kikai o fuyasanai de kurē
Please don't create even more occasions for spending money [on presents]!

203.3.5 Verb-**te kure-nai/-masen ka**: requests in negative-question form

Being less direct, requests in neg.-Q form are more polite than V-**te kure** commands. They are roughly equivalent to English 'can you', 'will you' in the plain form, and 'could you' or 'would you' in the **-masu** form (see 114, 173).

a 仕事を手伝っ【てくれないか】。
shigoto o tetsudatte kurenai ka
How about giving us a hand with our work?

b ちょっと話があるから来【てくれないか】。
chotto hanashi ga aru kara kite kurenai ka
I want to speak to you a moment, so could you come here.

c ちょっと上の会議室まで来【てくれませんか】。
chotto ue no kaigishitsu made kite kuremasen ka
Could you come to the conference room upstairs for a moment.

203.4 [VERB-CAUSATIVE]-te kureru

The caus. has permissive meaning in this use 'let me/us do' (see 20).

a 一晩考え【させてくれ】。
hitoban kangaesasete kure
Let me think about it overnight.

b 何でこんなことしか、やら【せてくれ】ないのよ。
nan de konna koto shika yarasete kurenai no yo
Why do they only let me do [boring] things like this?

204 -te kuru [SENTENCE ENDING]

V-**te kuru** consists of V-**te** + **kuru** (as a lexical V, **kuru** means 'come'). The combination has several uses related to movement of the action of the V in place or time toward the speaker (see 198, which indicates movement of the action V in place or time away from the speaker).

204.1 Doing verb and then coming
204.2 Action of verb directed toward speaker
204.3 Gradual or sudden change/development
204.4 Lexical expressions
204.5 Honorific/humble equivalents

204.1 DOING VERB AND THEN COMING

The implication is that the speaker (or a second/third person) performs the action of V, and then comes to where the speaker is now, or was at the time 'go and do something'.

a 行っ【てくる】よ。
itte kuru yo
I'm off/I'm going out.

b 原因を調べ【てこ】い
gen'in o shirabete koi
Go and check on the cause

204.2 ACTION OF VERB DIRECTED TOWARD SPEAKER

a 生あたたかい風が海から吹い【てくる】。
nama-atatakai kaze ga umi kara fuite kuru
An unpleasantly warm wind is blowing in from the sea.

b 二人の老人が中から出てきて話しかけ【てき】た。
futari no rōjin ga naka kara dete kite hanashikakete kita
Two old men came out and addressed us.

c あの良き時代は永遠に返っ【てこ】ない。
ano yoki jidai wa eien ni kaette konai
Those good times will never return [to us].

204.3 GRADUAL OR SUDDEN CHANGE/DEVELOPMENT

a にわか雨が降っ【てき】た。
niwaka-ame ga futte kita
A sudden shower fell.

b 大学で中国語を勉強し【てき】ました。
daigaku de chūgokugo o benkyō shite kimashita
I studied Chinese at university.

c 何とかここまで生き【てこ】られた。
nantoka koko made ikite korareta
Somehow I managed to live until now.

d 消費者意識も変わっ【てき】た。
shōhisha ishiki mo kawatte kita
Consumer consciousness has also changed.

e 神学校から東に進むと、テニスコートが見え【てくる】。
shingakkō kara higashi ni susumu to tenisu kōto ga miete kuru
When one proceeds east from the divinity school, tennis courts come into view.

204.4 LEXICAL EXPRESSIONS

Note lexical expressions such as **yatte kuru** 'come, come along', **motte kuru** 'bring something', **tsurete kuru** 'bring someone', **tsuite kuru** 'accompany'.

a 今年もクリスマスが【やってくる】。
kotoshi mo kurisumasu ga yatte kuru
Christmas is almost here again this year.

204.5 HONORIFIC/HUMBLE EQUIVALENTS

In hon. usage (see 65), **kuru** is replaced by **oide ni naru** or **irassharu**. Instead of **oide ni natte kudasai**, **oide** alone can be used as the imp. (example a).

Humble equivalents of **kuru** are **mairu/mairimasu** (see 65).

a お菓子をあげるからつい【ておいで】。
o-kashi o ageru kara tsuite oide
I'll give you some sweets, so please come with me.

b 町民の宇宙に対する興味も増え【てまいり】ました。
chōmin no uchū ni taisuru kyōmi mo fuete mairimashita
The citizens' interest in space has increased too.

205 -te miru [SENTENCE ENDING]

V-**te miru** consists of V-**te** + **miru** (as a lexical V, **miru** means 'see'). The combination indicates that the action of V (= volitional V) is performed to see what the result is, i.e. 'try', 'try and see' ('try' is often unneccessary in translation).

-te miru often attaches **-tai** (**-te mi-tai** 'want to try' and **-yō** (**te-mi-yō** 'let's try'). **-te miru** can also attach to the lexical V **miru** 'see': **mite miru** (見てみる) 'look at, examine' (see 246).

a 考え【てみ】ます。
kangaete mimasu
I'll think about it.

b 恐る恐る聞い【てみ】た。
osoruosoru kiite mita
Timidly I asked.

c いつかまた、行っ【てみ】たい。
itsu ka mata itte mitai
Sometime, I'd like to go again.

d 米国の例を見【てみ】よう。
beikoku no rei o mite miyō
Let's look at the example of the US.

e 今年はぜひスキューバダイビングをやっ【てみ】たい。
kotoshi wa zehi sukyūba daibingu o yatte mitai
This year I'd very much like to try scuba diving.

f 昔のノートをチェックし【てみ】ると、間違いが結構多い。
mukashi no nōto o chekku shite miru to machigai ga kekkō ōi
When I check old notebooks, there are quite a few mistakes.

206 -te mo [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

The conjunctive P **-te/de mo** consists of the conjunctive **-te/de** form and the Focus P **mo**, and basically means 'even if'. It can attach to V, adj., AN and N

Note there is an informal variant **-tatte** for **-te mo** (see example a and the second sentence of example 206.1b), **-datte** for **-de mo**, and **datte** for **de mo** or **mo** (example b) (see also 39).

a クリスマスはどんな過ごし方をし【たって】いい。
kurisumasu wa donna sugoshikata o shi-tatte ii
As for Christmas, you can [it] spend any way you like.

b 男性がスカートをはくわけにはいかないが、女性は三つぞろいのビジネススーツ【だって】着ることができる。
dansei ga sukāto o haku wake ni wa ikanai ga, josei wa mitsu-zoroi no bijinesu sūtsu datte kiru koto ga dekiru
A man can't wear a skirt, but a woman can wear a three-piece business suit.

206.1 Clause 1**-te/-de mo** clause 2
206.2 Clause 1**-nakute mo** clause 2
206.3 Clause 1**-te/-de mo**, . . . clause 2-negative
206.4 Clause**-te/-de mo ii**
206.5 Question word (+ counter)**-te mo**
206.6 (**hitokuchi ni**) clause 1 **to it-te mo** clause 2
206.7 **sō wa itte mo**
206.8 Clause 1 **tatoe** . . . **-te mo** . . . clause 2-negative
206.9 Idiomatic use: **hayaku/osoku-te mo**

206.1 CLAUSE 1-te/-de mo CLAUSE 2

This means 'even if', 'even though'. Note also that **-temo** can also be attached to **-te iru** when a state is being referred to, as in example d.

a 船賃を加え【ても】関西から運んだ方がまだ10%安い。
funachin o kuwaete mo kansai kara hakonda hō ga mada jup-pāsento yasui
Even if shipping charges are added, it's still 10 per cent cheaper to transport from the Kansai area.

b あなたが抗議し【ても】、彼女たちは鼻で笑いながら言うだろう。「触られたって減るもんじゃなし」「冗談も通じないなんて」。
anata ga kōgi shite mo kanajo-tachi wa hana de warainagara iu darō. sawarare-tatte heru mon ja nashi jōdan mo tsūjinai nante
[Sexual harassment:] Even if you protest, she [= the female boss] will probably say, laughing ironically, 'You're not going to wear out by being touched', [or] 'My god, you can't even take a joke'.

c 地味【でも】長く続けることこそ大切だ。
jimi de mo nagaku tsuzukeru koto koso taisetsu da
It's important to carry on doing things, even if it's in a modest way.

d リゾートクラブ会員権を保有してい【ても】、これまでは同一クラブの施設だけしか利用できなかった。
rizōto kurabu no kaiinken o hoyū shite ite mo kore made wa dōitsu kurabu no shisetsu dake shika riyō dekinakatta
Even if one held membership of a resort club, as yet one could only use the facilities of that same club.

206.2 CLAUSE 1-nakute mo CLAUSE 2

In the neg., the meaning is 'even if not'.

a 名前を知らず、話したことがなく【ても】あいさつをする。
namae o shirazu hanashita koto ga nakute mo aisatsu o suru
Even if he doesn't know their names and has never spoken to them before, he greets them [= employees].

b「事件があっ【ても】なく【ても】田中先生は日中友好関係の大功労者」と述べた。
jiken ga atte mo nakute mo tanaka-sensei wa nitchū yūkō kankei no daikōrōsha to nobeta
'Regardless of whether or not he was involved an incident, Mr Tanaka has made a great contribution to friendly relations between Japan and China', he stated.

206.3 CLAUSE 1-te/-de mo, . . . CLAUSE 2-NEGATIVE

Followed by neg., the meaning of **-te/-de mo** is 'even if', 'even'.

a テレビ好きの子供【でも】ニュースやドキュメントはあまり見【ない】らしい。
terebizuki no kodomo demo nyūsu ya dokyumento wa amari minai rashii
It seems that even children who like TV don't watch news and documentaries much.

b 輸入米が日本人の味覚に合わず、安く【ても】売れ【ない】状況になる可能性もある。
yunyūmai ga nihonjin no mikaku ni awazu yasukute mo urenai jōkyō ni naru kanōsei mo aru
Imported rice doesn't suit the Japanese palate, so it's possible that we end up with a situation where it won't sell even if it's cheap.

c「ブラジルに帰っ【ても】仕事があるかどうかわから【ない】」とうつむく。
burajiru ni kaette mo shigoto ga aru ka dō ka wakaranai to utsumuku
'Even if I went back to Brazil, I don't know whether or not I could get work', he says, with downcast eyes

d ここではドロップアウト（中途退学）の比率が60％近くもある高校が珍しくない。卒業し【ても】いい仕事につける望みは【ない】からだ。
koko de wa doroppu-auto (chūto taigaku) no hiritsu ga 60% chikaku mo aru kōkō ga mezurashikunai. sotsugyō shite mo ii shigoto ni tsukeru nozomi wa nai kara da
In this area there are quite a few high schools where the dropout rate is almost 60 per cent. That's because even when one graduates, there's no hope of getting a good job.

e 勉強したいと思っ【ても】、なかなか時間がとれ【ず】イライラすることもある。
benkyō shitai to omotte mo nakanaka jikan ga torezu iraira suru koto mo aru
There are times when, even if you want to study, it's rather difficult to find the time, so you get irritated.

206.4 CLAUSE-**te/de mo ii**

Followed by an evaluatory adj. such as **ii/yoi** 'good', the combination means 'it's OK if', 'you could', 'you can/may'.

a 文明は民族と置き換え【ても】いい。
bunmei wa minzoku to okikaete mo ii
For 'civilization', you could substitute 'race'.

b 必要なら町が買い取っ【ても】いいと思っている。
hitsuyō nara machi ga kaitotte mo ii to omotte iru
I think it would be all right for the town to purchase it [= government-owned forest], if necessary.

c 食品、動物、薬以外なら大抵の商品を販売し【ても】いい。
shokuhin dōbutsu kusuri igai nara taitei no shōhin o hanbai shite mo ii
[Free market:] Apart from food, animals, and medicine, one is allowed to sell almost anything.

206.5 QUESTION WORD (+ COUNTER)-**te mo**

Depending on the Q word, the combination has a variety of meanings, such as 'no matter how/when', etc. (see 167, 36, Table 23).

a ところが、生徒たちは「【どう】し【ても】歌いたい」とステージを離れようとしない。
tokoro ga seito-tachi wa dōshite mo utaitai to sutēji o hanareyō to shinai
However, the pupils said, 'We want to sing no matter what', and made no move to leave the stage

b 【どちら】にし【ても】店を維持するのは難しい。
dochira ni shite mo mise o iji suru no wa muzukashii
Either way, it will be difficult to keep the store going.

c 現在、【いつ】停電し【ても】おかしくない状態にある模様だ。
genzai itsu teiden shite mo okashikunai jōtai ni aru moyō da
At present, they seem to be in a situation where the power could go out at any time [= electricity supply to Ukraine from Russia suspended].

d 【だれ】の目から見【ても】分かりやすい条件設定が可能となる。
dare no me kara mite mo wakari-yasui jōken settei ga kanō ni naru
It will be possible to stipulate terms [for corporate bond issues] in a way that is easy for anyone to understand.

e 【どんなに】変形させ【ても】、温めると元の形にもどる不思議な素材、形状記憶合金。
donna ni henkei sasete mo atatameru to moto no katachi ni modoru fushigi na sozai keijō kioku gōkin
It's a form-retention alloy, an amazing material which returns to its original shape when you heat it up, no matter how you've modified it.

f 「【いくら】法律で規制し【ても】、大人の意識を変えないとなくならない」と指摘する。
ikura hōritsu de kisei shite mo otona no ishiki o kaenai to naku naranai to shiteki suru
'No matter how much you regulate by law, if you don't alter the awareness of adults, they [shops selling schoolgirls' underwear to men] won't go away', he points out.

g しかし、こんな状態を続けていては【いつ】までたっ【ても】自立した証券会社は育たない。
shikashi konna jōtai o tsuzukete ite wa itsu made tatte mo jiritsu shita shōken-gaisha wa sodatanai
However, as long as they continue with this kind of situation, a securities company which stands on its own won't develop no matter how much time passes.

206.6 (hitokuchi ni) CLAUSE 1 to it-te mo CLAUSE 2

This is used in the sense of '(even though/if . . . but) actually' (see 218).

a 「【一口に】レース【と言っても】、それは手法のこと」と話すのは近沢弘明社長。
hitokuchi ni rēsu to itte mo sore wa shuhō no koto to hanasu no wa chikasawa hiroaki shachō
It is President Hiroaki Chikasawa who states, 'Even if you say [in general terms] "lace", what is being referred to is a technique'.

b 不況【といっても】ツアー料金が安いので影響は特にありません」とニッコリ。
fukyō to itte mo tsuā ryōkin ga yasui no de eikyō wa toku ni arimasen to nikkori
'Even if business is bad, [our] tour prices are low, so [we] don't feel any particular effects', she said with a smile.

c なべ物メニュー【といっても】、大半が千円以下の商品であることも、共通の特色だ。
nabemono menyū to itte mo taihan ga sen-en ika no shōhin de aru koto mo kyōtsū no tokushoku da
Even if the menu is *nabemono* (hotpot dishes), the fact that the great majority of items are under a thousand yen is also a common feature [of the chain restaurants].

d 日本ではＪリーグ人気がすごい【といっても】、ほとんどはチームあるいは選手のファン。
nihon de wa J-rīgu ninki ga sugoi to itte mo hotondo wa chīmu arui wa senshu no fan
In Japan, the popularity of the J-League is tremendous, but in fact it's only among fans of [certain] teams or players.

e 日本の歌曲を歌う、【といっても】、ドイツ語に訳されたものを歌う。
nihon no kakyoku o utau to itte mo doitsugo ni yakusareta mono o utau
She sings Japanese songs, but actually what she sings are [songs that have been] translated into German.

206.7 sō wa itte mo

This is used like a conjunction, in the sense of 'even so'.

a 【そうはいっても】、リストラの成果が表れた企業を評価しようという動きは出ている。
sō wa itte mo risutora no seika ga arawareta kigyō o hyōka shiyō to iu ugoki wa dete iru
Even so, a trend is emerging to give positive evaluations to businesses which have shown the fruits of restructuring.

206.8 CLAUSE 1 tatoe . . . -te mo . . . CLAUSE 2-NEGATIVE

tatoe (and some other adv.) can reinforce the meaning of **-te mo** 'even if', 'even assuming that' (5.4.6).

a たとえ景気が回復し【ても】、日本の石油化学業界は回復しないのではないか。
tatoe keiki ga kaifuku shite mo nihon no sekiyu kagaku gyōkai wa kaifuku shinai no de wa nai ka
Even if the market were to recover, the Japanese petrochemical industry wouldn't recover, would it?

206.9 IDIOMATIC USE: **hayaku/osoku-te mo**

This use means ‘at the earliest/latest’.

a 消費は早く【ても】来年後半から緩やかに回復するという程度だろう。
shōhi wa hayakute mo rainen kōhan kara yuruyaka ni kaifuku suru to iu teido darō
Probably all that can be expected is that consumption will recover slowly, starting in the latter half of next year at the earliest.

b 着陸料をめぐる交渉が再開されるのは早く【ても】来年一月中旬の見通しだ。
chakurikuryō o meguru kōshō ga saikai sareru no wa hayakute mo rainen ichigatsu chūjun no mitōshi da
The outlook is for negotiations concerning landing charges to be resumed in mid-January of next year, at the earliest.

207 -te morau [PERFORMATIVE SENTENCE ENDING]

When the performative V **morau** (a less-formal equivalent of **itadaku**, see 160.4.3) is attached to V-**te**, the implication is that the subject/speaker has the action of V done by someone else for his/her benefit. V-**te morau** is used when the subject (= recipient of the favour/action) is of equal or lower social status than the giver. **-te morau** often implies that the subject (who is often the speaker) is getting the performer to do the action by asking or persuasion (see 200, 65).

Note – like **-te itadaku**, **-te morau** can be used for second or third persons.

207.1 Verb-**te morau**
207.2 Verb-**te moraō**
207.3 Verb-**te moraeru**
207.3.1 Verb-**te moraeru**
207.3.2 Verb-**te moraenai ka (na)**
207.4 Verb-**te moraitai**
207.5 Verb-causative-**te morau**

207.1 VERB-te morau

a 東京に行っ【てもらう】よ。
tōkyō ni itte morau yo
I’m transferring you to Tokyo.

b 皆さんによくお話をして、理解し【てもらう】
mina-san ni yoku o-hanashi o shite rikai shite morau
I’ll talk it over thoroughly with everyone and get them to understand.

c 早朝四時、松村さんに市場に連れて行っ【てもらっ】た。
sōchō yoji matsumura-san ni ichiba ni tsurete itte moratta
At 4 o'clock in the morning, I had Matsumura-san take me to the market.

d 家の掃除は月に二度ハウスクリーニングに来【てもらう】。
ie no sōji wa tsuki ni nido hausu kurīningu ni kite morau
For cleaning the house, I have someone from a maid service come in twice a month.

e 借りる人には住所、氏名、電話番号を書い【てもらう】。
kariru hito ni wa jūsho shimei denwa bangō o kaite morau
Those who borrow [= an umbrella] we get to write down their name, address and phone number.

f 管理職にはポストにふさわしい活躍をし【てもらう】。
kanrishoku ni wa posuto ni fusawashii katsuyaku o shite morau
We expect our managerial officers to take an active part [in the company] in keeping with to their position.

g さらに胃や体のあちこちが痛むため近所の医者に診【てもらっ】た。
sara ni i ya karada no achikochi ga itamu tame kinjo no isha ni mite moratta
On top of that, since my stomach and various other parts of my body hurt, I had a doctor in the neighbourhood examine me.

207.2 VERB-te moraō

Using the -(y)ō form, the meaning is 'I/we'll have you/them', etc. (see 67).

a これを見【てもらおう】。
kore o mite moraō
Let's get him to look at this [painting].

b あなたは社風に合わないようだ。“試用期間”でもあるし、やめ【てもらおう】か。
anata wa shafū ni awanai yō da. shiyō kikan de mo aru shi yamete moraō ka
You seem unfit for the style of our company. It's only a 'trial period', so we'll have you quit, shall we?

c 新製品から紹介し【てもらいましょう】。
shinseihin kara shōkai shite morai mashō
Will you introduce the new products first?

d ホタテの消費量が少ない九州で、もっと食べ【てもらおう】との狙いだ。
hotate no shōhiryō ga sukunai kyūshū de motto tabete moraō to no nerai da
The aim is to get people in Kyushu, where the level of consumption of scallops is low, to eat more.

e すぐ家族に面倒をみ【てもらおう】とする発想はおかしい。
sugu kazoku ni mendō o mite moraō to suru hassō wa okashii
The idea of trying to get your family to look after you right away [= without trying anything else] is odd.

207.3 VERB-te moraeru

With the pot. form, the literal meaning is “can’t get others to do”.

207.3.1 Verb-te moraeru

a だれにも理解し【てもらえ】ない。独りぼっちだ。
dare ni mo rikai shite moraenai. hitori-botchi da
No one understands me. I’m all alone.

b 子供が病気で保育所では預かっ【てもらえ】ない。
kodomo ga byōki de hoikujo de wa azukatte moraenai
My child is ill, so the nursery school won’t look after him (*lit.* “I can’t get the nursery school to look after him”).

c 半年間は太鼓をたたかせ【てもらえ】ず、縄を巻いた丸太相手の練習が続いた。
hantoshi-kan wa taiko o tatakasete moraezu nawa o maita maruta aite no renshū ga tsuzuita
For six months I wasn’t allowed to beat the drum, and practising using a piece of wood with string around it continued.

d 同僚の男性は研修に行かせ【てもらえ】るのに女性の私には声がかからない。
dōryō no dansei wa kenshū ni ikasete moraeru no ni josei no watashi ni wa koe ga kakaranai
Male colleagues get to be sent on courses, but I, a woman, don’t get asked.

e 東京製作所が移転することになった。室蘭に行っ【てもらえ】るだろうか。
Tōkyō seisakusho ga iten suru koto ni natta. muroran ni itte moraeru darō ka
It’s been decided that the Tokyo factory will move. Will you go to Muroran [for us]?

f 国際的に納得し【てもらえ】る政権でないと円高が進む。
kokusai-teki ni nattoku site moraeru seiken de nai to endaka ga susumu
If we do not have a government in office which can gain acceptance internationally, the yen exchange rate will continue to rise.

207.3.2 Verb-te moraenai ka (na)

In question form, **-te moraeru** is used to make a pol. request 'can we ask you to', 'could we get you to', 'would you'. With **ka na** rather than **ka**, the meaning is 'I wonder', 'perhaps' (see 165, 166.1.2.4).

a 一緒に応援し【てもらえないか】。
issho ni ōen shite moraenai ka
Would you join in supporting us?

b あの人に地元の建設会社を紹介し【てもらえないかな】。
ano hito ni jimoto no kensetsu-gaisha o shōkai shite moraenai ka na
Could I get this man to introduce me to a local construction company, I wonder.

c うちは最近新しい雑誌を出したんです。付き合っ【てもらえませんか】。
uchi wa saikin atarashii zasshi o dashita n desu. tsukiatte moraemasen ka
We have recently launched a new magazine. Can we ask you to participate?

207.4 VERB-te moraitai

In line with the meaning of **-tai** 'want to', V-**te moraitai** indicates what the speaker wants second or third person(s) to do (see 189).

a 水の大切さを知っ【てもらいた】い。
mizu no taisetsusa o shitte morai-tai
I want people to realize how precious water is.

b 多くの人に博物館を好きになっ【てもらいた】い。
ōku no hito ni hakubutsukan o suki ni natte morai-tai
We want lots of people to develop a liking for the museum.

c できたら、息子にも野球選手になっ【てもらいた】い。
dekitara musuko ni mo yakyū senshu ni natte morai-tai
If it's possible, I'd like my son to become a baseball player too.

d 「男・女でなく、仕事ができる・できないで分け【てもらいた】いわね」。
otoko onna de naku shigoto ga dekiru dekinai de wakete morai-tai wa ne
I wish they'd classify us according to whether or not we can do the work, not according to whether we're men or women.

e 立派な強い子になっ【てもらいた】い。
rippa na tsuyoi ko ni natte morai-tai
I want them [the babies] to grow up to be fine, strong boys.

207.5 VERB-CAUSATIVE-**te morau**

V-caus.-**te morau** is a less polite version of V-caus.-**te itadaku**, indicating that the speaker or a third person is allowed to do something as a privilege 'thanks to the listener, or a third person' (see 200.3).

Note also example e, where the pot. form of **morau** is used.

a 昨晩は【楽しませてもら】いました。
sakuban wa tanoshimasete moraimashita
I had a good time last night, thanks to you.

b 今は【のんびりさせてもらっ】ている。
ima wa nonbiri sasete moratte iru
Right now I'm taking it easy (*lit.* "I have the pleasure of being allowed to take it easy").

c 今晩はしみじみと【飲ませてもら】うよ。
konban wa shimijimi to nomasete morau yo
Tonight I'm going to (*lit.* "get you to let me") do some serious drinking!

d 「【産ませてもら】うんじゃなくて、自分で産む」というのが基本姿勢。
umasete morau n ja nakute jibun de umu
The basic stance [in the exercise programme] is not to be allowed [by the doctor] to have the baby, but to have it by yourself.

e はっきり【言わせてもら】えれば、誤解に基づく批判である。
hakkiri iwasete moraereba gokai ni motozuku hihan de aru
If I may speak frankly, it's [= that I'm praising Ozawa Ichiro in my article] a criticism that's based on a misunderstanding.

208 -te oku/-toku [SENTENCE ENDING]

V-**te oku** consists of V-**te** + **oku** (as a lexical V, **oku** (置く) means 'put'). The combination indicates that the action of V (= volitional V) is performed in preparation or readiness. This is often not translated explicitly.

Note the combination **oite oku** (置いておく) 'put/place (in readiness)', 'leave (for further use)'.

In colloquial use, -**te oku** is often contracted to -**toku**, etc. (examples e and f).

Note -**te oku** is often used in lectures or articles in the sense of 'let me (take the opportunity to) say/mention this', and suchlike (examples g and h).

a 覚悟し【ておい】てください。
kakugo shite oite kudasai
Prepare yourself [for the worst].

b 社長室の扉は開け【ておく】」。
shachōshitsu no tobira wa akete oku
He leaves open the door to the president's office [so that people can walk in easily].

c 料金は一泊90ドルです。テーブルに置い【ておい】てください。
ryōkin wa ippaku kyūjū-doru desu. tēburu ni oite oite kudasai
The cost [of renting our house] is 90 dollars a night. Please leave it on the table.

d まかし【ておけ】。
makashite oke
Leave it to me.

e 安いよ、まけ【とく】よ。
yasui yo, maketoku yo
It's cheap. I'll take off some more money!

f これ名古屋の実家に送っ【とい】て。
kore nagoya no jikka ni okuttoite
Send this to my home in Nagoya.

g 解熱剤とせき止めを出し【ておき】ましょう。
genetsu-zai to sekidome o dashite okimashō
I'll prescribe you an antifebrile and cough medicine.

h 事のついでに季節でもあり、生のキノコもご紹介し【ておこ】う。
koto no tsuide ni kisetsu de mo ari nama no kinoko mo go-shōkai shite okō
At this opportunity, it being the season, I will also introduce raw mushrooms [= cookery programme].

i 生かし【ておく】と犯罪を犯す危険がある。
ikashite oku to hanzai o okasu kiken ga aru
If you keep them alive, there is a danger they will commit crimes again.

j 欲しいものは予約し【ておい】ても買う。
hoshii mono wa yoyaku shite oite mo kau
I do buy things I want, even if it means placing an advance order.

k ここでは二つのポイントだけを指摘し【ておこ】う。
koko de wa futatsu no pointo dake o shiteki shite okō
Here, I will just point out two things.

l だが、スペースの関係でここでは詳細には触れない【でおく】。
daga supēsu no kankei de koko de wa shōsai ni wa furenai de oku
However, for reasons of space I will not mention the details here.

209 -te shimau/-chau [SENTENCE ENDING]

V-**te shimau** consists of V-**te** + **shimau** (as a lexical V, **shimau** means 'put away', 'shut'). The combination is usually said to have two meanings: (1) the action of V is performed completely or with finality, and (2) the action of V produces unexpected or inconvenient results. However, the two are often difficult to distinguish (most examples have at least a shade of meaning 2). Here, no attempt is made to separate the two.

Note that the force of **-te shimau** can usually not be captured in translation.

Colloquially, **-te shimau** is often contracted to **-chau**, etc. (examples c, e, h, i), and **-de shimau** to **-jau**, etc. (example a).

a 水ばかり飲ん【じゃ】った。
mizu bakari nonjatta
I drank just water.

b うっかり財布を落とし【てしま】った。
ukkari saifu o otoshite shimatta
I absent-mindedly dropped my wallet.

c 前の髪形に飽き【ちゃ】っただけ。
mae no kamigata ni akichatta dake
I got bored with my previous hairstyle, that's all.

d 手に取ると壊れ【てしま】いそうだ。
te ni toru to kowarete shimaisō da
It looks as if it'll break when you take it in your hand.

e 太っ【ちゃ】ってね。
futotchatte ne
I got fat, you know.

f 煮【てしま】えばさらにいい。
nite shimaeba sara ni ii
If you boil it, it's even better.

g 何とかしないとゴーストタウンになっ【てしま】う。
nantoka shinai to gōsuto taun ni natte shimau
Unless we do something, it'll end up becoming a ghost town.

h 定職に就くのはあきらめ【ちゃ】いました。
teishoku ni tsuku no wa akiramechaimashita
I've given up hoping to find a permanent job.

i このリモコンカー、動かなくなっ【ちゃ】った。
kono rimokon kā ugokanaku natchatta
This remote-controlled car won't move any more.

j 日本はカラオケ民主主義になっ【てしま】った——。
nihon wa karaoke minshu shugi ni natte shimatta
Japan has become a karaoke democracy.

k 気が付くと、一人で三人分を平らげ【てしま】っていた。
ki ga tsuku to hitori de sannin-bun o tairagete shimatte ita
Before I realized, I had wolfed down three portions by myself.

210 -te wa [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

-te wa consists of the conjunctive form (**-te/(-)de**) plus the focus P **wa**. It basically indicates a condition 'if', but between two actions also indicates repeated actions (see 31).

Colloquially, **-te wa/de wa** are often contracted to **-cha/ja/jā** (example 210.2c).

210.1 Clause 1-**te wa**, clause 2 (positive predicate): repeated actions
210.2 Clause 1-**te wa**, clause 2 (negative predicate)
210.3 Sentence-**te wa** (**naranai/ikenai/dame da**): negative obligation
210.4 Sentence-**nakute wa** (**naranai/ikenai/dame da**): obligation
210.5 Sentence-**te wa** (**dō ka**): suggestion

210.1 CLAUSE 1-te wa, CLAUSE 2 (POSITIVE PREDICATE): REPEATED ACTIONS

Joining two actions, this indicates that the actions take place repeatedly 'keep doing' (see 31.2.5).

a 繰り返し見たミフネの顔が浮かん【では】消えた。
kurikaeshi mita mifune no kao ga ukande wa kieta
Mifune's face, which I'd looked at over and over again, kept appearing and disappearing [in my mind].

b 今では園芸は生活の一部になっており、暇を見つけ【ては】、丹念に手入れをしてやる。
ima de wa engei wa seikatsu no ichibu to natte ori hima o mitsukete wa tannen ni teire o shite yaru
By now, gardening has become a part of his life, and he keeps finding time to tend to [the garden] with care.

c 講演など機会をとらえ【ては】ボランティアの支援制度の導入を呼びかけている。
kōen nado kikai o toraete wa borantia no shien seido no dōnyū o yobikakete iru
Using every occasion such as lectures etc., he keeps calling for the introduction of a volunteer support system.

210.2 CLAUSE 1-**te wa**, CLAUSE 2 (NEGATIVE PREDICATE)

Pred. can be a neg. form or an expression with neg. meaning 'if . . . , then' (negative outcome).

a % こんなに高く【ては】買えない。
konna ni takakute wa kaenai
If it's this expensive, I can't buy it.

b % 病気【では】働けないだろう。
byōki de wa hatarakenai darō
If you're ill, then surely you can't work.

c そんなに言っ【ちゃ】かわいそうよ。
sonna ni itcha kawaisō yo
It's cruel if you say that much.

d すべての企業が好き勝手をやってい【ては】やがて人類が滅びるのは必然。
subete no kigyō ga sukikatte o yatte ite wa yagate jinrui ga horobiru no wa hitsuzen
If all businesses do as they like, the end of mankind is inevitable.

e 言葉も必要だが、言葉【では】抽象化されてしまう。
kotoba mo hitsuyō da ga kotoba de wa chūsho-ka sarete shimau
Words are necessary as well, but words make things abstract.

210.3 SENTENCE-**te wa (naranai/ikenai/dame da)**: NEGATIVE OBLIGATION

This indicates neg. obligation. Literally the meaning is "it won't do if", i.e. 'mustn't' (see 31.2.3).

a 趣味は仕事になっ【ては】ならない。
shumi wa shigoto ni natte wa naranai
[One's] hobby mustn't turn into one's job.

b リストラの火を絶やし【ては】ならない。
risutora no hi o tayashite wa naranai
We mustn't put out the flame of restructuring.

210.4 SENTENCE-**nakute wa (naranai/ikenai/dame da)**: OBLIGATION

This is a double neg. expressing obligation. Literally the meaning is "it won't do if not", i.e. 'must' 'must/have to do' (see 31.2.3, 50.2).

a 水は工業にとってなく【ては】ならないもの。
mizu wa kōgyō ni totte nakute wa naranai mono
Water is indispensable for industry.

b 財政のさらなる悪化は避けなく【ては】いけない。
zaisei no sara naru akka wa sakenakute wa ikenai
A further worsening of finances must be avoided.

c 難しいことはやさしく書かなく【ては】。
muzukashii koto wa yasashiku kakanakute wa
One must write simply about complicated matters.

210.5 SENTENCE-**te wa** (**dō ka**): SUGGESTION

This is used for suggesting a course of action in the sense of 'how about', 'should'. Instead of **-te wa**, **-tara** can also be used (see 191.4.2).

Colloquially, the Q word + cop. (**dō da**, etc.) part can be omitted (see 164.7.2).

a 老舗の店員も、たまには量販店を回っ【ては】どうだろうか。
shinise no ten'in mo tama ni wa ryōhanten o mawatte wa dō darō ka
Those working in smart shops should sometimes go and look at places selling things for the mass market.

b 今年5月に理容師と相談したら、縛ってみ【ては】と勧められてやってみた。
kotoshi gogatsu ni riyōshi to sōdan shitara shibatte mite wa to susumerarete yatte mita
When I consulted with my barber in May this year, he suggested that I might tie back [my hair], so I gave it a try.

211 -te yaru [PERFORMATIVE SENTENCE ENDING]

When the performative V **yaru** (see 160.4.1) is attached to V-**te**, the implication is that someone does the action of V for someone else's benefit. V-**te yaru** is used when the receiver of the action is of lower social status than the giver, i.e. the giver's own junior family members, animals, plants, etc., otherwise **-te ageru** (or the superpolite **-te sashiageru**) is used in the same way (excepting use 211.2).

Note that in English translation the force of **-te yaru** ('do for your/his, etc. benefit' etc.) is usually lost, being left to the context only.

211.1 Verb-**te yaru** 'do (a favour by doing) something for someone else'
211.2 Verb-**te yaru**: 'doing something as a threat to the listener'
211.3 Verb-causative **te yaru** 'make/allow someone (to) do something'

211.1 **VERB-te yaru** 'DO (A FAVOUR BY DOING) SOMETHING FOR SOMEONE ELSE'

a 家に帰っ【てやれ】。
ie ni kaette yare
Go home [to your family].

b 子供が望めば大学まで出し【てやり】たい。
kodomo ga nozomeba daigaku made dashite yaritai
I'd like to send my children to university, if that's what they want.

c 父よ母よ! あと三年もしたら出ていっ【てやる】。
chichi yo haha yo ato sannen mo shitara dete itte yaru
Father! Mother! I'll get out [= of home] in three years – just wait and see!

d 訓一は文子に「日本中で一番幸せな妻にし【てやる】」といった。
kun'ichi wa fumiko ni nihon-jū de ichiban shiawase na tsuma ni shite yaru to itta
Kun'ichi said to Fumiko, 'I'll make you the happiest wife in Japan'.

e 教え【てやる】、という態度では相手のプライドを傷つける。
oshiete yaru to iu taido de wa aite no puraido o kizutsukeru
With an 'I'll teach you as a favour' attitude, you will hurt people's pride.

f 今は難しい年ごろの中学生がいる。そばにい【てやり】たい。
ima wa muzukashii toshigoro no chūgakusei ga iru. soba ni ite yaritai
I have [children] at a difficult age, who are in middle school now. I want to be near them [for their sake].

g よくやったね、と自分に言っ【てやり】たい部分がある。
yoku yatta ne to jibun ni itte yaritai bubun ga aru
There's a part of me that wants to say to myself, 'You did a good job'.

h 庭に植える場合も苗を高めに植え【てやる】ことがポイント。
niwa ni ueru baai mo nae o takame ni uete yaru koto ga pointo
When you plant seedlings in the yard, too, the important thing is to plant them high.

211.2 **VERB-te yaru**: 'DOING SOMETHING AS A THREAT TO THE LISTENER'

a 殺し【てやる】。
koroshite yaru
I'll kill you!

b 「私は社長になっ【てやる】」という人がいていい。
watashi wa shachō ni natte yaru to iu hito ga ite ii
It's all right for there to be someone who says, 'I am going to do you a favour by becoming the company president!'

c どうせだめなら暴れ【てやろう】。
dōse dame nara abarete yarō
If it's no use anyway, let's put up a good fight.

d 次の大会では学生世界一になっ【てやろう】と誓ったんです。
tsugi no taikai de wa gakusei sekai ichi ni natte yarō to chikatta n desu
I swore that at the next tournament I would become the best student in the world – let them just wait and see!

211.3 VERB-CAUSATIVE-**te yaru** 'MAKE/ALLOW SOMEONE (TO) DO SOMETHING'

Apart from the form **-te yaru**, **-te yaritai** is often used (see also 189).

a 編集科なら受験さ【せてやる】。
henshūka nara juken sasete yaru
If it's for the editing section, we'll allow you to take the company entrance exam.

b 最高齢を目指していたのですが……。孫を見【せてやり】たかった。
saikōrei o mezashite ita no desu ga . . . mago o misete yaritakatta
We were aiming at [breaking the record of a captive panda's] longevity . . . We did want to show his grandchildren to him.

c 百三十人の社員に夢を持た【せてやり】たい。
hyaku sanjūnin no shain ni yume o motasete yari-tai
I want to give the 130 company employees a dream for the future.

212 **-teki** [ADJECTIVE-FORMING SUFFIX]

Attached to N (often two-*kanji* SJ compounds, and occasionally Western loanwords), **-teki** converts the N into an AN. Depending on the form of cop. attached to **-teki**, it can modify N (in compound-like combinations also without cop.), modify V etc. in adverbial use, and act as pred. (see 34).

212.1 Noun-modifying
212.1.1 **-teki na** noun (by means of copula-**na**)
212.1.2 **-teki** noun (directly)
212.2 **-teki ni** (adverbial use)
212.3 **-teki da** (as predicate)

212.1 NOUN-MODIFYING

212.1.1 **-teki na** noun (by means of copula-**na**)

a 【根本的】な疑問は残る。(cf., 根本 'basis')
konpon-teki na gimon wa nokoru
Basic doubts remain.

b 何より【印象的】なのが、カメラの位置が低いことだ。
(cf., 印象 'impression')
nani yori inshō-teki na no ga kamera no ichi ga hikui koto da
What's most impressive is the low (*lit.* "lowness of the") camera angle.

212.1.2 **-teki** noun (directly)

It is also possible to modify a N directly with a **-teki** AN; in these cases, the combination acts like a N compound.

a テレビなど【刺激的】文化の影響で、本らしい本の衰弱が目立つ。(cf., 刺激 'stimulus')
terebi nado shigeki-teki bunka no eikyō de hon rashii hon no suijaku ga medatsu
Under the influence of the stimulus culture such as TV, the decline of proper books is conspicuous.

b ガムランは【伝統的】音楽の要素を持ちながら、現代音楽でもあるわけだ。
(cf., 伝統 'tradition')
gamuran wa dentō-teki ongaku no yōso o mochinagara gendai ongaku de mo aru wake da
So Gamelan, while having elements of traditional music, is also modern music.

212.2 **-teki ni** (ADVERBIAL USE)

a 雨が降ったときは【一時的】に気温が下がることがある。
(cf., 一時 'at times')
ame ga futta toki wa ichiji-teki ni kion ga sagaru koto ga aru
After it has rained, the temperature can drop temporarily.

b 米国とは【政治、経済的】にぜひ仲良くしたいと思っている。
(cf., 経済 'economy')
beikoku to wa seiji keizai-teki ni zehi nakayoku shitai to omotte iru
We'd like very much to establish good political and economic relations with the US.

c 一人一人の労働時間が減っても、【マクロ的】には余暇消費の拡大には結びついていない。(cf., マクロ[経済] macro[economics])
hitori hitori no rōdō jikan ga hette mo makuro-teki ni wa yoka shōhi no kakudai ni wa musubitsuite inai
Even if each individual's working hours have decreased, this has not, in macro terms, been linked with an expansion in leisure consumption.

212.3 -teki da (AS PREDICATE)

a 空港に着陸するときに眺めた美しい景色は【印象的】だった。
(cf., 印象 'impression')
kūkō ni chakuriku suru toki ni nagameta utsukushii keshiki wa inshō-teki datta
The beautiful scenery I saw when landing at the airport was memorable.

b アメリカ人の性行動はきわめて【保守的】なのである。
(cf., 保守 'conservatism')
amerikajin no seikōdō wa kiwamete hoshu-teki na no de aru
The sexual behaviour of Americans is extremely conservative.

213 to [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

The adverbial P **to** is used to describe the manner in which the preceding word or clause takes place (see also 153).

Note – this is also possible with neg. (example d, *lit.* "doesn't require a matter of five mins.").

a 頭の中がぴかぴか【と】光った
atama no naka ga pikapika to hikatta
There was a flash of light inside my head

b サクっ【と】あがった天ぷらがおいしい季節になってきた。
sakutto agatta tempura ga oishii kisetsu ni natte kita
It's the season now when crisply fried tempura tastes good.

c 小説、随筆、旅行記、童話、詩【と】何でもこなした。
shōsetsu zuihitsu ryokōki dōwa shi to nan demo konashita
He could write anything [= any genre], novels, essays, travelogues, fairy tales, poems.

d パソコン通信に慣れた人なら、5分【と】かからない。
pasokon tsūshin ni nareta hito nara gofun to kakaranai
Someone who is used to communicating by computer can do it [= order through the Internet] in less than 5 minutes.

214 to [CASE PARTICLE]

The case P **to** is used with a limited number of V whose action or state typically involves two or more participants (mutual or reciprocal action or state). Its basic meaning is 'with', seen also in the common phrase **to issho ni** 'together with' (example c), but depending on the V it translates as 'to', 'from', and as an object (e.g. 'marry someone'). (see also 213, 215–217).

Here are some of the more common of these V: **au** 会う 'meet (with)', 'come across', **hanasu/hanashi o suru** 話す・話をする 'talk (with)', **kaidan suru** 会談する 'hold talks (with)', **kekkon suru** 結婚する 'marry', **konyaku suru** 婚約する 'get engaged (to)', **naka yoku suru** 仲良くする 'get on close terms (with)'. Note especially **chigau** 違う 'differ (from)' and **rikon suru** 離婚する 'get divorced (from)'. Note also compound verbs ending in **-au** (合う), which have the implication of 'mutually'.

Note – **au** 会う(example b) and **hanasu** can also take **ni** instead of **o**, with a different nuance of meaning (see 116).

a 問　当日は担当部長【と】会っているはずだが。
toi: tōjitsu wa tantō buchō to atte iru hazu da ga
Q: On the day, you're supposed to have met with the department head in charge?

b 「(頭取に) 会いたい」【と】話したという。
(tōdori ni) aitai to hanashita to iu
He is reported to have said that he wanted to see the CEO.

c 今でも日曜日は近所に住む父【と】いっしょに過ごす。
ima de mo nichiyōbi wa kinjo ni sumu chichi to issho ni sugosu
Even now, he spends Sundays with his father, who lives in the vicinity.

d 娘さん【と】結婚します。
musume-san to kekkon shimasu
I'll marry your daughter.

e 昨年、主人【と】離婚しました。
sakunen shujin to rikon shimashita
Last year, I got divorced from my husband.

f 住宅は家電や自動車【と】違う。
jūtaku wa kaden ya jidōsha to chigau
Housing is different from [things like] electrical appliances and cars.

g トイレで上司【と】会ったときには「逃げない」。
toire de jōshi to atta toki ni wa nigenai
When he comes across his boss in the toilet, [he] doesn't 'run away'.

h 二十八日にスハルト大統領【と】会談する。
nijū hachi-nichi ni suharuto daitōryō to kaidan suru
On the 28th, he holds talks with President Suharto.

i 米国【と】は政治、経済的にぜひ仲良くしたいと思っている。
beikoku to wa seiji keizai-teki ni zehi nakayoku shitai to omotte iru
We'd like very much to establish good political and economic relations with the US.

215 to [CONJOINING PARTICLE]

Unlike **ya**, **to** must be used after each item but the last; optionally, it may be repeated after the last item as well. The resulting string (shown in **[]**) functions as one NP, i.e. case P are attached to the end of the string in the same way as to single nouns (see 28, 241).

215.1 Noun **to** noun
215.2 Noun **to** noun **to**

215.1 NOUN to NOUN

a 周りに[いす【と】テーブル]が並ぶ。
mawari ni isu to tēburu ga narabu
Chairs and tables are lined up in the vicinity.

b [ヘア【と】メーク担当]でペアを組む。
hea to mēku tantō de pea o kumu
They form pairs consisting of a hair and a make-up specialist.

c [ロシア【と】西欧]の長い対立の歴史を忘れてはならない。
roshia to seiō no nagai tairitsu no rekishi o wasurete wa naranai
We mustn't forget the long history of opposition between Russia and Western Europe.

d ([本文【と】写真]は関係ありません)
honbun to shashin wa kankei arimasen
(No relation between the text and the photo)

215.2 NOUN to NOUN to

a [国際化【と】「アメリカ化」【と】]の差別化を。
kokusai-ka to amerika-ka to no sabetsu-ka o
[We need] differentiation between internationalization and Americanization.

b もう一つ、[出発前【と】今【と】]で変わったことがある。
mō hitsotsu shuppatsu-mae to ima to de kawatta koto ga aru
There is one more thing that has changed since the time before departure and the present day

216 to [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

to is a conjunctive P that indicates a condition for S2, the main pred. The condition indicated by **to** is essentially habitual or immediate (when S1 occurs, S2 always, or immediately occurs) (see 14).

216.1 Clause 1 non-past **to**, clause 2 non-past
216.2 Clause 1 non-past **to**, clause 2 non-past/past
216.3 Clause 1 non-past **to**, clause 2 past
216.4 Clause 1 non-past **to**, clause 2-past **mono da**
216.5 Clause 1 non-past **to**, clause 2
216.6 Sentence **to ii/yoi**
216.7 Clause 1 **to**, clause 2: idiomatic uses

216.1 CLAUSE 1 NON-PAST **to**, CLAUSE 2 NON-PAST

This indicates a habitual condition, i.e. when the action of S1 happens, the action or state of S2 regularly or habitually occurs 'when/if S1, something habitually does'.

a % 春になる【と】花が咲く。
haru ni naru to hana ga saku
In spring/when spring comes, the blossoms bloom.

b 寒くなる【と】、フグがおいしくなる。
samuku naru to fugu ga oishiku naru
When it gets cold, blowfish gets tasty.

c 雨上がりに探す【と】、採取しやすい。
ameagari ni sagasu to saishu shiyasui
When you look for them after it's been raining, they [= mushrooms] are easy to collect.

d 政治と経済は同時に改革できない。一方で誤る【と】、結局両方とも失敗する。
seiji to keizai wa dōji ni kaikaku dekinai. ippō de ayamaru to kekkyoku ryōhō tomo shippai suru
You can't reform politics and the economy at the same time. If you make a mistake with one, in the end you go wrong with both.

e 一つ問題が片付く【と】、次の問題が起こる。
hitotsu mondai ga katazuku to tsugi no mondai ga okoru
When one problem is taken care of, invariably the next problem arises.

216.2 CLAUSE 1 NON-PAST **to**, CLAUSE 2 NON-PAST/PAST

Here, S2 takes place as a result of the action of S1 in the sense of ‘when S1, something becomes apparent/is noticed’.

a 玄関を入る【と】、まず「大広間」。
genkan o hairu to mazu ōhiroma
When you enter the entrance hall, the first [thing you see] is ‘the grand hall’.

b 玄関を入る【と】、元気のいい声が掛かる。
genkan o hairu to genki no ii koe ga kakaru
When one enters the entrance hall, one is greeted by a cheery voice.

216.3 CLAUSE 1 NON-PAST **to**, CLAUSE 2 PAST

With past S2, the meaning is that the action of S2 ‘happened immediately’ as a result of S1.

a 事務所に電話する【と】、所長が出た。
jimusho ni denwa suru to shochō ga deta
When I rang the office, the director answered.

b どろぼうは警察を見る【と】、逃げていった。
dorobō wa keisatsu o miru to nigete itta
When he saw the police, the burglar fled.

c 思い出す【と】、自然と元気が出た。
omoidasu to shizen to genki ga deta
Whenever I remembered [the bustle of Hong Kong], I automatically cheered up.

216.4 CLAUSE 1 NON-PAST **to**, CLAUSE 2-PAST **mono da**

This is used to recall the past with nostalgia ‘when S1, someone/something used to do’ (96.1.5).

a 昔は、合戦の日になる【と】、母親がささだんごを作ってくれたものです。
mukashi wa kassen no hi ni naru to hahaoya ga sasadango o tsukutte kureta mono desu
In the old days, when the day of the battle came, the mothers would make bamboograss dumplings.

216.5 CLAUSE 1 NON-PAST **to**, CLAUSE 2

This construction means ‘for example’, ‘generally speaking’.

a 新幹線から乗り継ぐ【と】、特急料金が半額。
shinkansen kara noritsugu to tokkyū ryōkin ga hangaku
If you change from the bullet train, the express train surcharge is half price.

b 結論的にいう【と】、筆者はそうは考えない。
ketsuron-teki ni iu to hissha wa sō wa kangaenai
[Said] in conclusion, the author doesn't think so.

216.6 SENTENCE **to ii/yoi**

This expresses a recommendation 'should', in the same way as **-ba ii** and **-tara ii** (see 13.3.1, 191.4.1).

a 『手当て』という言葉があるように、自分で自分の体を触ってみる【といい】。その部分が疲れていると感じたら、マッサージしたり、伸ばしてやる。
teate to iu kotoba ga aru yō ni jibun de jibun no karada o sawatte miru to ii. sono bubun ga tsukarete iru to kanjitara massāji shitari nobashite yaru
Just as there's a word 'teate' ('care', *lit.* "placing hands"), one should touch one's own body. If one feels that part is tired, one should massage it, or stretch it.

b カリウムが豊富な果物や梅干しも十分に食べる【とよい】。
kariumu ga hōfu na kudamono ya umeboshi mo jūbun ni taberu to yoi
You should also eat plenty of fruit and dried plums, which contain lots of potassium.

c 事前に予約をしておく【とよい】だろう。
jizen ni yoyaku o shite oku to yoi darō
One should probably make a reservation in advance.

216.7 CLAUSE 1 **to**, CLAUSE 2: IDIOMATIC USES

a 言い換える【と】、効率を悪くしています。
iikaeru to kōritsu o waruku shite imasu
In other words, it [= the high phone rate] lowers the efficiency.

b 全通貨で見る【と】、ドルは安定している。
zentsūka de miru to doru wa antei shite iru
Seen against all currencies, the dollar is stable.

c パリと比べる【と】、ずっと素朴でわびしい。
pari to kuraberu to zutto soboku de wabishii
Compared with Paris, it [Pont Aven in Brittany] is much more unsophisticated and remote

217 **to** [QUOTATION PARTICLE]

This particle is used for quoting the content of a communication (with a V of communication, such as **iu** 'say', **hanasu** 'speak', 'tell' etc.) or thought (with a V of thinking, such as **omou** 'feel', 'think', **kangaeru** 'think'), etc., in both direct and indirect quotations (see 178.4.2.1, 178.4.2.2).

The V of thought can be omitted, which gives a sense of 'with the intention of'.

In the media especially, the phrase **to no koto** (cop.) is commonly used instead of **to iu**, etc.

See also 218, which is used in a variety of ways, from quotation to modification of N.

217.1 Clause **to** (ellipted verb)
217.2 Clause **to no koto da**

217.1 CLAUSE **to** (ELLIPTED VERB)

a 新しい展開を図ろう【と】、名称変更に踏み切った。
atarashii tenkai o hakarō to meishō henkō ni fumikitta
They took the step of changing the name, with the intention of opening up about new developments.

217.2 CLAUSE **to no koto da**

a この日は結婚式の二次会【とのことで】、なかなかのにぎわい。
kono hi wa kekkonshiki no nijikai to no koto de nakanaka no nigiwai
On that day [the bar] had a party from a wedding, they said, so it [= the bar] was quite lively.

b 礼を言ったら、ドイツでは男が家事をするのは当たり前【とのこと】。
rei o ittara doitsu de wa otoko ga kaji o suru no wa atarimae to no koto
When we thanked him, he said that in Germany it was normal for a man to do housework.

c 先日、アナウンサーなしの野球中継放送があった。見た人の話では、静かでなかなかよかった【とのこと】。
senjitsu anaunsā nashi no yakyū chūkei hōsō ga atta. mita hito no hanashi de wa shizuka de nakanaka yokatta to no koto
The other day, there was a live baseball broadcast without a commentator. According to those who watched it, it was nice and quiet.

d 「当面はソロ活動に専念する」【とのことだ】。
tōmen wa soro katsudō ni sennen suru to no koto da
He says 'For the time being, he will concentrate on solo performances'.

218 to iu [PHRASE]

to iu consists of the quotation P **to** and the verb **iu** 'say'. It has a wide range of functions, ranging from direct and indirect quotation to indicating that something is based on hearsay.

As in this section, **to iu** is preceded by plain forms of V/adj./AN/N (in some usages, **da** or **to iu** follows N.).

218.1 Noun **to iu**
218.2 Sentence **to iu**
218.2.1 Sentence **(da) to iu**
218.2.2 Clause **(da) tte iu**
218.2.3 Clause **(da) to iwarete iru**
218.3 Noun/clause **to iu/tte** noun
218.3.1 Noun 1 **to iu** noun 2
218.3.2 Clause **to iu/tte** noun
218.4 Noun/clause **to iu no wa**
218.4.1 Noun/clause **to iu no wa**, . . . predicate
218.4.2 Noun/clause **to iu no wa . . . kara**
218.5 Clause **to iu koto wa**
218.5.1 Clause **(da) to iu koto wa . . .**
218.5.2 Clause **(da) to iu koto wa (. . .) nai**
218.6 Clause **to iu koto ni naru**
218.7 **to iu koto wa**
218.8 Clause/noun **to iu mono**
218.8.1 Noun **to iu mono wa . . .** predicate
218.8.2 Clause/noun **to iu mono**
218.9 Clause **to iu wake**
218.9.1 Clause **to iu wake da**
218.9.2 Clause **to iu wake de wa nai**
218.10 Noun **to iu yori (mo/wa)**
218.11 Noun **to iu to, . . . ga, . . .**
218.12 Verb/adjective/adjectival noun/noun **to iu ka**, verb/adjective/adjectival noun/noun **to iu ka**
218.13 Clause **to wa ie**
218.14 **to ieba, sō ieba**

218.1 NOUN **to iu**

This combination has the meaning ‘is called’.

a 子供の名前を慎二【という】。
  kodomo no namae o shinji to iu
  The (*lit.* “name of the”) child is called Shinji.

218.2 SENTENCE **to iu**

This indicates a direct or indirect quotation (178.4.2).

218.2.1 Sentence (**da**) **to iu**

The meaning here is ‘they say, it is said’.

a 「父は解剖学の偉大な先生だった」【という】。
  chichi wa kaibōgaku no idai na sensei datta to iu
  He says, ‘Father was an eminent professor of anatomy’.

b 最も高い部屋は一億円を超える【という】。
  mottomo takai heya wa ichioku-en o koeru to iu
  They say that the most expensive room is over ¥100 million.

c 警笛を鳴らし、急ブレーキをかけたが間に合わなかった【という】。
  keiteki o narashi kyūburēki o kaketa ga ma ni awanakatta to iu
  He says that he blew the horn and applied the emergency brakes but didn’t make it.

218.2.2 Clause (**da**) **tte iu**

tte is an informal variant of **to** (see 228.1).

a 天気予報であさっては雨だ【って】言ってたから。(てた = ていた)
  tenki yohō de asatte wa ame da tte itteta kara
  Because the weather forecast said that the day after tomorrow it’ll rain.

b 「飛んでいる飛行機を見ながら、『あの飛行機のエンジンはオレがつくったんだ』【って】言ってみたいんですよ」。
  tonde iru hikōki o minagara ano hikōki no enjin wa ore ga tsukutta n da tte itte mitai n desu yo
  Looking at a flying aircraft, I’d like to say, ‘I built the engine of that aircraft’.

218.2.3 Clause (**da**) **to iwarete iru**

iwarete iru is the pass. **te iru** form of **iu**, expressing a pass. state ‘it’s (being) said’ (see 156, 199)

a 大型動物は普通、一つの地域で百頭を切ると絶滅する【と言われている】。
ōgata dōbutsu wa futsū hitotsu no chiiki de hyakutō o kiru to zetsumetsu suru to iwarete iru
It is said that large animals usually become extinct when they fall to under 100 head per area.

b 不況、不況【と言われている】が、企業にとっては今がチャンス。
fukyō fukyō to iwarete iru ga kigyō ni totte wa ima ga chansu
It's said that it's a bad recession, but for business now is a time of opportunity.

c 米国などでは、脱税は非常に恥ずかしい犯罪だ【と言われている】。
beikoku nado de wa datsuzei wa hijō ni hazukashii hanzai da to iwarete iru
It is said that in the US tax fraud is a crime to be very ashamed of.

218.3 NOUN/CLAUSE **to iu/tte** NOUN

218.3.1 Noun 1 **to iu** noun 2

N1 explains the content of N2 by name 'N2 (named) N1', 'N2 (of/that is) N1' (see also 10).

a アップル、IBM【という】情報機器メーカー
appuru IBM to iu jōhō kiki mēkā
the information appliance makers Apple and IBM ('and' = indicated by comma)

b 世界中がＪリーグ【という】新しいマーケットに注目している。
sekaijū ga J-rīgu to iu atarashii māketto ni chūmoku shite iru
The world is watching the new market of/that is the J-league.

218.3.2 Clause **to iu/tte** noun

[S] **to iu** (and its informal variant **tte**, example d) explains the content of N 'the N which says', 'the N of'.

a 犬の嗅覚は人間の百万倍以上、十億倍【という】説もある。
inu no kyūkaku wa ningen no hyakuman-bai ijō jūoku-bai to iu setsu mo aru
There is also a theory saying that a dog's sense of smell is a million times, 100 million times that of a human being's.

b 三十年後には四人に一人が高齢者【という】社会が確実にやってくる。
sanjūnen-go ni wa yonin ni hitori ga kōreisha to iu shakai ga kakujitsu ni yatte kuru
In 30 years, the sort of society where one out of four is an old person will come without fail

c 本社をどこに置くのがいいか【という】問題もある。
honsha o doko ni oku no ga ii ka to iu mondai mo aru
There is also the problem of where best to position the main firm.

d 「小学校でも早寝早起きと教わっただろ」「パパ、歴史は夜つくられる【って】言葉知らないの」
shōgakkō de mo hayane hayaoki to osowatta daro. papa rekishi wa yoru tsukurareru tte kotoba shiranai no
'At primary school too, no doubt you were taught [the maxim of] going to bed early and rising early.' 'Papa, don't you know the saying "History is made at night"?'

218.4 NOUN/CLAUSE **to iu no wa**

218.4.1 Noun/clause **to iu no wa**, . . . predicate

This is used to explain the nature or essence of something 'is' (see 135).

a 高齢化社会【というのは】、労働力が不足する社会でもある。
kōrei-ka shakai to iu no wa rōdō-ryoku ga fusoku suru shakai de mo aru
An aged society is also a society lacking manpower.

b 言葉【というのは】、あんまり安っぽく使うと値打ちが下がります。
kotoba to iu no wa anmari yasuppoku tsukau to neuchi ga sagarimasu
Words depreciate in value if you use them too cheaply.

218.4.2 Noun/clause **to iu no wa . . . kara**

This is used to explain the nature or essence of something, by giving a reason (see 75, 135).

a 植物【というのは】手をかければこたえてくれる【から】うれしい。
shokubutsu to iu no wa te o kakereba kotaete kureru kara ureshii
Plants give joy because they respond if you look after them.

b 猫が顔を洗うと雨になる【というのは】、湿度が上がると、ノミの活動が活発になる【から】といわれている。
neko ga kao o arau to ame ni naru to iu no wa shitsudo ga agaru to nomi no katsudō ga kappatsu ni naru kara to iwarete iru
The reason why they say that when cats wash their faces it's going to rain is supposed to be because fleas become active when humidity rises.

218.5 CLAUSE **to iu koto wa**

218.5.1 Clause (**da**) **to iu koto wa** . . .

Like **koto** by itself, **to iu koto** nominalizes the clause it is attached to, to form a complement clause 'the fact that' (see 83, 26).

a 国際協調を崩してはならない【ということは】、明らかである。
kokusai kyōchō o kuzushite wa naranai to iu koto wa akiraka de aru
It is obvious that we mustn't damage international co-operation.

b 人が人の肉を食うなど【ということは】、自由な流通システムがあれば起こりませんよ。
hito ga hito no niku o kū nado to iu koto wa jiyū na ryūtsū shisutemu ga areba okorimasen yo
Things like cannibalism do not happen if there is a system of free distribution.

218.5.2 Clause (da) to iu koto wa (. . .) nai

This means 'it's not (the case) that', 'it doesn't happen' (see 218.9.2).

a 消費者は価格に敏感になっているが、安ければなんでもいい【ということはない】。
shōhisha wa kakaku ni binkan ni natte iru ga yasukereba nan demo ii to iu koto wa nai
The consumers have become sensitive to price, but it's not the case that everything goes as long as it's cheap.

b アジアと米国との対立【ということは】全く【な】かった。
ajia to beikoku to no tairitsu to iu koto wa mattaku nakatta
A confrontation between Asia and the US didn't happen.

218.6 CLAUSE to iu koto ni naru

Like **koto ni naru**, this indicates the meaning of 'it comes about', 'end up doing/being' (see 83.3.7).

a だからいつも宵張りの朝寝坊【ということになる】。
da kara itsu mo yoippari no asa-nebō to iu koto ni naru
Therefore [= body clock running late] one always ends up having late nights and sleeping in the mornings.

b 砂漠の真ん中に乗り継ぎ専用のドデカイ空港を開発する。…これこそ究極の国際スーパーハブ空港【ということになる】。
sabaku no mannaka ni noritsugi senyō no dodekai kūkō o kaihatsu suru. kore koso kyūkyoku no kokusai sūpā habu kūkō to iu koto ni naru
They will develop an enormous airport specializing in changing planes in the middle of the desert. . . . This will be the ultimate super-hub airport.

218.7 to iu koto wa

This construction (meaning 'that is to say') is used like a conjunction (see 30.6).

a 【ということは】、私はオーストラリアで「ヨシオ・スギモト」を名乗るかわりに、ヒラリー・クリントンは日本語表記では、「クリントン・ヒラリー」と表記すればいいということだ。
to iu koto wa watashi wa ōsutoraria de yoshio sugimoto o nanoru kawari ni hirarī kurinton wa nihongo hyōki de wa kurinton hirarī to hyōki sureba ii to iu koto da
[The order of people's names should follow the rules of the language in which they're used:] That is to say, as I call myself 'Yoshio Sugimoto' in Australia, so Hillary Clinton in Japanese order should be written 'Clinton Hillary'.

218.8 CLAUSE/NOUN **to iu mono**

218.8.1 Noun **to iu mono wa** . . . predicate

Similar **to iu no wa**, this also explains the nature of something 'is' (see 218.4).

a 「カネ【というものは】恐ろしい」と思う時もあった。
kane to iu mono wa osoroshii to omou toki mo atta
There were times when I thought that money was frightening.
[= Retrieving debts]

b 博物館【というものは】、永遠に未完成な存在。
hakubutsukan to iu mono wa eien ni mikansei na sonzai
Museums are forever incomplete entities.

c 風俗や習慣は違っても、人情【というものは】どこへいっても同じですね。
fūzoku ya shūkan wa chigatte mo ninjō to iu mono wa doko e itte mo onaji desu ne
Even if manners and customs differ, human feelings are the same wherever you go, right?

218.8.2 Clause/noun **to iu mono**

Unlike **kara** by itself, which only indicates the idea of time passed 'since', the implication with **to iu mono** is that is has been an inordinately long time 'ever since', 'over (the period that)' (see 75).

a 母はこちらに来てから【というもの】、テレビだけが友人の状態です。
haha wa kochira ni kite kara to iu mono terebi dake ga yūjin no jōtai desu
Ever since mother came here, she has been in a state where her only friend is the TV

b A子さんが入社して十三年間【というもの】、新たな女性の管理職登用はなかった。
A-ko-san ga nyūsha shite jūsannen-kan to iu mono aratana josei no kanrishoku tōyō wa nakatta
Throughout the whole 13-year period since A-ko-san joined the company, there has been no new appointment of a woman to a management post.

218.9 CLAUSE **to iu wake**

218.9.1 Clause **to iu wake da**

This is used when drawing a conclusion from what has been said earlier 'so, what you are saying is' (see 239).

a 同じ犬でも人気が出て手に入りにくくなると値段が上がる【というわけだ】。
onaji inu demo ninki ga dete te ni hairi-nikuku naru to nedan ga agaru to iu wake da
So, what you're saying is that once it gets popular and difficult to get, the same [kind of] dog rises in price.

b「香港に投資することは、中国全体に投資すること」【というわけだ】。
honkon ni tōshi suru koto wa chūgoku zentai ni tōshi suru koto to iu wake da
So, what you're saying is 'investing in Hong Kong amounts to investing in China as a whole'.

218.9.2 Clause **to iu wake de wa nai**

In the neg., the meaning is 'it's not the case that' (see 239).

a 安いから車が売れる【というわけではない】。
yasui kara kuruma ga ureru to iu wake de wa nai
It's not the case that cars sell [just] because they are cheap.

b 大卒女性を本格的に採用し始めてから十年たつが、処遇は男性と同じ【というわけではない】。
daisotsu josei o honkaku-teki ni saiyō shi-hajimete kara jūnen tatsu ga shogū wa dansei to onaji to iu wake dewa nai
It's been 10 years since they started to employ female graduates in earnest, but it's not the case that their treatment is the same as the men's.

218.10 NOUN **to iu yori (mo/wa)**

Like the comparative P **yori** by itself, this indicates comparison 'rather than' (see 252, 25).

a 見てくれはリンゴ【というより】、ナシに近い。
mitekure wa ringo to iu yori nashi ni chikai
The appearance is closer to a [Japanese] pear rather than an apple.

b バイタリティーあふれる語り口は、聖職者【というより】はビジネスマンのようだ。
baitaritī afureru katarikuchi wa seishokusha to iu yori wa bijinesuman no yō da
His way of telling a story, which is brimming with vitality, is more reminiscent of a businessman than a priest.

218.11 NOUN **to iu to**, . . . **ga**, . . .

N **to iu to** is similar to N **(to) wa**, which is used to comment on some entity or activity *X* generically ‘N is . . . , but’, followed by a qualifying statement.

a 乗馬【というと】、はた目には何でもないように見えるが、両足に常に力を込め、体を安定させていなければならない。
jōba to iu to hatame ni wa nan demo nai yō ni mieru ga ryōashi ni tsune ni chikara o kome karada o antei sasete inakereba naranai
Riding looks dead easy to the onlooker, but one needs to keep both legs tense and one’s body stable.

b 美術館【というと】作品になかなか近付けないが、この美術館は触っても大丈夫。
bijutsukan to iu to sakuhin ni nakanaka chikazukenai ga kono bijutsukan wa sawatte mo daijōbu
Art galleries don’t usually let you get close to the works, but in this art gallery it’s OK to touch [them].

218.12 VERB/ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN/NOUN **to iu ka**, VERB/ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN/NOUN **to iu ka**

This is used when searching for an appropriate way of describing something ‘how shall one describe it *A* or *B*?’.

a はっきりした顔【というか】、シンプルな顔【というか】。
hakkiri shita kao to iu ka shinpuru na kao to iu ka
How shall I describe it – a distinct face, or a simple face?

b 痛快【というか】、不遜（ふそん）【というか】、勇ましい役だ。
tsūkai to iu ka fuson to iu ka isamashii yaku da
It’s thrilling or perhaps haughty – anyhow, it’s a dashing part.

c 私は、どちらかというと、ピュア【というか】白【というか】、どんな役にも染まることができると思います。
watashi wa dochira ka to iu to pyua to iu ka shiro to iu ka donna yaku ni mo somaru koto ga dekiru to omoimasu
I think that if anything, I'm pure or maybe white, so I can be coloured by any part [= actress].

218.13 CLAUSE **to wa ie**

The form **ie** is a classical V form that expresses a contrastive conjunction 'but'. The combination means literally "although one says", i.e. 'may be . . . but', 'it may be *A*, but in fact it's no more than *B*' (see 30.4).

a 一種のコンピューター【とは言え】、ゲーム機器もしょせんは玩具。
isshu no konpyūtā to wa ie gēmu kiki mo shosen wa gangu
It may be a kind of computer, but game appliances are after all [no more than] toys.

b 大型連休【とは言え】、不景気も手伝ってやはり主流はミニ旅行。
ōgata renkyū to wa ie fukeiki mo tetsudatte yahari shuryū wa mini ryokō
It may be a long string of holidays, but partly through the effects of the recession the trend is for short trips.

218.14 **to ieba, sō ieba**

(See 13.3.3, 13.3.4.)

219 **to shite** [PHRASAL PARTICLE]

to shite indicates the status or capacity of a thing or person 'as'. **to shite** must not be confused with the conjunctive form of the phrase **to suru** 'to regard/view as', especially as they can appear in identical-looking contexts (see 219.2 d and e for examples) (see 159).

219.1 **to shite (wa/mo)**
219.2 **to shite no** noun

219.1 **to shite (wa/mo)**

a 日本は加工貿易の輸出立国【として】生きてきた
nihon wa kakō bōeki no yushutsu rikkoku to shite ikite kita
Japan has existed as a country based on the export of processing trade.

b 中国の古典文学の研究者【として】も知られ、「水滸伝」「古今奇観」などを翻訳した。
chūgoku no koten bungaku no kenkyūsha to shite mo shirare suikoden kokon kikan nado o hon'yaku shita
He is also known as a researcher into Chinese classical literature, and has translated [works] such as *Suikoden and Kokon Kikan.*

c 本来は抑えだが、先発【として】起用する。
honrai wa osae da ga senpatsu to shite kiyō suru
Originally, he is a stopper, but we'll use him as a starting pitcher.

d 政界から引退後はエコノミスト【として】活躍、多くの著作を残している。
seikai kara intai-go wa ekonomisuto to shite katsuyaku ōku no chosaku o nokoshite iru
After his retirement from the politicial world he was active as an economist, and has made [his mark with] many books.

219.2 to shite no NOUN

When used to modify a N, **no** is attached to **to shite**.

a しかし選手【としての】実績はない。
shikashi senshu to shite no jisseki wa nai
However, he doesn't have any record as a player.

b 実際、今の大阪市には住宅地【としての】魅力は余り感じられない。
jissai ima no ōsaka-shi ni wa jūtakuchi to shite no miryoku wa amari kanjirarenai
In fact, one doesn't feel much attraction to present-day Osaka city as a residential area.

c 投資先【としての】中国の魅力は何よりも巨大な国内市場にある。
tōshisaki to shite no chūgoku no miryoku wa nani yori mo kyodai na kokunai shijō ni aru
The attraction of China as a place for investment lies above all in its vast domestic market.

Note there is also a phrase **to suru**, which means 'to view as', 'deal with' (examples d and e).

d 大阪府警淀川署は強盗事件として男の行方を追っている。
ōsaka-fukei yodogawa-sho wa gōtō jiken to shite otoko no yukue o otte iru
The Yodokawa police station of the Osaka prefectural police views it as a case of burglary and are looking for the man.

e 主として開発問題をテーマとし、推定だがその数は四千から六千にのぼる。
shu to shite kaihatsu mondai o tēma to shi suitei da ga sono kazu wa yonsen kara rokusen ni noboru
[NGOs] deal mostly with development issues, and their number is estimated at four to six thousand.

220 toka [CONJOINING PARTICLE]

toka, a combination of the quotation P **to** and the Q P **ka**, can join nouns in the same way that **ya** does in the sense of ‘and’, ‘or’ (see 241), but unlike **ya** it can be used more than once in a sentence. It is also wider in use in that in can also be used in the sense of **nado** (see 102.1, 29.2).

220.1 ‘and (the like)’, ‘or’
220.2 Colloquial equivalent of **nado**

220.1 ‘AND (THE LIKE)’, ‘OR’

a 中国の「県」は日本の「市」【とか】「郡」に近い。
chūgoku no ken wa nihon no shi toka gun ni chikai
Chinese *ken* [districts] are approximate to Japan’s *shi* [cities] or *gun* [districts].

b 当時はイヤホン【とか】字幕【など】なかったですしね。
tōji wa iyahon toka jimaku nado nakatta desu shi ne
At the time there weren’t any earphones or subtitles, etc.

c 論旨が明快かどうか、途中ではさんだジョークは適切かなどはもちろん、話すスピード、マナーも対象になる。アー【とか】ウー【とか】の乱発など論外である。
ronshi ga meikai ka dō ka tochū de hasanda jōku wa tekisetsu ka nado wa mochiron hanasu spīdo manā mo taishō ni naru. ā toka ū toka no ranpatsu nado rongai de aru
[Speeches] are judged not only by clarity of argument and whether the occasional joke is appropriate, but also [on] speed and manner of delivery. Excessive use of ‘ahs’ and ‘uhs’ and suchlike is out of the question.

d 低所得者【とか】高齢者【とか】に与える影響が大きいですから。
tei-shotokusha toka kōreisha toka ni ataeru eikyō ga ōkii desu kara
The influence it [= tax on essentials] has on people like low earners and the aged is considerable, you see

e 生意気だ【とか】態度が悪い【とか】言われ、傷ついた。
namaiki da toka taido ga warui toka iware kizutsuita
My feelings were hurt, being told things like [I was] being impertinent and had a bad attitude.

220.2 COLLOQUIAL EQUIVALENT OF **nado**

a「日本の新聞【とか】読むの」「うーん。あんまり」「ことばはどうやって覚えるの」「マンガ！クレヨンしんちゃん【とか】」。
nihon no shinbun toka yomu no. ūn anmari. kotoba wa dō yatte oboeru no. manga kureyon shin-chan toka
'Do you read Japanese newspapers and the like?' 'No. Not much.' 'How do you learn the language?' 'Comics! Things like *Kureyon Shin-chan.*'

b そのバッグ、アメ横【とか】で売っている安物っぽいですね。
sono baggu ameyoko toka de utte iru yasumono-ppoi desu ne
That bag is one of those cheap ones they sell in places like Ameyoko, right?

221 **toki** [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

toki is formally a N. Like any other N it can attach the cop., P, etc., but is also used like a conjunctive P in complex S in the pattern [S1 **toki** S2], in the sense of '(the time) when'.

Note that even when S2 (the main clause) is in the past tense, adj., AN and N modifying **toki** in S1 are often in the non-past, i.e. adj.**-i toki**, AN **na toki** and N **no toki**.

The past tense is used with these in S1 when events in the past are contrasted with those in the present. Compare the following examples:

a % 暇【な】ときはよく散歩した。
hima na toki wa yoku sanpo shita
I often went for walks when I wasn't busy.

b % 暇【だった】ときはよく散歩した。
hima datta toki wa yoku sanpo shita
In the times when I wasn't busy, I often went for walks.

As evident from the translation, the S1 past-tense example contrasts the present (busy) state with a (not busy) state in the past, whereas the non-past sentence has no such implication.

With V **toki**, there is a three-way distinction, which is independent of the tense of S2:

V-**ru toki**: the action of V is not yet realized or completed (see 221.2.1)
V-**te iru toki**: the action of V is in the process of being realized or completed (see 221.2.2)
V-**ta toki**: the action of V is realized or completed (see 221.2.3)

Compare examples c–f:

c % 外国旅行に出るとき、鞄を買う。
gaikoku ryokō ni deru toki kaban o kau
I'll buy a bag (at home) when I go abroad.

d % 外国旅行に出るとき、鞄を買った。
gaikoku ryokō ni deru toki kaban o katta
I bought a bag (at home) when I went abroad.

e % 外国旅行に出たとき、鞄を買う。
gaikoku ryokō ni deta toki kaban o kau
I'll buy a bag (abroad) when I go abroad.

f % 外国旅行に出たとき、鞄を買った。
gaikoku ryokō ni deta toki kaban o katta
I bought a bag (abroad) when I went abroad。

The forms to which **toki** is attached are the same as those before other N:

V/adj. N-mod. **toki**
AN/N-cop.-N-mod. **toki**

221.1 Adjective/adjectival noun/noun **toki**
221.2 Verb **toki**
221.2.1 Verb-**ru toki**
221.2.2 Verb-**te iru toki**
221.2.3 Verb-**ta toki**
221.3 Sentence ending + **toki**
221.4 Idiomatic uses

221.1 ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN/NOUN **toki**

a 毎日、好きな【とき】に、好きな人と会える自由さは、非常に大きいですね。
mainichi suki na toki ni suki na hito to aeru jiyū-sa wa hijō ni ōkii desu ne
The freedom to see daily, at a time one wants to, the people one wants to, is extremely important

b つらい【とき】、悲しい【とき】、いつも心に浮かんだのは、大好きな香港の情景だった。
tsurai toki kanashii toki itsu mo kokoro ni ukanda no wa daisuki na honkon no jōkei datta
In times of hardship and times of sadness, it was always the sight of Hong Kong that I love so much that came to mind.

c 定期検診の【とき】医者から注意を受けると焦ってしまう。
teiki kenshin no toki isha kara chūi o ukeru to asette shimau
One gets nervous when the doctor at the time of the regular check-up warns you about things.

d 二十一歳の【とき】からフランス料理一筋で腕を振るい続けた。
nijūissai no toki kara furansu ryōri hitosuji de ude o furui-tsuzuketa
From the time he was 20 he has devoted his talents purely to French cuisine.

e 写真はその発表の【とき】のもの。
shashin wa sono happyō no toki no mono
The photograph [is] from the time of the announcement of it [= the creation of a female baseball team].

f 最も多かった【とき】で年七百本という記録を持っている。
mottomo ōkatta toki de nen nanahyap-pon to iu kiroku o motte iru
When he was at his most productive, he holds the record for [having watched] 700 films per year.

221.2 VERB **toki**

221.2.1 Verb-**ru toki**

As explained in the previous section (recall examples c and d), with V-**ru toki** the action of V is not yet realized or completed.

a 子どもの靴を選ぶ【とき】、何を基準に選びますか。
kodomo no kutsu o erabu toki nani o kijun ni erabimasu ka
On what basis do you make your choice when choosing children's shoes?

b 空港に着陸する【とき】に眺めた美しい景色は印象的だった。
kūkō ni chakuriku suru toki ni nagameta utsukushii keshiki wa inshō-teki datta
The beautiful scenery I saw when landing at the airport was memorable.

c 会えない【とき】は手紙でやり取りした。
aenai toki wa tegami de yaritori shita
At times when they couldn't meet they communicated by letter.

d プレゼントの包みを開ける【とき】の子供の輝くような笑顔が自分の喜びにもなるという。
purezento no tsutsumi o akeru toki no kodomo no kagayaku yō na egao ga jibun no yorokobi ni mo naru to iu
He says that the radiant smiles of the children when they open their presents is a pleasure for him, too.

e 外国旅行に出る【とき】、空港で出国手続きを済ませる。
kaigai ryokō ni deru toki kūkō de shukkoku tetsuzuki o sumaseru
When he goes overseas on business, he undergoes the departure formalities at the airport.

221.2.2 Verb-**te iru toki**

The meaning of **-te iru** in these sentences is progressive, i.e. it is used with action V only.

a だれでも仕事をしている【とき】に感動の瞬間というものがある。
dare de mo shigoto o shite iru toki ni kandō no shunkan to iu mono ga aru
Everybody has moments of excitement when working.

b 絵を描いている【とき】はいつも、頭の中で音や言葉のフレーズが流れている。
e o kaite iru toki wa itsu mo atama no naka de oto ya kotoba no furēzu ga nagarete iru
When I paint pictures, there's always a flow of sounds and language phrases inside my head.

221.2.3 Verb-**ta toki**

As explained above (recall examples e and f), with V-**ta toki** the action of V is already realized or completed.

a 店に商品を置いた【とき】にいかに客の目を引くか。
mise ni shōhin o oita toki ni ika ni kyaku no me o hiku ka
When you've introduced a product to the shop, [the question is] how best to catch the eyes of the customers.

b 群集心理というのは、「多数が一カ所に密集した【とき】に生ずる心理状態」をいう。
gunshū shinri to iu no wa tasū ga ikkasho ni misshū shita toki ni shōzuru shinri jōtai o iu
Mass psychology is 'the psychological state that arises when many congregate in one place'

c 十五年ぶりに帰国した【とき】、家の周辺の変わりように驚きました。
jūgonen-buri ni kikoku shita toki ie no shūhen no kawariyō ni odorokimashita
When I went back to my country for the first time in 15 years, I was amazed at the changes in my neighbourhood.

d PSは実験に関して深い知識が要求されます。実験装置が故障した【とき】には修理もしなければなりません。
pī esu wa jikken ni kanshite fukai chishiki ga yōkyū saremasu. jikken sōchi ga koshō shita toki ni wa shūri mo shinakereba narimasen
A PS [= payload specialist on space probe] needs to be very knowledgeable about experiments. When the experimental apparatus breaks down s/he needs to repair it, too.

221.3 SENTENCE ENDING + **toki**

toki can also be attached to S endings, such as **-tai**, **-sō** [likelihood] and others, again in the N-mod. form.

a 利用者は、遊びたい【とき】に好みのソフトを選択してゲームを楽しむ。
riyōsha wa asobitai toki ni konomi no sofuto o sentaku shite gēmu o tanoshimu
The users enjoy the game by selecting software of their choice when they want to play.

b 冷夏が来そうな【とき】、早めに花を咲かせて実をつくってしまうこともできる。
reika ga kisō na toki hayame ni hana o sakasete mi o tsukutte shimau koto mo dekiru
[If the agent that makes a flower bloom is discovered] We will be able to do things like getting them to flower and fruit early when there are indications that a cold summer is in store.

221.4 IDIOMATIC USES

Phrases like **aru toki** ‘one time’, **iza to iu toki** ‘in case of emergency’, **masaka no toki** ‘if the worst comes to the worst’, ‘in case of trouble’ are idiomatic or lexical expressions.

a ある【とき】、大学で実験中の装置が突然壊れたという。
aru toki daigaku de jikken-chū no sōchi ga totsuzen kowareta to iu
One time, the experimental apparatus suddenly broke down during an experiment at the university, he says.

b いざという【とき】のために、着衣泳体験でサバイバル・テクニックを心得ておきたい。
iza to iu toki no tame ni chakuiei taiken de sabaibaru tekunikku o kokoroete okitai
In case of emergency, one wants to familiarize oneself with survival techniques by experiencing swimming with clothes on.

c …安いところから買おうとすると、儲からん仕入れ先は離れていく。まさかの【とき】には助けてくれない。
yasui tokoro kara kaō to suru to mōkaran shiiresaki wa hanarete iku. masaka no toki ni wa tasukete kurenai
. . . if we try to buy only from cheap places, suppliers who don't make a profit will steer clear of us. In case of trouble, they won't help.

222 **toki** [TIME NOUN]

As a N, **toki** 'time' is written with the *kanji* 時 or in *hiragana* (とき), whereas as a conjunctive P it nowadays tends to be written in *hiragana* only (see 221). However, the distinction is not always clear, there being examples of **toki** [time N] that are translated as 'when' or 'the time when'. Being formally a N, when **toki** is modified by a clause in such S (examples. c–f), it acts as a relative clause head N, just like any other N (see 143.1).

a こんな【時】に歌なんて……。
konna toki ni uta nante
Singing at a [difficult] time like this? [That's hard to believe.]

b 何であの【時】、入院なんかしたんだろう。
nande ano toki nyūin nanka shita n darō
Why did I get myself hospitalized that time, I wonder.

c とうとうユニホームを脱ぐ【とき】が来た。
tōtō unihōmu o nugu toki ga kita
Finally the time has come to take off the uniform [= retire].

d 借金は15年前に家を新築した【とき】のローンの残り。
shakkin wa jūgonen ni ie o shinchiku shita toki no rōn no nokori
The debt is the remainder of the loan [taken out] when we rebuilt our house 15 years ago.

e 人間生きていればつらい目にあう【とき】も落ち込む【とき】もある。
ningen ikite ireba tsurai me ni au toki mo ochikomu toki mo aru
As long as one is alive, there are times when things are hard and times when one feels down.

f 学生と接している【とき】が一番楽しいという教員はいっぱいいる。
gakusei to sesshite iru toki ga ichiban tanoshii to iu kyōin wa ippai iru
There are many teachers who feel that the time when they are in contact with the students is the most enjoyable of all.

g 赤ん坊の【時】に抱かれた記憶もなく、父の愛情を実感できずにいた。
akanbō no toki ni dakareta kioku mo naku chichi no aijō o jikkan dekizu ni ita
I have no memories of being cuddled when I was a baby, and was unable to realize my father's love.

223 TRANSITIVE/INTRANSITIVE VERB PAIRS

Japanese has a large number of verbs that come in (formally related) transitive/intransitive pairs (for a comparison of the use of transitive and intransitive V, see 160, 156, 20, 161, 183, 231 and certain aspectual S endings: 196, 199).

Common pairs and their relation in form are shown in Table 24 (only one representative meaning is given).

Note – only very few pairs are identical in form (compare this to the large number of identical pairs in the English translation).

Table 24 Transitive and intransitive verb pairs

Intransitive verb	*Transitive verb*
-aru	***-eru***
agaru 上がる 'rise'	**ageru** 上げる 'raise'
ataru 当たる 'be hit'	**ateru** 当てる 'hit'
atsumaru 集まる 'be gathered'	**atsumeru** 集める 'gather'
azukaru 預かる 'be entrusted'	**azukeru** 預ける 'entrust'
hajimaru 始まる 'begin'	**hajimeru** 始める 'begin'
kakaru かかる 'hang'	**kakeru** かける 'hang'
magaru 曲がる 'be bent'	**mageru** 曲げる 'bend'
mazaru 混ざる 'be mixed'	**mazeru** 混ぜる 'mix'
mitsukaru 見つかる 'be found'	**mitsukeru** 見つける 'find'
sagaru 下がる 'hang'	**sageru** 下げる 'hang'
shimaru 閉まる 'close'	**shimeru** 閉める 'close'
shizumaru 静まる 'calm'	**shizumeru** 静める 'calm'
tomaru 止まる 'stop'	**tomeru** 止める 'stop'
tsumaru 詰まる 'stuffed'	**tsumeru** 詰める 'stuff'
tsunagaru つながる 'connect'	**tsunageru** つなげる 'connect' (ALSO **tsunagu** つなぐ)
-u	***-eru***
aku 開く 'be open'	**akeru** 開ける 'open'
machigau 間違う 'be mistaken'	**machigaeru** 間違える 'make a mistake'

Table 24 (Cont'd)

Intransitive verb	*Transitive verb*
muku 向く 'face'	**mukeru** 向ける 'point at'
susumu 進む 'advance'	**susumeru** 進める 'advance'
tsuku つく 'stick'	**tsukeru** つける 'attach'
ukabu 浮かぶ 'float'	**ukaberu** 浮かべる 'float'
umaru 埋る 'be buried'	**umeru** 埋める 'bury'
sodatsu 育つ 'grow up'	**sodateru** 育てる 'bring up'
tatsu 立つ 'stand'	**tateru** 立てる 'erect'
-waru	***-eru***
kawaru 変わる 'change'	**kaeru** 変える 'change'
owaru 終わる 'end'	**oeru** 終える 'end' (ALSO **owaru** 終わる)
tsutawaru 伝わる 'be transmitted'	**tsutaeru** 伝える 'transmit'
-ru	***-su***
amaru 余る 'be left over'	**amasu** 余す 'leave over'
kaeru 返る 'return'	**kaesu** 返す 'return'
naoru 直る 'be mended'	**naosu** 直す 'mend'
nokoru 残る 'be left'	**nokosu** 残す 'leave'
tōru 通る 'pass through'	**tōsu** 通す 'pass through'
wataru 渡る 'cross over'	**watasu** 渡す 'pass over'
-ku	***-su***
kawaku 乾く 'dry'	**kawakasu** 乾かす 'dry'
ugoku 動く 'move'	**ugokasu** 動かす 'move'
-eru	***-asu***
deru 出る 'come out'	**dasu** 出す 'put out'
-eru	***-yasu***
fueru 増える 'increase'	**fuyasu** 増やす 'increase'
hieru 冷える 'get cool'	**hiyasu** 冷やす 'cool'
moeru 燃える 'be burnt'	**moyasu** 燃やす 'burn'
-reru	***-su***
kakureru 隠れる 'hide'	**kakusu** 隠す 'hide'
kowareru 壊れる 'break'	**kowasu** 壊す 'break'
taoreru 倒れる 'collapse'	**taosu** 倒す 'knock down'
-reru	***-asu***
nagareru 流れる 'flow'	**nagasu** 流す 'let flow'
-eru	***-u***
kudakeru 砕ける 'be crushed'	**kudaku** 砕く 'crush'
nukeru 抜ける 'come out'	**nuku** 抜く 'pull out'
wareru 割れる 'split'	**waru** 割る 'split'
yakeru 焼ける 'be roasted'	**yaku** 焼く 'roast'

Table 24 (*Cont'd*)

Intransitive verb	*Transitive verb*
-iru	***-osu***
horobiru 滅びる 'be ruined'	**horobosu** 滅ぼす 'ruin'
ochiru 落ちる 'fall'	**otosu** 落す 'drop'
okiru 起きる 'get up'	**okosu** 起こす 'raise'
oriru 降りる 'come/go down'	**orosu** 降ろす 'take down'
sugiru 過ぎる 'pass'	**sugosu** 過ごす 'pass'
Irregular	
hairu* 入る 'enter'	**ireru** 入れる 'enter'
kieru 消える 'go out'	**kesu** 消す 'put out'
mieru 見える 'be seen'	**miru** 見る 'see'
noru 乗る 'get on'	**noseru** 乗せる 'put on'
Identical	
fuku 吹く 'blow, breathe'	**fuku** 吹く 'breathe'
masu 増す 'increase'	**masu** 増す 'increase'

Notes * **hairu** is the usual pronunciation for 入る, but **iru** occurs in compounds 入口 iriguchi 'entrance' etc. and idioms 郷に入れば郷に従え (**gō ni ireba gō ni shitagae**) 'when in Rome do as the Romans do'.

224 tsumori [SENTENCE ENDING]

As **tsumori** is a structural N, it is attached to S ending in N-mod. forms. Besides its use with cop., it can also attach **wa/ga** (*see* 224.3). **tsumori** indicates intention.

Note how some of the uses of **tsumori** are dependent on whether **tsumori** refers to the first- (in statements)/second- (in Q) person on the one hand, or the third person on the other. In practice, the person information is usually omitted, however.

224.1 Clause-non-past **tsumori**
224.1.1 (First-/third-person) clause **tsumori da**
224.1.2 (Third-person) clause **tsumori darō**
224.1.3 (First-/third-person) clause-non-past **tsumori datta**
224.1.4 (First-/third-person) clause **tsumori de** predicate
224.2 Clause-past **tsumori**
224.2.1 (First-person) clause-past **tsumori da**
224.2.2 (First-/third-person) clause-past **tsumori datta**
224.3 (First-/third-person) clause-non-past **tsumori wa nai**
224.4 (First-/third-person) clause-non-past **tsumori de iru**

224.1 CLAUSE-NON-PAST **tsumori**

224.1.1 (First-/third-person) clause **tsumori da**

Used of the first or third person, this means ‘I/we/he/she/they intend(s) to’.

a 新政権に働きかける【つもりだ】。
shin-seiken ni hatarakikakeru tsumori da
I intend to make approaches to the new government.

b あらゆる機会をとらえて訴えていく【つもりです】。
arayuru kikai o toraete uttaete iku tsumori desu
I intend to appeal [to the public about this] at (*lit.* “making use of”) every possible opportunity.

c 今年は公務員試験を受ける【つもりだ】。
kotoshi wa kōmuin shiken o ukeru tsumori da
This year he intends to take the public service exams.

d 子供を産んだら仕事を辞める【つもりだ】。
kodomo o undara shigoto o yameru tsumori da
When she has her baby, she intends to give up work.

224.1.2 (Third-person) clause **tsumori darō**

tsumori darō can only refer to a 3rd person ‘I think he/she/they intend(s) to’.

a 選挙運動で連呼する【つもりだろう】。
senkyo undō de renko suru tsumori darō
He intends to call out his name repeatedly in the election campaign, I think.

224.1.3 (First-/third-person) clause-non-past **tsumori datta**

This is the same as 224.1.1, but in the past tense ‘I/we/he/she/they intended to’.

a 学問の道に進む【つもりだった】。
gakumon no michi ni susumu tsumori datta
I had intended to go down the path of scholarship.

b しばらく一緒に暮らしてみて、結論を出す【つもりだった】。
shibaraku issho ni kurashite mite ketsuron o dasu tsumori datta
We intended to live together for some time, and then reach a conclusion

224.1.4 (First-/third-person) clause **tsumori de** predicate

When **tsumori da** is used in the conjunctive form of cop. (i.e. modifies a following V), the meaning is ‘with the intention of’.

a 「いいものを歴史に残す【つもりで】つくった」といっている。
ii mono o rekishi ni nokosu tsumori de tsukutta to itte iru
He says, ‘I made it with the intention of leaving something good for posterity’.

b 今国会中に補正が成立する【つもりで】準備してもらいたい。
kon-kokkai-chū ni hosei ga seiritsu suru tsumori de junbi shite moraitai
We’d like people to make preparations with the intent that the supplementary budget is effected during the current session of the Diet.

224.2 CLAUSE-PAST **tsumori**

224.2.1 (First-person) clause-past **tsumori da**

The speaker indicates that he hopes or flatters himself to have achieved something positive ‘I hope that’, ‘I flatter myself that’.

a 僕は日本通ぶった視点は避けた【つもりです】。
boku wa nihontsū-butta shiten wa saketa tsumori desu
I hope that I avoided a position of pretending to be a Japan expert.

b 私は長い間、女性の社会進出のための仕事をしてきた【つもりだ】。
watashi wa nagai aida josei no shakai shinshutsu no tame no shigoto o shite kita tsumori da
I flatter myself that I’ve long worked for the social advancement of women.

224.2.2 (First-/third-person) clause-past **tsumori datta**

The speaker indicates that he thought or flattered himself that he had achieved something positive, which subsequently turned out to be a negative result ‘I thought that . . . (but in fact)’. This can also be used in commenting on third persons.

a 商売のコツは頭ではわかっていた【つもりだった】が、甘くはなかった。
shōbai no kotsu wa atama de wa wakatte ita tsumori datta ga amaku wa nakatta
I thought that I’d understood the ways of business, but it wasn’t so easy.

b 大枚をはたいた【つもりだった】が、日本の知人の話を聞いてがく然とした。
taimai o hataita tsumori datta ga nihon no chijin no hanashi o kiite gakuzen to shita
I thought I had spent a large sum of money, but I was really shocked when I heard what my Japanese friend told me.

224.3 (FIRST-/THIRD-PERSON) CLAUSE-NON-PAST **tsumori wa nai**

This means ‘have no intention of’.

a 特に手の込んだ料理を作る【つもりはない】。
toku ni te no konda ryōri o tsukuru tsumori wa nai
I have no intention of preparing any particularly complicated dishes.

b 新しい歌を発表する【つもりはな】かった。
atarashii uta o happyō suru tsumori wa nakatta
I had no intention of publishing a new song.

224.4 (FIRST-/THIRD-PERSON) CLAUSE-NON-PAST **tsumori de iru**

This means ‘have the intention of’; it is different from **tsumori da** in that the emphasis is on the intention a person has at a certain time, as the intention may of course change over time.

a 最低、あと七年は現役を続ける【つもりでいる】。
saitei ato shichinen wa gen'eki o tsuzukeru tsumori de iru
His intention is to remain active [as a player] for at least another seven years.

b 最初は「この会社に骨を埋める【つもりでい】た」という。
saisho wa kono kaisha ni hone o umeru tsumori de ita to iu
He says that in the beginning ‘I had the intention of staying in this company forever’.

c 開発を手助けした【つもりでい】たのが、「環境破壊に手を貸した」となじられる。
kaihatsu o tedasuke shita tsumori de ita no ga kankyō hakai ni te o kashita to najirareru
My intention was to assist development, but I’m being accused of ‘having assisted in destruction of the environment’.

225 -tsutsu [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

Attached to V-stem, **-tsutsu** expresses the idea of ‘while’ (see 103). Like **-nagara (mo)**, **-tsutsu** can also imply a contrast.

Note that like **-nagara**, **-tsutsu** requires that the subject (or actor) of the V be the same in S1 and S2.

225.1 Clause 1-**tsutsu** clause 2 simultaneous actions
225.2 Clause 1-**tsutsu (mo)** clause 2 contrasted actions

225.1 CLAUSE 1-**tsutsu** CLAUSE 2: SIMULTANEOUS ACTIONS

-tsutsu expresses simultaneous actions performed by the same agent or subject 'while' (see 103).

Note – 'simultaneous actions' does not necessarily mean that both actions are carried out at the same time; one of them can be intermittent (e.g. example b).

a 楽しみ【つつ】、生き方を充実させたい。
tanoshimi-tsutsu ikikata o jūjitsu sasetai
I want to make the most of my life while [also] having fun.

b 冗談を交え【つつ】、沖縄音楽の近況を語った。
jōdan o majie-tsutsu okinawa ongaku no kinkyō o katatta
He told about the current state of Okinawan music, mixing in jokes.

c 各民族の特徴を生かし【つつ】、国家を形成しようというわけだ。
kaku-minzoku no tokuchō o ikashi-tsutsu kokka o keisei shiyō to iu wake da
What they're saying is that they want to form a nation while making the most of the characteristics of each ethnic group.

d 自己を大切にし【つつ】、いかにチームに溶け込むか。
jiko o taisetsu ni shi-tsutsu ika ni chīmu ni tokekomu ka
How does one blend into the team while keeping one's own interest in mind?

225.2 CLAUSE 1-**tsutsu (mo)** CLAUSE 2: CONTRASTED ACTIONS

-tsutsu (mo) expresses a contrast 'while', 'even though' (see 56, 79, 103, 140, 218.13).

a このような理念は当時の人々が持ち【つつ】、実行に移さなかった。
kono yō na rinen wa tōji no hitobito ga mochi-tsutsu jikkō ni utsusanakatta
While the people at the time had this kind of ideal, they didn't put it into practice.

b 野球を続けたいと思い【つつ】、やむなく断念した選手も多い。
yakyū o tsuzuketai to omoi-tsutsu yamunaku dannen shita senshu mo ōi
While wanting to go on with baseball, there are many players who had to give it up.

c 最終的には自分で考えろと言い【つつも】、退職を促すようなアドバイスを繰り返した。
saishū-teki ni wa jibun de kangaero to ii-tsutsu mo taishoku o unagasu yō na adobaisu o kurikaeshita
While telling me to make the final decision myself, he repeatedly gave advice that urged me to resign.

226 -tsutsu aru [SENTENCE ENDING]

Attached to V-stem, **-tsutsu aru** is used as an alternative to **-te iru**, but with only the progressive interpretation 'in the process of' (see 199.1, 199.3).

a 「楽器を弾かないミュージシャン」として、日本でも認知され【つつある】。
gakki o hikanai myūjishan to shite nihon de mo ninchi sare-tsutsu aru
As a 'musician who doesn't play an instrument', he is in the process of becoming known in Japan too.

b 日本でもマネジド・ヘルスケアに対する関心が高まり【つつある】。
nihon de mo manejido herusukea ni taisuru kanshin ga takamari-tsutsu aru
In Japan too, interest in managed healthcare is increasing.

c 迷いつつも女子学生は、留年という「自由」を確実に手にし【つつある】。
mayoi-tsutsu mo joshi gakusei wa ryūnen to iu jiyū o kakujitsu ni te ni shi-tsutsu aru
Though hesitantly, women students are in the process of steadily acquiring the 'freedom' of studying an extra year.

227 -TTE [SENTENCE ENDING]

-tte is a colloquial equivalent to **sō** [hearsay], often in the form **-tte ne**. It can be attached to either the plain (example a) or polite form of V (examples b and c). In this way, it differs from **sō**, which is added to the plain form only (see 181, 169).

a 日本は何でも高いんだ【って】ね。
nihon wa nan demo takai n da-tte ne
I hear that everything's expensive in Japan.

b ピアノが大変お上手なんです【って】ね。
piano ga taihen o-jōzu nan desu-tte ne
I hear that you're very good at playing the piano.

c ユニバーサル・スタジオ、楽しいんです【って】ね。
yunibāsaru sutajio tanoshii n desu-tte ne
The Universal Studios are great fun, I hear.

d 王子様を好きだった人魚姫さんは、最後は空気の精になってお空に飛んで行ってしまったんだ【って】。
ōji-sama o suki datta ningyo hime-san wa saigo wa kūki no sei ni natte o-sora ni tonde itte shimatta n da-tte
The mermaid, who liked the prince, in the end turned into a sylph and flew up into the sky, they say

228 tte/te [QUOTATION/DEFINITION PARTICLE EQUIVALENT]

tte/te is a common colloquial equivalent of **to**, **to iu** or **(to iu no) wa** (see 218.2.2, 218.3.2, 218.4).

Note – after 何 **(nan)**, **tte** becomes **te**, resulting in **nante**.

228.1 Equivalent of **to**
228.2 Equivalent of **to iu**
228.3 Equivalent of **(to iu no) wa**

228.1 EQUIVALENT OF to

In example a, **nante** is an equivalent of **nan to**, i.e. **nan** + quotation P. In example c, **nante**, preceding an evaluatory adjective, is emphatic, expressing astonishment.

a 僕の名字にちゃんと変えてもらわないと、田舎の両親に何【て】言われるか……」。
boku no myōji ni chanto kaete morawanai to inaka no ryōshin ni nan te iwareru ka
Unless you change your surname to mine, God knows what my traditional-minded parents will say to me . . .

b 今年のクリスマスは家でホームパーティーしよう【って】言ったのは君だぜ。
kotoshi no kurisumasu wa ie de hōmu pātī shiyo tte itta no wa kimi da ze.
It was you who said that this Christmas we should have a house party.

c 人間って何【て】美しいんでしょう。まあ、すばらしい新世界。
ningen tte nante utsukushii n deshō. mā subarashii shinsekai
How beauteous mankind is! O brave new world [that has such people in it]! (From Shakespeare's *The Tempest*) [Re. the first **tte**, see 228.3 f below]

228.2 EQUIVALENT OF to iu

As in 228.1c, **nante** combines here with evaluatory adj., emphasizing their meaning. Unlike 228.1c, however, these adj. are followed by a N (hence the equivalent **to iu** . . . N).

Note also **te koto wa** (= **to iu koto wa**) in example c, which is used like a conjunction (see 218.7, 30.6).

a 恐れ入りました【って】感じ。
osore irimashita tte kanji
One's staggered (*lit.* "The feeling's one of being staggered").

b 役者が役者をやる【って】のは難しいです。
yakusha ga yakusha o yaru tte no wa muzukashii desu
An actor playing an actor – that's difficult.

c 【て】ことは、私もあと何年かしたらああなる【って】ことなのかしら?
(てことは = ということは)
te koto wa watashi mo ato nannen ka shitara ā naru tte koto na no kashira
Does that mean that in a few years I'll end up like that [= **o-tsubone-san**, a grumbling middle-aged female office worker disliked by all] too?

d 悲しみの両親、「何【て】むごいこと…」——三重バラバラ事件。
kanashimi no ryōshin nante mugoi koto — mie barabara jiken
The saddened parents [said], 'What a cruel thing . . .' – the dismembered body case in Mie [prefecture].

228.3 EQUIVALENT OF (**to iu no**) **wa**

After N, the equivalent can be thought of as either **wa** or **to iu no wa**.

a 出生率カ1.5を下回る【って】本当ですか。
shussei-ritsu ga ittengo o shitamawaru tte hontō desu ka
Is it true that the birth rate will drop below 1.5?

b 人々に感動や夢を与える【って】スゴイ。
hitobito ni kandō ya yume o ataeru tte sugoi
Touching people's hearts and giving them visions, that's wonderful.

c エプロン姿のお父さん【って】「かっこいい」。
epuron sugata no o-tō-san tte kakko ii
Daddy wearing an apron – that's 'cool'.

d 記者団に対し「どうするか【って】?決めにゃーなー」
kishadan ni taishi dō suru ka tte kime'nyā nā
To the press corps [he said] 'What we're going to do? We've got to decide . . .'

e 人間【って】何て美しいんでしょう。まあ、すばらしい新世界。
ningen tte nante utsukushii n deshō. mā subarashii shinsekai
How beauteous mankind is! O brave new world [that has such people in it]! (From Shakespeare's *The Tempest*)

f 「私【って】何?」「何ができるの?」
watashi tte nani nani ga dekiru no
'Who am I?', 'What can I achieve?'

229 **uchi** [CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE]

Although it functions as a conjunctive P, **uchi** is formally a N, and therefore attaches forms that precede and follow N

The basic meaning of **uchi** is 'within a certain limit' in terms of both time and space. Note that regardless of tense, **uchi** is attached to V-**ru** (see 7, 8).

229.1 Clause 1 **uchi** clause 2
229.1.1 Clause 1-positive **uchi** clause 2
229.1.2 Clause 1 (verb-negative) **uchi ni** clause 2
229.2 Clause 1 (verb-**ru**/verb-**te iru**) **uchi ni** clause 2
229.3 Adjective/adjectival noun/noun **uchi ni**
229.4 Idiomatic uses
229.4.1 Near future
229.4.2 Short time
229.4.3 Others: **muishiki no uchi ni**

229.1 CLAUSE 1 uchi CLAUSE 2

S1 indicates a state. The implication in **uchi** S is that as the state (pos. or neg.) indicated in S1 is liable to change, the action of S2 takes place 'while' that state still remains.

It is mostly used in the form **uchi ni**, but **uchi wa** is also found. For example (in 229.1.1 b), **uchi wa** emphasizes the idea of 'while', whereas in example 229.1.1 d, where there is a contrast between the two clauses, the effect is one of emphasizing the contrast.

229.1.1 Clause 1-positive uchi clause 2

a 条件の良い【うち】に判を押した方がいい。
jōken ga ii uchi ni han o oshita hō ga ii
You should stamp [the agreement] while the conditions are good.

b 元気な【うち】は人のために働きたい。
genki na uchi wa hito no tame ni hatarakitai
While I'm healthy I want to work for [the benefit of] others.

c 貯蓄が潤沢な【うち】に、来るべき高齢化社会に備えて社会資本の整備を急ぐべきだ。
chochiku ga juntaku na uchi ni kuru-beki kōrei-ka shakai ni sonaete shakai shihon no seibi o isogu-beki da
While savings are plentiful, we must hurry and prepare social funds in preparation for the coming aged society.

d もうけられる【うち】にもうけておこうという姿勢は慎んでほしい。
mōkerareru uchi ni mōkete okō to iu shisei wa tsutsushinde hoshii
I want them to restrain their attitude of 'Let's make money while we can'.

e 「校舎が残っている【うち】はまだ実感が無いが、いざ無くなってしまうと寂しくなるかも」と語る。
kōsha ga nokotte iru uchi wa mada jikkan ga nai ga iza naku natte shimau to sabishiku naru ka mo to kataru
‘While the school building is still there, it doesn’t hit you, but once it’s gone, I might feel lonely’, he says.

229.1.2 Clause 1 (verb-negative) **uchi ni** clause 2

After S1 ending in a neg. form (**-nai**, **-nu**), **uchi ni** is used. The meaning is literally “while still not”, i.e. ‘before something happens’, or with expression of time ‘before (time) has passed’.

a 電車がなくならない【うち】に帰ります。
densha ga naku naranai uchi ni kaerimasu
I’m going home before the trains stop running.

b 知らない【うち】に山林が開発されていた。
shiranai uchi ni sanrin ga kaihatsu sarete ita
Before we knew it, the mountain forest had been developed.

c 30秒とたたない【うち】に電話がかかってくる。
sanjūbyō to tatanai uchi ni denwa ga kakatte kuru
Before 30 seconds had passed, the phone rang.

d ほとんどの人は5分もしない【うち】に手足が重くなり、眠りに近いめい想状態に入る。
hotondo no hito wa gofun mo shinai uchi ni teashi ga omoku nari nemuri ni chikai meisōjōtai ni hairu
[Traditional Indian sesame oil massage] Before five minutes have passed, most people feel their limbs become heavy and enter a meditative state akin to sleep.

e カビに占領されない【うち】に早く処理したい。
kabi ni senryō sarenai uchi ni hayaku shori shitai
[Dried foods] should be used promptly, before they go mouldy.

f 「知らない【うちに】逃げ道を用意していたのかもしれない」と打ち明ける。
shiranai uchi ni nigemichi o yōi shite ita no ka mo shirenai to uchiakeru
‘They may have prepared an escape route without our knowledge’, he reveals.

g だが、一年もたたぬ【うちに】歯車が狂い始めた。「夫は一人では何もできない人だった」。
da ga ichinen mo tatanu uchi ni haguruma ga kurui-hajimeta. otto wa hitori de wa nani mo dekinai hito datta
However, before a year had passed [since marriage], the cogs began to slip. ‘My husband turned out to be a person who can’t do anything by himself.’

229.2 CLAUSE 1 (VERB-ru/VERB-te iru) uchi ni CLAUSE 2

After V-**ru** and V-**te iru**, **uchi ni** indicates a gradual change that occurs ‘as’ or ‘while’ the action of S1 takes place, or ‘in the course of’ it.

a 電話の声は相談する【うちに】だいぶ明るくなってきた。
denwa no koe wa sōdan suru uchi ni daibu akaruku natte kita
In the course of talking [with me], the voice on the other end of the phone became quite cheerful.

b 議論している【うちに】時間ばかりがたっている。
giron shite iru uchi ni jikan bakari ga tatte iru
While we’re arguing, time is slipping rapidly away [= all we’re doing is wasting time].

c 何度も聴く【うちに】耳に残るメロディー。
nando mo kiku uchi ni mimi ni nokoru merodī
It’s a melody that sticks in your head (*lit.* “ears”) as you listen to it over and over again.

d 何回も会う【うちに】自然に話しができるようになるんですけどね。
nankai mo au uchi ni shizen ni hanashi ga dekiru yō ni naru n desu kedo ne
In the course of seeing [the other person] many times, one comes to be able to talk naturally [to him], you know.

e 話している【うちに】忘れかけていた関西弁がポンポン飛び出してくる。
hanashite iru uchi ni wasure-kakete ita kansaiben ga ponpon tobidashite kuru
As I’m talking, the Kansai dialect that I’d begun to forget pops out, one word after another.

f 本を書いている【うちに】、船を動かす人、船をつくった人に対する興味も募った。
hon o kaite iru uchi ni fune o ugokasu hito fune o tsukutta hito ni taisuru kyōmi mo tsunotta
While he was writing the book [= history of ships], he also developed an interest in the people who man ships and the people who built the ships.

g 失敗を重ねる【うちに】、コツは手を放すタイミングにあることに気付く。
shippai o kasaneru uchi ni kotsu wa te o hanasu taimingu ni aru koto ni kizuku
As they fail repeatedly [to fly *take-tonbo*, a propeller-like bamboo toy], they realize that the trick is in the timing of when to let go.

229.3 ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN/NOUN **uchi ni**

Here, the structure is not S1 **uchi** S2, but A/AN/N **uchi ni** modifies a following V in the sense of ‘while’. In this use, **uchi ni** cannot be replaced by **uchi wa**.

a 熱い【うち】にどうぞ。
atsui uchi ni dōzo
Please, go ahead [and eat] while it’s hot.

b そこで、健康な【うち】に宣言しておくことが必要だという。
soko de kenkō na uchi ni sengen shite oku koto ga hitsuyō da to iu
[You might fall into a coma and no longer be able to express your wishes] Therefore, it’s necessary to declare [your wishes re life support machines] while you’re healthy.

c 会わせたい人がいたら、今の【うち】に会わせておいてください。
awasetai hito ga itara ima no uchi ni awasete oite kudasai
If there’s someone you want me to meet, let me meet him now [while I’m not too busy].

229.4 IDIOMATIC USES

229.4.1 Near future

In this use, **uchi ni** has the meaning ‘soon’, ‘before long’.

a 近い【うちに】必ず値上がりする。
chikai uchi ni kanarazu ne-agari suru
The price will go up without fail in the near future.

b ここ数年の【うちに】概要を詰める。
koko sūnen no uchi ni gaiyō o tsumeru
They will firm up the outline sometime within the next few years.

229.4.2 Short time

This meaning is ‘in a flash’, ‘instantly’, etc.

a みるみる【うちに】顔が青ざめる。
mirumiru uchi ni kao ga aozameru
His face went pale in an instant.

b 12月の声を聞くか聞かない【うちに】街は早くもクリスマス一色だ。
jūnigatsu no koe o kiku ka kikanai uchi ni machi wa hayaku mo kurisumasu isshoku da
Regardless of whether or not December is here, the town has swiftly taken on an atmosphere of Christmas

c 両親が寝たきりになったら、ボケてしまったらどうしよう。おしめをしてあげられるだろうか。おふろに入れてあげられるだろうか。食事は。着替えは。そんな思いが一瞬の【うちに】脳裏を駆け巡った。
ryōshin ga netakiri ni nattara bokete shimattara dō shiyō. oshime o shite agerareru darō ka. ofuro ni irete agerareru darō ka. shokuji wa. kigae wa. sonna omoi ga isshun no uchi ni nōri o kakemegutta
What am I going to do if my parents become bedridden and senile? Will I manage to change their nappies for them? Will I be able to bathe them? What about meals? Change of clothes? Those kinds of ideas raced through my head in a flash.

229.4.3 Others: **muishiki no uchi ni**

This phrase means 'subconsciously'.

a 人間の耳は無意識の【うち】に聞きたい音と聞きたくない音を区別している。
ningen no mimi wa muishiki no uchi ni kikitai oto to kikitakunai oto o kubetsu shite iru
The human ear subconsciously distinguishes between sounds it wants to hear and sounds it doesn't want to hear.

230 **uchi** [RELATIONAL NOUN]

As a relational N, **uchi** indicates the idea of 'among', 'of' or 'during'.

a この【うち】六人が死亡している。
kono uchi rokunin ga shibō shite iru
Of these, six have died.

b この【うち】六巻までをゲーム化した。
kono uchi rokkan made o gēmu-ka shita
Of these [= volumes of a novel], they have turned as many as six volumes into game software.

c その【うち】二本が今月になって花を咲かせた。
sono uchi nihon ga kongetsu ni natte hana o sakaseta
Two of these trees have blossomed this month.

d 仕事も電子メディアを使うとなると、朝の【うち】はＡ社のため、昼からはＢ社の仕事ということも。
shigoto mo denshi media o tsukau to naru to asa no uchi wa A-sha no tame hiru kara wa B-sha no shigoto to iu koto mo
If one were to use electronic media at work too, one might work for company A in the mornings and company B in the afternoons.

e 歌い手さんでも、だんだん上手になってくると、歌詞がはっきりしてきますでしよ。最初の【うち】はなに言ってるかわからなくても。
utaite-san de mo dandan jōzu ni natte kuru to kashi ga hakkiri shite kimasu desho. saisho no uchi wa nani itteru ka wakaranakute mo
As they get more proficient, singers' pronunciation gradually gets clearer, doesn't it. Even if one can't understand what they say at first.

231 VALENCY

Valency is a convenient term that refers to how many obligatory 'arguments' (or NP) a pred. (V/adj./AN) takes. For instance, **miru** 'see' requires a subject (the person who sees) and an object (what the person sees). The former is marked by the case P **ga**, the latter by **o**. These arguments need not be present in any given S, but where not explicitly mentioned they are understood. Of course, **miru** can appear with further NP (e.g. where the action of **miru** takes place, marked by **de**), but this information is more peripheral, i.e. not obligatory for **miru**.

231.1 VALENCY AND TRANSITIVE/INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Some V take just one obligatory NP ('one-place V'); these are usually intransitive. Others take two NPs ('two-place V'), which are usually transitive. Yet others take three ('three-place V'), which are sometimes called ditransitive, e.g. **ageru** and other V of giving.

In the following example, **ageru** 'give' has NP-**ga** marking the subject (the person carrying out the action of V), NP-**ni** to mark the indirect object (the person who is the receiver of the action of V), and NP-**o** indicating the object, i.e. what is given.

a リンダさんは週に二回学校に行っているので、代わりにマイクさん【が】哺乳瓶で赤ちゃん【に】母乳【を】あげる。
rinda-san wa shū ni nikai gakkō ni itte iru no de, kawari ni maiku-san ga ho'nyubin de akachan ni bo'nyu o ageru
As Linda goes to school twice a week, Mike gives the baby a bottle feed instead.

The case P for one-place V is typically **ga** (subject), for two-place V **ga-o** (subject-object), and for three-place V **ga-o-ni** (subject-object-indirect object, also in the alternative order V **ga-ni-o**). In other words, the core case P are **ga**, **o** and **ni**. Other case P are generally more peripheral ('oblique' cases). However, **e** and **to** are used for core cases with some verbs: for instance, **iku** 'go' can take **e** instead of **ni** to indicate the goal of the action, and **kumu** 'team up' constructs with **ga** and **to** ('with')

Adj. and AN are for the most part one-place, but some, like **hoshii** 'want' and **suki** 'like' (which usually translate as verbs in English), take two obligatory NPs (**wa/ni** and **ga/o**), as illustrated by the following example with **hoshii**, taking **ga/o** (see 68).

b 出演者の一人【が】このシステム【を】ほしいと話していた。
shutsuensha no hitori ga kono shisutemu o hoshii to hanashite ita
One of the people on the programme said he wanted this system.

232 VERB FORMS

Japanese V are inflected (for inflectional forms of V, see Tables 25–27 below).

The basic form of all Japanese V ends in **-u**, **-eru** or **-iru**, which is also the form they are listed under in dictionaries. According to the way they inflect, V can be divided into three groups: I, II and III.

232.1 Forms
232.1.1 Group I verbs
232.1.2 Group II verbs
232.1.3 Group III verbs
232.1.4 Group II lookalikes
232.1.5 Plain and polite forms
232.1.6 Formation rules for Group I
232.1.7 Formation rules for Group II
232.2 Uses of verb forms
232.2.1 Verb-**ru**
232.2.1.1 Used by itself
232.2.1.2 Items attached
232.2.2 Verb-**ta**
232.2.2.1 Used by itself
232.2.2.2 Items attached
232.2.3 Others

232.1 FORMS

232.1.1 Group I verbs

These end in the syllables う・く・ぐ・す・つ・ぬ・ぶ・む・る (**-u**, **ku**, **gu**, **su**, **tsu**, **nu**, **bu**, **mu**, **ru**) in Japanese writing, but in romanization these endings can be analysed further as consonant-root + **-u** (買う**kau**, 沿う**sou**, etc. can be thought of as **kaw-u**, **sow-u**)

232.1.2 Group II verbs

These end in **-ru** (following either **i** or **e**).

232.1.3 Group III verbs

Irregular V (usually just two are distinguished, **kuru** 'come' and **suru** 'do') are included under this group. Note, however, that **suru**, apart from being used by itself, forms part of the widely used N-**suru** verbal nouns (see 234).

232.1.4 Group II lookalikes

There are a few verbs that look like Group II on the basis of V-non-past; but their V-**nai**, V-**te** forms clarify the issue:

iru	要る 'need' 要らない・要って **iranai/itte** (**ir-u**, Group I)
	いる 'be there' いない・いて **inai/ite** (**i-ru**, Group II)
kaeru	帰る 'return' 帰らない・帰って **kaeranai/kaette** (**kaer-u**, Group I)
	変える 'change' 変えない・変えて **kaenai/kaete** (**kae-ru**, Group II)
	代える 'substitute' 代えない・代えて **kaenai/kaete** (**kae-ru**, Group II)
	換える 'convert' 換えない・換えて **kaenai/kaete** (**kae-ru**, Group II)
hairu	入る 'enter' 入らない・入って **hairanai/haitte** (**hair-u**, Group I)

232.1.5 Plain and polite forms

Verbs and other Japanese pred. or modifiers, etc. can be used as pln. or pol. forms; this choice is conditioned by factors such as the situation and the status (social/age etc.) of the listener in relation to the speaker, but in grammatical terms also by the item modified. For instance, a V modifying a N is as a rule pln. (except in some hyperpolite styles), and many S endings (see 177) follow only pln.

The main pln. forms of the regular Groups I and II are as follows (for pol. forms, **-masu** (see 91) is attached to V-stem). Forms 1–4 (fin./N-mod.) can be used as pred. or to modify a following N. Forms 5–6 can be used by themselves as pred. only, whereas 7–10 can be used only in subordinate clauses or with other forms attached (except in some colloquially shortened uses).

232.1.6 Formation rules for Group I

For **-u** substitute the endings **-ta**, **-i**, **-anai**, **-te**, **-e**, **-eba**, **-tara**, **-ō**; the final consonant doubles before **-t** (for **ka-u**, **so-u**, etc. the forms become more regular if we assume a root final (**w**) consonant, as actually found in the

Table 25 Group I and Group II verb forms (plain)

				Group I (*consonant root*)		*Group II* (*vowel root*)	
				ik-u	***ka(w)-u***	***taberu***	***miru***
				(*go*)	(*buy*)	(*eat*)	(*see*)
N-mod.	Fin.	1 Non-past	(V-**ru**)	**ik-u**	**ka(w)-u**	**tabe-ru**	**mi-ru**
		2 Past	(V-**ta**)	**i*t*-ta**	**ka*t*-ta**	**tabe-ta**	**mi-ta**
		3 Neg.	(V-**nai**)	**ik-ana-i**	**kaw-ana-i**	**tabe-na-i**	**mi-na-i**
		4 Neg.-past	(V-neg.-past)	**ik-ana-kat-ta**	**kaw-ana-kat-ta**	**tabe-na-kat-ta**	**mi-na-kat-ta**
		5 Imperative	(V-imp)	**ik-e**	**ka(w)-e**	**tabe-ro**	**mi-ro**
		6 Presumptive/hortative	(V-**yō**)	**ik-ō**	**ka(w)-ō**	**tabe-yō**	**mi-yō**
		7 Stem	(V-stem)	**ik-i**	**ka(w)-i**	**tabe**	**mi**
		8 Conjunctive	(V-**te**)	**i*t*-te**	**ka*t*-te**	**tabe-te**	**mi-te**
		9 Conditional	(V-**ba**)	**ik-eba**	**ka(w)-eba**	**tabe-reba**	**mi-reba**

Table 26 Group I verb forms (plain) by root-final consonant

Root-final consonant	*V-ru*	*V-stem*	*V-ta*	*English*
-s	**hanas-u**	**hana*sh*-i**	**hana*sh*i-ta**	'to speak'
-ts	**mats-u**	**ma*ch*-i**	**ma*t*-*ta***	'to wait'
-g	**oyog-u**	**oyog-i**	**oyo*i*-*da***	'to swim'
-n	**shin-u**	**shin-i**	**shin-*da***	'to die'
-m	**yom-u**	**yom-i**	**yo*n*-*da***	'to read'
-b	**yob-u**	**yob-i**	**yo*n*-da**	'to call'
-r	**kaer-u**	**kaer-i**	**kae*t*-*ta***	'to return'

Table 27 Group III verb forms (plain)

				kuru *('come')*	***suru*** *('do')*
N-mod. ↑	Fin. ↑	1 Non-past	(V-**ru**)	**kuru**	**suru**
		2 Past	(V-**ta**)	**kita**	**shita**
		3 Neg.	(V-**nai**)	**kona-i**	**shina-i**
↓		4 Neg.-past	(V-neg.-past)	**kona-kat-ta**	**shina-kat-ta**
		5 Imperative	(V-imp)	**koi**	**shiro**
	↓	6 Presumptive/hortative	(V-**yō**)	**koyō**	**shiyō**
		7 Stem	(V-stem)	**ki**	**shi**
		8 Conjunctive	(V-**te**)	**kite**	**shite**
		9 Conditional	(V-**ba**)	**kureba**	**sureba**

V-**nai** form). There are some further irregularities, as shown in the italicized parts in Tables 25 and 26 above (all others are regular). The equivalent forms are used for all Group I verbs with identical root endings (**shin-u** is the only verb ending in -**n**).

232.1.7 Formation rules for Group II

For -**ru** substitute the endings -**ta**, zero, -**nai**, -**te**, -**ro**, -**reba**, -**tara**, and **yō**.

232.2 USES OF VERB FORMS

232.2.1 Verb-**ru**

232.2.1.1 *Used by itself*

The V-**ru** (non-past) can be used by itself as pred. to complete a S in the present, habitual present, future, and also narrative present. It can also express the speaker's intention (for details and examples, see 142).

232.2.1.2 *Items attached*

The main items that are attached to V-**ru** *only* are -**beki** (but note the still-used classical variant **su-beki** instead of the regular **suru-beki**), and -**mai** (see 19, 89).

a 選挙で【選ぶべきだ】」。
senkyo de erabu beki da
[He] 【ought to be chosen】 by election.

232.2.2 Verb-**ta**

232.2.2.1 *Used by itself*

V-**ta** is the pln. past ending. It can indicate both past and perfective (see 187).

232.2.2.2 *Items attached*

For items that commonly attach to -**ta**, see 187.

The V-**ta** base (i.e. the form remaining when -**ta** is detached) attaches the conjunctive P -**tari** (see 192).

a たまの休日には本を読ん【だり】ゴルフに興じ【たりする】。
tama no kyūjitsu ni wa hon o yondari gorufu ni kyōjitari suru
On his rare days off he does things like reading books and enjoying golf.

b 例えば、盲導犬は人にほえ【たり】、かみつい【たりする】ことがない。
tatoeba, mōdōken wa hito ni hoetari, kamitsuitari suru koto ga nai
For instance, guide dogs don't do things like barking at people and biting them.

c 特に慌て【たりする】同僚はいなかった。
toku ni awatetari suru dōryō wa inakatta
There weren't any colleagues who were particularly flustered.

232.2.3 Others

For the remaining forms, see 111, 163, 67, 69, 184, 31, 27, 13.

233 VERB TYPES: STATIVE, DYNAMIC, ACTION AND CHANGE

V can be divided into two basic groups: stative and dynamic. Dynamic V can further be subdivided into action and change V.

233.1 Stative verbs
233.2 Dynamic verbs
233.2.1 Action verbs
233.2.2 Change verbs
233.2.2.1 Verbs of clothing
233.2.2.2 Motion verbs
233.2.2.3 Others

233.1 STATIVE VERBS

These indicate a state or quality. Examples include **aru** 'be there (inanimate)', **iru** 'be there (animate)', **iru** 'need', **wakaru** 'understand', **dekiru** 'be able to' (and other potential V).

Most stative V do not attach **-te iru** (but note **wakatte iru** and **tsumori de iru**); **dekiru** can also mean 'something will be ready' (see 233.2.2.3), in which use it can attach **-te iru**: **dekite iru** 'is ready'.

233.2 DYNAMIC VERBS

These indicate an event, which can be an action or a change.

233.2.1 Action verbs

Action V include **taberu** 'eat', **nomu** 'drink', **yomu** 'read', **kaku** 'write', **warau** 'laugh', **naku** 'cry', **furu** 'fall (of rain, etc.)', **chiru** 'fall (of flowers)', **benkyō suru** 'study', **setsumei suru** 'explain'.

They also generally include the transitive member of transitive/intransitive V pairs, i.e. **hajimeru** 'begin something', **oeru/owaru** 'end something', **shimeru** 'close something', **kimeru** 'decide something', **akeru** 'open something', etc.

When action V attach **-te iru** (see 199), the resulting meaning is often progressive ('is . . . ing' in English): **tabete iru** 'am/is eating', **benkyō shite iru** 'is studying'. However, with some V (V of motion/change) the same V can be used in more than one way, i.e. **chiru** can also mean 'get scattered (across the ground etc.)', in which use it is a V of change.

233.2.2 Change verbs

Whereas the action of action V can go on for some time, V of change indicate that their action brings about an instant change. For instance, **tatsu** 'stand up' brings about a change from sitting/lying to standing. Other V of change include those described in the next sections.

233.2.2.1 *Verbs of clothing*

These include **kiru** 'put on (whole-body garment like coat, pyjamas, kimono, etc., or an upper-body garment such as shirt, jacket, sweater)', **haku** 'put on (a lower-body garment, such as skirt, trousers, shoes)', **kaburu** 'put something on (one's head, e.g. hat, cap, etc.)', and others.

233.2.2.2 *Motion verbs*

Motion V include **hairu** 'enter', **deru** 'go/come out', **tomaru** 'come to a stop', etc. (but not **aruku** 'walk', **hashiru** 'run', which describe the manner of motion).

233.2.2.3 *Others*

'Others' include V that translate as 'become', or 'become/get + adv.', such as **naru** 'become', **dekiru** 'get ready, acquire', **naoru** 'get well', **kekkon suru** 'get married', etc.

Also included in 'others' is the intransitive member of transitive/intransitive V pairs: **hajimaru** 'begin', **owaru** 'come to an end', **shimaru** 'close', **kimaru** 'be decided', **aku** 'open', etc.

Also the V **shinu** 'die', **shiru** 'get to know'.

When V of change attach **-te iru** (see 199), the meaning is usually one of resulting state: **haitte iru** 'am/is/are inside' (as a result of **hairu**), **shinde iru** 'is/are dead', etc.

234 VERBAL NOUNS

There are two ways of forming VN. 1) by detaching **suru** from a SJ or WJ **suru** N, and 2) by forming the stem-form of many V (see 34.5.1, 184.1).

234.1 Sino-Japanese/Western Japanese **suru** nouns
234.2 Using verb-stem of many verbs

234.1 SINO-JAPANESE/WESTERN JAPANESE **suru** NOUNS

Many N that indicate an action can attach the verb **suru** to form VN. This is especially common with SJ, but also WJ and some NJ nouns.

SJ:

hakken 'discovery'	•	**hakken suru** 発見する 'discover'
kenkyū 'research'	•	**kenkyū suru** 研究する 'do research'

ryōri 'cooking' → **ryōri suru** 料理する 'cook'
setsumei 'explanation' → **setsumei suru** 説明する 'explain'

Note VN that have have the meaning of 'become' in their **suru** form have an adjectival meaning in their **-te iru** form:

antei suru 'become stable' → **antei shite iru** 'be stable'
dokuritsu suru 'become independent → **dokuritsu shite iru** 'be independent'
hattatsu suru 'become developed' → **hattatsu shite iru** 'be developed'

In their **-ta** form (**antei shita** N, etc.), these can be used to modify N (see 1.7.1).

NJ:

yama-nobori 'mountaineering' → **yama-nobori suru** 山登りする 'climb mountains'

WJ:

bokushingu 'boxing' → **bokushingu suru** ボクシングする 'box'
kanningu 'cheating in an exam' → **kanningu suru** カンニングする 'cheat in exam'

VN can insert focus and adverbial particles (**wa**, **mo**, **sae**, **sura**, **bakari**, etc.) for emphasis between N and **suru** (see 236, 94, 176, 185, 17).

a いい仕事【さえ】すれ【ば】、論文発表の機会はいくらでもある。
ii shigoto sae sureba ronbun happyō no kikai wa ikura demo aru
As long as you do good work, you'll have plenty of opportunities to present papers.

234.2 USING VERB-STEM OF MANY VERBS

Forming V-stem (the N form of many V) is possible with most V whose action can be controlled by the actor.

VN are especially common in the pattern [V-stem **ni iku/kuru**] (see 184.1.2, 116.10).

235 VOCABULARY

By origin, Japanese vocabulary consists of three major strands: native Japanese (NJ), Sino-Japanese (SJ) and Western Japanese (WJ) (see also 153, 234).

A further strand consists of vocabulary that mixes items from the earlier three strands: mixed Japanese (MJ)

235.1 Native Japanese vocabulary
235.2 Sino-Japanese vocabulary
235.3 Western Japanese vocabulary
235.3.1 Western Japanese from languages other than English
235.3.2 Western Japanese from English
235.3.3 'Japlish' creations or uses
235.4 Mixed Japanese vocabulary
235.5 Truncations
235.5.1 Sino-Japanese truncations
235.5.2 Native Japanese truncations
235.5.3 Native Japanese truncations and Sino-Japanese 'conversions'
235.5.4 Western Japanese truncations
235.5.5 Mixed Japanese truncations

235.1 NATIVE JAPANESE VOCABULARY

NJ words (in length, single-morpheme words can range from one to five or six syllables/*kana* letters) are written in *kanji, kanji* + *kana*, or *kana* alone (the hyphens show the boundaries between morphemes):

鵜	**u** 'cormorant'
目	**me** 'eye'
命	**inochi** 'life'
山登り	**yama-nobori** 'mountaineering'
早い	**hayai** 'early'
新しい	**atarashii** 'new'
ゆっくり	**yukkuri** 'slowly'
ぬるぬる	**nurunuru** 'slippery'

235.2 SINO-JAPANESE VOCABULARY

SJ words have entered the language at various stages, beginning from about the eighth century. They also played a major part in the modernization of the language in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, when new terminology was coined in Japan using Chinese character (*kanji*) roots. Almost all SJ words are written in *kanji*, with one *kanji* being the equivalent of one morpheme. One morpheme corresponds to a (short or long) syllable, (in some cases two syllables: **aku** 'evil', **ichi** 'one', etc). Some SJ words consist of one *kanji* only, but the vast majority are made up of two or more.

胃	**i** 'stomach'
悪	**aku** 'evil'
点	**ten** 'dot'
線	**sen** 'line'

計	**kei** ‘total’
研究	**ken-kyū** ‘research’
発見	**hak-ken** ‘discovery’
料理	**ryō-ri** ‘cooking’
天文学	**ten-mon-gaku** ‘astronomy’
経済成長	**kei-zai-sei-chō** ‘economic growth’

Note also the use of (usually) two-*kanji* SJ terms in written or formal (including scientific) contexts, which are equivalents of (one-*kanji*) NJ words.

NJ	SJ
川 **kawa** ‘river(s)’	河川 **ka-sen** ‘rivers’
山 **yama** ‘mountain(s)’	山岳 **san-gaku** ‘mountains’

The NJ words can have both specific and generic meaning depending on the context, whereas the SJ terms have generic meanings only. The SJ terms are also used in further compounding, such as 山岳地帯 **san-gaku chi-tai** ‘mountaineous area’ etc.

235.3 WESTERN JAPANESE VOCABULARY

Most WJ words recently (especially after the Second World War) come from English (older words from Portuguese/Spanish, Dutch, German, French and others, that entered the language through various forms of cultural contact, are still used). Recent WJ items include Japanese ‘creations’ that are made up by combining English roots.

WJ words are adapted to the Japanese sound system, and are written in *katakana*.

235.3.1 Western Japanese from languages other than English

パン **pan** ‘bread’ (from Portuguese)
コップ **koppu** ‘cup’ (from Dutch)
シャンソン **shanson** ‘chanson’ (from French)
ゲレンデ **gerende** ‘ski slope’ (from German)
イクラ **ikura** ‘salmon roe caviar’ (from Russian)

235.3.2 Western Japanese from English

ケーキ **kēki** ‘cake’
マッチ **matchi** ‘match(es)’
ゴルフ **gorufu** ‘golf’
テレビ **terebi** ‘television’
ボクシング **bokushingu** ‘boxing’

235.3.3 'Japlish' creations or uses

ワンマンカー **wanmankā** 'driver only' (bus etc.)
カンニング **kanningu** 'cheating in an exam'
スピード・ダウン **supīdo daun** 'slow(ing) down'

Note – not all WJ items are written in *katakana*. Some items that used to be written in *kanji* are now also written in *hiragana* (煙草・たばこ **tabako** 'tobacco', じゅばん **juban** 'underwear (for kimono)', both from Portuguese), and a few others others are occasionally written in *kanji*, otherwise in *katakana*: 珈琲・コーヒー **kōhī** 'coffee', クラブ・具楽部 **kurabu** 'club', ページ・頁 **pēji** 'page'.

235.4 MIXED JAPANESE VOCABULARY

If we limit the discussion to words made up of two items (the most common compound type), an MJ word can be any of the six possible combinations:

NJ-SJ	掛け金 **kake-kin** 'insurance premium'
NJ-WJ	赤ワイン **aka-wain** 'red wine'
SJ-NJ	残高 **zan-daka** 'bank account balance'
SJ-WJ	鉄パイプ **tetsu-paipu** 'iron rod'
WJ-NJ	ガス漏れ **gasu-more** 'gas leak'
WJ-SJ	ジェット機 **jetto-ki** 'jet aeroplane'

235.5 TRUNCATIONS

Where English uses initial capital letters to shorten lengthy terms to acronyms (United Nations → UN, North Atlantic Treaty Organization → NATO, etc.), Japanese generally cuts the number of *kanji* in SJ words, or equivalent units in NJ and WJ (English-style acronyms are found with the names of some companies, such as **Nippon Hōsō Kyōkai** = NHK).

235.5.1 Sino-Japanese truncations

As most SJ compounds consist of multiples of two or three *kanji*, this typically involves cutting the units after the first *kanji* of each unit of meaning, generally resulting in a two-*kanji* truncation:

a **国**際**連**合 **kokusai rengō** → 国連 'UN'

b **温**帯性**低**気圧 **ontaisei teikiatsu** → 温低 'extratropical cyclone'

In the written media, it is common to give the Japanese translation first, with the English acronym added after it (in round brackets).

c 国際通貨基金 **kosusai tsūka kikin** 'IMF'

In the spoken media, the order is reversed, with the Japanese translation added after the acronym.

235.5.2 Native Japanese truncations

With NJ words, truncations are far less common, although the names of some common restaurant dishes use a similar principle, except that some of the units remain uncut:

a **天**ぷら**どん**ぶり **tenpura donburi** → 天どん 'tempura on rice'

b **ねぎま**ぐろ **negi maguro** → ねぎま 'tuna [mashed] with leeks in broth'

235.5.3 Native Japanese truncations and Sino-Japanese 'conversions'

In general terminology, NJ *kanji* units are often pronounced in their SJ pronuncation (examples a and b), but sometimes also partly retain their NJ pronunciation (example c):

a **名**古屋一**神**戸 **nagoya-kōbe** 'Nagoya-Kōbe' → 名神 **meishin** [motorway]

b **早**稲田**大**学 **waseda daigaku** 'Waseda University' → 早大 **sōdai**

c **横**浜**国**立**大**学 **yokohama kokuritsu daigaku** 'Yokohama National University' → 横国大 **yokokokudai**

235.5.4 Western Japanese truncations

Similar processes are also applied to WJ (including so-called 'Japlish').

With WJ truncations, the unit here is mostly 2 + 2 'moras' or Japanese syllables/*kana* (examples a and b). Shorter 2 + 1 (example c), 1 + 2 (example d) and 1 + 1 (example e) units are also found, but these are very much exceptions to the rule.

a **マル**チプル **チョイ**ス 'multiple choice' → マルチョイ

b **ワー**ド **プロ**セッサー 'word processor' → ワープロ

c **イン**ド **パ**キスタン 'India and Pakistan' → インパ (or 印パ)

d **レ**モン **スカ**ッシュ 'lemon squash' → レスカ

e **ベ**ース **ア**ップ 'rise in basic pay' → ベア

235.5.5 Mixed Japanese truncations

These combinations tend to use a *kanji* representing the first morpheme of an SJ compound (example a) or a *kanji* representing a whole NJ word (example b) with, usually, the first two 'moras' or Japanese syllables/*kana*.

a **短**期**プラ**イムレート **tanki puraimu rēto** 'short-term prime rate' → 短プラ

b **生コン**クリート **nama konkurīto** 'raw concrete' → 生コン

236 wa [FOCUS PARTICLE]

wa is a focus particle, but unlike **mo** (see 94), which focuses the N, etc. it is attached to, the basic function of **wa** is to focus on what follows, i.e. the pred.

This basic function explains the various labels that have been used to describe this P, which is particularly difficult for English speakers because it usually has no translation equivalent (the exception is illustrated in 236.3) in English. **wa** is often called a topic P, because it typically marks the topic of a topic-comment type S. The focus in these S again is on the comment or pred. (in this repect it contrasts with **ga**, which can place emphasis on the noun preceding it (see 55, 238, 178).

236.1 Replacing case particles **ga/o**
236.1.1 Replacing **ga**
236.1.2 Replacing **o**
236.2 Added to case particles (other than **ga/o**)
236.2.1 **ni wa**
236.2.2 **de wa**
236.2.3 **e wa**
236.2.4 **to wa**
236.2.5 **kara wa**
236.3 Not replacing any case particle
236.4 Marking known information
236.4.1 In considered statements
236.4.1.1 With **wa** present
236.4.1.2 With ellipted **wa**
236.4.2 In questions
236.4.2.1 In questions with question-word (+ copula)
236.4.2.2 In questions with ellipted question-word (+ copula)
236.5 Indicating contrast
236.5.1 Used twice: explicit contrast in considered statements
236.5.2 Used once: implicit contrast in considered statements
236.5.3 Implicit contrast in considered negative statements/questions
236.5.3.1 Replacing case particles **ga/o** in a noun + verb-negative sequence
236.5.3.2 Sandwiched before a negative form
236.5.3.3 Sandwiched before a positive form
236.6 Attached to time noun/number (+ counter)
236.7 In equational sentences
236.8 In double-subject sentences
236.9 Marking the subject of a compound sentence
236.10 Marking the subject of a complex sentence
236.11 In cleft sentences

236.1 REPLACING CASE PARTICLES **ga/o**

When attached to subjects and objects, **wa** replaces the case P **ga** and **o**.

236.1.1 Replacing **ga**

In considered statements, **wa** is used rather than **ga**.

a 紅茶【は】体にいい。
kōcha wa karada ni ii
Black tea is good for you (*lit.* "your body").

b 日本【は】豊かになった。
nihon wa yutaka ni natta
Japan has become affluent.

c「お客さん【は】賢いです」と話していた。
o-kyaku-san wa kashikoi desu to hanashite ita
'The customers are clever', he said.

d 日本の裁判【は】長い。
nihon no saiban wa nagai
Japanese trials are long.

236.1.2 Replacing **o**

With **o**, the most common word order for example a would be a′. The effect of **wa** is to make the **wa**-marked NP into the topic, which is usually moved to the front of the sentence, i.e. a″ is not possible.

a 献金【は】秘書が取り仕切っていた。
kenkin wa hisho ga torishikitte ita
The donations were managed by the secretary (*lit.* "as for the donations, the secretary managed [them]").

a′ % 秘書が献金【を】取り仕切っていた。
hisho ga kenkin o torishikitte ita
The secretary managed donations/the donations.

a″ % × 秘書が献金【は】取り仕切っていた。
hisho ga kenkin wa torishikitte ita
The secretary managed the donations.

236.2 ADDED TO CASE PARTICLES (OTHER THAN **ga/o**)

With other cases, **wa** is added after the case P required by the valency of V. The examples that follow (in 236.2.1–5) are not exhaustive, i.e. there are other combinations too. Note that **wa** is especially common in sentences with neg. pred., but in pos. sentences too it has a contrastive or emphasizing effect (see 236.5.3).

236.2.1 ni wa

a ザックの詰め方【には】コツがいる。
zakku no tsumekata ni wa kotsu ga iru
Packing a rucksack requires skill.

b 外国人に的を絞った警察の取り締まり【には】批判もある。
gaikokujin ni mato o shibotta keisatsu no torishimari ni wa hihan mo aru
There are also voices critical of police control aimed at foreigners.

236.2.2 de wa

a 情報はカネ【では】買えない。
jōhō wa kane de wa kaenai
You can't buy information 【with】 money.

b もう暑いところ【では】研究ができない。
mō atsui tokoro de wa kenkyū ga dekinai
I can't do research in hot climates (*lit.* "places") any more.

236.2.3 e wa

a 関西空港【へは】週五便が就航している。
kansai kūkō e wa shū gobin ga shūkō shite iru
To Kansai airport, five flights per week have entered service.

236.2.4 to wa

b 米国【とは】政治、経済的にぜひ仲良くしたいと思っている。
beikoku to wa seiji keizai-teki ni zehi nakayoku shitai to omotte iru
We'd like very much to establish good political and economic relations with the US.

236.2.5 kara wa

a 庄山常務は「守りのリストラは終わった。これ【からは】攻める」。
shōyama-jōmu wa mamori no risutora wa owatta kore kara wa semeru
Managing director Shōyama [said], 'Defensive restructuring is over. From now on, we're going on the attack'.

236.3 NOT REPLACING ANY CASE PARTICLE

Here, **wa** is a genuine topic particle 'as for . . .'

a 「クリスマス【は】どんな過ごし方をしたっていい。
kurisumasu wa donna sugoshikata o shi-tatte ii
Christmas you can spend any way you like

b 旅客ターミナル【は】現在のビルを東側に拡張する。
ryokyaku tāminaru wa genzai no biru o higashigawa ni kakuchō suru
As for the passenger terminal, we will extend the present building eastwards.

236.4 MARKING KNOWN INFORMATION

236.4.1 In considered statements

236.4.1.1 *With wa present*

One function of **wa**, which is in keeping with its pred.-focusing effect, is to be attached to information that is already known or understood. In this use, **wa** has an effect similar to the English definite article (and other cases where a N refers to something known or previously mentioned).

a 写真撮影【は】厳しく禁じられた。
shashin satsuei wa kibishiku kinjirareta
The taking of photographs was strictly forbidden.

b「多少経営の怪しい金融機関でも、一千万円までなら大丈夫」と、目先の金利を優先する向きがある。しかし、これ【は】誤解だ。預金保険の保証は元本だけで、利子分は含まない。
tashō keiei no ayashii kin'yū kikan de mo issenmanen made nara daijōbu to mesaki no kinri o yūsen suru muki ga aru. shikashi kore wa gokai da. yokin hoken no hoshō wa ganpon dake de rishi-bun wa fukumanai
People tend to give preference to [higher-] interest [institutions], because they think that 10 million yen is guaranteed even if the financial institution may be a little shaky. However, that is a misunderstanding. The savings insurance guarantees only the capital, not the interest.

c 同水族館では、二匹のウナギが水中に放電した電気をアンプで増幅して点灯に成功した。ツリー【は】年明けまで展示される。
dō-suizokukan dewa nihiki no unagi ga suichū no hōden shita denki o anpu de zōfuku shite tentō ni seikō shita. tsurī wa toshiake made tenji sareru
At the aquarium, they have succeeded in lighting up [a Christmas tree] by amplifying the electricity discharged by two [electric] eels into the water. [The] tree will be displayed until the beginning of the new year.

236.4.1.2 *With ellipted wa*

In colloquial usage, **wa** can be omitted. This is usually accompanied by comma intonation (and a comma in writing) (see also 52).

a ユニバーサル・スタジオ【、】楽しいんですってね。
yunibāsaru sutajio tanoshii n desu-tte ne
The Universal Studios are great fun, I hear.

b このケーキ【、】私が作ったのよ。
kono kēki watashi ga tsukutta no yo
I've made this cake!

236.4.2 In questions

236.4.2.1 *In questions with question-word (+ copula)*

In information-seeking Q (Q containing a Q-word that refers to the information sought), the focus is naturally on the part of the S that contains the Q-word, which is again the pred. (see 238).

a その成功の秘密【は】何か。
sono seikō no himitsu wa nani ka
[What]'s the secret of their [= convenience stores'] success?

b インフラと【は】何を意味するのか。
infura to wa nani o imi suru no ka
What does 'infra' mean? (*lit.* "'infra', what does it mean?")

236.4.2.2 *In questions with ellipted question-word (+ copula)*

In information-seeking Q, the part that is most obvious (i.e. the pred. containing the Q-word + cop., etc.) is frequently ellipted (omitted).

a 今後のスケジュール【は】。
kongo no sukejūru wa
[What is] the future schedule?

b 今の気持ち【は】。
ima no kimochi wa
[What are] your feelings now?

236.5 INDICATING CONTRAST

wa can be used several times in one sentence; in this case, at least the rightmost **wa** indicates a contrast (where there are three **wa**, the rightmost two indicate contrast). As the leftmost **wa** (indicating the subject or topic) is often omitted, in sentences with two **wa** both can be contrastive.

236.5.1 Used twice: explicit contrast in considered statements

Where **wa** is used twice in a sentence, it serves to indicate a contrast between the two **wa**-marked N/NP. The leftmost **wa** in example b indicates the subject/topic.

a 「男【は】仕事、女【は】家庭」という考え方。
otoko wa shigoto onna wa katei to iu kangae-kata
The proposition 'Men should work, and women stay at home'.

b 札幌【は】日の出【は】早く、日没【は】遅い。
sapporo wa hinode wa hayaku nichibotsu wa osoi
In Sapporo/As for Sapporo, the sunrise is early, and the sunset is late.

c 絵を見ない日【は】あっても建築を見ない日【は】ない。
e o minai hi wa atte mo kenchiku o minai hi wa nai
Even though there are days when I don't look at a painting, there are no days when I don't look at architecture.

236.5.2 Used once: implicit contrast in considered statements

In such statements, a comment is made on the N (or NP). This implies that the comment may not apply to other N (or NP).

a 紅茶【は】体にいい。
kōcha wa karada ni ii
Black tea is good for you.

b WASP【は】少子化傾向にある。
WASP wa shōshika keikō ni aru
WASPs [= White Anglo-Saxon Protestants] have a tendency to have few[er] children.

236.5.3 Implicit contrast in considered negative statements/questions

wa is used in neg. S to indicate the scope or range of what is being negated, essentially in contrast to a pos. situation. **wa** and the neg. form following it negate the item they are attached to. This is done in two ways, as set out below.

236.5.3.1 *Replacing case particles **ga/o** in a noun + verb-negative sequence*

a 今年は帰るつもり【は】なかったのだが……。
(cf., 帰るつもり【が】なかった)
kotoshi wa kaeru tsumori wa nakatta no da ga
This year I had no intention of going back, but . . .

b 大阪市では大阪駅に近い立地には有力酒類DS、徳岡（大阪市、徳岡豊裕社長）が来春出店する。売り場面積は約七十平方メートル。駐車場【は】ない。
ōsaka-shi de wa ōsaka eki ni chikai ritchi ni wa yūryoku sakerui DS tokuoka (ōsaka-shi tokuoka toyohiro shachō) ga raishun shutten suru uriba menseki wa yaku nanajū heihō mētoru. chūshajō wa nai
In Osaka, the large drinks discount shop Tokuoka ([based in] Osaka; President Tokuoka Toyohiro) will open a store in a location near Osaka station. The shop floor space will be about 70 square metres. There will be no parking. (cf., 駐車場【が】ない。)

c フランスで買える日本のマンガの90%以上が日本語版だが、在仏日本人向けの日本の本専門書店にも、わざわざマンガを求めてフランス人の若者が買いにくるという。彼らは、もちろん日本語【は】できない。(cf.,日本語【が】できない。)
furansu de kaeru nihon no manga no kyūjup-pāsento ga nihongo-ban da ga zaifutsu nihonjin-muke no nihon no hon senmon shoten ni mo wazawaza manga o motomete furansu-jin no wakamono ga kai ni kuru to iu karera wa mochiron nihongo wa dekinai
Over 90 per cent of comics one can buy in France are in Japanese, yet young French people are said even to visit specialist bookshops catering for Japanese residents in France to buy comics. Of course, they don't understand Japanese [= language].

e「松坂屋銀座店」の中二階にある女性用トイレに中年の男がナイフを持って侵入し、中にいた横浜市のOL（27）のハンドバッグを奪って店の外に逃げた。…ハンドバッグに現金【は】入っていなかった。(cf., 現金【が】入っていなかった。)
matsuzakaya ginza-ten no chūnikai ni aru josei-yō toire ni chūnen no otoko ga naifu o motte shinnyū shi, naka ni ita yokohama-shi no OL (27) no handobaggu o ubatte mise no soto ni nigeta. . . . handobaggu ni genkin wa haitte inakatta
A middle-aged man with a knife entered the ladies' toilet on the level 2 mezzanine at the 'Ginza Matsuzakaya', and fled outside having taken the handbag of an office worker (27) from Yokohama. . . . there wasn't any cash in the handbag.

236.5.3.2 *Sandwiched before a negative form*

wa can be inserted between forms such as **-te iku**, **-te kureru**, etc. (examples c and d), the quotation P **to** and a V of communication (example g), or a V and its neg. form (examples a and b), or an adj. and its neg. form (examples e and f). See also examples under 236.2 for instances where **wa** intervenes between a V and the P it takes.

The effect of inserting **wa** is one of emphasizing the neg. Recall also that the neg. form of the cop. is **de wa nai**, which is another instance of an inserted **wa**, except that this one has become fossilized.

With a V and its neg. form, depending on the type of V, there are two formations: 1) with VN (N that attach **suru**), **wa** is inserted between the N and **suru**, but 2) any other V needs first to be converted to its N form (V-stem), to which **suru** can then be added and **wa** is inserted between the two.

Colloquially, the V-stem endings + **wa** can be contracted as follows. After the **-e** or **-i** of Group II V, including pot. endings, **wa** is changed regularly to **ya**, as with the Group III V **ki-** and **shi-**). For Group I V, see Table 28 below.

Table 28 Group I verbs + **wa**

V-stem ending	*Replacement pattern*			
-i	**wa**	**shinai***	→	**-iya shinai***
-ki	**wa**	**shinai**	→	**-kiya/kya shinai**
-gi	**wa**	**shinai**	→	**-giya shinai**
-shi	**wa**	**shinai**	→	**-shiya/sha shinai**
-chi	**wa**	**shinai**	→	**-chiya/cha** shinai**
-ni	**wa**	**shinai**	→	**-niya shinai**
-bi	**wa**	**shinai**	→	**-biya shinai**
-mi	**wa**	**shinai**	→	**-miya shinai**
-ri	**wa**	**shinai**	→	**-riya/rya shinai**

Note * and other neg. forms
** **-te wa** can also be contracted to **-cha**

a 隠している山のような作品がある。死ぬまで公開【は】しない。
(cf., 公開しない)
kakushite iru yama no yō na sakuhin ga aru. shinu made kōkai wa shinai
There is an extensive (*lit.* “mountain-like”) work I’m hiding. I will not make it public until I die.

b 人間の力なんてそんなに変わり【ゃ】しません。
ningen no chikara nante sonna ni kawarya shimasen
People’s abilities don’t vary that much.

c % 日本ではくつをはいたまま、家に上がって【は】いけない。
nihon de wa kutsu o haita mama ie ni agatte wa ikenai
In Japan, you must not enter a home with your shoes on.

d 愚痴を繰り返していても、だれもあなたを救い出して【は】くれない。
guchi o kurikaeshite ite mo dare mo anata o sukui-dashite wa kurenai
If you just keep complaining, no one is going to help you.

e ご夫婦でやっている小さくて明るい気取らないレストランで、地下鉄南阿佐ケ谷駅から歩いて六、七分と、よそから訪れるにはやや交通が不便だけれど、値段も含めてその価値は十分ある。料理の品数は多く【は】ない。
(cf., 多くない)
go-fūfu de yatte iru chiisakute akarui kidoranai resutoran de chikatetsu minami asagaya eki kara aruite rokushichi-fun to yoso kara otozureru ni wa yaya kōtsū ga fuben da keredo nedan mo fukumete sono kachi wa jūbun aru. ryōri no shinakazu wa ōku wa nai
It's a small, bright and unpretentious restaurant run by a husband and wife. Being six or seven minutes on foot from Asagaya tube station, it is a little out of the way for those coming from further afield, but it is well worth it, including the price. The number of dishes is not large.

f 一人でカラボクに行って歌っている若者も珍しく【は】ない。
(cf., 珍しくない)
hitori de karaboku ni itte utatte iru wakamono mo mezurashiku wa nai
Young people who go to a karaoke box and sing alone aren't unusual either.

g 悪いけど、蛍池には行きたいと【は】思わない。
warui kedo hotaruike ni wa ikitai to wa omowanai
I'm sorry, I don't feel like going to Hotaruike.

h 従来型のホテルをつくろうと【は】考えていない。
jūrai-gata no hoteru o tsukurō to wa kangaete inai
I'm not thinking of building a hotel in the traditional mould.

236.5.3.3 *Sandwiched before a positive form*

Less frequently than with neg. (see 236.5.3.2), **wa** also gets sandwiched between items such as VN and **suru** (example b), or parts of the cop., i.e., between the **de aru** variant (example a). The effect is one of emphasizing the contrast expressed by **keredo** 'but' (example a), and of **kaizen sareta** in example b.

a 離婚が少しずつで【は】あるけれど増えていること。
rikon ga sukoshi-zutsu de wa aru keredo fuete iru koto
The fact is that divorce is on the increase, albeit little by little.

b いくらか改善【は】された。
ikura ka kaizen wa sareta
[Things] *have* been improved somewhat.

236.6 ATTACHED TO TIME NOUN/NUMBER (+ COUNTER)

After time N, num (+ C) (incl. time and frequency) combinations, **wa** serves to emphasize the time/amount etc., in the sense of 'at least'. Note that with time N, **wa** can also be attached to P such as **kara/made** (example b) (see also 116.14).

a あと二十年【は】漫画を描き続けたい。
ato nijūnen wa manga o kaki-tsuzuketai
I want to keep writing comics for at least another 20 years.

b 政局不安も二月まで【は】残る。
seikyoku fuan mo nigatsu made wa nokoru
The political instability will remain until February at least.

c 人は生涯に一回【は】家を建てる。
hito wa shōgai ni ikkai wa ie o tateru
Man builds a house at least once in his lifetime.

236.7 IN EQUATIONAL SENTENCES

Equational S can be statements (example a) or questions (example b). Both have the basic structure N/pron. **wa** N cop./**ka** (N/pron. **wa** can be omitted where clear from the context, as in example a, where the reply omits pron. **-wa** because it is mentioned in the equational Q) (see 178.1.7, 164.10).

a 「【それは反乱か】」という王に、公爵は答えた。「いえ陛下、【革命でございます】」。
sore wa hanran ka to iu ō ni kōshaku wa kotaeta. ie heika kakumei de gozaimasu
To the king's question, 'Is this an uprising?', the duke replied, 'No, Your Majesty, it's a revolution'.

b 【あれは何だい】。[だい = だ + male intimate Q P かい]
are wa nan dai
What's that?

236.8 IN DOUBLE-SUBJECT SENTENCES

For an explanation of double-subject S, see 55.11, 178.1.8.

a 私は人気が【ない】。
watashi wa ninki ga nai
I am not popular (*lit.* "I have no popularity").

b 今年のプレゼント【は】、パパ【が】カシミヤのマフラー。
kotoshi no purezento wa papa ga kashimiya no mafurā
For this year's [Christmas] present, hubby [gets] a cashmere muffler.

236.9 MARKING THE SUBJECT OF A COMPOUND SENTENCE

As the force of **wa** (unlike **ga**, which does not extend beyond the clause it is part of) extends all the way to pred., **wa** (never **ga**) is used where the subject of a compound S is identical in both clauses (re compound sentences, see 178.5).

a 男【は】暴れることもなく、その場で逮捕された。
otoko wa abareru koto mo naku sono ba de taiho sareta
The man didn't put up a struggle and was arrested on the spot.

236.10 MARKING THE SUBJECT OF A COMPLEX SENTENCE

As the force of **wa** (unlike **ga**, which does not extend beyond the clause it is part of) extends all the way to pred., **wa** (never **ga**) is be used where the subject of a complex sentence is identical in both the main and the subordinate clauses (re complex sentences, see 178.4).

a どろぼう【は】警察を見ると、逃げていった。
dorobō wa keisatsu o miru to nigete itta
The burglar fled when he saw the police.

b Kさん【は】出勤するときに自転車に乗る。
K-san wa shukkin suru toki ni jitensha ni noru
When he goes to work, K-san rides a bicycle.

236.11 IN CLEFT SENTENCES

Note that if **kara** is used in S2, **no wa** can also translate as 'the reason why', as in example c (see 23).

a 技術を伝えるの【は】難しい。
gijutsu o tsutaeru no wa muzukashii
Passing on technology is difficult.

b 暑さに音を上げたの【は】人間だけでない。
atsusa ni ne o ageta no wa ningen dake de nai
It wasn't only humans that got defeated by the heat.

c 親が子供にやさしすぎるの【は】、自分に自信がないからである。
oya ga kodomo ni yasashi-sugiru no wa jibun ni jishin ga nai kara de aru
The reason why parents are too kind to their children is because they have no confidence in themselves.

237 wa [FINAL PARTICLE]

The fin. P **wa** (attached to statements) is used for slight emphasis or assertion. It is generally restricted to female usage in Standard Japanese, but is widely used by males in Western Japan (Kansai) (see 48).

It is also often combined with the fin. P **yo**, and its lengthened variant **yō** (see 242).

a あら、ミーティングが始まる【わ】。
ara mītingu ga hajimaru wa
Oh, the meeting is about to begin!

b 姓なんていらない【わよ】。
sei nante iranai wa yo
I don't need (*lit.* "any such thing as") a surname.

c 私そんなもの見たことない【わよー】。
watashi sonna mono mita koto nai wa yō
I've never seen any such thing! [= mosquito eyeball soup]

238 wa AND ga: COMPARISON

(See **wa** [focus P], **ga** [case P].)

When attached to the subject, **ga** emphasizes what precedes it, whereas **wa** focuses on what follows, i.e. pred. (in English, this difference can sometimes be captured by intonational stress).

This difference is particularly clear in examples a and b, where the V is in the hortative form -**(y)ō**, where the focus is naturally on the person who is offering to do something. In fact, **ore wa yarō** is not possible here.

a 俺【が】やろう。
ore ga yarō
【I】'll do it. [= Pilot to co-pilot, who is operating the plane]

b 俺【は】やります、マジ。
ore wa yarimasu maji
I'll【do】it really.

c これ【が】一番おいしい食べ方です。
kore ga ichiban oishii tabekata desu
【This】is the best way of eating [it].

d 今ごろ【が】旬だ。
ima goro ga shun da
【Around now】they [= anchovies] are in season.

e 根本的な疑問【は】残る。
konpon-teki na gimon wa nokoru
Basic doubts remain.

f 「お客さん【は】賢いです」と話していた
o-kyaku-san wa kashikoi desu to hanashite ita
"The customers are clever," he said

g 誕生日が何曜日だろうが、季節がいつだろうが、万人の前に平等に姿を見せる。そこ【が】映画の幽霊の面白いところだ。
tanjōbi ga nan'yobi darō ga kisetsu ga itsu darō ga bannin no mae ni byōdo ni sugata o miseru. sore ga eiga no yūrei no omoshiroi tokoro da
No matter on which day his birthday falls, no matter what the season, [the ghost] shows himself impartially to all. *That*'s the interesting part about ghosts who appear in films [= as opposed to on the stage, when ghosts are visible to certain actors only].

For the same reason, **wa** is typically used in information-seeking Q, which of course focus on the Q-word that follows **wa**.

h あれ【は】何だい。—フェミカジ君ですね。[だい = だ + male intimate Q P かい])
are wa nan dai. femikaji-kun desu ne
【What】 is that? – It's a boy wearing ladies' casuals.

i その成功の秘密【は】何か。
sono seikō no himitsu wa nani ka
【What】 is the secret of this success?

Q-words themselves (and the words, if present, that occupy the same slots in response to Q-words), as a rule attach **ga**.

This also applies to **dochira, dore** and **hō** etc. as used in comparison (see 25), and indeterminates such as **nani ka** etc.

j 【何が】問題なのか。
nani ga mondai na no ka
【What】 is the problem?

k 核疑惑の背景には【何が】あるのか。
kaku giwaku no haikei ni wa nani ga aru no ka
What is in the background of the suspected [development of a] nuclear bomb?

l カネは【だれが】出すのか。
kane wa dare ga dasu no ka
【Who】's going to put up the money?

m 心の中で、【何かが】変わった気がした。
kokoro no naka de nani ka ga kawatta ki ga shita
I felt that in my heart something had changed.

n 写った天体の中で、【どれが】銀河で【どれが】恒星かも自動的に識別できる。
utsutta tentai no naka de dore ga ginga de dore ga kōsei ka mo jidō-teki ni shikibetsu dekiru
It can also automatically distinguish which among the heavenly bodies on screen are galactic and which are fixed stars.

239 **wake** [SENTENCE ENDING]

The S ending **wake** is a structural N, and as such is preceded/followed by forms that precede or follow N. It is used when the speaker realizes that there is an explanation or reason for some occurrence or phenomenon (see also 62, 240).

239.1 Clause **wake** copula
239.1.1 Clause **wake da**
239.1.2 Clause **wake da ga, . . .**
239.2 Clause **wake ga/wa nai**
239.2.1 Clause **wake ga nai**
239.2.2 Clause **wake wa nai**
239.3 Clause **wake de wa nai**
239.4 Clause **wake ni wa ikanai**

239.1 CLAUSE **wake** COPULA

239.1.1 Clause **wake da**

This indicates realization, based on information previously mentioned, ‘so’, ‘then’.

a その意味では共に正しかった【わけ】だ。
sono imi de wa tomo ni tadashikatta wake da
In that sense [those pointing out the pros and cons of the 1950s conservative movement] were both right.

b ガムランは伝統的音楽の要素を持ちながら、現代音楽でもある【わけ】だ。
gamuran wa dentō-teki ongaku no yōso o mochinagara, gendai ongaku de mo aru wake da
So Gamelan, while having elements of traditional music, is also modern music.

c 考えてみれば、国語辞典は日本人だけでなく外国人も利用し、その人たちは、「日本語辞典」あるいは「日日辞典」として読んでいる【わけ】だ。
kangaete mireba, kokugo jiten wa nihonjin dake de naku gaikokujin mo riyō shi, sono hito-tachi wa, nihongo jiten aruiwa nichinichi jiten to shite yonde iru wake da
When you think about it, not only Japanese but foreigners, too, use dictionaries of our language, and these people read them as ‘Japanese language dictionaries’ or ‘Japanese Japanese dictionaries’.

239.1.2 Clause **wake da ga**, . . .

With the conjunctive P **ga** attached, the meaning is 'so/then . . . , but' (see 56).

a 科学技術のおかげでめざましい経済成長ができた【わけ】だが、環境問題を引き起こしてしまった。
kagaku gijutsu no okage de mezamashii keizai seichō ga dekita wake da ga, kankyō mondai o hikiokoshite shimatta
So thanks to technology we have achieved phenomenal economic growth, but ended up causing environmental problems.

b 「一人または数人」とあれば、二人でもいい【わけ】だが、最大値は分からない。
hitori mata wa sūnin to areba, futari de mo ii wake da ga, saidaichi wa wakaranai
If it states 'one or several people', then two people are OK, but one doesn't know the maximum figure [of people to be hired].

239.2 CLAUSE **wake ga/wa nai**

Being a structural N, **wake** can attach the P **wa** or **ga**, meaning literally "there's no reason that". **wake ga/wa nai** can be used after pos. and neg. forms. The latter is a case of double neg. (see 50), meaning 'there is no way that . . . not'.

239.2.1 Clause **wake ga nai**

This is more emphatic than **wake wa nai** 'there is *no* way that'.

a 政府自身の改革を政府にできる【わけ】がない。
seifu jishin no kaikaku o seifu ni dekiru wake ga nai
There is no way that the government itself can carry out a reform of government.

b 市民に愛されない温泉が、観光客に愛される【わけ】がない。
shimin ni aisarenai onsen ga, kankōkyaku ni aisareru wake ga nai
There is no way that a hot spring resort that is not loved by its citizens will be loved by tourists.

c 最初は『なんてこと引き受けたんだろう』と思いましたけど、みんなとなら成功しない【わけ】がないと思っています」。
saisho wa nante koto hikiuketa n darō to omoimashita kedo, minna to nara seikō shinai wake ga nai to omotte imasu
In the beginning I thought 'What on earth have I taken on?'. But I feel that if I do it together with everyone else there is no way we won't be successful.

239.2.2 Clause **wake wa nai**

This is less emphatic than **wake ga nai** ‘there is no way that’.

a 上司が知らない【わけ】はない。
jōshi ga shiranai wake wa nai
There’s no way the superiors don’t know [of their subordinates’ illegal doings].

b アルコールとストレスの複合効果が健康に良い【わけ】はない。
arukōru to sutoresu no fukugō kōka ga kenkō ni yoi wake wa nai
There’s no way the combined effects of alcohol and stress are good for one’s health.

c 通報を受けた警察は「歩道を車が走る【わけ】はない」と事故に関心を示さなかった。
tsūhō o uketa keisatsu wa hodō o kuruma ga hashiru wake wa nai to jiko ni kanshin o shimesanakatta
The police who received the notification said, ‘There’s no way that a car would drive on the pavement’, and didn’t show any interest in the accident.

239.3 CLAUSE **wake de wa nai**

This means ‘it is not (the case) that’.

a 田舎に戻っても親しい友達がいる【わけではない】。
inaka ni modotte mo shitashii tomodachi ga iru wake de wa nai
Even if I go back to my home town, it’s not that there are [any] good friends [there].

b …何のための規制緩和か。規制といってもすべての規制が悪い【わけではない】。
nan no tame no kisei kanwa ka. kisei to itte mo subete no kisei ga warui wake de wa nai
. . . [The question is,] relaxation of restrictions to what end? It’s not the case that all restrictions are bad.

c 第一、長く連れ添った女房殿との間にそんなに話題がある【わけではない】。
daiichi, nagaku tsuresotta nyōbō-dono to no aida ni sonna ni wadai ga aru wake de wa nai
To start with, it’s not that there is all that much to talk about with one’s wife of many years.

239.4 CLAUSE **wake ni wa ikanai**

This indicates a social obligation ‘it won’t do to’, ‘I can’t’, ‘it’s not right to’. (For other ways to say ‘can’t’, see 161, 210.3, 62.1.4; see also 240).

a 投票は国民の義務だから、棄権する【わけにはいかない】。
tōhyō wa kokumin no gimu da kara, kiken suru wake ni wa ikanai
Voting is the people's duty, so not exercising one's right won't do.

b タバコはやめられないけど、人に迷惑をかける【わけにはいかない】し……。
tabako wa yamerarenai kedo, hito ni meiwaku o kakeru wake ni wa ikanai shi
I can't stop smoking, but it isn't right to inconvenience others . . .

c 暇な時にまとめて睡眠を取るという【わけにはいかない】んです。
hima na toki ni matomete suimin o toru to iu wake ni wa ikanai n desu
One can't catch up on one's sleep in a chunk when one has time.

240 wake AND hazu [SENTENCE ENDINGS]: COMPARISON

hazu is used in statements when the speaker's judgement is based on confirmed information, knowledge or simply good common sense. In contrast, **wake** is used when the speaker realizes that some fact or occurrence is the result of some other fact or occurrence.

a 外国産米が安ければ買う【はず】だ。
gaikoku-san-mai ga yasukereba kau hazu da
If foreign rice is cheap, people ought to buy it.

b その意味では共に正しかった【わけ】だ。
sono imi de wa tomo ni tadashikatta wake da
In that sense both [those pointing out the pros and cons of the 1950s conservative movement] were right, then.

241 ya [CONJOINING PARTICLE]

ya joins items in the sense of 'and (among others)' or 'or'. It is used (once) between items only. As it is used for listing representative items, it is often together with **nado** 'among others', 'etc.' (see 28, 102, 220).

241.1 'and (among others)'
241.2 'or'

241.1 'AND (AMONG OTHERS)'

a [自動車【や】家電【など】]の部品に使われる。
jidōsha ya kaden nado no buhin ni tsukawareru
[The resin pellets] are used in parts for cars and home electrical appliances.

b 地域紛争は[欧州【や】アフリカ]で続く。
chiiki funsō wa ōshū ya afurika de tsuzuku
Regional conflicts continue in Europe and Africa (among others).

Note in writing, **ya** is also often used in combination with punctuation marks, as in examples c and d (see also 29).

c [歯形【や】指輪、持ち物【など】] から四人の身元が分かった。
hagata ya yubiwa mochimono nado kara yonin no mimoto ga wakatta
From [things] like the shape of their teeth and rings, belongings, etc., the identity of the four came to light.

d [オフィス・住宅の価格【や】人件費]の上昇が理由だ。
ofisu jūtaku no kakaku ya jinkenhi no jōshō ga riyū da
The reason is the rise in office/house prices and personnel costs [= US companies withdrawing from Hong Kong].

241.2 'OR'

a [お寺【や】教会]のようなものだったのかもしれない。
o-tera ya kyōkai no yō na mono datta no kamoshirenai
[The building on the excavated site] may have been something like a temple or a church.

b [ゴム【や】プラスチック]の焼けるようなにおいがした、という。
gomu ya purasuchikku no yakeru yō na nioi ga shita to iu
He says there was a smell like burning rubber or plastic.

242 yo [FINAL PARTICLE]

The fin. particle **yo** serves to make a statement (examples a–e) or invitation (example h, see also 67.1.1).

After imp. (example i), it serves to soften the impact of the imp. form (see 69.2).

Apart from V/adj./AN/N (pln. or pol., pos. or neg.), **yo** can also attach to S endings (example f), and the final P **no** (example d) (see 134.3).

In statements and after S endings (**n(o) da**, **sō da** and many others), **yo** can be attached to the cop. (i.e. AN/N + cop.), but in female use (and for a familiar effect in general), it can also *replace* cop. (examples e and f).

Note also the use seen in example g, where N **yo** cannot be replaced by N **da**, this being a way of addressing a person (or personalized entity by name), in a variation of 'Et tu, Brute'

a まだ硬いと思いつつ、気になるので、指先で押してみる。「昨日より軟らかい【よ】」と言っては、家人にむいてもらう。
mada katai to omo-itsutsu ki ni naru no de yubisaki de oshite miru. kinō yori yawarakai yo to itte wa kajin ni muite morau
While thinking that [the pears] are still hard, I can't take my mind off them and poke them with my fingertip. 'They are softer than yesterday', I say, and get the family to peel [them] one at a time for me.

b 中学に入ったら…別々の学校になっちゃうんだ【よ】。さびしい【よ】。
chūgaku ni haittara . . . betsubetsu no gakkō ni natchau n da yo. sabishii yo
When we enter middle school . . . will be going to different schools. I'll be lonely.

c 本当のことだから怒りません【よ】。
hontō no koto da kara okorimasen yo
It's the truth, so I'm not getting upset.

d このケーキ、私が作ったの【よ】。
kono kēki watashi ga tsukutta no yo
I've made this cake!

e ワイエスさんってとてもすばらしい方【よ】。
waiesu-san tte totemo subarashii kata yo
Wyeth is a wonderful person, you know.

f 昔、相撲はその年の稲作を占う神事だったそう【よ】。
mukashi sumō wa sono toshi no inasaku o uranau shinji datta sō yo
In the old days, sumo was apparently a Shinto ceremony to divine the rice harvest for that year.

g 「経済界【よ】。お前もか」と思ってしまう。
keizaikai yo omae mo ka to omotte shimau
One feels '【You too】, business world?' (Variation on Caesar's 'Et tu, Brute?' from Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*)

h どっか行こう【よ】。
dokka ikō yo
Let's go somewhere.

i おれにも撮らせろ【よ】。(PM to cameramen)
ore ni mo torasero yo
Let me take one [= a picture] too.

243 Yō [SENTENCE ENDING]

The S ending **yō** indicates likeness, or the way something seems (see 169, 93, 162, 182, 218). Pred.-selecting adv. (see 5.4, 5.4.7) such as **maru-de** 'just' can be used to emphasize the degree of likeness (examples 243.1.1.1 c and 243.1.1.4 a).

yō itself being a structural N, it attaches to the forms of V/adj./AN/N that precede N, i.e. N-mod. forms. Section 243.1.1 gives V/adj./AN/N separately to illustrate the way **yō** attaches to sentences that end in V/adj./AN/N respectively (adj. includes the negative ending **-nai**, example 243.1.1.2 b).

243.1 yō + copula
243.1.1 Clause **yō da/datta/de**
243.1.1.1 Verb-noun-modifying **yō**
243.1.1.2 Adjective-noun-modifying **yō**
243.1.1.3 Adjectival noun **na yō**
243.1.1.4 Noun **no yō**
243.1.2 Clause **yō da ga**
243.2 Noun-modifying
243.2.1 Clause **yō na** noun
243.2.2 Adjective 1 **yō na** adjective 2 **yō na** (noun) (adjectives of opposite meaning)
243.2.3 **atte nai yō na mono**
243.2.4 Noun **no yō na** noun
243.3 Adverbial use
243.3.1 Clause **yō ni**
243.3.2 **dono/ika-/onaji yō ni**
243.3.3 Adverb **no yō ni**
243.3.4 Clause **yō ni naru**
243.3.5 Clause **yō ni omou/mieru**, etc.
243.3.6 Clause **yō ni**
243.3.7 Clause **yō ni suru**, etc.
243.3.8 Clause **yō ni**
243.4 **ka no yō**
243.4.1 Clause-**ka no yō da/datta**
243.4.2 Clause-**ka no yō na** noun
243.4.3 Clause-**ka no yō ni**

243.1 yō + COPULA

243.1.1 Clause **yō da/datta/de**

The meaning is 'seems (just like)', 'is just as if', 'appear to'. To recall situations where something 'was/appeared like' at the time, **yō datta** is attached to S (example c), whereas with **-ta yō da**, i.e. when **yō da** is attached to a clause ending in the **-ta** form (example d), the implication is that it appears at the present moment that some action or development is completed.

243.1.1.1 *Verb-noun-modifying* ***yō***

a ぶらりと歩くと時がゆっくり流れていく【よう】だ。

burari to aruku to toki ga yukkuri nagarete iku yō da

When one walks aimlessly, time seems to flow slowly.

b 不況は演劇にも次第にかげりを落としている【よう】だ。

fukyō wa engeki ni mo shidai ni kageri o otoshite iru yō da

The recession slowly seems to cast dark clouds over the theatre, too.

c【まるで】もう一人の自分がそこにいる【よう】だった。

maru-de mō hitori no jibun ga soko ni iru yō datta

It was just as if another self were there.

d このごろは馬とも信頼関係ができてきた【よう】で、うまく飛べるようになった。

kono goro wa uma to mo shinrai kankei ga dekite kita yō de, umaku toberu yō ni natta

Recently, it appears that I have developed a relationship of trust with the horse, so I can now jump well.

243.1.1.2 *Adjective-noun-modifying* ***yō***

a 未婚女性は「性格」「経済力」「価値観が同じ」といった点から結婚相手を選びたい人が多い【よう】だ。

mikon josei wa 'seikaku' 'keizairyoku' 'kachikan ga onaji' to itta ten kara kekkon aite o erabitai hito ga ōi yō da

As for unmarried women, there appear to be many who would like to choose their partner from the angle of 'personality', 'economic power' and 'sharing the same values'.

b 私が見たところ、彼女の夫のほうはまったく英語ができない【よう】だった。

watashi ga mita tokoro, kanojo no otto no hō wa mattaku eigo ga dekinai yō datta

According to my observation, her husband seemed to have no English ability at all.

243.1.1.3 *Adjectival noun* ***na yō***

a 男性の方がお金にはルーズな【よう】だ。

dansei no hō ga okane ni wa rūzu na yō da

Men seem to be more careless with money.

b 特徴のある顔は得な【よう】です。

tokuchō no aru kao wa toku na yō da

[Type of doll that sells well] It appears that a distinctive face is an advantage

243.1.1.4 *Noun no yō*

a 【まるで】シュールレアリスムの絵画の【よう】だ。
maru-de shūrurearizumu no kaiga no yō da
It is just like a surrealist painting.

b テニスを通じて知り合った人たちと食べるバーベキューは最高の味の【よう】だ。
tenisu o tsūjite shiriatta hito-tachi to taberu bābekyū wa saikō no aji no yō da
There's nothing better than eating a barbecue with friends one has made over a game of tennis.

243.1.2 Clause **yō da ga**

This is often used for asking questions at press conferences etc. 'it seems that . . . (how do you explain the fact that?)'

a 問 各分野で米側の提案と日本の考え方に大きな隔たりがある【よう】だが。
toi: kaku bunya de beigawa no teian to nihon no kangaekata ni ooki na hedatari ga aru yō da ga . . .
Q: It seems that in all areas there is a considerable gulf between the US proposals and Japan's way of thinking.

243.2 NOUN-MODIFYING

243.2.1 Clause **yō na** noun

In this use, **yō na** is used to link a N-mod. Clause to the modified N in the sense of 'sort of'; **yō na** can often be omitted without much change in meaning.

a なべ底をはう【ような】景気の中では、まあまあの成績ではないか。
nabezoko o hau yō na keiki no naka de wa, māmā no seiseki de wa naika
In an economy which is like scraping the bottom of the barrel [*lit*. "crawling along the bottom of a pan"], that's not such a bad result.

b 夕食にラーメンしか食べられない【ような】時期もあったけれど、今は経済的にも楽になった。
yūshoku ni rāmen shika taberarenai yō na jiki mo atta keredo, ima wa keizaiteki ni mo raku ni natta
There was a time when I could only afford **rāmen** [soup noodles] for dinner, but now I'm financially comfortable too.

c あのビル工事のせいで家が傾いた【ような】気がする。
ano biru kōji no sei de ie ga katamuita yō na ki ga suru
I have a feeling that my house leans because of the construction of that building.

d【まるで】大雨のザァーザァーという音がきこえてくる【ような】版画じゃないか。
maru-de ōame no zāzā to iu oto ga kikoete kuru yō na hanga ja nai ka
Surely this a woodblock print which is just as if the sound of heavy rain can be heard!

e 専業主婦でいることが、後ろめたい【ような】風潮が強まっている。
sengyō shufu de iru koto ga, ushirometai yō na fūchō ga tsuyomatte iru
The sort of atmosphere where one feels guilty for being a housewife is getting more pronounced.

f 随所に織り込んだ一見、無駄な【ような】会話のおかしさ。
zuisho ni orikonda ikken muda na yō na kaiwa no okashisa
The funniness of the seemingly pointless conversation, which is woven [into the film] everywhere.

243.2.2 Adjective 1 **yō na** adjective 2 **yō na** (noun) (adjectives of opposite meaning)

Using adj. of opposite meaning, the resulting meaning is 'not particularly adj. 1'.

a 米国とECの仲はいい【ような】悪い【ような】……。
beikoku to īshī no naka wa ii yō na warui yō na
Relations between the US and the EC are not particularly good.

243.2.3 atte nai yō na mono

This is a way of saying '(apparently so but) not really'.

a 株価の基準はあってない【ような】もの。
kabuka no kijun wa atte nai yō na mono
There isn't really a basis for share prices.

b ファドは楽譜があってない【ような】もの。
fado wa gakufu ga atte nai yō na mono
The fado is something that doesn't really have a score but appears to.

243.2.4 Noun **no yō na** noun

This is used for making similes etc. 'something like N'.

a 駿河湾は巨大ないけすの【ような】ものです。
suruga-wan wa kyodai na ikesu no yō na mono desu
Suruga bay is like a giant fish tank [= full of fish farms].

b 地鳴りの【ような】音がして地面がせり上がったようだった。
jinari no yō na oto ga shite jimen ga seriagatta yō datta
There was a sound like a ground rumble, and it was as if the ground had lifted up.

c 消費不振が深刻になっていますが、回復の兆しの【ような】ものはありますか。
shōhi fushin ga shinkoku ni natte imasu ga, kaifuku no kizashi no yō na mono wa arimasu ka
The slump in spending is severe, but is there anything like a sign of recovery?

243.3 ADVERBIAL USE

243.3.1 Clause **yō ni**

Used adverbially, S **yō ni** indicates how something appears (but actually isn't) in the sense of 'like', 'as if'. The likeness can again be reinforced with **maru-de** 'just'.

a 手のひらの皮は「手袋をはめた【ように】」厚くなった。
te no hira no kawa wa tebukuro o hameta yō ni atsuku natta
The skin of his palms became thick 'as if wearing gloves'.

b きずは、【まるで】消しゴムで消す【ように】きれいになくなった。
kizu wa, maru-de keshigomu de kesu yō ni kirei ni naku natta
The wound disappeared completely, just as if wiped out by an eraser.

c デパートで働く女性たちの忙しさを象徴する【ように】、「手作りのプレゼントを渡す」と答えたのは25%にとどまった。
depāto de hataraku josei-tachi no isogashisa o shōchō suru yō ni, tezukuri no purezento o watasu to kotaeta no wa 25% ni todomatta
As if to symbolize how busy women working in department stores are, only 25 per cent replied, 'I give a handmade present'.

d 上の兄の【ように】実家を継ぐことはできない。
ue no ani no yō ni jikka o tsugu koto wa dekinai
I cannot inherit the family home like my oldest brother.

e 企業も「リストラ、リストラ」とキズの入ったレコードの【ように】繰り返す。
kigyō mo risutora, risutora to kizu no haitta rekōdo no yō ni kurikaesu
Industry too repeats 'restructuring' like a broken record.

f 欧米人から見て日本人がどこか異質な【ように】、東京軸の人間から見るとナゴヤニアンは異質に見える。
ōbeijin kara mite nihonjin ga doko ka ishitsu na yō ni tōkyō-jiku no ningen kara miru to nagoyanian wa ishitsu ni mieru
Just as the Japanese appear somehow strange to Westerners, Nagoyans appear strange in the eyes of people from around Tokyo

243.3.2 dono/ika-/onaji yō ni

In these combinations, **yō ni** means 'how', 'in what way', 'in the same way'.

a 日本の外交を【どのように】改革すべきだろうか。
nihon no gaikō o dono yō ni kaikaku subeki darō ka
In what way should Japan's diplomacy be reformed, I wonder?

b 立派な言葉は実は【いかように】も解釈できるものだということを、後になって悟った。
rippa na kotoba wa jitsu wa ikayō ni mo kaishaku dekiru mono da to iu koto o, ato ni natte satotta
Afterwards I realized that grand words can in fact be interpreted in any way.

c みな制服を着て、【同じように】ほほ笑むんだ。
mina seifuku o kite, onaji yō ni hohoemu n da
You will all wear uniforms, and smile in an identical way.

243.3.3 Adverb **no yō ni**

Attached to adv., **yō ni** means 'almost', 'practically'.

a【当然のように】外国人騎手も日本市場に熱いまなざしを寄せる。
tōzen no yō ni gaikokujin kishu mo nihon shijō ni atsni manazashi o yoseru
Almost as a matter of course, foreign jockeys also eye the Japanese market expectantly.

b 高過ぎる服を普通のOLが【毎月のように】カードで買う。
taka-sugiru fuku o futsū no ō eru ga maitsuki no yō ni kādo de kau
Ordinary female office workers buy overpriced [designer] clothes practically every day by [credit] card.

243.3.4 Clause **yō ni naru**

This indicates that something takes place as the result of a development or effort over time 'get to the stage where', 'now'.

a 簡単な日常会話だけなら二、三カ月でできる【ようになる】。
kantan na nichijō kaiwa dake nara, ni, sankagetsu de dekiru yō ni naru
If it's just basic daily conversation you can master it in two to three months.

b 両ひざは無理がたたり、水がたまる【ようになっ】た。
ryōhiza wa muri ga tatari, mizu ga tamaru yō ni natta
The strain on his knees has begun to tell, and [they] are now full of water.

c 仕事人間にとどまらず、柔軟に方向転換する【ようになっ】た男性の変化は注目に値する。
shigoto ningen ni todomarazu, jūnan ni hōkō tenkan suru yō ni natta dansei no henka wa chūmoku ni atai suru
The change in men, who have now changed course, ceasing to be workaholics, is worth noting.

d 世界一長寿な我が国では、多くの高齢者は死ぬ間際まで、その年齢なりの健康を保てる【ようになっ】た。
sekai-ichi chōju na wagakuni de wa, ōku no kōreisha wa shinu magiwa made, sono nenrei nari no kenkō o tamoteru yō ni natta
In our country, which leads the world in longevity, many of the old can now preserve a state of health commensurate with their age until just before their death.

e これまでタブー視されがちだった同性愛が、表舞台で語られる【ようになっ】ている。
kore made tabūshi sare-gachi datta dōseiai ga, omote butai de katarareru yō ni natte iru
Homosexuality, which hitherto tended to be viewed as a taboo, is now being talked about openly (*lit.* "on the front stage").

243.3.5 Clause **yō ni omou/mieru**, etc.

Attached to a clause that indicates a state (using **-te iru**, **-te inai**, V that indicate a state by themselves, and adjectives) and followed by V that indicate an impression), the meaning is 'seems/appears to me that'.

a 家の寿命が短くなっている【ように思う】のです。
ie no jumyō ga mijikaku natte iru yō ni omou no desu
I feel that the lifespan of a house has become shorter.

b 運転免許のない人が乗っている【ように思え】た。
unten menkyo no nai hito ga notte iru yō ni omoeta
It seemed to me that a person without a driving licence was driving.

c 十一年ぶりの日本はあまり変わっていない【ように見え】た。
jūichinen-buri no nihon wa amari kawatte inai yō ni mieta
After 11 years, Japan appeared not to have changed much.

d 日本酒って多様化している【ようにみえ】て、実はしてないんだ。
nihonshu tte tayōka shite iru yō ni miete, jitsu wa shite nai n da
Sake seems to have diversified, but in fact it hasn't.

243.3.6 Clause **yō ni**

This indicates that the pred. is carried out for a purpose 'that', 'so that'.

a 来年の開港まで無事故で工事が進む【ように】祈願していた。
rainen no kaikō made mujiko de kōji ga susumu yō ni kigan shite ita
I was praying that the construction work would proceed without accident until next year's opening.

b 文化の違いを認め、お互いに理解し合える【ように】、雑誌で役に立ちたい。
bunka no chigai o mitome, otagai ni rikai shiaeru yō ni zasshi de yaku ni tachitai
I want to be useful through the magazine, so that we can realize the cultural differences and understand each other.

c サラリーマンも通える【ように】、午後九時まで授業をする。
sararīman mo kayoeru yō ni, gogo kuji made jugyō o suru
They teach classes until 9 p.m. so that office workers can attend too.

243.3.7 Clause **yō ni suru**, etc.

Followed by **suru** and some other V such as **kokorogakeru** 'try', the meaning is 'decide to, 'make a point of', 'try'.

a そこで、父親に毎日手紙を書く【ようにし】た。
soko de, chichioya ni mainichi tegami o kaku yō ni shita
So I decided to write to my father every day.

b 週二度は映画館に通い、五本はビデオを見る【ように心掛け】ている。
shū nido wa eigakan ni kayoi, gohon wa bideo o miru yō ni kokorogakete iru
I try to go to the movies at least twice a week, and watch at least five videos.

243.3.8 Clause **yō ni**

Ending a sentence, **yō ni** indicates obligation 'should' (attached to S ending in a V form).

a まず四月には店員ならだれでも包装できる【ように】。それからだれでも店の中を案内できる【ように】。
mazu shigatsu ni wa ten'in nara dare demo hōsō dekiru yō ni. sore kara dare demo mise no naka o annai dekiru yō ni
First of all, by April every employee should be able to wrap things. Then, everyone should be able to show customers around the shop.

243.4 ka no yō

This is similar in meaning to the equivalent S without **ka no**, but the addition of the Q P **ka** makes the [S] **no yō** sentences somewhat more tentative or hypothetical 'as if'

243.4.1 Clause-**ka no yō da/datta**

a 【まるで】群れに「見えざる力」が働いたかの【ようだ】。
maru-de mure ni miezaru chikara ga hataraita ka no yō da
It is just as if an ‘invisible force’ worked in the herd.

b とつとつと説明する医者の声はどこか遠くから聞こえて来るかの【ようだっ】た。
totsutotsu to setsumei suru isha no koe wa doko ka tōku kara kikoete kuru ka no yō datta
The voice of the doctor, who was giving a faltering explanation, seemed to come from a long distance.

243.4.2 Clause-**ka no yō na** noun

The meaning here is ‘as if’.

a コメ市場の開放で日本農業は明日にも破滅するかの【ような】議論がある。
kome shijō no kaihō de nihon nōgyō wa ashita ni mo hametsu suru ka no yō na giron ga aru
There is an argument as if with the opening of the rice market Japan’s agriculture would be destroyed tomorrow.

243.4.3 Clause-**ka no yō ni**

This construction too means ‘as if’.

a 日本の国際化と歩調を合わせるかの【ように】、外国人観光客も秋葉原を多く訪れるようになった。
nihon no kokusai-ka to hochō o awaseru ka no yō ni gaikokujin kankō-kyaku mo akihabara o ōku otozureru yō ni natta
As if keeping pace with Japan’s internationalization, foreign tourists also come to visit Akihabara in large numbers.

b 飲み屋でUFOの話をしていると、見知らぬ人が百年の知己に会ったかの【ように】「私も見たんですよ」と話し掛けてくるという。
nomiya de UFO no hanashi o shite iru to, mishiranu hito ga hyakunen no chiki ni atta ka no yō ni watashi mo mita n desu yo to hanashi-kakete kuru to iu
They say that if you mention UFOs in a drinking place, total strangers will talk to you as if they were old friends, saying, ‘I’ve seen them too’.

244 **yō, mitai, sō, -sō, rashii, to iu, -tte**: COMPARISON

244.1 Forms with which they combine
244.2 Core meaning
244.3 Special uses

244.1 FORMS WITH WHICH THEY COMBINE

Table 29 Forms to which **yō**, **mitai**, **sō**, **-sō**, **rashii**, **to iu**, **-tte** attach

Form	*Group*	*Pattern*
AN/N +	I Directly	AN/N **mitai da**
		AN/N **rashii**
		AN-**sō da**
	II By means of **no/na**	AN **na**/N **no yō da**
	III By means of **da**	AN/N **da sō da**
		AN/N **da to iu**
		AN/N **da-tte**
+ N	I Directly	**rashii** N
	II By means of **na**	**yō na** N
		mitai na N
		sō na N
	III NOT POSSIBLE	**(sō da)**
-ta form (non-narrative use)		
	I Before	**-ta yō da**
		-ta mitai da
		-ta rashii
		-ta sō da
		-ta-tte
	II After	**-sō dat-ta**
-ta form (narrative use)		
		yō dat-ta
		mitai dat-ta
		rashikat-ta
		sō na
-nai form	I Before	**-nai yō da**
		-nai mitai da
		-nai rashii
		-nai sō da
		-nai-tte
		-na-sa-sō da
	II After	**-sō ni nai**
-masu form	I Before	**yō desu**
		mitai desu
		sō desu
		so desu
		rashii desu
	II After	**masu-tte**

244.2 CORE MEANING

Hearsay:	**sō da, -tte, rashii**
Typicality:	**rashii**
Visual: imminent (and quite certain)	**-sō da**
Other: . . . but isn't	**yō da, mitai da**
. . . but don't know	**yō da, mitai da**
. . . and is	**rashii**
+ adj. (neutral)	**-sō da**

244.3 SPECIAL USES

Illness: 'I think I've got a cold' is **kaze o hiita yō da** (not **hiita to omou!**)

Imminent: 'I think I'm going to be sick' **haki-sō da** (not **haku to omou!**)

245 -yō [NOMINALIZING SUFFIX]

The nominalizing suf. **-yō** converts a V (V-stem) into a N (see 34). It is used in three ways, as set out in the following sections.

245.1 Verb-stem **yō**
245.2 Verb-stem **yō ga nai**
245.3 Verb-**te shiyō ga nai**

245.1 VERB-STEM yō

The combination means 'way of doing'.

a 同店の栗原美弥子さん（46）は「今日の光（こう）ちゃんは本当の笑顔を見せてくれた」と手放しの喜び【よう】だ。
dōten no kurihara miyako san wa "kyō no kō chan wa hontō no egao o misete kureta" to tebanashi no yorokobi-yō da
Ms Kurihara Miyako (46) of the same store is overjoyed, saying, 'Today, Kō-chan had a really radiant look'.

b 姫路っ子は古くからお城とともに生きてきた。それぞれの時代を守りぬいてきたなじみのお城が一躍「世界の宝」にリストアップされたのだから、その喜び【よう】は推して知るべしである。
himeji-kko wa furuku kara o-shiro to tomo ni ikite kita. sorezore no jidai o mamori-nuite kita najimi no oshiro ga ichiyaku "sekai no takara" ni risuto appu sareta no da kara, sono yorokobi-yō wa oshite shiru-beshi de aru

The inhabitants of Himeji have lived with their castle for a long time. As the familiar castle, which has watched over the various ages, has suddenly been listed a 'world treasure', you can imagine their delight.

245.2 VERB-STEM **yō ga nai**

In the neg., the meaning is 'there is no way of doing'.

a おカネがないのだから、ほかに考え【ようがない】。
okane ga nai no da kara, hoka ni kangae-yō ga nai
[Issuing deficit government bonds:] Since we don't have any money, there is nothing else that can be considered.

b 気候だけは手の打ち【ようがない】。
kikō dake wa te no uchi-yō ga nai
Whatever else, about the weather there is nothing one can do.

c 初耳だ。コメントのし【ようがない】。
hatsumimi da. komento no shi-yō ga nai
This is the first time I've heard about this. I can't comment.

d ビビッドのつづりが分からない、いやその前に何語かわからないので意味の確かめ【ようがない】。
bibiddo no tsuzuri ga wakaranai, iya sono mae ni nanigo ka wakaranai no de imi no tashikame-yō ga nai
I have no way of checking the meaning of 'bibiddo', because I don't now how it is spelt, and before that I don't know [from] what language it is.

245.3 VERB-**te shiyō ga nai**

Note that **shiyō** itself is a combination of **shi** (V-stem of **suru**) + **yō**. The literal meaning is therefore "there is no way of doing (anything about) V-ing", i.e. 'can't help doing'.

a 涙が流れて【しようがない】。
namida ga nagarete shiyō ga nai
I cannot help tears running down [my face].

Note the expression **shiyō ga nai** (often contracted to **shō ga nai**) and its partial synonym **shikata ga nai** are extremely common by themselves, meaning 'it can't be helped', 'there's nothing that can be done', 'never mind', etc.

246 -(y)ō [SENTENCE ENDING]

-(y)ō is a S ending that expresses two meanings: hortative and pres.

For how the forms are derived, see 67.

For examples of use, see 67, 163.1.

Note also its use in the combinations -(y)ō **mono nara**, -(y)ō **to**, -(y)ō **to omou/kangaeru** and -(y)ō **to suru** (see 247, 248, 249, 250).

247 -(y)ō mono nara

This is a combination of the pres. V-(y)ō and **nara**, meaning 'if you do anything like', 'if anything like . . . should happen' (see 96.2.4, 108, 163).

a 板を無理に回したり、体をひねったりし【ようものなら】、間違いなく転ぶ。
ita o muri ni mawashitari karada o hinettari shiyō mono nara machigainaku korobu
If you turn the board forcefully, or twist your body, you'll fall over without fail.

b そしていまや、規制緩和ないし撤廃論を批判し【ようものなら】、たちまち「世論の圧制」に言論の自由を阻まれる。
soshite ima ya kisei kanwa naishi teppairon o hihan shiyō mono nara tachimachi yoron no assei ni genron no jiyū o habamareru
And now, if you were to criticise the arguments for relaxing or abolishing restrictions, your freedom of speech would quickly be obstructed by 'the tyranny of public opinion'.

248 -(y)ō to [ADVERBIAL PHRASE]

Attached to V (for forms, see 67), this combination of the hortative -(y)ō and the adverbial P **to** (which describes how an action takes place) indicates with what intention the subordinate clause (in[]) is or was performed (see 67, 213).

248.1 Adverbial use
248.2 Noun-modifying use

248.1 ADVERBIAL USE

a [家電専業メーカーの身軽さを【身に着けようと】]必死だ。
kaden sengyō mēkā no migarusa o mi ni tsukeyō to hisshi da
They [= electrical sections of large conglomerates] are desperate, trying to acquire the responsiveness of specialized electrical appliance manufacturers.

b [新しい展開を【図ろうと】]、名称変更に踏み切った。
atarashii tenkai o hakarō to meishō henkō ni fumikitta
They took the step of changing their name, with the intention of revitalizing the company.

c スキー場も[スノーボード人気に【あやかろうと】]、躍起になっている。
sukījō mo sunōbōdo ninki ni ayakarō to yakki ni natte iru
Skiing resorts too are eager to cash in on the popularity of snowboarding.

d さらに[「地元の様々な情報を【提供していこう」と】]情報センターも開設。
sara ni jimoto no samazama na jōhō o teikyō shite ikō to jōhō sentā mo kaisetsu
They've also established an information centre with the intention of providing local people with a variety of information.

248.2 NOUN-MODIFYING USE

a しかし[「来年はこの男に【かけよう」と】]の心意気が痛いほどありがたかった。
shikashi rainen wa kono otoko ni kakeyō to no kokoroiki ga itai hodo arigatakatta
But, for his spirit of 'Next year I'll put my trust in this man' I was so grateful it almost hurt.

249 -(y)ō to omou/kangaeru [SENTENCE ENDING]

The combination of V-(y)ō (see 67 for forms) + the V of thinking **omou/kangaeru** (which use the quotation P **to**) means 'think of doing', 'want to'.

249.1 -(y)ō **to omou/kangaeru**
249.2 -(y)ō **to wa omou/omowanai, kangaeru/kangaenai**

249.1 -(y)ō to omou/kangaeru

a 西欧文明の退廃や矛盾を感じとり、インディアンとして【生きようと考え】た。
seiōbunmei no taihai ya mujun o kanji-tori indian to shite ikiyō to kangaeta
I felt the decadence and contradictions of Western civilization, and thought I'd live as an Indian.

b 人生の残りを考えた時、本当にやりたいことを【やろうと考え】た。
jinsei no nokori o kangaeta toki hontō ni yaritai koto o yarō to kangaeta
When I considered the rest of my life, I thought of doing the things I really want to do.

c 三日までゆっくり【過ごそうと思い】ます。
mikka made yukkuri sugosō to omoimasu
I'd like to take things easy until the 3rd.

d 同氏は自宅に風車を【設置しようと考え】ている風力推進派。
dōshi wa jitaku ni fūsha o setchi shiyō to kangaete iru fūryoku suishin-ha
The aforementioned is a windpower advocate, who is considering installing a windmill at his home.

e いい会社として知られているのに、なぜ【辞めようと思っ】たのですか。
ii kaisha to shite shirarete iru no ni naze yameyō to omotta no desu ka
Why did you think of quitting, even though it's known as a good company?

249.2 -(y)ō to wa omou/omowanai, kangaeru/kangaenai

The Focus P **wa** can be inserted between **to** and the V, mostly in the neg., but it can also be used with pos. pred. for contrast or emphasis (example d).

a 短期間に【もうけようとは考え】ていない。
tankikan ni mōkeyō to wa kangaete inai
We have no intention of making a quick buck.

b 結婚できないから子供は【あきらめようとは考え】なかった。
kekkon dekinai kara kodomo wa akirameyō to wa kangaenakatta
I didn't think of giving up [having] children because I can't get married.

c「間違いのない演奏を【しようとは思い】ましたよ」と話している。
machigai no nai ensō o shiyō to wa omoimashita yo to hanashite iru
'I [did] think that I wanted to perform flawlessly', he said.

d 私自身は監督に【なろうとは思わ】ない。
watashi jishin wa kantoku ni narō to wa omowanai
I myself have no intention of becoming a coach.

250 -(y)ō to suru [SENTENCE ENDING]

Attached to V (for forms, see 67), the ending **-(y)ō to suru** (mostly used in the form **to shite iru** or **to shita**) indicates attempted action, i.e. that an action is or was attempted in the sense of 'try'.

Unlike -**te miru**, which also often translates as ‘try’ and is typically used of the first person, -**(y)ō to suru** is used of the third person, and cannot be used of the first (see 205).

Note – with subjects that are impersonal, such as [computer] networks, the implication is of course not one of ‘trying to’, but ‘about to’ do something.

a 少しでも電気代を【減らそうとし】ている。
sukoshi demo denkidai o herasō to shite iru
They are trying to reduce the electricity bill, if only by a little.

b 孤立感を持ち始めたロシアは、どこへ【行こうとし】ているのか。
koritsukan o mochi-hajimeta roshia wa doko e ikō to shite iru no ka
Where is Russia, which has begun to feel isolated, trying to go?

c 突然、若い男がタクシーの前に飛び出し、後部座席のドアを【開けようとし】た。
totsuzen wakai otoko ga takushī no mae ni tobidashi kōbu-zaseki no doa o akeyō to shita
Suddenly, a young man hurled himself at the taxi, and tried to open the rear door.

d ネットワークは企業自体のあり方すら【変えようとし】ている。
nettowāku wa kigyō jitai no arikata sura kaeyō to shite iru
[Computer] networks are about to change the very nature of business.

251 yori [CASE PARTICLE]

yori is used as a formal or written-style equivalent of **kara** [case P] ‘since’, ‘from’. Note that in this use, **yori** is *not* followed by adj./AN (see 74, 252).

a 91年常務となり、92年4月【より】現職。
kyūjū ichinen jōmu to nari kyūjū ninen shigatsu yori genshoku
In ’91 he became managing director, and since April ’92 he [has occupied] his current position.

b 昼はコースは一人三千円【より】、夜は五千円【より】。
hiru wa kōsu wa hitori sanzen-en yori yoru wa gosen-en yori
At lunchtime, courses [are] from ¥3,000, at night from ¥5,000.

c 商品名は「前略、足の裏【より】」。
shōhinmei wa zenryaku ashi no ura yori
The product name is ‘Hello, from the sole of the foot’.

d 「映画“赤い靴”【より】」ほか。
eiga akai kutsu yori hoka
‘From the film *The Red Shoes*’, and others.

252 yori [COMPARATIVE PARTICLE]

yori literally means "compared to", "more than", etc., and is used to indicate the standard of comparison (that which something/somebody is being compared with) in comparative S (see 25.1, 218.10).

For adverbial use of **yori** (**yori** + [A/AN] forming the equivalent to English comparative forms (see 25.2).

252.1 Noun **yori (mo)** + adjective/adjectival noun
252.2 Noun/verb **yori (mo)** verb
252.3 Noun **yori (mo)** noun (copula)

252.1 NOUN yori (mo) + ADJECTIVE/ADJECTIVAL NOUN

Followed by adj. (and AN), **yori** indicates comparison '-er than', 'more than'.

a 人のいのちは地球【より】重い、という。
hito no inochi wa chikyū yori omoi to iu
They say that human life weighs heavier than the globe.

b 里が前【より】奇麗になった。
sato ga mae yori kirei ni natta
The village has become prettier than before.

c 必ず選手【より】早く来ます。
kanarazu senshu yori hayaku kimasu
He always comes earlier than the players.

d 彦根の初霜は平年【より】十日遅い。
hikone no hatsushimo wa heinen yori tōka osoi
The first ground frost in Hikone is ten days later than in average years.

252.2 NOUN/VERB yori (mo) VERB

Followed by V, **yori** indicates that the action/state of V takes place 'compared to', 'rather than'.

a ボールが飛ばなくなったわけではない。体力【より】気力が落ちている。
bōru ga tobanaku natta wake de wa nai. tairyoku yori kiryoku ga ochite iru
It's not that [I can't get the golf] ball to fly [the distance] any more. It's my mental rather than physical strength that's diminished.

b これまで【より】五モデル増える。
kore made yori go-moderu fueru
Compared to before, there will be five new models.

c 今は森を見る【より】木を見る時だ。
ima wa mori o miru yori ki o miru toki da
This is the time to look at the trees rather than the wood.

252.3 NOUN **yori (mo)** NOUN (COPULA)

This is often used in slogans, sayings, etc. in the sense of 'rather than' (cop. is usually omitted).

a 対立【よりも】協調
tairitsu yori mo kyōchō
Co-operation rather than opposition

b 論【より】証拠
ron yori shōko
Proof [is] better than argument

253 **ze** [FINAL PARTICLE]

ze is used by men, mostly in informal language, to call the listener's attention to something, in the sense of 'you know', 'I tell you', etc.

Note example e, where **ze** is used after a **-masu** form.

a ナイターの照明があたるともっときれいだ【ぜ】。
naitā no shōmei ga ataru to motto kirei da ze
In the floodlight (*lit.* "when the lights for the night match shine on it"), it [= the stadium] looks even nicer, I tell you.

b 新しいオペラ座がテレビで紹介されたんだ【ぜ】。
atarashii opera-za ga terebi de shōkai sareta n da ze
The new Opera House was introduced on TV, you know.

c この順番を待つ通路、壁にも床にもテレビのモニターがはまってる【ぜ】。
kono junban o matsu tsūro kabe ni mo yuka ni mo terebi no monitā ga hamatteru ze
This passage where you wait for your turn has TV monitors fitted in both the wall and the floor, you know!

d まったく、お兄ちゃんの影響力の大きさにはまいる【ぜ】。
mattaku oniichan no eikyōryoku no ōkisa ni wa mairu ze
The influence of the older brother [on the younger one] is really amazing, you know.

e ご尽力ありがとうございます。しかしこれじゃいけません【ぜ】。土地取引は動きません。
go-jinryoku arigatō gozaimasu. shikashi kore ja ikemasen ze. tochi torihiki wa ugokimasen
Thank you for your effort. But this is not good enough. Land deals aren't moving [at all].

254 zo [FINAL PARTICLE]

zo is a stronger variant of **yo** (see 242), used by men.

As **zo** is used to alert the listener, it can also be used to threaten others. However, it is also common for people to use **zo** when talking to themselves/thinking aloud.

a 撃つ【ぞ】。
utsu zo
I'll shoot!

b おかしい【ぞ】。
okashii zo
This is strange!

c 「手土産じゃすまない【ぞ】」などと脅した疑い。
temiyage ja sumanai zo nado to odoshita utagai
He is suspected of having threatened him, saying, 'A present ain't good enough!'.

d 上司から家に火をつける【ぞ】、犬を殺す【ぞ】と脅された。
jōshi kara ie ni hi o tsukeru zo inu o korosu zo to odosareta
He was threatened by his superior, saying he'd set his house on fire and kill his dog.

e この分では胴上げでなくお手上げになってしまう【ぞ】。
kono bun de wa dōage de naku o-teage ni natte shimau zo
If we go on like this, it's not going to be 'dōage' [being lifted in triumph] but 'o-teage' [throwing up hands in despair]!

f 「お父さん、競争だよ」「よし、負けない【ぞ】」。
otōsan kyōsō da yo yoshi makenai zo
'Daddy, it's a race!' 'OK, I'm not going to lose!'

g 「お、メールが来てる【ぞ】」。小学校から帰った春樹君（11）はコンピューターの画面をのぞいた。
o mēru ga kiteru zo. shōgakkō kara kaetta haruki-kun (11) wa konpyūtā no gamen o nozoita
'Oh, an (e-)mail has come!' Haruki-kun, who had got back from primary school, looked at the computer screen.

255 -zutsu [ADVERBIAL PARTICLE]

Attached to words indicating an amount (num. + C, and idiomatically the adv. of degree **sukoshi** and **wazuka**), **-zutsu** indicates that the same amount is allotted to each unit or person (see 36, 147).

Note that where a case P is present after num. + C, **-zutsu** is inserted between num. + C and the case P.

255.1 Number per unit
255.2 Number at a time
255.3 Idiom: **sukoshi-zutsu**, **wazuka-zutsu**

255.1 NUMBER PER UNIT

The meaning here is ‘each’ but note that in English translation, ‘each’ is often redundant.

a 「宇宙ゴミ」は毎年一割【ずつ】増えている。
uchū gomi wa mainen ichiwari-zutsu fuete iru
‘Space litter’ is increasing every year by 10 per cent (*lit.* “each”).

b 私自身も育毛剤を月に一本【ずつ】買っている。
watashi jishin mo ikumō-zai o tsuki ni ippon-zutsu katte iru
I [myself] too buy a bottle (*lit.* “each”) of hair restorer per month.

c 学生数は年々3%【ずつ】減少していく。
gakusei-sū wa nennen san-pāsento-zutsu genshō shite iku
The number of students will decrease by 3 per cent (*lit.* “each”) every year.

d ボールペンとシャープペンは五百円、色鉛筆は十本【ずつ】のセットで千円。
bōru-pen to shāpu-pen wa gohyaku-en iro enpitsu wa juppon-zutsu no setto de sen-en
The ballpoint pens and propelling pencils [are] ¥500, the coloured pencils ¥1,000 for sets of ten (*lit.* “each”).

e 前菜、主菜、各二、三品のうちから一品【ずつ】を選び、デザートがついて三千五百円で、飲み物は別料金となっている。
zensai shusai kaku nisan-pin no uchi kara ippin-zutsu o erabi dezāto ga tsuite sanzen gohyaku-en de nomimono wa betsu-ryōkin to natte iru
It’s ¥3,500 for a choice of one dish 【each】 from two or three entrees and main dishes, with dessert included; drinks are charged extra.

255.2 NUMBER AT A TIME

a 一つ【ずつ】ラップで包んだすしを単品販売する。
hitotsu-zutsu rappu de tsutsunda sushi o tanpin hanbai suru
They sell sushi individually, wrapping one [piece] at a time in cling film.

b 機動隊が反対派住民を一人【ずつ】排除しようとすると、「警察帰れ」との怒号が飛び交い、興奮した女性が倒れて病院へ。
kidōtai ga hantai-ha jūmin o hitori-zutsu haijo shiyō to suru to keisatsu kaere to no dogō ga tobikai kōfun shita josei ga taorete byōin e
When the riot police tried to remove the dissenting citizens one by one, there were shouts of ‘Police go home’, and an overexcited woman collapsed and [was taken] to hospital.

255.3 IDIOM: **sukoshi-zutsu, wazuka-zutsu**

These idiomatic expression are used in the sense of ‘a little at a time’.

a 【少しずつ】消費も伸びるだろう。
sukoshi-zutsu shōhi mo nobiru darō
Little by little, consumption should increase too.

b 各県がまとめている有効求人倍率が【わずかずつ】ながら回復に向かっている。
kaku-ken ga matomete iru yūkō kyūjin bairitsu ga wazuka-zutsu-nagara kaifuku ni mukatte iru
The competition rate for valid job offers put out by the prefectures is nearing recovery, however slightly.

ENGLISH INDEX

a bit 130
a few times 411
A is about *B* 173
A is *B* to an extent that 176
a little 15
a little at a time 616
a little earlier 15
a lot 14–15, 351
a N that is so . . . that 175
a N typical of its kind 423
a N worthy of that name 423
a real/proper N 423
a single . . . 103
a typical/atypical N1 423
able to do for someone else 482
about 15, 46, 50, 162, 172, 224, 311, 316, 356, 378
about all 163
about the only 107
about the only N 163
about to 611
above 429
above all 65, 149
absolutely not 18
accidentally 6
accompany (someone) 488, 505
according to (. . .) 112, 318–20, 451, 455
acquire 301, 571
across 355
actually 510
advance 550
affected 424
after 27 9, 87, 429, 495
after (amount of time) 495
after being born 90
after doing V 327
again 15
against 199, 314, 378
akin to 165
alcoholic drink 189
alight 201
alike 1
all 3, 46, 68
all one can do is 450
all one/it etc. does/achieves 107
all that remains is 27
all the more so because 109
all the time 15, 50
allow 494
allow me to 57
allow me to do 494
allow someone to do something 521, 523
almost 14, 49, 601
almost no 18
along 355
already 15, 251
also 89, 120, 137, 242 3, 462
although 209, 217, 247
always 31, 41, 44, 130, 411
am 96
a.m. 15
am I allowed to? 56
am/is/are inside 571
am/is eating 570
among 22, 119, 263, 563
among others 258, 593
amount per 317
and 38, 71–2, 83–5, 89 91, 93, 152–3, 305, 363, 448, 542
and (among others) 593
and (moreover) 90, 448
and so on 258
and such like 264
and (the like) 542
and therefore 84, 90
any(~) 118, 245, 351, 412, 414, 416–7
any amount 411
any number (of times) 411
any such 264
any time 411
any time now 15
any way 411
anybody 411
anyone 411
anything 411
anything like 267
anyway 17 9
anywhere 411
apparel 189
apparently 17, 418, 421, 451
(apparently so but) not really 599
appear to 596
appeared like 596
appears to me that 602
approximately 162, 350
are 96
are dead 571
area 170
arrive 317
as 204, 326, 336, 378, 540, 561
as early as 245
as for . . . 579
as if 49, 161, 600, 603 4
as long as 436, 438
as many as 229, 243
as much as 67
as of 113
as regards 311, 378
as soon as 245
as you look on 13
ask 186 7

assuming that 272
astronomy 574
at 110–11, 304, 312
at least 46, 162, 164, 304, 585
at night 15
at noon 15
at the earliest/latest 512
at (the time of) 313, 378
at (the very) least 164
attach 550
attend 186
aunt 143
autumn 15

B rather than/as opposed to *A* 282
bank account balance 575
barely has . . . happened 431
be 186
be able to 220, 386, 570
be allowed to 56
be attracted to 369
be bent 549
be buried 550
be burnt 550
be convincing 65
be crushed 550
be decided 222, 571
be developed 572
be entrusted 549
be felt 88
be found 549
be gathered 549
be given the opportunity to feel/discover something 58
be heard 224, 331
be hit 549
be in a state of . . . 301
be in the process of 440
be independent 572
be left 550
be left over 550
be made to do something (against one's will) 58
be mended 550
be mistaken 549
be mixed 549
be no longer 284
be open 549
be roasted 550
be ruined 551
be secure 65
be seen 224, 331, 551
be stable 572
be surprised 54
be thankful 217
be there 186, 444, 484, 489, 566, 570
be transmitted 550
be unable to 289
be useful 179
because 77, 336, 363, 434, 469
because of N 304
become 98, 284, 443, 463, 571–2
become + adv. 571
become developed 572
become independent 572
become known 302
become stable 572
before 22–5, 232–3, 290, 429
before a change for the worse occurs 24
before doing 233
before long 562
before something happens 560
before (time) has passed 560
begin 549, 571
begin something 570
behind 429
below 429
bend 549
besides 72
between 22, 429
big 60
blow, breathe 551
boring 263
borrow 186
both 411
box 572
boxing 572, 574
bread 574
break 550
breathe 550–1
bring someone 505
bring up 550
brothers (& sisters) 142
burn 550
bury 550
but 75, 92, 110, 152–3, 208–9, 217, 247, 363, 448, 540, 585
buy 567
by 110, 112, 114, 203, 231–2, 302, 378
by a whisker 14
by all means 19
by any chance/means 19, 418
by itself 458
by no means 418
by the day 430
by the way 81

cake 466, 574
calm 549
can 220, 386–7
can be expected 167
can we ask you to 434, 515
can you 503
can you believe it? 268
can't 592
can't afford to do nothing but 45
can't be expected to 254
can't but 169
can't help doing 129, 134, 607
can't help having that feeling 88
can't just . . . all the time 44–5
can't (possibly) 169
carefully 14
case 39
cease to be 284
certainly 17
certainly not 250
change 13, 189, 550, 566
chanson 574
charming 424
cheap 9–10, 129
cheat(ing) in exam 572, 575
child(ren) 142

chilly 359
chopsticks 189
circumstances 39
clatter 359
climb mountains 572
close 549, 571
close something 570
club 575
coffee 575
cold 441
collapse 550
come 186, 504, 566, 568
come about 222
come across 526
come along 505
come down 201, 551
come down the stairs 356
come into being 301
come out 201, 550, 571
come outside 201
come to a stop 571
come to an end 571
come to do 302
come to think of it 33
compared to 34, 64, 199, 612
completely 11, 14
concerning 309, 311, 316, 356, 378
connect 549
consequently 73
conservation 524
consist of 201
contrary to 308, 314, 378
convenient 303
convenient for doing 339
convert 566
convincing 7
cook(ing) 572, 574
cool 7, 550
cormorant 573
correspond (to) 307
could we get you to 434, 515
could you 503
could you please 434, 493
countries 346
cousin 143
crisp 7
cross over 550
crush 550
cry 570
cup 574
currently 15
cut well 391
cute 424

daddy 377
daughter(s) 143
day 16
days of the week 15
deal with 541
death 352
decide something 570
decide to 221, 603
definitely 20
definitely not! 403, 418
democracy 347
depending on 320–1, 378
despite 337
die 187, 571
differ (from) 526
direction 170
discover 571
discovery 571, 574
discuss 192
disgusting 424
distance 94
do 98, 137, 186–7, 346, 443, 463, 566, 568
do (a favour by doing) something for someone else 521–2
do for others 439–40
do for someone else 480
do for your/his, etc. benefit 521
do research 571
do things like *A* and/or *B* 91, 478
do things such as 478
do work 66
does for me 440
doesn't amount to much 164
doesn't necessarily mean that 207
doing 219
doing . . . is adj./AN-er 170
doing S1 is all you need to do 109
doing someone a favour 483
(doing someone a favour by) letting someone do something 482
doing something as a threat to the listener 521–2
doing . . . would be adj./AN-er 170
don't 256, 289, 291
don't you see? 434
dot 573
doubtless 17
drink 186, 570
drink (alcohol) 441
driver only (bus, etc.) 575
drop 551
dry 550
due to 221, 304, 320, 469
during 21, 563
during the day 15
during this period/time 23

each 615
earlier 15
early 573
eat 187, 567, 570
economic growth 574
either 416
either one 411
end 550
end something 570
end up 291
end up doing/being 536
enter 551, 566, 571
entrance 551
entrust 549
-er than 612
erect 550
establishments 346
even 47, 116, 119–20, 229, 244, 246, 436, 460, 508
even a little 119
even assuming that 511
even at the expense of doing 230
even if 19, 506–8, 511

even if . . . but actually 510
even if it means doing 118
even if not 508
even just 117
even so 511
even though 23, 25, 93, 260 1, 337, 507, 555
even though . . . but actually 510
ever more 42–3
ever since 252, 537
every(~) 15–16, 118–9, 149, 245, 412, 414, 416
every day 16
every morning 15
every second (day) 16
everybody 411
everyone 130, 375, 411
everywhere 411
evil 573
exactly 213
examine 506
exceedingly 12
explain 570, 572
explanation 572
extending over 309, 378
extratropical cyclone 575
extremely 12, 14
eye(s) 189, 573

face 550
fact 218
fall 551
fall (of flowers/rain, etc.) 570
fall (on) 307
family 142
fancy (that) 268
far 4
far from it 286
fast 13
father 142
fear 13
feel 224, 531
feeling of being irate 360
feminine 424
few 40, 129, 263
find 549
fine 14
firm 359
first (of all) 15
first *X*, then *Y* 78
firstly (secondly, etc.) 362
five hours/o'clock 101, 349
flashing 11
float 550
flow 550
food 189
for 110, 119, 297, 299, 305–6, 314–5, 339–40, 378
for a long time 15
for a start 362
for amount 317
for example 80, 258, 529
for instance 115, 117 8
for some reason 411
for the first time 3, 12
for the very reason that 206
for unit 317
formerly 3
four 352
four or five 71
free from 285
frequently 15
frightening 13
from 112, 199, 225, 355, 526, 611
from someone/somewhere 411
from the fact that 221
from . . . to/until 199, 226 7, 496
from where 363

gas leak 575
gather 549
generally speaking 529
gentle 424
get + adv. 571
get along 488
get cool 550
get deeper 42
get divorced (from) 526
get engaged (to) 526
get higher 42
get married 571
get on 551
get on close terms (with) 526
get ready, acquire 571
get scattered (across the ground, etc.) 570
get seasick 217
get stronger 42
get to know 224, 571
get to the stage where 601
get up 551
get weaker 42
get well 571
gift 189
give 61, 186, 381, 564
give to someone else 479
go 186, 487, 564, 567
go and do something 504
go down 551
go out 551, 571
go outside 201
go to bed 186
go to do 302
go to sleep 189
goes without saying 228
going to the extreme of doing 230
golf 574
good 85, 171, 303, 475, 493, 509
good for 303
good for (doing) 339
government minister 144
grand(child/father/mother) 143
great 14
grow up 550
guest(s) 375

hands 189
hang 549
happen naturally 222
happened immediately 529
happy 493
hardly 18
has the title of 6
have 186, 357 484, 489

have a big impact 65
have a feeling 88
have a problem 340
have a shortage of 340
have a tendency to 301
have an animated conversation 57
have no intention of 439, 554
have not/never 220
have something done for one's benefit 440
have the experience of 220
have the intention of 554
have the pleasure of doing 494
have things changed for his benefit 385
have to 33, 86, 133
have to do 520
haven't 278
having 300
having siblings/family 25
he 371, 374
he himself 427
he should 223
hear 224, 331
her N 2
here 121
herself 425, 427
hey 140
hide 550
himself 425, 427
his N 2
hit 549
hold 357
hold talks (with) 526
hour 15
house 201
how 4, 125, 411, 477, 601
how about 32, 293, 401, 521
how can they? 268
how many 101, 347, 349, 351, 411
how many times 411
how much 121, 126, 347, 351, 411
how much (money) 121
how shall one describe it *A* or *B*? 539
how very . . . 410
however 66, 75–6, 208–9
husband 143

I 371–2
I can't 592
I don't really know, but if the assumption is correct/if what you're saying is right 37
I don't think it's right/wise 405
I feel ashamed 378
I flatter myself that 553
I guess 409
I hear 440
I hear that . . . 451
I hope that 553
I myself 427
I say 140
I tell you 613
I think he/she/they intend(s) to 552
I think I'm going to be sick 606
I think I've got a cold 606
I thought that . . . (but in fact) 553
I want you to (do/not do something for my/others benefit) 433
I wonder 405, 434, 515
I/we are happy that you/he etc. do/did something (for me/us) . . . 502
I/we get you/others to do something for me/us 492
I/we want you to do (for others) 482
I/we want you to (do/not do something for my/our benefit) 432
I/we will 191
I/we'd be happy if 493
I/we'd like you to do (for me/us) . . . 492
I/we'll have you/them 513
I/we/he/she/they intend(s/ed) to 552
if 1, 19, 30 1, 35 6, 38–9, 41, 70, 269, 406–8, 471–2, 519
if all you do is . . . 109
if anything 164, 413
if anything like . . . should happen 608
if . . . anyway 273
if (at all) 34
if had 36, 471, 473
if it means doing . . . , I'd rather 166
if not, then not 30, 37
if on the one hand . . . , then on the other 272
if one assumes 477
if . . . or not 407
if S1, something habitually does 528
if the worst comes to the worst 547
if . . . , then 30, 37, 472, 520
if when 36
if . . . , would have 31, 473
if you can 251
if you do anything like 608
if you question if *X* is all *Y*, that is not so 48
if you were to do anything like 252, 274
I'll be ready for you 273
I'm cold 378
I'm in trouble 287
IMF 575
in 110–11, 113, 263, 306, 312–14, 378
in a flash 562
in a leisurely way 14
in accordance with 320
in advance 15
in all likelihood 17
in any case 149
in case of 39, 313
in case of emergency/trouble 547
in contrast to 314
in front (of) 233, 429
in inverse proportion to 314
in keeping with 422
in lieu of 311, 378
in order to 305, 339–40
in other words 34, 80
in place of 312
in proportion to 107
in short 80
in that case 477
in that way 137
in the course of 561
in the evening 15
in the morning 15
in the old days 250
in the past 15
in the process of 556

in the same way 601
in turn 13
in what state/condition 4
in what way 601
including 300
inconvenient 303
increase 550–1
increasingly 43
indeed 213
India and Pakistan 576
inside 263, 429
instantly 359, 562
insurance premium 575
intelligent 7
intend to 440, 552
intend to be 98
interesting 156
inversely to 308
iron rod 575
is 96, 535, 537
is all 45
is *also* 246
is *at the same time* 246
is better 171
is called 533
is dead 571
is expected 167
is felt 369
is . . . ing 570
is it *A*, or *B*? 403
is it OK if? 85
is just as if 596
is like 240, 439
is merely 451
is (not) even 462
is OK 85
is preferable 171
is ready 570
is relatively good/bad etc. of/amongst/compared to *X* 67
is studying 570
is sufficient 85
is supposed to 166
is . . . that 213
is there 443
is there not some way 294
-ism 347
isn't it 126
it 441
it can't be helped 607
it comes about 536
it doesn't happen 536
it gives me/us 500
it is said 533
it is/was . . . who/that 60
it may be *A*, but in fact it's no more than *B* 540
it seems that . . . (how do you explain the fact that?) 598
it was such-and-such a length of time after something happened 30
it won't do to 592
it would be nice if 493
itch 94
it's (being) said 533
it's good that you/he etc. are/were . . . 502
it's not right to 592
it's not that I don't . . . 129
it's not (the case) that 536, 538, 592
it's OK if 85, 246, 509
it's OK if you don't 286
it's quiet 441
it's written in your face 484
itself 253, 255

Japanese 95, 275
jet aeroplane 575
jittery 359
just 50, 105, 117, 595, 600
just about right 166
just after 444
just . . . all the time 44, 105
just as if 20
just because 165
just by doing S1 109
just keep doing 43
just like 20, 240, 422
just like . . . , (and . . .) 241
just one 103
just only 105
just then 74

keep doing 519
kindly do(es) for me/us 440, 492
knock down 550
know 187, 489
know someone 187
known for 113

last 15
lately 15
laugh 54, 570
leave 201, 550
leave (for further use) 516
leave home 201
leave over 550
left 429
leisurely 11, 359
lemon squash 576
let 483, 494
let flow 550
let me 57
let me (take the opportunity to) say/mention this 516
let me/us 191
let me/us do 504
let or make pass through 358
let someone do something 53
let's 189–90, 393–4, 440
let's try 506
letting someone do something 482
life 573
like 160, 241, 565, 600
like having . . . -ed 240
like this/how 121
like/unlike N1 423
likely to 439, 456
line 573
little 129
live 489
look at 506
looks like 440
lots 15, 134, 351, 359

made of 201
make a mistake 549
make a point of 221, 603
make from 201
make someone do something 53, 521, 523
make up for the crime 386
mama 377
many 4, 94, 411–12
many times 411
marry 526
masculine 424
match(es) 574
may 191, 439–40
may be . . . but 540
may be . . . but that doesn't mean that 207
may have 405
may I 56
may I/we please have a/your N/VN 432
Me lose? (You must be joking!) 403
meal 189
meet (with) 186, 526
member of parliament 144, 158
mend 550
might 137, 198, 407, 410, 439
might be 409
might it not be that 397
might not? 402
might there not 250
mind you 66, 76, 210
minute 15
mix 549
money 189
month 16
more 14, 62, 66
more or less 413
more than 63, 174, 612
more than anything else 65
more . . . than question word 65
moreover 72
morning 15
most 14, 62, 66
mother 142
motorway 576
mountain(s) 346, 574
mountaineering 572 3
move 550
multiple choice 576
mummy 377
must 33, 51 2, 86, 129, 131, 133, 235, 283, 287, 439, 520
must be 307
must do 520
must not/mustn't 88, 520
must surely 169
mutually 526
my 2
myself 425

N and those associated with N 419
N is 442
N is . . . , but 539
N like . . . 325
N such as 325
N (which is/was) *A* but *B* 153
N who/which apparently 422
N2 (named) N1 534
N2 (of/that is) N1 2, 534
naked 5, 333
naturally 254
near 4
neatly 14
need 299, 566, 570
need to 52
neither 411, 417
neither . . . nor 245
nephew 143
never 18, 220, 411
never mind 607
never . . . more than 178
new 573
next 15
next to 429
nice 352
niece 143
night 15, 105
nine 352
no (. . .) 351, 412
no . . . at all 411
no doubt 234, 439
no doubt is 307
no less than 165
no matter 118, 417
no matter how 119, 396, 416, 509
no matter what 396, 415, 418
no matter when 509
no matter where 415
no matter which N 60
no matter who 415
no more than 449
no N whatsoever 60
no-one 415
no (one/thing, etc.) 245
no such person/thing/place/time 266
no, what you're suggesting is wrong, I did 295
nobody 411
none 411
noon 15
not *A*, but *B* 282, 285
not all 49
not . . . and 285, 288
not . . . , and . . . 290
not any 417
not any number of times 411
not . . . anybody 411
not anyway 18
not as . . . as 174, 176
not at all 18
not be in a state of . . . 301
not . . . , but . . . 290
not either 244, 462
not even 117, 244
not . . . just 49
not . . . just because 207
not many 351, 411
not . . . many times 411
not merely 108
not much 18, 411
not N, and 286
not necessarily 18, 207, 246, 252
not necessarily so 48
not only 108

not only, but also 47, 48, 108
not particularly 18
not particularly adj.1 599
not possible unless 287
not really 599
not something that 254
not yet 15
nothing 411
nothing better than 177
nothing but 50, 105, 449–50
nothing else 148
notice 331
now 15, 601
nowhere 411, 415
No. 1 361
numerous 40

occasionally 15, 220
odious 424
of 119, 320, 469, 563
of about 173
of old 94
often 15, 478
oh 443
old 4
old times 15
older brother/sister 142
on 304, 316
on the contrary 75
on the occasion of 306, 378
on the one/other hand 79
on the . . . side 171
on top 429
once 87
once per time/amount 304
once the action of V is completed, some new perspective or problem appears 476
one 103, 411, 426, 573
one after another 347
one cannot know if 198
one month 101, 349
one of 412
one should 191
one time 547
only 42, 45–6, 50, 104, 107, 163, 449–50
only . . . and nothing else 449
only if/when 216
only just 44
open 549, 571
open something 570
or 71–2, 79, 197, 403, 542, 593 4
or so 173
ought to 51, 167, 395, 439
oughtn't 234, 439
our N 2
ourselves 425
out of 199, 355
over 113, 297, 309, 378
over (the period that) 537
overwhelmingly so 50
owing to 317 18, 320

page 575
papa 377
parents 142
partly because 221
pass 551
pass over 550
pass through 550
pee 189
people 346
people governing 347
per 378
per se 255
perchance 477
perhaps 17, 117, 515
period of time 102
person *X* and those associated with *X* 465
piping hot 359 60
place (in readiness) 516
plausible 424
please 19, 196, 432
please allow me to 494, 499
please do 61, 498
please do (for others) 482
please give 61
please let me 494, 499
please visit us 303
plenty 14, 94, 411
plus 305
p.m. 15
point at 550
politician 158
popular 7
possibly 17, 169, 198
practically 601
precisely because 109, 206, 216
preferable 171
presently 15
pretty much 14
principle 347
probably 17, 198
professor 158
properly 11, 359
proud 424
provided that 438
pull out 550–1
put 299, 516
put away 518
put before 310
put (in readiness) 516
put on (something) 551, 571
put out 550

quiet 441
quite 14
quite a few 131

raise 549, 551
rarely 15
rate 107
rather 20, 413
rather than 63-4, 538, 612 13
raw 5, 333
raw concrete 576
reach 299, 317
read 570
really 254
reason 202
receive 186, 381
recently 15
red wine 575

regardless of 154
regardless of whether . . . , or 396
relatively 171
replacing 311
repulsive 424
research 571, 574
resemble 299
restaurant 466
return 550, 566
ridiculous 424
right 429
rise 549
rise in basic pay 576
river(s) 574
roast 550
ruin 551
run 571
rustle 359

S seems to be the case and definitely is(n't) 421
S seems to be the case but I don't actually know whether it is or not 421
salmon roe caviar 574
say 140, 186, 531–2
say at least 165
saying things like 268
see 13, 186, 224, 331, 506, 551, 564, 567
seems 439
seems (just like) 596
seems like 240
seems to 421–2
seems to me 369
seems to me that 602
self 372
sell well 391
several 350
shabby 424
shall I/we 189, 192
she 371, 374
shop 466
short-term prime rate 576
should 32, 51, 167, 191, 393, 395, 439, 475, 521, 530, 603
should be 393
should have 475
should have . . . , but 247
should I? 475
shouldn't 339, 393
show 186
shut 518
since 28, 84, 204, 207, 252, 537, 611
since being born 90
sisters 142
ski slope 574
sleep 186, 189
slippery 573
slow(ing) down 575
slowly 359, 573
so 137, 204, 207, 284, 336, 590
so . . . but 591
so far as 229
so that 602
so . . . , that 164, 175
so, what you are saying is 538
softly 11
some 130, 411
some~ 412
somebody 411
somehow 263, 265, 411
someone else gives me/us 500
someone like 161
someone's 411
something 411
something like 161, 267
something like N 599
something will be ready 570
sometime 411
sometimes 15, 220
somewhat/somewhere 411
son(s) 142
soon 15, 94, 562
sorry 126
sorry for . . . 87
sorry for not having done 286
sort of 598
sparkling 11
speak 531
speedy 435
split 550
spring 15
stand 550
stand up 570
stating that 327
step off the scales 356
stick 550
still 236, 359
stomach 573
stop 549
stop! 194
straight away 15
strength 94
strong point 94
study 570
stuff 549
stuffed 549
subconsciously 563
subsequently 28
substitute 566
such a person/place/thing/time as 263–4, 266–7
such as 241
such as doing 259
suddenly 6, 359
suffering 352
sufficient 85
summer 15
supposing that 272
surrounding 356, 378
sweet 424

take down 551
take someone/something 488
take up a position 317
takes side 384
talk 224
talk (with) 526
tall 7
tea 189
teacher 144, 158
team up 564
telephone 179
television 574
tell 531

tempura on rice 576
tend to 171, 478
thank you 126
thank you for doing 493
thanks to the listener, or a third person 516
that 120, 219, 327, 602
that is 80
that is to say 536
that kind of 1
that over there 120
that should be obvious 434
that's about it 249
the fact that 224, 535
the first (second, etc.) 361
the following (day) 16
the hallmark of 287
the majority 14
the more . . . , the -er 176–7, 431
the N of 534
the N which says 534
the N2 ('called') N1 447
the one(s) 332
the other day/year 15–16, 23
the question is if/whether 406
the reason for 77
the reason why 205, 587
the reason why . . . is because 470
the time when 543, 548
the very N 255
their N 2, 426
themselves 425, 427
then 590
then . . . , but 591
there is 262
there is no choice but 64
there is no difference/relation, whether N1 or N2 396
there is no need to 223
there is no way of doing 607
there is no way that 591–2
there is no way that . . . not 591
there isn't 40, 129, 262, 278–9, 285
there's no choice but 64, 450
there's nothing that can be done 607
thereafter 28, 78
therefore 73
thereupon 74
they 371
they must 223
they say 533
they themselves 427
thing 218, 253
things like (*A* and/or *B*) 91, 478
think 186, 192, 450, 531
think of doing 609
thinking things like 268
this 1, 120–1
this fellow 121
this much 121
this way 284
though 76
three 349
three o'clock 15
throbbing (with pain) 359
through 22, 112, 350, [illegible]
throughout 21, 358
time 548
times per period 317
timidly 13–4
to 134, 199, 225–7, 297, 302, 309, 526
to a . . . extent/degree 164
to alight from 356
to be lacking 57, 305
to be regretted 88
to begin with 362
to call 568
to die 568
to feel mystified 156
to leave 356
to my/our delight 222
to read 568
to regard 540
to return 568
to show an interest in 156
to speak 568
to swim 568
to the best of my knowledge it is 421
to the effect that 327
to the extent of S 107
to the extent that 174
to view as 540–1
to wait 568
to work 95
tobacco 575
today 15
together with 526
toilet 189
too 242–3
total 574
totally 14
tottering 11, 359
touching 424
towards 134, 199, 314
transmit 550
tried to 610
try 506, 603, 610–1
try and see 506
trying to 611
tuna [mashed] with leeks in broth 576

UN 575
unable to 291
unchanged 236
uncle 143
understand 570
understand that 439
underwear (for kimono) 575
unexpected 280
unexpected N 283
unit, odd 351
unit per 317
university 231
unless I/we do . . . , it presumably won't do 235
unless is 287
until 225–6, 228, 232, 496
unusual 424
up to (now) 227, 231
used to 250

vacant(ly) 359
vague 7

very 14, 126
very much 19
vicinity 94, 460
virtually non-existing 160
visit 187

walk 189, 571
walk down the stairs 356
want 565
want others to 439
want to 156, 439, 467, 515, 609
want to be 98
want to try 506
was all 45
was like 240, 596
was OK if 32
was supposed to . . . (but actually) 168
way of doing 208, 325, 459, 606
we 128, 347, 372
weakness 94
wear 186
well 81
wh- 120
what 121, 149, 411
what kind of 1, 121
what sort of 1
What (the hell) are you doing! 404
what's this supposed to be! 404
whatever else 149
when 16, 30–1, 35, 37–9, 70, 121, 212, 306, 342, 411, 471–2, 543, 548
when (if) 36
when in Rome do as the Romans do 551
when it comes to 309–10, 378
when small 212
when S1, someone/something used to do 529
when S1, something becomes apparent/is noticed 529
when S1, something habitually does 528
when . . . , then 472
when young 212
whenever 37
where 121, 149, 363, 411, 444
where to 363
whereas 247
whether 406, 408
whether I/we should/might 192
whether it mightn't be possible 410
whether . . . or 154, 198, 396
whether . . . or not 396, 407
which 1, 121, 411
which amongst X 69
which may be N 344
which of three (or more) 68
which (of two) 411
whichever 68
while 21–4, 247, 260, 554–5, 559, 561–2
who 121, 149, 411, 444
who (polite) 121
who with 363
why 411
wife 143
will 137
will you 294, 433, 503
winter 15
wishing 354
with 110, 112, 114, 320, 358, 526, 564
with effect from 358
with respect to 311, 378
with the intention of 531, 552
within a certain limit 559
without 285, 287, 290
without addition 236
without (doing) 221, 288, 290
won't it 294
word processor 576
would be good if 32, 210
would be . . . if 339
would be nice if 475
would have been good if 32
would really like to 249
would you? 56, 433–4, 503, 515
wrinkled 359
write 570
write well 391

X and those associated with him/her 466
X is [adj./AN]-er than *Y* 63
X out of *Y* 304

year 16
yes, what you're suggesting is quite right, I didn't 295
yesterday 15
you 371, 373
you ask why? 400
you can 509
you could 509
you give me/us 500
you know 613
you may 85, 509
you may think that . . . , but that's not so 48
you must 222–3
you must be joking 286
you needn't 286
you (polite) 121
you see 205, 210, 248, 250, 277, 287
you see . . . , because 251
you should 171, 191, 222–3, 475
younger brother/sister 142
your N 2, 188
yourself 425
youthful 435

GRAMMAR & FUNCTION INDEX

abbreviation 62
abstract(ness) 224
acronyms 575
action(s): attempted 610; completed/completion of 342, 464–5, 544–6; contrastive 260–1, 555; departure point of 355; direction of 326; endpoint of 225–6, 228, 230; goal of 134–6, 298, 564; in process/progress/progressive 489–90, 544–6, 556; intermittent 555; not yet completed 543–4; participants in 326; performed for benefit of speaker 499; place of 326; proposed 189–90; repeated 519; simultaneous 260–1, 555
active (voice) sentences 364–8
actor *see* agent, subject
addition 47–8, 84, 90, 448
address, forms of 140–44, 158, 372–3, 375–7; for family 140–44, 377; for non-family 144
addresses 228
adjectival expressions 1, 7
adjectival nouns 4–5, 7–9, 11; converted 5; one-place 565; two-place 565; unconverted 5
adjectival noun sentences: converted into verb sentence 443; simple 442
adjective sentences: converted into verb sentence 443; simple 442
adjectives (proper) 1, 4, 7–9; basic forms of 10; classical 160, 211; forms of 9–10; lexical 424; noun-modifying forms of 9, 10; one-place 145, 565; plain non-past form of 8; root-form of 9, 10, 93–4, 97–8; stem-forms of 4, 9, 11, 94; subjective 378–8; **-ta** form of 9; two-place 565
adverbs 3, 6, 10–13; adjectival noun derived 10–11; adjective-stem derived 11; by derivation 10–11; **no**-adjective derived 11; nouns, used as 10, 13; of degree 14, 62, 323, 615; of distance 94; of manner 14; of time 16, 94; of time and frequency 15; onomatope 11, 14; predicate-selecting 17–20, 595; verb-derived 12–13
adverbial clauses 3–4, 149, 154, 175
adverbial phrase 49
agent 301, 387, 391, 484, 489; human 391; inanimate 368; in passive sentences 203, 365–6; lacking 368; same 555; *see also* actor, subject
ageru 381–2; in relative clauses 382
agreement, soliciting 276
aida: [conjunctive particle] 21–2; [relational noun] 22–3, 23–5
alerting 614
alternatives, choice of 68–9, 403; between two or more items 68
amount 27, 50, 304, 317, 351, 615; approximate 161, 172; emphasized 243, 585; maximum 227
anata 373–5
animate(ness) 25–6, 300–1; of vehicles 25–6
apologizing 87, 586
appearance 20, 95, 239–40, 420–1
apposition 26–7, 322, 326; by **no** 26–7, 326; by zero 26–7
arguments *see* noun phrases
article, definite (English) 580
aru 25–6, 345
assertion 434, 587
associative particle 321–8
astonishment 557
ato 27–30, 495
attention, calling 613
authorship 322

-ba 30–39, 176, 215, 438–9, 472
-ba ii 32–3, 339
baai 39–42
bakari 42–51
-ban 361
base 256
-beki 51–2, 283
belittling 164, 264, 267
beneficiary/recipient of object/action 135
benri 339
boku 371–2
bookish, adverbial use of phrasal particle 378; *see also* copula, learned forms of

case: core 564; oblique 564
case frame 298
causative: sentences 53–6, 302; verb (form)s 54, 499, 504
causative passive: sentences 57–8; verb (form)s 58
cause 204, 304–5, 320, 469
-chan 376–7
change 137; gradual 505, 561; of state 98, 333, 463; sudden 505
children's talk 189
classical forms 51, 59–60, 133–4, 160, 175, 195, 211, 217, 283, 287, 540
classicisms 59
clauses: conjunctional 215–6; main 21, 543, 587; subordinate 587
cleft sentences 30, 60–1, 163, 205, 223–4, 330–1, 389, 447, 470, 497, 586
coercion 53
colloquial (forms/equivalents/usage) 32, 38, 85, 208, 262, 269, 280, 329, 334, 353, 395, 404, 456, 458, 472–3, 491, 516, 518, 519, 543, 556–7, 580, 584
colour words 5, 85; joining in the sense of 'and' 85; modifying another adjective 85; NJ 5; WJ 5
commands 19, 61–2, 498; direct 445–6, 502; indirect 196, 502–3; intimate 498, 446–7; negative 61–2, 289, 503; polite 196, 432; positive 61

commenting, generically 539
comparative forms (English) 14, 62; equivalent 65, 612
comparative particle *see* particles
comparative sentences, **ga** marking preferred item 148
comparison 62–9, 538, 612–13; standard of 612
complaining 249
complement clauses 69–70, 151, 224–5, 330–1, 447, 535
completely/with finality 518
complex sentences 445–8; with embedded subordinate clauses 445–7; with subordinate clauses 445
compounds 574–5
compound sentences 83 4, 288, 448; with conjunctive forms 448, 491, 493; with conjunctive particles 448
conclusion, drawing a 538
concrete(ness) 224
condition 19, 30 -42, 70, 109, 269, 271, 471, 519; emphasized 215–16, 251, 273; general 31, 41, 471; habitual 31, 38, 41, 528; hypothetical 31, 37, 40, 42, 252, 270, 272, 274, 339, 473 -5; immediate 528–9; necessary 31; specific or individual 471; temporal 29
conditional sentences 70, 339; negative 131–4
conjoining 70; by comma 71; clauses 72; items 71; particles 68, 70 -2
conjunctions 72–82, 511, 536; emphasized 217; of addition 72–3; of alternative 79–80; of change of topic/coming to the point 81 2; of choice 79; of consequence 73 -4; of contrast 75–6, 540; of immediate consequence 74–5; of qualification 76–7; of reason 77 8; of sequence 78–9; paraphrasing 80
conjunctive clause 21
conjunctive form 4, 82–91, 363; equivalent 82; functions 82; negative 262; of adjectives 3; of adverbial clauses 4; of phrasal particles 3; of verbs 12; written-style 9, 458–9; *see also* **-te**
consequence 84, 207
consonants, voicing of 12 13
contempt 128 9
contractions 30, 32, 126, 256, 280, 334, 487, 489, 519, 584; *see also* colloquial, spoken style
contrast 25, 91–3, 146–7, 168, 208–9, 234, 247, 260, 554–5, 559, 578, 581, 610; between clauses 91–2, 272; between nouns/noun phrases 91–92; emphasized 217, 273, 559; explicit 581; factual 93; implicit 582; strong 93, 337; subjective or emotional 93; weak 92–3, 152
control(lability) 30, 36–7, 234, 472, 572
conversions 93 5
conviction 166
copula 5, 7–9, 96 8, 246; adverbial form of 11–12, 98, 297; classical 60; conjunctive 115; forms of 96, 452, 456; honorific 183; learned forms of 96, 395; noun-modifying form of 5, 9, 97–8; omission of 97; plain form of 395; plain non-past forms of 97; polite form of 9, 96, 395; presumptive forms of 98; splitting of 89; **-tara/tari** forms 98; zero 97
counters 2, 98–104, 305; 'default' 3, 98; of time 99, 101 2; of time and measurement 99; specific 3, 98
counting 347, 350 2; aloud 351–2; approximately 350–1; in sequence 351 -2
country names 274–6
criticism 405

da *see* copula
dai- 361
dai-ichi 361–2
dake 50–1, 104 10, 449
darō (-(y)ō) form of copula 191, 393 5
dattara 35 7, 473–7
datte 110
de [case particle] 110–5; [conjunctive form of copula] 115
deadline 230
definitions 331
de gozaimasu [honorific form of copula] 183
degree 10, 49, 67, 164, 286; emphasizing of 49
demo 115–20, 120
demonstrative words/pronouns 1, 16, 27 8, 120–24, 231, 324, 347, 370; adverbially used 16
describing, searching for appropriate way of 539
desiderative 19, 124
desu [polite form of copula] 9, 96, 239
development/change: gradual/over time 488, 505, 601; sudden 505
de wa 125, 318
de wa nai 281
dialect forms 125–8
difference, basis of 319–20
direction 134, 136, 297, 326
disappointment 338
discourse reference 122–4; following context 124; preceding context 122 4
dochira 68
-domo 128 9, 370
dore 68
double negatives 48, 52, 129–34, 283, 520, 591; proper 130–1
double-subject sentences 150–1, 443, 586

e 134 7
ellipsis 137–9; of noun 138; of particle 138; of predicate 139, 268–9
emotion 222
emotional involvement 337
emphasis 60, 63, 117, 164, 204, 206, 213–7, 245, 248, 251-2, 254 5, 263–5, 266 -8, 303, 329, 429 31, 436–7, 557, 559, 572, 584, 595, 610; slight 587
enumerating 305
equational sentences 173, 176, 223, 442, 586; negative 281 2
euphemisms 189
evaluatory predicates/adjectives 67, 171, 254, 303, 475, 493, 502, 509, 557
existential/locational: sentences 150, 300, 345, 443; verbs 25
existential/possessive sentences, negative 279
exclusive 242
excuses 90
exemplification 258 9
experience 220
explaining: content of N2 by name 534; nature/essence 535, 537

explanation 590; asking for 335; giving/requesting 329
explanatory 287
extending over time/area 309
extent 161, 164, 174, 229; of people involved in action of verb 113

familiar (or intimate) 328, 594
favours 479
female usage 370–7, 445, 587, 594
final particles 364; for extending predicates 444
finite forms 9
first person 56, 140, 157, 193, 384, 467, 480–1, 553, 611; pronouns 264; *see also* speaker
first/second person 549
first/third person 384, 552–4
formal 371
formal spoken style *see* written style
fractions 324
fronting (moving to beginning/front of sentence) 298, 578
future (tense) 278, 340–1, 568; near 562

ga [case particle] 7, 144–52, 577, 588–9; attached to adverbial clause **-te** 149; attached to question words 149; classical genitive particle 160; [conjunctive particle] 92–3, 152–5, 168, 337–9; emphasing preceding noun/noun phrase 148; in comparative/superlative sentences 148; in desiderative sentences 147, 354–5; in double-subject sentences 150–1; in ellipted questions 401; in existential/locational sentences 150; in passive sentences 147; in potential sentences 145; in unfinished sentences 154, 210; marking a nominalized clause 152; marking subject in noun-modifying clause 151, 327
-garu 155–8
-gata 158, 370
gender 345
generic 574
genitive 321–8; classical 160
giver: of action 479, 521; of favour 491
goal 134, 136, 297
-goro 159, 162
-gotoki 161
gotoshi 160–1
gozaimasu 182
greetings 182
guessing 166, 293, 393, 405, 473; subjective 307; with conviction 307
gurai/kurai 161–66

habitual(ness) 38, 41
hazu 166–9, 593
hazukashii 378–9
head noun 548
headlines: magazine 466; newspaper 280, 283
hearsay 224, 318, 421, 451, 532
hiragana 548, 575
hodo 67, 172–8
hō 63, 170–2
hō ga ii 171
honorific: nouns (*see* nouns); prefixes (*see* prefixes)
honorific forms 178–87; irregular 185–7; passive 180–1; regular 179–84
honorifics: object 178; subject 178

hoping to have achieved something positive 553
hortative 154, 189–92, 393–4, 607–8
hoshi-garu 157–8, 193
hoshii 192–3, 289
humble forms 128, 178; irregular 185–7; regular 181–4
humble nouns *see* nouns

ichiban 66–67
ii/yoi 339, 475, 493, 509; *see also* evaluatory predicates
iikaereba 34
iku- 351
imperative(s): classical-form 195, 291; familiar 195, 256; forms 61, 194–5; indirect 196; negative 256–7, 291; plain 194, 196, 446; polite 196; sentences 194–7; softened 195, 594
inanimate(ness) 25–6, 300–1, 368
inclusive 242
indeterminate 412, 589
inflection 565
informal speech 138, 140, 239, 256, 328, 372, 398, 507, 533–4, 613
information: eliciting/confirming 334; known 580–1; source (*see* source of information)
ingroup/outgroup 140
intention(al) 20, 37–8, 234, 278, 340–1, 549, 554, 568, 608
intimate (or familiar) 289, 328, 371, 398, 586
intonation: comma 138, 580; falling 328–9; question 292, 397–8; rising 328
intonational stress (English) 588
introducing a comment/request 92, 209
inversion 197, 404
invitation 189–90, 293, 594
irassharu 185–6
iru 25–6, 345
itadaku 385, 491

Japlish 575
jibun 424–5; used like first-person pronoun 426; used like indefinite personal pronoun 426
jishin 427–9; attached to **jibun** 427; attached to noun 428–9; attached to personal pronoun 427
judgment, basis for 112
junior to speaker 140

ka: [conjoining particle] 197–8; [question particle] 198, 399–400, 402, 542, 603
ka dō ka 406, 408
ka ina ka 406, 409
ka na 409
ka to 407
kakeru 391
kamoshirenai 198–9
kana 573–6
kanji 16, 274, 345, 347, 372, 548, 573–7, 635
kanojo 374
Kansai dialect 125–8, 587
kara [case particle] 199–202, 225–7, 366, 611; [conjunctive particle] 203–7, 336, 434; with verbs of motion 356
kare 374
-kare 207
-karō 191, 208
kata 95, 208, 325

katakana 274, 574–5
kedo *see* **keredomo**
kedomo *see* **keredomo**
keredo *see* **keredomo**
keredomo 92–3, 208–11, 337 9
-ki 211
kimi 372 3
kisama 372–3
kireru 391
koitsu 374
kono aida 23
kono kan 23
koro 212
koso 213–8
koto: [lexical noun] 218; [nominalizer] 218–24
koto ga aru/nai 220
koto ga dekiru 220, 390
koto ni naru 222
koto ni suru 221
kudasai 61–2, 289
kudasaru 383; irregular imperative form 497; irregular **-masu** stem 497
-kun 376
kurabereba 34
kurai *see* **gurai/kurai**
kure 61 2, 289
kureru 383–4, 499; in relative clauses 384

leading member of group (*X* and those associated with him/her) 419, 467
likeness 600; degree of 595
likening 34
listener 142–3, 482; *see also* second person
listing items, representative 593
loanwords, Western 523; *see also* WJ
location 110, 292, 322; active 111; stative 110–11, 300
locational sentences/verbs *see* existential and locational sentences/verbs

made: [case particle] 225–9; [focus particle] 120, 229 30
made-ni 230 2
mae 23 5, 223
-mai 233 5
male usage 256, 276, 370 3, 586–7, 613 4
mama 236–8
manner: in which change takes place (**e to**) 137; in which preceding word/clause takes place (**to**) 525
maru-de 595, 600
-masu forms 20, 178, 239; *see also* polite forms/endings
material 322
-me 361
means 10, 110, 112, 320, 357–8
media 291, 368, 531; spoken 575; written 575
medium, through which action takes place 358
meshiagaru 185 6
method 112
-mi 9, 94
mitai 239–42, 421, 604 6
mixed Japanese (MJ) 572, 575–6
mo 120, 242-7, 414–6, 436–7, 460 2, 577
modesty 264
mon *see* **mono**
mono: [conjunctive particle] 247; [final particle] 248 52; [lexical noun] 253–5; [nominalizer] 255
mono ka 410
mora 576
moraitai 289
morau 385, 512; in relative clauses 385
morphemes 576; boundary 16, 573; single 573
morphology 255 6; agglutinative 255
motto 66
mottomo: [adverb of degree] 66–67; [conjunction] 66, 75–6
movement (action): away from speaker 487-8, 504; to front of sentence (*see* fronting); toward speaker 487, 504 5
mutual/reciprocal action/state 526

-n 280
na [noun-modifying form of copula] 5, 9, 97–8; *see also* copula, forms of
na/nā [final particle] *see* **ne**
na (yo): [final particle, follows verb-stem] 256; [final particle, follows verb-**ru**] 256
nado 257–60, 325, 542 3
-nagara (mo) 23-5, 93, 260 2
(-)nai 8, 262–3, 282, 284, 292
nai de 288–91
-nai mono ka 294, 410
naka 67, 263
nakare 291
naku(te) 284–7
names 144; of continents/countries/regions 274-76; people's 144, 375, 377
nan(i) 351
nani mo 338
nanka 263–6
nante 263, 266–9
nanto 410
nara 30, 35 9, 269–74; replaceable by **-tara** 270
narade wa 287
naranu 282
nationality 274–6
native Japanese (NJ) 9, 16, 188, 347, 350, 572-3
ne 276 8, 293, 452, 498 9
nē *see* **ne**
negative adjective 262 3
negative forms 278
negative/negative ending 8, 18, 280–1
negative questions 292 7, 397; ellipted 402; how to answer 295–7; indirect 410
negative(s): classical 133; conditional 131–4; conjunctive 284–91; desiderative 234 5; existential 279; noun-modifying 282 3; possessive 279; presumptive 18, 234
negative sentences 278; simple 279–83
newspaper headlines 280, 283; style 44 5, 84, 97, 245, 456
ni: [adverbial form of copula] 11, 297 (*see also* copula, forms of); [case particle] 13, 15, 134 7, 159, 203, 297 305
ni arazu 281
ni atari 307
ni atatte 306 7
ni chigai nai 307–8
ni hanshit(te) 308–9
ni kakete 309–10
ni kanshite 311, 316

ni kansuru 311
ni kawari 312
ni kawatte 311–2
ni oite 312–3
ni okeru 312–3
ni saishi(te) 313–4
ni taishi(te) 314–5
ni taisuru 314–5
ni totte 315–6
ni tsuite 316–7
ni tsuki 317–8
ni yoreba 318, 451
ni yori 318
ni yoru to 318–9, 451
ni yotte 319–20
NJ *see* native Japanese
no *see* copula, forms of
no: [case particle] 2–7, 321–8; [final particle] 292–3, 328–9; for apposition 26–7, 322, 326; marking subject in noun-modifying clause 327; [nominalizer] 224, 330–2; [pronoun] 332–3
no-adjectives 4–5, 7–9, 11, 97, 333–4
n(o) da 21, 334–5
node 203–4, 336–7
n(o) desu 328
no ka 399–400
nominalization 69, 152, 255, 330–2, 435–6, 535
nominalized clauses 69, 215
noncommittal/unsure 117
non-conditional 338
non-factual forms 471; *see also* speaker's intention
noni: [conjunctive particle, follows V/adj./AN/N] 93, 337–9; [conjunctive particle, follows V-ru] 339–40, 471; in unfinished sentences 210, 338–9
non-past forms 4, 20–21, 472, 475, 543; plain 4
notices 222
nouns 2, 7, 50, 345–6; animate/inanimate 345; apposition 25–6; as adverbs 13; honorific 187–9; humble 187; lexical 218, 253, 332; main 322; of amount 161–2, 344; of material 201; of place 225–6, 345; of quantity 323; of time 2, 13, 16, 46–7, 105–6, 161–2, 199, 201, 212, 214, 225–6, 231, 233, 245, 298, 320, 342–3, 345–6, 548, 585–6; of time/frequency 15–16, 161–2; personal 128–9, 187–9, 202, 305, 315, 345; proper 345; relational 324, 344, 346, 429, 563; structural 28, 39; types of 345
noun **ga/no**: adjective 7; verb 7
noun modification 322–8, 346; and relative clauses 218, 342–4
noun-modifying 1–7; adjectival expressions 1; adjectival nouns 5, 9; adverbial clauses 4; adverbs 3, 6; clauses 321, 327; demonstrative words and pronouns 1; forms 9; **no**-adjectives 5; nouns 2; noun **ga/no** adjectives 7; noun **ga/no** verbs 7; number + counter 3; onomatope 5–6; phrasal particles 3; personal pronouns 2; questions words 1; reduplication 346–7; relational 324; verbal nouns 6; verbs 6
noun-modifying phrases, 'condensed' 326
noun-modifying words 1; specialized 1
noun phrases (arguments) 346, 527; expansions 444; obligatory 441, 564–5; understood 564
noun sentences: converted into verb sentence 443; simple 442
-nu 280, 282

number (category) 345, 370
number(s) 2, 347–52; account 352; adjoining 350; and superstition 352; approximate 71, 102–3; at a time 616; mnemonics 352; NJ 99, 347–52; of times 219; ordinal 361–2; per unit 615; phone 228, 352; SJ 99, 347–52, 361
number + counter 2, 3, 21, 27–8, 98–104, 162, 172–3, 227, 305, 323, 347–9, 361, 415, 585

o 147, 201, 353–7; in desiderative sentences 354–5; in potential sentences 354; with verbs of motion 355–6
object 353, 564; direct 346; indirect 297–8, 346, 564; in English translation 144, 146–7, 151; in passive sentences 367; in potential sentences 388ff; of a dispute 356; of desire 147, 192–3; marking 192, 357, 388
obligation 51, 520, 603; negative 520; social 592
observation 421
offering services 190–1
officialese 41
o meguri 357
o megutte 356–7
o motte 357
o tōshite 358–9
onegai shimasu 431–3
onomatope (sound symbolism) 5, 6, 11–12, 14, 359–61; as adverbs 11, 359–60; as nouns 360; as noun-modifyers 360; as predicates 361
opposite meaning: adjectives of 207, 599; clauses of 396; verbs/adjectives of 329
orders, oral 222
ore 371
organizations 114, 128
ownership 322

participants 326
particles 362–4; adverbial 363; case 363; comparative 63, 538; conjoining 363; conjunctive 70, 89–91, 237, 363, 493, 543, 558; final 364, 445; focus 364; phrasal (*see* phrasal particles); question (*see* question particles); quotation 117, 327, 364, 531–40, 542
passive (voice) 364–9; adversative 367, 379; direct 376; forms 365; honorific 180–1, 369; indirect 367; of suffering 367; pseudo 302; sentences 147, 203, 302, 364–9; spontaneous 302, 369; use of where English would use active 379
past (tense) 21, 464, 472, 474–5, 486, 543, 569
pejorative: suffix 161; verb 370
perfective 569
performative: adjectives 432–3; verbs 56–7, 61, 380–6, 432–3
performer (of action) 497, 500; *see also* giver, subject
permission: to do 53, 56, 85; not to do 286
permissive 483, 494, 499, 504
personal pronouns 2, 128, 202, 370–5, 427, 467; avoidance of 370; first-person 128, 140, 264, 315, 371–2, 436; indefinite 426; informal 372; **jibun** 372, 426; plural 375; second-person 371–4, third-person 371, 374–5
personified non-human entities 500
persuasion 512
phrasal particles 3, 326, 364, 377–8; adverbial use 378; noun-modifying 378

place of production/provenance 322
plain forms 4, 8, 395, 445–6; non-past 4, 8; past 397
plural **-domo** 128–9; **-gata** 158 9; **jibun-tachi** 425; **-ra** 419–20; **-tachi** 465 7; attached to human nouns 466; attached to non-human nouns 466–7; by reduplication 346 7; honorific 158–9; with personal and reflexive pronouns 370, 375
point: of departure 355; of origin 199
point of view 377
polite forms 96, 178, 239; **desu** 446; **-masu** 178, 239, 446; of adjectives 9 10; of copula 96; **-(yō)** form of cop. **deshō** 239
polite (style) 239
position, relative 233
possession 150, 279, 300–1
potential: forms 386–7; verbs 301, 387 92
potential sentences 146, 220, 354, 386–92; spontaneous 458; with agent 387–90; without agent 391
-ppoi 95, 392 3
preamble 93, 209
predicate(s) 7–10; conditional 19; desiderative 19; dynamic 111; emphasized 254; expansions 444; extensions 444; intentional 20; main 528; negative 17, 449; negative presumptive 17; non-past form 20 21; of appearance and simile 20; of change or difference 320-1; of command 19; polite 9; presumptive 17; reinforced/emphasized 17; splitting 89; stative 111; substituting for 137; without 'obligatory' noun phrase 441
preferred item/course of action 148, 170
prefixes: honorific 140, 188; **iku-** 351; of time 16; **o/go** 179 81, 188, 196; ordinal (**dai-**) 361; **sū-** 350 1
preparation/readiness 516
prepositions (English) 3, 110, 263, 297, 355, 429
present 340 1, 568; habitual 340 1, 568; narrative 340 1, 568
presumptive 17, 191, 393 7, 607; forms 154, 393–7
progressive *see* action(s), in process/progress/progressive
prohibition 88
pronouns 2; demonstrative 1, 324; personal (*see* personal pronouns); reflexive (*see* reflexive pronouns)
proximity of time, emphasized 245
proximity to speaker/listener 120
pseudo-relative clauses 344
punctuation marks 594
purpose 297, 302, 305, 339, 469, 471, 602

qualification 209
question markers 397
question particles 278, 292 3, 351, 364, 542; male intimate 586
question words 1, 65, 120–1, 292 3, 351, 399 -401, 410 18, 589; + **demo** 118 9, 416–18; + **ga** 149 50; + **ka** 411 14; + **mo** 414–5; + **-te mo** 509; + **-to mo** 396; + **yori** 65; particles attached 589
questions 193, 278, 335, 338, 542, 581; alternative 403, 409; asking 598; by intonation only 398; direct 335, 397–403, 447; ellipted 401 2; ending in **ka dō ka/ka ina ka** 406; ending in **ka na/nā** 405; equational, using **tte** instead of **wa** 402; in cleft-sentence form 402; indirect 335, 406 10, 447; information-seeking 589; inverted 402; rhetorical 403 -5; with question words 399; with question words and the question particle **ka/no ka** 400; with question words ending in **ka tte** 400; without question words ending in **no** 398–9; without question words ending in **ka/no ka** 399
quotation: direct 445 6, 531–3; indirect 327, 446, 462, 531 3; marks 445; particles (*see* particles)
quoted speech or thought 268

-ra 370, 419 20
range: in space/time 225–6; in time 496; of activities/actions 91, 478–9
rashii 240, 318, 420 4, 451, 604-6
realization/discovery 472, 590; of present state 464
reason 84, 90, 114, 199, 202-7, 221, 336, 469, 535, 590; emphasized 109, 204, 206, 216, 251; giving 535; implied 205, 491; weak 205
recalling the past 250, 529
receiver: (of action) 479, 497, 521; of favour 491
recommendation 32, 85, 171, 475, 530
reduplicating forms: of nouns 346 7; of verbs 12–13
reference, forms of 140–4, 371–6
reflexive pronouns 424-9, 467
regions *see* country names
regret 93, 338
reinforcing/emphasizing 17
relational nouns 22, 27, 429
relative clauses 66–7, 151, 342–4, 389, 447, 548; pronouns (English) 342; restrictive and non-restrictive (English) 342
repeated action 86, 519
repetition 429–31; of adjectival noun 430; of noun 430; of same adjective 176, 430; of same verb 273, 303, 430, 476
requesting: actions 432; items 432; permission 56
requests 431; in negative-question form 503; in question form 433–4, 493; introducing 209; negative 289, 433; polite 493
result 529; unexpected/inconvenient 518
rhetorical: device 48, 250, 294; question 250, 403–4
root (form of adjectives) 93 4
root-final consonant (of verbs) 568
route 355
ru-form (of verbs) 20, 39–41, 559; **-ru mama** 238; **-ru toki** 544–6; **-ru uchi** 559

sa 434–5
-sa 9, 93, 325, 435 6
sae 120, 436-9, 460–1
-sama 375
sample, representative 258
-san 375
'sandwiched' items/particles 89; **bakari** 44; **demo** 117–18; **ka/ni** 118; **koso** 217; **mo** 244, 246; **nado** 258; **nanka** 263, 265; number + counter 103; **sae** 438; **shika** 451; **sura** 462; verb-stem 179; **wa** 183, 583ff; *see also* splitting particles
sashiageru 381
sayings 280–1
scientific language 574
second person 156 7, 193, 480; *see also* listener
second/third person 57, 156 7, 189, 467, 480, 485 6, 497, 500, 504, 515
senior to speaker 140

sentence endings 10, 439–40, 547; aspectual 551; for extending predicate 444
sentence types 440–8
sequence/succession of time/events 29, 37–8, 84, 90, 471; emphasized 29
shi 90–1, 448–9
shika 50–1, 163, 449–51
shita 6–7; *see also* **to shita**
simile: **gotoshi** 20, 160; **mitai** 239–41; **yō** 599
simple sentences: expanded 443–4; extended 444–5; minimal 441
Sino-Japanese (SJ) 9, 16, 95, 140, 188, 347, 350, 571–2
sō [adverb] 137, 284
sō [hearsay] 240, 318, 418, 421, 451–5, 556, 604–6
-sō [likelihood] 9, 456–8, 604–6
sō ieba 33
sonna 122–4, 424
sono ato 28
sono go 28
sound symbolism *see* onomatope
source of information 125, 318, 421, 451, 455; human 125; marked by **de** 112; marked by **de wa** 125, 455; marked by **ni yoreba/ni yoru to** 318–19, 451, 455; non-human 125
spatial/temporal reference 121–2
speaker 142–3, 482, 485, 487, 491, 499, 504, 512, 516; junior to 140; *see also* first person
speaker's: group 499; intention 37–8; sex 370; taking sides 499
specific(ity) 574
splitting particles 89; *see also* sandwiched items/particles
spoken style 30, 280, 471; *see also* colloquial
spontaneous sentences 458
standard Japanese 125–6, 587
state 6, 98, 234, 334–5, 342, 465, 478–9, 484, 489–90, 507, 559, 602; passive 533; resulting 484, 490, 571; unchanged 236–8, 465–6
statements 32, 39, 193, 276–7, 326, 335, 337, 397, 542, 594; considered 145, 578, 580–2; emphasized 248; generalizing 39, 249, 253–4; non-committal 250; of preference 171; qualifying 362; subjective 204
status (social) 178, 381–5, 479, 492, 497, 500, 512, 521, 566; higher 158, 178; equal or lower 479, 500, 512; lower 491, 521
status or capacity of thing/person 549
stem-forms 4, 10, 89, 95, 156, 456–60; of adjectival nouns 156; of adjectives 4, 9–10, 83, 94, 156, 456–7, 459–60; of verbs 83–4, 95, 458–9; potential 456
sū- 350–1
subject 144–52, 189, 346; 491, 497, 512, 564; human 500; in noun-modifying clause 151, 321, 327–8; non-human 501; of spontanous happening 145; same in S1 and S2 554–5; translating as object 144, 146–7, 151
sufficiency 85
suffixes: **-ban** 361; **-chan** 144; **-garu** 155–8; **-gata** 158–9; **-goro** 159; **-gotoki** 161; honorific 158; **-kata** 208; **-kun** 144; **-me** 361; noun-forming 9, 208; pejorative 161, personal 140, 144, 370–2, 375–7; plural 128–8, 158, 370–1, 375, **-ppoi** 392, **-ra** 419–20, **-sama/san** 140, 144, **-tachi** 158, 465–7, **-teki** 5, 95, [illegible] 560, 606
suggesting 475, 521; rules of conduct 190–1
superhonorific 179–80
superlative forms (English) 14, 62
superpolite 143, 381
sura 120, 460–3
suru/naru 9, 11–12, 98, 333, 443, 463–4
suru nouns 95; *see also* verbal nouns
syllables: long 574; short 574

-ta (form) 6, 9, 31, 39–41, 342, 464–5, 596; before nouns 465; of adjectives 9, 40; of verbs 6, 28–30, 39–40, 260, 476; **-ta ato** 28–30; **-ta bakari** 44; **-ta hō ga ii** 51, 171; **-ta mama** 236–7; **-ta nara** 272; **-ta rashii** 420; **-ta toki** 544–6
-tachi 158, 370, 419, 465–7
tag questions (English) 294
-tagaru 158–9, 467
-tai 467–9
taking sides (speaker's or writer's) 499
taking up what someone else has said 269
talking to self *see* thinking aloud
tame 469–71
-tara 31, 35–9, 270, 471–7
-tara ii 475
-tari 91, 478–9
-tarō 191
tatoe 511
-tatte ii 85
-te ageru 87, 383, 479–83, 499
-te aru 484–5
-te bakari 44–5
-te (-de) form 38, 83–90, 216; *see also* conjunctive forms
-te demo 118
-te ga 149
-te hoshii 431, 433, 482, 485–7
-te iku/teku 487–9; honorific equivalents 489
-te iru form 6, 342; of verbs 6
-te iru/teru 87, 484, 489–91, 507, 556, 570–1
-te iru toki 544, 546
-te itadaku 385, 431–3, 491–4; in potential form 493; in potential questions 433–4; with causative verbs 494
-te kara 29–30, 87, 495–7
-te kudasai 432, 482, 498–9
-te kudasaru 497–9; with causative verbs 499
-te kureru 384–5, 433, 499–504; with human subject 500; with non-human subject 501
-te kuru 487, 504–6; honorific/humble equivalents 505–6
-te miru 506, 611
-te mo 506–12
-te mo ii 85–6, 431–4
-te morau 385–6, 512–5; in potential-form questions 434, 515; potential form of 514–5; with **-tai** 431–2, 515
-te naranai 88
-te ne 62, 289
-te oku/toku 516–7
-te orimasu 184
-te sashiageru 383
-te shimau/chau 518–9
-te sumimasen 87
-te wa 86, 519–21
-te wa naranai/ikenai/dame da 520
-te yaru 383, 521–3; with causative verb 523

-teki 5, 95, 523–5
tendency 392, 479
tense 543, 559; past 543, 553; non-past 543, 553–4
tentative 603
thinking aloud/talking to self 293, 405, 614
third person 93, 128, 157, 193, 384, 481, 499, 516, 549, 552, 611
threatening 522, 614
three-place verbs *see* verbs, three-place
time 15, 304; and space 488, 559; approximate 159, 212; emphasized 585; expressions 64, 113, 304, 560; fixed 15, 304; inordinately long 537; nouns of (*see* nouns); relative 15, 304; sequence (*see* sequence/succession of time); short 562
titles: personal 144, 158; of films/books etc. 211, 316
to: [adverbial particle] 11–15, 525; [case particle] 526–7; [conjoining particle] 68, 85, 527; [conjunctive particle] 31, 35–9, 528–30; [quotation particle] 117, 445–6, 531–3, 542
to ieba 33
to iu 240, 451, 532–40, 604–6
to shita 6–7
to shite 326, 540–2
to sureba 34
to suru 540–1
toka 71–2, 542–3
toki: [conjunctive particle] 39, 41–2, 543–8; [time noun] 548
topic-comment sentences 151, 254, 577
topic, marked by: **dattara** 475; **de** 114; **nara** 37, 274; **to wa** 254; **tte** 254; **wa** 37, 41, 151, 254, 274, 577–87
transitive/intransitive verbs 564, 570; pairs of 379, 549–51
translation equivalent: into passive 391; into past tense 341; lacking 577
truncations 575–6; MJ 576; NJ 576; SJ 575; WJ 576
tsumori 551–4
-tsutsu aru 556
-tsutsu (mo) 23–5, 93, 554–5
tte/te 533, 557; equivalent of **to** 533, 557; equivalent of **to iu** 557; equivalent of **(to iu no) wa** 558
-tte 421–2, 556, 604–6; **-tte ne** 556
typicality 420–4
two-*kanji* compounds 5, 9, 523, 574–5
two-place verbs *see* verbs, two-place

uchi (ni): [conjunctive particle] 22–5, 558–63; [relational noun] 563
understanding 329
unfinished sentences 92–3, 120, 250, 336
unit or total 114
units 317
ureru 391

valency 22, 53, 69, 161, 229, 258, 331, 340, 363, 383, 441–2, 564–5, 578
verbal nouns 6, 84, 232, 323, 346, 438, 571–2; + **shita** 6; *see also* **suru** nouns
verb-final language 260
verb-forms 565–8; non-past 340–2; V-**ru** 559, 568–9; V-**ta** 569
verb-modifying 10
verbs 6; action 112, 478, 489, 546, 569–60; animate 25–6; causative 365, 504; change 569–70; ditransitive 564; durative 260; dynamic 569–60; existential 25–6; forms of 565; group I 565–8; group II 565–8; group II lookalikes 566; group III 565–8; inanimate 25–6; instant 260; intensifying 43–4; intransitive 54–6, 145, 365–8, 379–8, 391, 564; irregular 566; locational 25–6; main 260; modifying nouns 566; of arriving 134; of change 137, 490, 570; of clothing 571; of communication 117, 192, 224, 316, 531; of entering 135; of expectation 369; of feeling 88, 369; of giving (and receiving) 380, 564; of impression 602; of information 112; of inserting 135; of knowing 224; of motion 134, 201, 298, 355–6, 490, 570; of perception 224–5, 331; of posture 134; of putting 134; of seeing 391; of thinking 531, 609; one-place 145, 564; pejorative 370; plain forms of 566; polite forms of 566; potential 301; repeatable 43, 50, 260; root 568; **-ru** form of 339, 386, 559, 561, 565, 568–9; stative (state) 300, 489, 569–70; stem-forms of 95, 438, 556, 571–2; **-ta** form of 6, 395, 569; **-te** 327; **-te iru** form of 6, 561; three-place 298, 564; transitive 55–6, 365–8, 379–60, 387–8, 484; two-place 298–9, 564; volitional 484, 506; whose action/state involve two or more participants 526
verb sentences: simple 442; converted 442
verb types
vocabulary 572–6
voicing 13

wa [focus particle] 60, 144–6, 148–51, 577–87; and **ga**: comparison 588–9; [final particle] 587–8; indicating contrast 145–5, 581–2; in double-subject sentences 586; in ellipted questions 401; in equational sentences 586; in negative sentences 279–81; marking the subject of a complex sentence 586; marking the subject of a compound sentence 586
wake 590–3
wareware 375
wata(ku)shi 372
Western Japan *see* Kansai
Western Japanese (WJ) 9, 95, 140, 571–6
wish: realized 469; unrealized 470
wondering 293, 405
word formation 13
word order 63, 197, 260, 397; alternative 564; changes (English) 198, 342; in compound sentences 448; inverted 402, 404; of adverb and predicate 10; of noun phrases in potential sentences 301, 390; of noun phrases with performative verbs 381; of nouns in apposition 26; of object and verb 137; of subordinate and main clauses 445; same as in statements 397; unchanged in questions 198
written (also formal spoken) style 16, 30, 39, 41, 68, 82, 84, 93, 97, 133–4, 160, 191, 234, 279–84, 291, 357–8, 361, 409, 471, 491, 574, 611

ya 71, 325, 542, 593–4
-yagaru 370
yaku 350
yaru 381

yo 195, 452, 587, 594–5, 604–6, 614
yō 240, 421, 433
yori: [case particle] 611; [comparative particle] 63–5, 538
-yō 95, 606–7
-(y)ō 189–92, 394–5, 607–8; forms 394
-(y)ō mono nara 608
-(y)ō to 416, 608–9
-(y)ō to omou/kangaeru 609
-(y)ō to suru 610–11
-zaru 283
ze 613
zero: apposition 26–7; copula (*see* copula, forms of)
zo 614
-zu 280–1, 290–1
-zu jimai 291
zu(ni) 290
-zutsu 615